PowerPC™ 601

RISC Microprocessor User's Manual

PowerPC

About This Book

The primary objective of this user's manual is to define the functionality of the PowerPC™ 601 microprocessor for use by software and hardware developers. The 601 processor is the first in the family of PowerPC microprocessors, and can provide a reliable foundation for developing products compatible with subsequent processors in the PowerPC family. The 601 provides a bridge between the POWER architecture and the PowerPC architecture, and as a result differs from the PowerPC architecture in some respects. Therefore, a secondary objective of this manual is to describe these differences.

The PowerPC architecture is comprised of the following components:

- PowerPC user instruction set architecture—This includes the base user-level instruction set (excluding a few user-level cache-control instructions), user-level registers, programming model, data types, and addressing modes.
- PowerPC virtual environment architecture—This describes the semantics of the memory model that can be assumed by software processes and includes descriptions of the cache model, cache-control instructions, address aliasing, and other related issues. Implementations that conform to the PowerPC virtual environment architecture also adhere to the PowerPC user instruction set architecture, but may not necessarily adhere to the PowerPC operating environment architecture.
- PowerPC operating environment architecture—This includes the structure of the memory management model, supervisor-level registers, and the exception model. Implementations that conform to the PowerPC operating environment architecture also adhere to the PowerPC user instruction set architecture and the PowerPC virtual environment architecture.

It is beyond the scope of the manual to provide a thorough description of the PowerPC architecture. It must be kept in mind that each PowerPC processor is a unique PowerPC implementation.

For readers of this manual who are concerned about compatibility issues regarding subsequent PowerPC processors, it is critical to read Chapter 1, "Overview," and in particular Appendix H, "Implementation Summary for Programmers," which outlines in a very general manner the components of the PowerPC architecture, and indicates where and how the 601 diverges from the PowerPC definition. Instances where the 601 differs from the PowerPC architecture are noted throughout the manual.

Audience

This manual is intended for system software and hardware developers and applications programmers who want to develop products for the 601 microprocessor and PowerPC processors in general. It is assumed that the reader understands operating systems, microprocessor system design, and the basic principles of RISC processing.

Organization

Following is a summary and a brief description of the major sections of this manual:

- Chapter 1, “Overview,” is useful for readers who want a general understanding of the features and functions of the PowerPC architecture and the 601 processor. This chapter also provides a general description of how the 601 differs from the PowerPC architecture.
- Chapter 2, “Registers and Data Types,” is useful for software engineers who need to understand the PowerPC programming model and the functionality of the registers implemented in the 601. This chapter also describes PowerPC conventions for storing data in memory.
- Chapter 3, “Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary,” provides an overview of the PowerPC addressing modes and a description of the instructions implemented by the 601, including the portion of the PowerPC instruction set and the additional instructions implemented by the 601.

  Specific differences between the 601 implementation and the PowerPC implementation of individual instructions are noted.
- Chapter 4, “Cache and Memory Unit Operation,” provides a discussion of cache timing, look-up process, MESI protocol, and interaction with other units. This chapter contains information that pertains both to the PowerPC virtual environment architecture and to the specific implementation in the 601.
- Chapter 5, “Exceptions,” describes the exception model defined in the PowerPC operating environment architecture and the specific exception model implemented in the 601.
- Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit,” provides descriptions of the MMU, interaction with other units, and address translation. Although this chapter does not provide an in-depth description of both the 64-bit and 32-bit memory management model defined by the PowerPC operating environment architecture, it does note differences between the defined 32-bit PowerPC definition and the 601 memory management implementation.
- Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing,” provides information about latencies, interlocks, special situations, and various conditions to help make programming more efficient. This chapter is of special interest to software engineers and system designers. Because each PowerPC implementation is unique with respect to instruction timing, this chapter primarily contains information specific to the 601.

- Chapter 8, “Signal Descriptions,” provides descriptions of individual signals of the 601.
- Chapter 9, “System Interface Operation,” describes signal timings for various operations. It also provides information for interfacing to the 601.
- Chapter 10, “Instruction Set,” functions as a handbook of the PowerPC instruction set. It provides opcodes, sorted by mnemonic, as well as a more detailed description of each instruction. Instruction descriptions indicate whether an instruction is part of the PowerPC architecture or if it is specific to the 601. Each description indicates any differences in how the 601 implementation differs from the PowerPC definition. The descriptions also indicate the privilege level of each instruction and which execution unit or units executes the instruction.
- Appendix A, “Instruction Set Listings,” lists the superset of PowerPC and 601 processor instructions.
- Appendix B, “POWER Architecture Cross Reference,” describes the relationship between the 601 and the POWER architecture.
- Appendix C, “PowerPC Instructions Not Implemented,” describes the set of PowerPC instructions not implemented in the 601 processor.
- Appendix D, “Classes of Instructions,” describes how instructions are classified from the perspective of the PowerPC architecture.
- Appendix E, “Multiple-Precision Shifts,” describes how multiple-precision shift operations can be programmed.
- Appendix F, “Floating-Point Models,” gives examples of how the floating-point conversion instructions can be used to perform various conversions.
- Appendix G, “Synchronization Programming Examples,” gives examples showing how synchronization instructions can be used to emulate various synchronization primitives and how to provide more complex forms of synchronization.
- Appendix H, “Implementation Summary for Programmers,” is a compilation of the differences between the 601 processor and the PowerPC architecture.
- Appendix I, “Instruction Timing Examples,” shows instruction timings for code sequences, emphasizing situations where stalls may be encountered and showing methods of avoiding stalls where possible.
- This manual also includes a glossary and an index.

In this document, the terms “PowerPC 601 microprocessor” and “601” are used to denote the first microprocessor from the PowerPC architecture family. The PowerPC 601 microprocessors are available from IBM as PPC601 and from Motorola as MPC601.

Additional Reading

Following is a list of additional reading that provides background for the information in this manual:

- John L. Hennessy and David A. Patterson, *Computer Architecture: A Quantitative Approach*, Morgan Kaufmann Publishers, Inc., San Mateo, CA
- *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications*, MPC601EC/D (Motorola order number) and MPR601HSU-01 (IBM order number)
- *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Technical Summary*, MPC601/D (Motorola order number) and MPR601TSU-01 (IBM order number)
- *PowerPC Architecture*, published by International Business Machines Corporation, 52G7487 (order number)

Conventions

This document uses the following notational conventions:

ACTIVE_HIGH	Names for signals that are active high are shown in uppercase text without an overbar.
$\overline{\text{ACTIVE\_LOW}}$	A bar over a signal name indicates that the signal is active low—for example, $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ (address retry) and $\overline{\text{TS}}$ (transfer start). Active-low signals are referred to as asserted (active) when they are low and negated when they are high. Signals that are not active-low, such as AP0–AP3 (address bus parity signals) and TT0–TT4 (transfer type signals) are referred to as asserted when they are high and negated when they are low.
mnemonics	Instruction mnemonics are shown in lowercase bold.
italics	Italics indicate variable command parameters, for example, **bcctr***x*
x'0F'	Hexadecimal numbers
b'0011'	Binary numbers
rA|0	The contents of a specified GPR or the value 0.
REG[FIELD]	Abbreviations or acronyms for registers are shown in uppercase text. Specific bit fields or ranges are shown in brackets.
x	In certain contexts, such as a signal encoding, this indicates a don’t care. For example, if TT0–TT3 are binary encoded b'x001', the state of TT0 is a don’t care.

Acronyms and Abbreviations

Table i contains acronyms and abbreviations that are used in this document.

Table i. Acronyms and Abbreviated Terms

Term	Meaning
ALU	Arithmetic logic unit
ATE	Automatic test equipment
ASR	Address space register
BAT	Block address translation
BIST	Built-in self test
BPU	Branch processing unit
BUC	Bus unit controller
BUID	Bus unit ID
CAR	Cache address register
CMOS	Complementary metal-oxide semiconductor
COP	Common on-chip processor
CR	Condition register
CRTRY	Cache retry queue
CTR	Count register
DABR	Data address breakpoint register
DAE	Data access exception
DAR	Data address register
DBAT	Data BAT
DEC	Decrementer register
DSISR	DAE/source instruction service register
EA	Effective address
EAR	External access register
ECC	Error checking and correction
FPECR	Floating-point exception cause register
FPR	Floating-point register
FPSCR	Floating-point status and control register
FPU	Floating-point unit
GPR	General-purpose register
IABR	Instruction address breakpoint register
IBAT	Instruction BAT
IEEE	Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IQ	Instruction queue

Table i. Acronyms and Abbreviated Terms (Continued)

Term	Meaning
ITLB	Instruction translation lookaside buffer
IU	Integer unit
L2	Secondary cache
LIFO	Last-in-first-out
LR	Link register
LRU	Least recently used
LSB	Least-significant byte
lsb	Least-significant bit
MESI	Modified/exclusive/shared/invalid—cache coherency protocol
MMU	Memory management unit
MQ	MQ register
MSB	Most-significant byte
msb	Most-significant bit
MSR	Machine state register
NaN	Not a number
No-Op	No operation
PID	Processor identification tag
PIR	Processor identification register
POWER	Performance Optimized with Enhanced RISC architecture
PR	Privilege-level bit
PTE	Page table entry
PTEG	Page table entry group
PVR	Processor version register
RAW	Read-after-write
RISC	Reduced instruction set computer
RTC	Real-time clock
RTCL	Real-time clock lower register
RTCU	Real-time clock upper register
RTL	Register transfer language
RWITM	Read with intent to modify
SDR1	Table search description register 1
SLB	Segment lookaside buffer

Table i. Acronyms and Abbreviated Terms (Continued)

Term	Meaning
SPR	Special-purpose register
SPRG*n*	General SPR
SR	Segment register
SRR0	Machine status save/restore register 0
SRR1	Machine status save/restore register 1
TAP	Test access port
TB	Time base register
TLB	Translation lookaside buffer
TTL	Transistor-to-transistor logic
UTLB	Unified translation lookaside buffer
UUT	Unit under test
WAR	Write-after-read
WAW	Write-after-write
WIM	Write-through/cache-inhibited/memory-coherency enforced bits
XATC	Extended address transfer code
XER	Integer exception register

Terminology Conventions

Table ii describes terminology conventions used in this manual.

Table ii. Terminology Conventions

IBM	This Manual
Data storage interrupt (DSI)	Data access exception (DAE)
Direct store segment	I/O controller interface segment
Effective address	Effective or logical address (logical is used in the context of address translation)
Effective segment ID (ESID) (64-bit implementations—not on the 601)	Logical segment ID (LSID) (64-bit implementations—not on the 601)
Extended mnemonics	Simplified mnemonics
Extended Opcode	Secondary opcode
Fixed-point unit (FXU)	Integer unit (IU)
Instruction storage interrupt (ISI)	Instruction access exception (IAE)
Interrupt	Exception
Problem mode (or problem state)	User-level privilege

Table ii. Terminology Conventions (Continued)

IBM	This Manual
Programmable I/O (PIO)	I/O controller interface operation
Real address	Physical address
Real mode address translation	Direct address translation
Relocation	Translation
Special direct store segment	Memory-forced I/O controller interface segment
Storage (noun)	Memory (noun)
Storage (verb)	Access (verb)
Store in	Write back
Store through	Write through

Table iii describes register and bit naming conventions used in this manual.

Table iii. Register and Bit Name Convention

IBM	This Manual
Problem mode bit (MSR[PR])	Privilege level bit (MSR[PR])
Instruction relocate bit (MSR[IR])	Instruction address translation bit (MSR[IT])
Data relocate bit (MSR[DR])	Data address translation bit (MSR[DT])
Interrupt prefix bit (MSR[IP])	Exception prefix bit (MSR[EP])
Recoverable interrupt bit (MSR[RI]) (not on the 601)	Recoverable exception bit (MSR[RE]) (not on the 601)
Problem state protection key (SR[Kp])	User-state protection key (SR[Ku])
DSISR	DSISR acronym redefined as “DAE/Source Instruction Service Register”
SDR1	SDR1 acronym redefined as “Table Search Description Register 1”
Block effective page index (BATx[BEPI])	Block logical page index (BATx[BLPI])
Block real page number (BATx[BRPN])	Physical block number (BATx[PBN])
Block length (BATx[BL])	Block size mask (BATx[BSM])
Real page number (PTE[RPN])	Physical page number (PTE[PPN])

Chapter 1
Overview

This chapter provides an overview of PowerPC™ 601 microprocessor features, including a block diagram showing the major functional components. It also provides an overview of the PowerPC architecture, and information about how the 601 implementation differs from the architectural definitions.

1.1 PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Overview

This section describes the features of the 601, provides a block diagram showing the major functional units, and gives an overview of how the 601 operates.

The 601 is the first implementation of the PowerPC family of reduced instruction set computer (RISC) microprocessors. The 601 implements the 32-bit portion of the PowerPC architecture, which provides 32-bit effective (logical) addresses, integer data types of 8, 16, and 32 bits, and floating-point data types of 32 and 64 bits. For 64-bit PowerPC implementations, the PowerPC architecture provides 64-bit integer data types, 64-bit addressing, and other features required to complete the 64-bit architecture.

The 601 is a superscalar processor capable of issuing and retiring three instructions per clock, one to each of three execution units. Instructions can complete out of order for increased performance; however, the 601 makes execution appear sequential.

The 601 integrates three execution units—an integer unit (IU), a branch processing unit (BPU), and a floating-point unit (FPU). The ability to execute three instructions in parallel and the use of simple instructions with rapid execution times yield high efficiency and throughput for 601-based systems. Most integer instructions execute in one clock cycle. The FPU is pipelined so a single-precision multiply-add instruction can be issued every clock cycle.

The 601 includes an on-chip, 32-Kbyte, eight-way set-associative, physically addressed, unified instruction and data cache and an on-chip memory management unit (MMU). The MMU contains a 256-entry, two-way set-associative, unified translation lookaside buffer (UTLB) and provides support for demand paged virtual memory address translation and variable-sized block translation. Both the UTLB and the cache use least recently used (LRU) replacement algorithms.

The 601 has a 64-bit data bus and a 32-bit address bus. The 601 interface protocol allows multiple masters to compete for system resources through a central external arbiter. Additionally, on-chip snooping logic maintains cache coherency in multiprocessor applications. The 601 supports single-beat and burst data transfers for memory accesses; it also supports both memory-mapped I/O and I/O controller interface addressing.

The 601 uses an advanced, 3.6-V CMOS process technology and maintains full interface compatibility with TTL devices.

1.1.1 601 Features

This section describes details of the 601's implementation of the PowerPC architecture. Major features of the 601 are as follows:

- High-performance, superscalar microprocessor
  - — As many as three instructions in execution per clock (one to each of the three execution units)
  - — Single clock cycle execution for most instructions
  - — Pipelined FPU for all single-precision and most double-precision operations
- Three independent execution units and two register files
  - — BPU featuring static branch prediction
  - — A 32-bit IU
  - — Fully IEEE 754-compliant FPU for both single- and double-precision operations
  - — Thirty-two GPRs for integer operands
  - — Thirty-two FPRs for single- or double-precision operands
- High instruction and data throughput
  - — Zero-cycle branch capability
  - — Programmable static branch prediction on unresolved conditional branches
  - — Instruction unit capable of fetching eight instructions per clock from the cache
  - — An eight-entry instruction queue that provides look-ahead capability
  - — Interlocked pipelines with feed-forwarding that control data dependencies in hardware
  - — Unified 32-Kbyte cache—eight-way set-associative, physically addressed; LRU replacement algorithm
  - — Cache write-back or write-through operation programmable on a per page or per block basis
  - — Memory unit with a two-element read queue and a three-element write queue
  - — Run-time reordering of loads and stores
  - — BPU that performs condition register (CR) look-ahead operations

  - — Address translation facilities for 4-Kbyte page size, variable block size, and 256-Mbyte segment size
  - — A 256-entry, two-way set-associative UTLB
  - — Four-entry BAT array providing 128-Kbyte to 8-Mbyte blocks
  - — Four-entry, first-level ITLB
  - — Hardware table search (caused by UTLB misses) through hashed page tables
  - — 52-bit virtual address; 32-bit physical address
- Facilities for enhanced system performance
  - — Bus speed defined as selectable division of operating frequency
  - — A 64-bit split-transaction external data bus with burst transfers
  - — Support for address pipelining and limited out-of-order bus transactions
  - — Snooped copyback queues for cache block (sector) copyback operations
  - — Bus extensions for I/O controller interface operations
  - — Multiprocessing support features that include the following:
    - – Hardware enforced, four-state cache coherency protocol (MESI)
    - – Separate port into cache tags for bus snooping
- In-system testability and debugging features through boundary-scan capability

1.1.2 Block Diagram

Figure 1-1 provides a block diagram of the 601 that illustrates how the execution units—IU, FPU, and BPU—operate independently and in parallel.

The 601's 32-Kbyte, unified cache tag directory has a port dedicated to snooping bus transactions, preventing interference with processor access to the cache. The 601 also provides address translation and protection facilities, including a UTLB and a BAT array, and a four-entry ITLB that contains the four most recently used instruction address translations for fast access by the instruction unit.

Instruction fetching and issuing is handled in the instruction unit. Translation of addresses for cache or external memory accesses are handled by the memory management unit. Both units are discussed in more detail in Sections 1.1.3, “Instruction Unit,” and 1.1.5, “Memory Management Unit (MMU).”

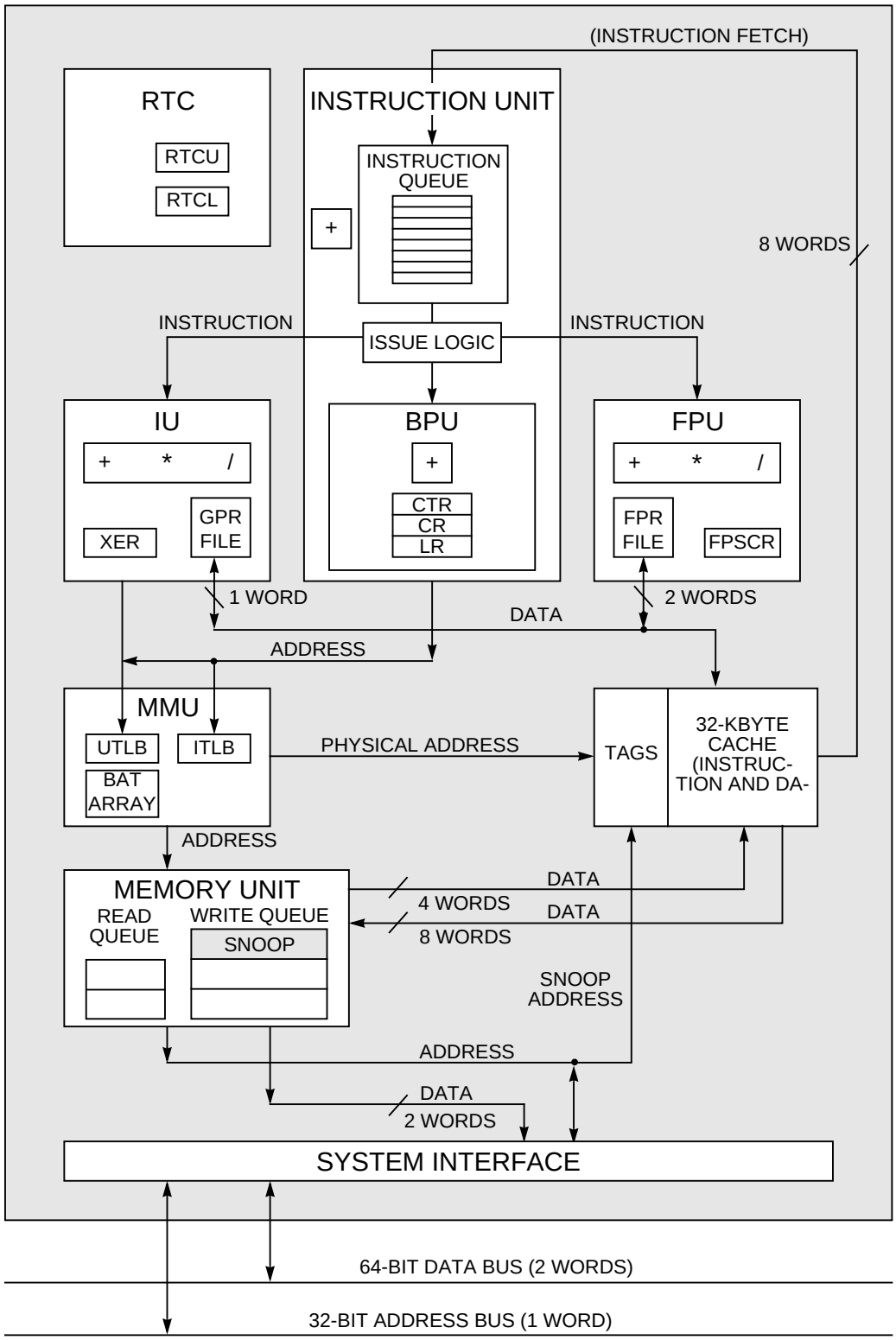


Figure 1-1. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Block Diagram

1.1.3 Instruction Unit

As shown in Figure 1-1, the 601 instruction unit, which contains an instruction queue and the BPU, provides centralized control of instruction flow to the execution units. The instruction unit determines the address of the next instruction to be fetched based on information from a sequential fetcher and the BPU. The IU also enforces pipeline interlocks and controls feed-forwarding.

The sequential fetcher contains a dedicated adder that computes the address of the next sequential instruction based on the address of the last fetch and the number of words accepted into the queue. The BPU searches the bottom half of the instruction queue for a branch instruction and uses static branch prediction on unresolved conditional branches to allow the instruction fetch unit to fetch instructions from a predicted target instruction stream while a conditional branch is evaluated. The BPU also folds out branch instructions for unconditional branches.

Instructions issued beyond a predicted branch do not complete execution until the branch is resolved, preserving the programming model of sequential execution. If any of these instructions are to be executed in the BPU, they are decoded but not issued. FPU and IU instructions are issued and allowed to complete up to the register write-back stage. Write-back is performed when a correctly predicted branch is resolved, and instruction execution continues without interruption along the predicted path.

If branch prediction is incorrect, the instruction fetcher flushes all predicted path instructions and instructions are issued from the correct path.

1.1.3.1 Instruction Queue

The instruction queue, shown in Figure 1-1, holds as many as eight instructions (a cache block) and can be filled from the cache during a single cycle. The instruction fetch can access only one cache sector at a time and will load as many instruction as space in the IQ allows.

The upper half of the instruction queue (Q4–Q7) provides buffering to reduce the frequency of cache accesses. Integer and branch instructions are dispatched to their respective execution units from Q0 through Q3. Q0 functions as the initial decode stage for the IU.

For a more detailed overview of instruction dispatch, see Section 1.3.7, “601 Instruction Timing.”

1.1.4 Independent Execution Units

The PowerPC architecture’s support for independent floating-point, integer, and branch processing execution units allows implementation of processors with out-of-order instruction issue. For example, because branch instructions do not depend on GPRs or FPRs, branches can often be resolved early, eliminating stalls caused by taken branches.

The following sections describe the 601’s three execution units—the BPU, IU, and FPU.

1.1.4.1 Branch Processing Unit (BPU)

The BPU performs condition register (CR) look-ahead operations on conditional branches. The BPU looks through the bottom half of the instruction queue for a conditional branch instruction and attempts to resolve it early, achieving the effect of a zero-cycle branch in many cases.

The BPU uses a bit in the instruction encoding to predict the direction of the conditional branch. Therefore, when an unresolved conditional branch instruction is encountered, the 601 fetches instructions from the predicted target stream until the conditional branch is resolved.

The BPU contains an adder to compute branch target addresses and three special-purpose, user-control registers—the link register (LR), the count register (CTR), and the CR. The BPU calculates the return pointer for subroutine calls and saves it into the LR for certain types of branch instructions. The LR also contains the branch target address for the Branch Conditional to Link Register (**bclr***x*) instruction. The CTR contains the branch target address for the Branch Conditional to Count Register (**bcctr***x*) instruction. The contents of the LR and CTR can be copied to or from any GPR. Because the BPU uses dedicated registers rather than general-purpose or floating-point registers, execution of branch instructions is largely independent from execution of integer and floating-point instructions.

1.1.4.2 Integer Unit (IU)

The IU executes all integer instructions and executes floating-point memory accesses in concert with the FPU. The IU executes one integer instruction at a time, performing computations with its arithmetic logic unit (ALU), multiplier, divider, integer exception register (XER), and the general-purpose register file. Most integer instructions are single-cycle instructions.

The IU interfaces with the cache and MMU for all instructions that access memory. Addresses are formed by adding the source 1 register operand specified by the instruction (or zero) to either a source 2 register operand or to a 16-bit, immediate value embedded in the instruction.

Load and store instructions are issued and translated in program order; however, the accesses can occur out of order. Synchronizing instructions are provided to enforce strict ordering.

Load and store instructions are considered to have completed execution with respect to precise exceptions after the address is translated. If the address for a load or store instruction hits in the UTLB or BAT array and it is aligned, the instruction execution (that is, calculation of the address) takes one clock cycle, allowing back-to-back issue of load and store instructions. The time required to perform the actual load or store operation varies depending on whether the operation involves the cache, system memory, or an I/O device.

1.1.4.3 Floating-Point Unit (FPU)

The FPU contains a single-precision multiply-add array, the floating-point status and control register (FPSCR), and thirty-two 64-bit FPRs. The multiply-add array allows the 601 to efficiently implement floating-point operations such as multiply, add, divide, and multiply-add. The FPU is pipelined so that most single-precision instructions and many double-precision instructions can be issued back-to-back. The FPU contains two additional instruction queues. These queues allow floating-point instructions to be issued from the instruction queue even if the FPU is busy, making instructions available for issue to the other execution units.

Like the BPU, the FPU can access instructions from the bottom half of the instruction queue (Q3–Q0), which permits floating-point instructions that do not depend on unexecuted instructions to be issued early to the FPU.

The 601 supports all IEEE 754 floating-point data types (normalized, denormalized, NaN, zero, and infinity) in hardware, eliminating the latency incurred by software exception routines.

1.1.5 Memory Management Unit (MMU)

The 601's MMU supports up to 4 Petabytes (2^{52}) of virtual memory and 4 Gigabytes (2^{32}) of physical memory. The MMU also controls access privileges for these spaces on block and page granularities. Referenced and changed status are maintained by the processor for each page to assist implementation of a demand-paged virtual memory system.

The instruction unit generates all instruction addresses; these addresses are both for sequential instruction fetches and addresses that correspond to a change of program flow. The integer unit generates addresses for data accesses (both for memory and the I/O controller interface).

After an address is generated, the upper order bits of the logical (effective) address are translated by the MMU into physical address bits. Simultaneously, the lower order address bits (that are untranslated and therefore considered both logical and physical), are directed to the on-chip cache where they form the index into the eight-way set-associative tag array. After translating the address, the MMU passes the higher-order bits of the physical address to the cache, and the cache lookup completes. For cache-inhibited accesses or accesses that miss in the cache, the untranslated lower order address bits are concatenated with the translated higher-order address bits; the resulting 32-bit physical address is then used by the memory unit and the system interface, which accesses external memory.

The MMU also directs the address translation and enforces the protection hierarchy programmed by the operating system in relation to the supervisor/user privilege level of the access and in relation to whether the access is a load or store.

For instruction accesses, the MMU first performs a lookup in the four entries of the ITLB for both block- and page-based physical address translation. Instruction accesses that miss in the ITLB and all data accesses cause a lookup in the UTLB and BAT array for the

physical address translation. In most cases, the physical address translation resides in one of the TLBs and the physical address bits are readily available to the on-chip cache. In the case where the physical address translation misses in the TLBs, the 601 automatically performs a search of the translation tables in memory using the information in the table search description register 1 (SDR1) and the corresponding segment register.

Memory management in the 601 is described in more detail in Section 1.3.6.2, “601 Memory Management.”

1.1.6 Cache Unit

The PowerPC 601 microprocessor contains a 32-Kbyte, eight-way set associative, unified (instruction and data) cache. The cache line size is 64 bytes, divided into two eight-word sectors, each of which can be snooped, loaded, cast-out, or invalidated independently. The cache is designed to adhere to a write-back policy, but the 601 allows control of cacheability, write policy, and memory coherency at the page and block level. The cache uses a least recently used (LRU) replacement policy.

As shown in Figure 1-1, the cache provides an eight-word interface to the instruction fetcher and load/store unit. The surrounding logic selects, organizes, and forwards the requested information to the requesting unit. Write operations to the cache can be performed on a byte basis, and a complete read-modify-write operation to the cache can occur in each cycle.

The instruction unit provides the cache with the address of the next instruction to be fetched. In the case of a cache hit, the cache returns the instruction and as many of the instructions following it as can be placed in the eight-word instruction queue up to the cache sector boundary. If the queue is empty, as many as eight words (an entire sector) can be loaded into the queue in parallel.

The cache tag directory has one address port dedicated to instruction fetch and load/store accesses and one dedicated to snooping transactions on the system interface. Therefore, snooping does not require additional clock cycles unless a snoop hit that requires a cache status update occurs.

1.1.7 Memory Unit

The 601’s memory unit contains read and write queues that buffer operations between the external interface and the cache. These operations are comprised of operations resulting from load and store instructions that are cache misses and read and write operations required to maintain cache coherency, table search, and other operations. The memory unit also handles address-only operations and cache-inhibited loads and stores. As shown in Figure 1-2, the read queue contains two elements and the write queue contains three elements. Each element of the write queue can contain as many as eight words (one sector) of data. One element of the write queue, marked snoop in Figure 1-2, is dedicated to writing cache sectors to system memory after a modified sector is hit by a snoop from another processor or snooping device on the system bus. The use of the write queue guarantees a

high priority operation that ensures a deterministic response behavior when snooping hits a modified sector.

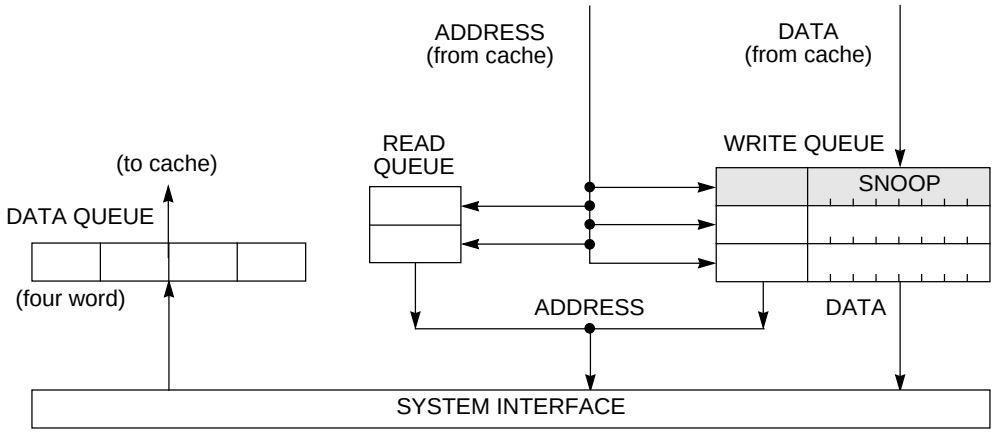


Figure 1-2. Memory Unit

The other two elements in the write queue are used for store operations and writing back modified sectors that have been deallocated by updating the queue; that is, when a cache location is full, the least-recently used cache sector is deallocated by first being copied into the write queue and from there to system memory. Note that snooping can occur after a sector has been pushed out into the write queue and before the data has been written to system memory. Therefore, to maintain a coherent memory, the write queue elements are compared to snooped addresses in the same way as the cache tags. If a snoop hits a write queue element, the data is first stored in system memory before it can be loaded into the cache of the snooping bus master. Coherency checking between the cache and the write queue prevents dependency conflicts. Single-beat writes in the write queue are not snooped; coherency is ensured through the use of special cache operations that accompany the single-beat write operation on the bus.

Execution of a load or store instruction is considered complete when the associated address translation completes, guaranteeing that the instruction has completed to the point where it is known that it will not generate an internal exception. However, after address translation is complete, a read or write operation can still generate an external exception.

Load and store instructions are always issued and translated in program order with respect to other load and store instructions. However, a load or store operation that hits in the cache can complete ahead of those that miss in the cache; additionally, loads and stores that miss the cache can be reordered as they arbitrate for the system bus.

If a load or store misses in the cache, the operation is managed by the memory unit which prioritizes accesses to the system bus. Read requests, such as loads, RWITMs, and instruction fetches have priority over single-beat write operations. The priorities for accessing the system bus are listed in Section 4.10.2, “Memory Unit Queuing Priorities.”

The 601 ensures memory consistency by comparing target addresses and prohibiting instructions from completing out of order if an address matches. Load and store operations can be forced to execute in strict program order.

1.1.8 System Interface

Because the cache on the 601 is an on-chip, write-back primary cache, the predominant type of transaction for most applications is burst-read memory operations, followed by burst-write memory operations, I/O controller interface operations, and single-beat (noncacheable or write-through) memory read and write operations. Additionally, there can be address-only operations, variants of the burst and single-beat operations (global memory operations that are snooped, and atomic memory operations, for example), and address retry activity (for example, when a snooped read access hits a modified line in the cache).

Memory accesses can occur in single-beat (1–8 bytes) and four-beat burst (32 bytes) data transfers. The address and data buses are independent for memory accesses to support pipelining and split transactions. The 601 can pipeline as many as two transactions and has limited support for out-of-order split-bus transactions.

Access to the system interface is granted through an external arbitration mechanism that allows devices to compete for bus mastership. This arbitration mechanism is flexible, allowing the 601 to be integrated into systems that implement various fairness and bus parking procedures to avoid arbitration overhead. Additional multiprocessor support is provided through coherency mechanisms that provide snooping, external control of the on-chip cache and TLB, and support for a secondary cache. Multiprocessor software support is provided through the use of atomic memory operations.

Typically, memory accesses are weakly ordered—sequences of operations, including load/store string and multiple instructions, do not necessarily complete in the order they begin—maximizing the efficiency of the bus without sacrificing coherency of the data. The 601 allows read operations to precede store operations (except when a dependency exists, of course). In addition, the 601 can be configured to reorder high priority write operations ahead of lower priority store operations. Because the processor can dynamically optimize run-time ordering of load/store traffic, overall performance is improved.

1.2 Levels of the PowerPC Architecture

The PowerPC architecture consists of the following layers, and adherence to the PowerPC architecture can be measured in terms of which of the following levels of the architecture is implemented:

- PowerPC user instruction set architecture—Defines the base user-level instruction set, user-level registers, data types, floating-point exception model, memory models for a uniprocessor environment, and programming model for uniprocessor environment.

- PowerPC virtual environment architecture—Describes the memory model for a multiprocessor environment, defines cache control instructions, and describes other aspects of virtual environments. Implementations that conform to the PowerPC virtual environment architecture also adhere to the PowerPC user instruction set architecture, but may not necessarily adhere to the PowerPC operating environment architecture.
- PowerPC operating environment architecture—Defines the memory management model, supervisor-level registers, synchronization requirements, and the exception model. Implementations that conform to the PowerPC operating environment architecture also adhere to the PowerPC user instruction set architecture and the PowerPC virtual environment architecture definition.

Note that while the 601 is said to adhere to the PowerPC architecture at all three levels, it diverges in aspects of its implementation to a greater extent than should be expected of subsequent PowerPC processors. Many of the differences result from the fact that the 601 design provides compatibility with an existing architecture standard (POWER), while providing a reliable platform for hardware and software development compatible with subsequent PowerPC processors.

Note that except for the POWER instructions and the RTC implementation, the differences between the 601 and the PowerPC architecture are primarily differences in the operating environment architecture.

The PowerPC architecture allows a wide range of designs for such features as cache and system interface implementations.

1.3 The 601 as a PowerPC Implementation

The PowerPC architecture is derived from the IBM Performance Optimized with Enhanced RISC (POWER) architecture. The PowerPC architecture shares the benefits of the POWER architecture optimized for single-chip implementations. The architecture design facilitates parallel instruction execution and is scalable to take advantage of future technological gains. For compatibility, the 601 also implements instructions from the POWER user programming model that are not part of the PowerPC definition.

This section describes the PowerPC architecture in general, noting where the 601 differs. The organization of this section follows the sequence of the chapters in this manual as follows:

- Features—Section 1.3.1, “Features,” describes general features that the 601 shares with the PowerPC family of microprocessors. It does not list PowerPC features not implemented in the 601.
- Registers and programming model—Section 1.3.2, “Registers and Programming Model,” describes the registers for the operating environment architecture common among PowerPC processors and describes the programming model. It also describes differences in how the registers are used in the 601 and describes the additional registers that are unique to the 601.
- Instruction set and addressing modes—Section 1.3.3, “Instruction Set and Addressing Modes,” describes the PowerPC instruction set and addressing modes for the PowerPC operating environment architecture. It defines the PowerPC instructions implemented in the 601 as well as additional instructions implemented in the 601 but not defined in the PowerPC architecture.
- Cache implementation—Section 1.3.4, “Cache Implementation,” describes the cache model that is defined generally for PowerPC processors by the virtual environment architecture. It also provides specific details about the 601 cache implementation.
- Exception model—Section 1.3.5, “Exception Model,” describes the exception model of the PowerPC operating environment architecture and the differences in the 601 exception model.
- Memory management—Section 1.3.6, “Memory Management,” describes generally the conventions for memory management among the PowerPC processors. This section also describes the general differences between the 601 and the 32-bit PowerPC memory management specification.
- Instruction timing—Section 1.3.7, “601 Instruction Timing,” provides a general description of the instruction timing provided by the superscalar, parallel execution supported by the PowerPC architecture.
- System interface—Section 1.3.8, “System Interface,” describes the signals implemented on the 601.

1.3.1 Features

The 601 is a high-performance, superscalar PowerPC implementation. The PowerPC architecture allows optimizing compilers to schedule instructions to maximize performance through efficient use of the PowerPC instruction set and register model. The multiple, independent execution units allow compilers to maximize parallelism and instruction

throughput. Compilers that take advantage of the flexibility of the PowerPC architecture can additionally optimize system performance of the PowerPC processors.

The 601 implements the PowerPC architecture, with the extensions and variances listed in Appendix H, “Implementation Summary for Programmers.”

Specific features of the 601 are listed in Section 1.1.1, “601 Features.”

1.3.2 Registers and Programming Model

The following subsections describe the general features of the PowerPC registers and programming model and of the specific 601 implementation, respectively.

1.3.2.1 PowerPC Registers and Programming Model

The PowerPC architecture defines register-to-register operations for most computational instructions. Source operands for these instructions are accessed from the registers or are provided as immediate values embedded in the instruction opcode. The three-register instruction format allows specification of a target register distinct from the two source operands. Load and store instructions transfer data between registers and memory.

PowerPC processors have two levels of privilege—supervisor mode of operation (typically used by the operating environment) and one that corresponds to the user mode of operation (used by the application software). The programming models incorporate 32 GPRs, 32 FPRs, special-purpose registers (SPRs), and several miscellaneous registers. Note that there are several registers that are part of the PowerPC architecture that are not implemented in the 601; for example, the time base registers are not implemented in the 601. Likewise, each PowerPC implementation has its own unique set of hardware implementation (HID) registers, which are implementation-specific.

This division allows the operating system to control the application environment (providing virtual memory and protecting operating-system and critical machine resources). Instructions that control the state of the processor, the address translation mechanism, and supervisor registers can be executed only when the processor is operating in supervisor mode.

The following sections summarize the PowerPC registers that are implemented in the 601 processor. Chapter 2, “Register Models and Data Types,” provides more detailed information about the registers implemented in the 601.

1.3.2.1.1 General-Purpose Registers (GPRs)

The PowerPC architecture defines 32 user-level, general-purpose registers (GPRs). These registers are either 32 bits wide in 32-bit PowerPC implementations and 64 bits wide in 64-bit PowerPC implementations. The GPRs serve as the data source or destination for all integer instructions.

1.3.2.1.2 Floating-Point Registers (FPRs)

The PowerPC architecture also defines 32 user-level 64-bit floating-point registers (FPRs). The FPRs serve as the data source or destination for floating-point instructions. These registers can contain data objects of either single- or double-precision floating-point formats.

1.3.2.1.3 Condition Register (CR)

The CR is a 32-bit user-level register that consists of eight four-bit fields that reflect the results of certain operations, such as move, integer and floating-point compare, arithmetic, and logical instructions, and provide a mechanism for testing and branching.

1.3.2.1.4 Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR)

The floating-point status and control register (FPSCR) is a user-level register that contains all exception signal bits, exception summary bits, exception enable bits, and rounding control bits needed for compliance with the IEEE 754 standard.

1.3.2.1.5 Machine State Register (MSR)

The machine state register (MSR) is a supervisor-level register that defines the state of the processor. The contents of this register is saved when an exception is taken and restored when the exception handling completes. The 601 implements the MSR as a 32-bit register; 64-bit PowerPC processors implement a 64-bit MSR.

1.3.2.1.6 Segment Registers (SRs)

For memory management, 32-bit PowerPC implementations implement sixteen 32-bit segment registers (SRs). Figure 2-12 shows the format of a segment register when the T bit is cleared and Figure 2-13 shows the layout when the T bit (SR[0]) is set. The fields in the segment register are interpreted differently depending on the value of bit 0.

1.3.2.1.7 Special-Purpose Registers (SPRs)

The PowerPC operating environment architecture defines numerous special-purpose registers that serve a variety of functions, such as providing controls, indicating status, configuring the processor, and performing special operations. Some SPRs are accessed implicitly as part of executing certain instructions. All SPRs can be accessed by using the Move to/from Special Purpose Register instructions, **mtspr** and **mfspr**.

In the 601, all SPRs are 32 bits wide.

1.3.2.1.8 User-Level SPRs

The following 601 SPRs are accessible by user-level software:

- Link register (LR)—The link register can be used to provide the branch target address and to hold the return address after branch and link instructions. The LR is 32 bits wide in 32-bit implementations.
- Count register (CTR)—The CTR is decremented and tested automatically as a result of branch-and-count instructions. The CTR is 32 bits wide in 32-bit implementations.

- Integer exception register (XER)—The 32-bit XER contains the integer carry and overflow bits and two fields for the Load String and Compare Byte Indexed (**lscbx**) instruction (a POWER instruction implemented in the 601 but not defined by the PowerPC architecture).

1.3.2.1.9 Supervisor-Level SPRs

The 601 also contains SPRs that can be accessed only by supervisor-level software. These registers consist of the following:

- The 32-bit data access exception (DAE)/source instruction service register (DSISR) defines the cause of data access and alignment exceptions.
- The data address register (DAR) is a 32-bit register that holds the address of an access after an alignment or data access exception.
- Decrementer register (DEC) is a 32-bit decrementing counter that provides a mechanism for causing a decrementer exception after a programmable delay. PowerPC architecture defines that the DEC frequency be provided as a subdivision of the processor clock frequency; however, the 601 implements a separate clock input that serves both the DEC and the RTC facilities.
- The 32-bit table search description register 1(SDR1) specifies the page table format used in logical-to-physical address translation for pages.
- The machine status save/restore register 0 (SRR0) is a 32-bit register that is used by the 601 for saving the address of the instruction that caused the exception, and the address to return to when a Return from Interrupt (**rfi**) instruction is executed.
- The machine status save/restore register 1 (SRR1) is a 32-bit register used to save machine status on exceptions and to restore machine status when an **rfi** instruction is executed.
- General SPRs, SPRG0–SPRG3, are 32-bit registers provided for operating system use.
- The external access register (EAR) is a 32-bit register that controls access to the external control facility through the External Control Input Word Indexed (**eciwx**) and External Control Output Word Indexed (**ecowx**) instructions.
- The processor version register (PVR) is a 32-bit, read-only register that identifies the version (model) and revision level of the PowerPC processor.
- Block address translation (BAT) registers—The PowerPC architecture defines 16 BAT registers, divided into four pairs of data BATs (DBATs) and four pairs of instruction BATs (IBATs). The 601 includes four pairs of unified BATs (BAT0U–BAT3U and BAT0L–BAT3L). See Figure 1-3 for a list of the SPR numbers for the BAT registers. Figure 2-23 and Figure 2-24 show the format of the upper and lower BAT registers. Note that the format for the 601's implementation of the BAT registers differs from the PowerPC architecture definition.

1.3.2.2 Additional Registers in the 601

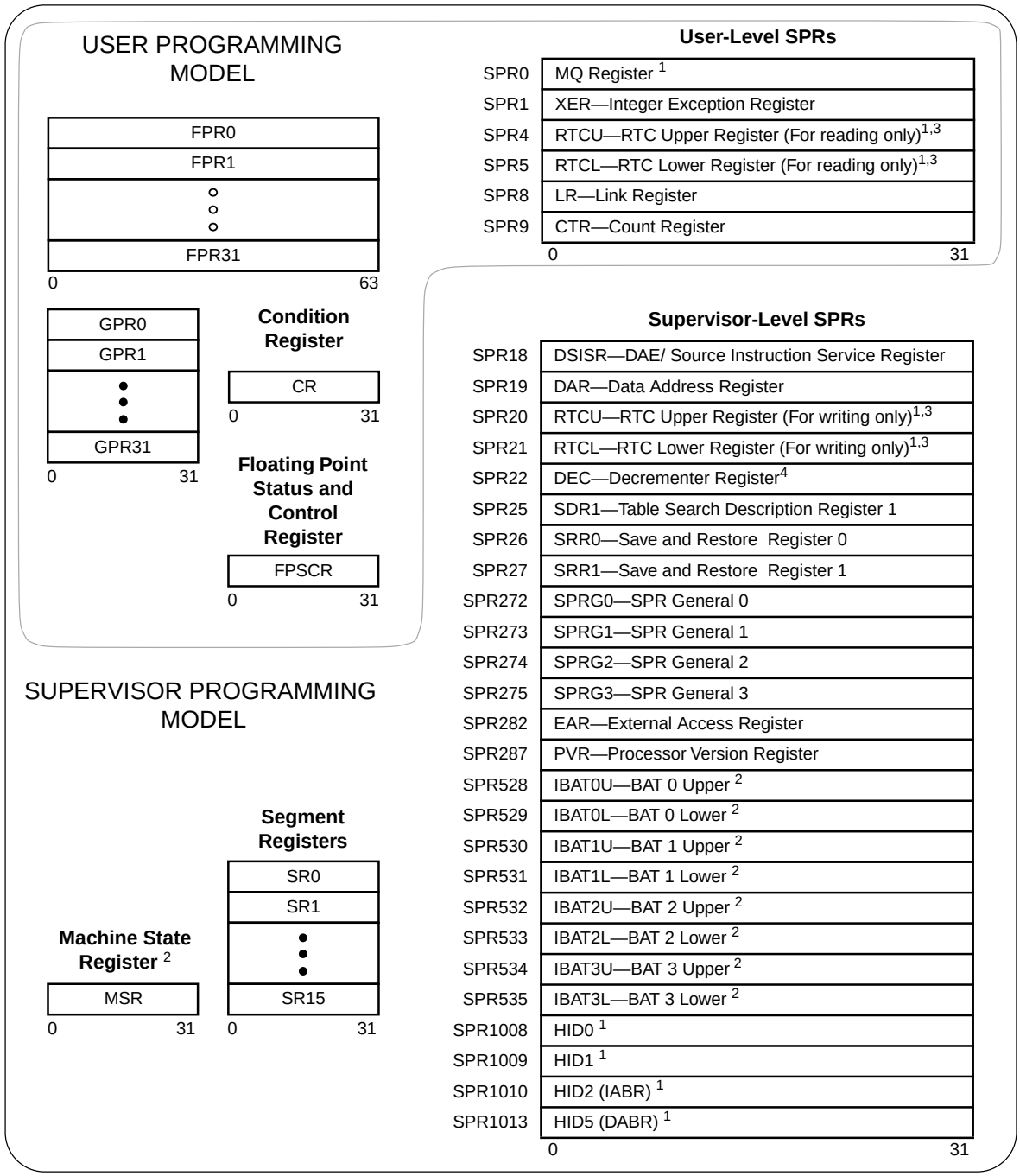
During normal execution, a program can access the registers, shown in Figure 1-3, depending on the program's access privilege (supervisor or user, determined by the privilege-level (PR) bit in the machine state register (MSR)). Note that registers such as the general-purpose registers (GPRs) and floating-point registers (FPRs) are accessed through operands that are part of the instructions. Access to registers can be explicit (that is, through the use of specific instructions for that purpose such as Move to Special-Purpose Register (**mtspr**) and Move from Special-Purpose Register (**mfspr**) instructions) or implicit as the part of the execution of an instruction. Some registers are accessed both explicitly and implicitly.

The numbers to the left of the SPRs indicate the number that is used in the syntax of the instruction operands to access the register.

Figure 1-3 shows all the 601 registers and includes the following registers that are not part of the PowerPC architecture:

- Real-time clock (RTC) registers—RTCU and RTCL (RTC upper and RTC lower). The registers can be read from by user-level software, but can be written to only by supervisor-level software. As shown in Figure 1-3, the SPR numbers for the RTC registers depend on the type of access used. For more information, see Section 2.2.5.3, "Real-Time Clock (RTC) Registers (User-Level)."
- MQ register (MQ). The MQ register is a 601-specific, 32-bit register used as a register extension to accommodate the product for the multiply instructions and the dividend for the divide instructions. It is also used as an operand of long rotate and shift instructions. This register, and the instructions that require it, is provided for compatibility with POWER architecture, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. For more information, see Section 2.2.5.1, "MQ Register (MQ)." The MQ register is typically accessed implicitly as part of executing a computational instruction.
- Block-address translation (BAT) registers. The 601 includes eight block-address translation registers (BATs), consisting of four pairs of BATs (IBAT0U–IBAT3U and IBAT0L–IBAT3L). See Figure 1-3 for a list of the SPR numbers for the BAT registers. Figure 2-23 and Figure 2-24 show the formats of the upper and lower BAT registers. Note that the PowerPC architecture has twice as many BAT registers as the 601.
- Hardware implementation registers (HID0–HID2, HID5, and HID15). These registers are provided primarily for debugging. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.13.1, "Checkstop Sources and Enables Register—HID0" through Section 2.3.3.13.5, "Processor Identification Register (PIR)—HID15." HID15 holds the four-bit processor identification tag (PID) that is useful for differentiating processors in multiprocessor system designs. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.13.5, "Processor Identification Register (PIR)—HID15." Note that while it is not guaranteed that the implementation of HID registers is consistent among PowerPC

processors, other processors may be designed with similar or identical HID registers.



[1] 601-only registers. These registers are not necessarily supported by other PowerPC processors.
[2] These registers may be implemented differently on other PowerPC processors. The PowerPC architecture defines two sets of BAT registers—eight IBATs and eight DBATs. The 601 implements the IBATs and treats them as unified BATs.
[3] RTCU and RTCL registers can be written only in supervisor mode, in which case different SPR numbers are used.
[4] DEC register can be read by user programs by specifying SPR6 in the **mfspr** instruction (for POWER compatibility).

Figure 1-3. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Programming Model—Registers

1.3.3 Instruction Set and Addressing Modes

The following subsections describe the PowerPC instruction set and addressing modes in general. Differences in the 601's instruction set are described in Section 1.3.3.2, "601 Instruction Set."

1.3.3.1 PowerPC Instruction Set and Addressing Modes

All PowerPC instructions are encoded as single-word (32-bit) opcodes. Instruction formats are consistent among all instruction types, permitting efficient decoding to occur in parallel with operand accesses. This fixed instruction length and consistent format greatly simplifies instruction pipelining.

1.3.3.1.1 PowerPC Instruction Set

The PowerPC instructions are divided into the following categories:

- Integer instructions—These include computational and logical instructions.
  - — Integer arithmetic instructions
  - — Integer compare instructions
  - — Integer logical instructions
  - — Integer rotate and shift instructions
- Floating-point instructions—These include floating-point computational instructions, as well as instructions that affect the floating-point status and control register (FPSCR).
  - — Floating-point arithmetic instructions
  - — Floating-point multiply/add instructions
  - — Floating-point rounding and conversion instructions
  - — Floating-point compare instructions
  - — Floating-point status and control instructions
- Load/store instructions—These include integer and floating-point load and store instructions.
  - — Integer load and store instructions
  - — Integer load and store multiple instructions
  - — Floating-point load and store
  - — Floating-point move instructions
  - — Primitives used to construct atomic memory operations (**lwarx** and **stwcx**. instructions)
- Flow control instructions—These include branching instructions, condition register logical instructions, trap instructions, and other instructions that affect the instruction flow.
  - — Branch and trap instructions
  - — Condition register logical instructions

- Processor control instructions—These instructions are used for synchronizing memory accesses and management of caches, UTLBs, and the segment registers.
  - — Move to/from special purpose register instructions
  - — Move to/from MSR
  - — Synchronize
  - — Instruction synchronize
  - — TLB invalidate
- Memory control instructions—These instructions provide control of caches, TLBs, and segment registers.
  - — Supervisor-level cache management instructions
  - — User-level cache instructions
  - — Segment register manipulation instructions
  - — Translation lookaside buffer management instructions

Note that this grouping of the instructions does not indicate which execution unit executes a particular instruction or group of instructions. This information, which is useful in taking full advantage of superscalar parallel instruction execution, is provided in Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing,” and Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”

Integer instructions operate on byte, half-word, and word operands. Floating-point instructions operate on single-precision (one word) and double-precision (one double word) floating-point operands. The PowerPC architecture uses instructions that are four bytes long and word-aligned. It provides for byte, half-word, and word operand loads and stores between memory and a set of 32 general-purpose registers (GPRs). It also provides for word and double-word operand loads and stores between memory and a set of 32 floating-point registers (FPRs).

Computational instructions do not modify memory. To use a memory operand in a computation and then modify the same or another memory location, the memory contents must be loaded into a register, modified, and then written back to the target location with distinct instructions.

PowerPC processors follow the program flow when they are in the normal execution state. However, the flow of instructions can be interrupted directly by the execution of an instruction or by an asynchronous event. Either kind of exception may cause one of several components of the system software to be invoked.

1.3.3.1.2 Calculating Effective Addresses

The effective address (EA) is the 32-bit address computed by the processor when executing a memory access or branch instruction or when fetching the next sequential instruction.

The PowerPC architecture supports two simple memory addressing modes:

- EA = (**r**A|0) + offset (including offset = 0) (register indirect with immediate index)
- EA = (**r**A|0) + **r**B (register indirect with index)

These simple addressing modes allow efficient address generation for memory accesses. Calculation of the effective address for aligned transfers occurs in a single clock cycle.

For a memory access instruction, if the sum of the effective address and the operand length exceeds the maximum effective address, the storage operand is considered to wrap around from the maximum effective address to effective address 0.

Effective address computations for both data and instruction accesses use 32-bit unsigned binary arithmetic. A carry from bit 0 is ignored in 32-bit implementations.

1.3.3.2 601 Instruction Set

The 601 instruction set is defined as follows:

- The 601 implements the 32-bit PowerPC architecture instructions except as indicated in Appendix C, “PowerPC Instructions Not Implemented.” Otherwise, all instructions not implemented in the 601 are defined as optional in the PowerPC architecture.
- The 601 supports a number of POWER instructions that are otherwise not implemented in the PowerPC architecture. These are listed in Appendix B, “POWER Architecture Cross Reference.” Individual instructions are described in Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”
- The 601 implements the External Control Input Word Indexed (**eciwx**) and External Control Output Word Indexed (**ecowx**) instructions, which are optional in the PowerPC architecture definition.
- Several of the instructions implemented in the 601 function somewhat differently than they are defined in the PowerPC architecture. These differences typically stem from design differences; for instance, the PowerPC architecture defines several cache control instructions specific to separate instruction and data cache designs.

  When executed on the 601, such instructions may provide a subset of the functions of the instruction or they may be no-ops.

For a list of all PowerPC instructions and all 601-specific instructions, see Appendix A, “Instruction Set Listings.” Chapter 10, “Instruction Set,” describes each instruction, indicating whether an instruction is 601-specific and describing any differences in the implementation on the 601.

1.3.4 Cache Implementation

The following subsections describe the PowerPC architecture’s treatment of cache in general, and the 601-specific implementation, respectively.

1.3.4.1 PowerPC Cache Characteristics

The PowerPC architecture does not define hardware aspects of cache implementations. For example, some PowerPC processors may have separate instruction and data caches (Harvard architecture), while others, such as the 601, implement a unified cache.

PowerPC implementations can control the following memory access modes on a page or block basis:

- Write-back/write-through mode
- Cache-inhibited mode
- Memory coherency

Note that in the 601 processor, a block is defined as an eight-word sector. The PowerPC virtual environment architecture defines cache management instructions that provide a means by which the application programmer can affect the cache contents.

1.3.4.2 601 Cache Implementation

The 601 has a 32-Kbyte, eight-way set-associative unified (instruction and data) cache. The cache is physically addressed and can operate in either write-back or write-through mode as specified by the PowerPC architecture.

The cache is configured as eight sets of 64 lines. Each line consists of two sectors, four state bits (two per sector), several replacement control bits, and an address tag. The two state bits implement the four-state MESI (modified-exclusive-shared-invalid) protocol. Each sector contains eight 32-bit words. Note that the PowerPC architecture defines the term block as the cacheable unit. For the 601 processor, the block is a sector. A block diagram of the cache organization is shown in Figure 1-4.

Each cache line contains 16 contiguous words from memory that are loaded from a 16-word boundary (that is, bits A26–A31 of the logical addresses are zero); thus, a cache line never crosses a page boundary. Misaligned accesses across a page boundary can incur a performance penalty.

Cache reload operations are always performed on a sector basis (that is, the cache is snooped and updated and coherency is maintained on a per-sector basis). However, if the other sector in the line is marked invalid, an optional, low-priority update of that sector is attempted after the sector that contained the critical word is filled. The ability to attempt the other sector update can be disabled by the system software.

External bus transactions that load instructions or data into the cache always transfer the missed quad word first, regardless of its location in a cache sector; then the rest of the cache sector is filled. As the missed quad word is loaded into the cache, it is simultaneously forwarded to the appropriate execution unit so instruction execution resumes as quickly as possible.

To ensure coherency among caches in a multiprocessor (or multiple caching-device) implementation, the 601 implements the MESI protocol. MESI stands for modified/exclusive/shared/invalid. These four states indicate the state of the cache block as follows:

- Modified—The cache block is modified with respect to system memory; that is, data for this address is valid only in the cache and not in system memory.
- Exclusive—This cache block holds valid data that is identical to the data at this address in system memory. No other cache has this data.
- Shared—This cache block holds valid data that is identical to this address in system memory and at least one other caching device.
- Invalid—This cache block does not hold valid data.

Cache coherency is enforced by on-chip hardware bus snooping logic. Since the cache tag directory has a separate port dedicated to snooping bus transactions, bus snooping traffic does not interfere with processor access to the cache unless a snoop hit occurs.

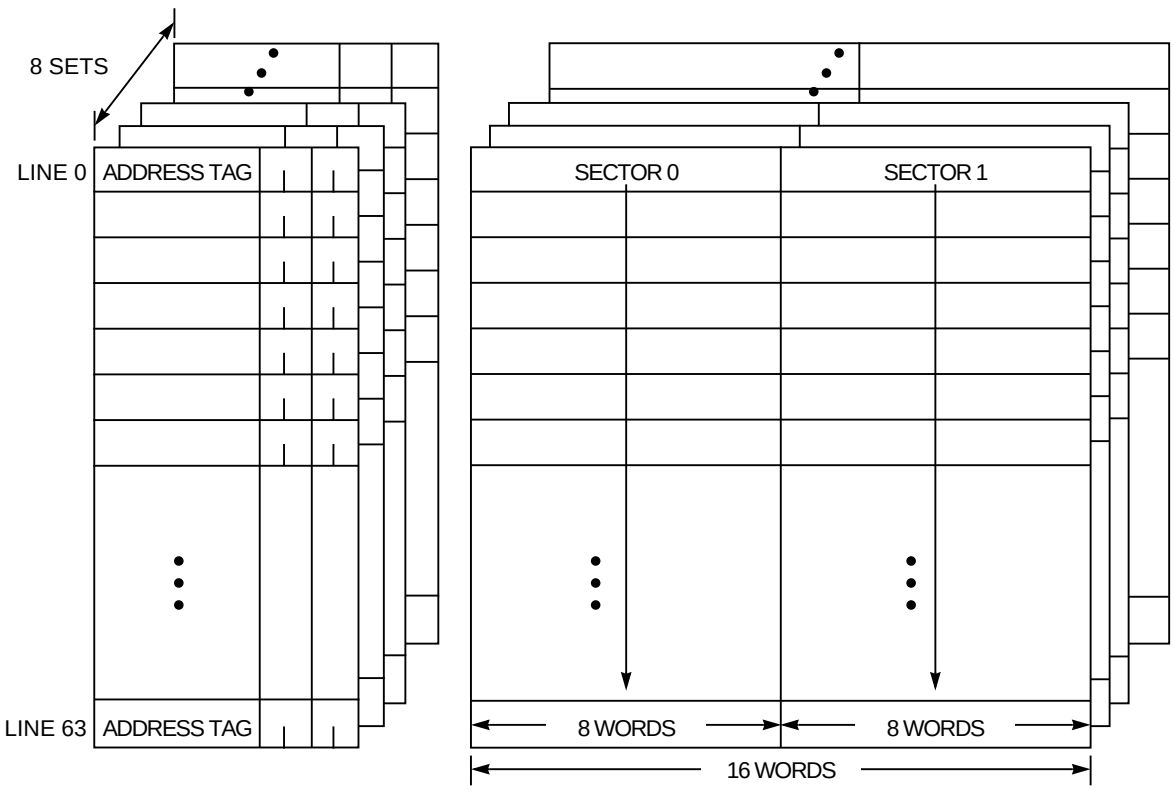


Figure 1-4. Cache Unit Organization

1.3.5 Exception Model

The following subsections describe the PowerPC exception model and the 601 implementation, respectively.

1.3.5.1 PowerPC Exception Model

The PowerPC exception mechanism allows the processor to change to supervisor state as a result of external signals, errors, or unusual conditions arising in the execution of instructions. When exceptions occur, information about the state of the processor is saved to certain registers and the processor begins execution at an address (exception vector) predetermined for each exception. The exception handler at the specified vector is then processed with the processor in supervisor mode. The PowerPC exception model is described in detail in Chapter 5, “Exceptions.”

Although multiple exception conditions can map to a single exception vector, a more specific condition may be determined by examining a register associated with the exception—for example, the DAE/source instruction service register (DSISR) and the floating-point status and control register (FPSCR). Additionally, some exception conditions can be explicitly enabled or disabled by software.

The PowerPC architecture requires that exceptions be handled in program order; therefore, although a particular implementation may recognize exception conditions out of order, they are presented strictly in order. When an instruction-caused exception is recognized, any unexecuted instructions that appear earlier in the instruction stream, including any that have not yet entered the execute state, are required to complete before the exception is taken. Any exceptions caused by those instructions are handled first. Likewise, exceptions that are asynchronous and precise are recognized when they occur, but are not handled until all instructions currently in the execute stage successfully complete execution and report their results.

Unless a catastrophic condition causes a system reset or machine check exception, only one exception is handled at a time. If, for example, a single instruction encounters multiple exception conditions, those conditions are encountered sequentially. After the exception handler handles an exception, the instruction execution continues until the next exception condition is encountered. However, in many cases there is no attempt to reexecute the instruction. This method of recognizing and handling exception conditions sequentially guarantees that exceptions are recoverable.

Exception handlers should save the information stored in SRR0 and SRR1 early to prevent the program state from being lost due to a system reset and machine check exception or to an instruction-caused exception in the exception handler, and before enabling external interrupts.

The PowerPC architecture supports four types of exceptions:

- Synchronous, precise—These are caused by instructions. All instruction-caused exceptions are handled precisely; that is, the machine state at the time the exception occurs is known and can be completely restored. This means that (excluding the trap and system call exceptions) the address of the faulting instruction is provided to the exception handler and that neither the faulting instruction nor subsequent instructions in the code stream will complete execution. The instructions that invoke

trap and system call exceptions complete execution before the exception is taken. When exception processing completes, execution resumes at the address of the next instruction.

- Synchronous, imprecise—The PowerPC architecture defines two imprecise floating-point exception modes, recoverable and nonrecoverable. Even though the 601 provides a means to enable the imprecise modes, it implements these modes identically to the precise mode (i.e., all enabled floating-point enabled exceptions are always precise on the 601).
- Asynchronous, precise—The external interrupt and decrementer exceptions are maskable asynchronous exceptions that are handled precisely. When these exceptions occur, their handling is postponed until all instructions, and any exceptions associated with those instructions, complete execution.
- Asynchronous, imprecise—There are two non-maskable asynchronous exceptions that are imprecise: system reset and machine check exceptions. These exceptions may not be recoverable, or may provide a limited degree of recoverability for diagnostic purpose.

The PowerPC architecture defines several of the exceptions differently than the 601 implementation. For example, the PowerPC exception model provides a unique vector for the trace exception; the 601 vectors trace exceptions to the run-mode exception handler. Other differences are noted in the following section, Section 1.3.5.2, “The 601 Exception Model.”

1.3.5.2 The 601 Exception Model

As specified by the PowerPC architecture, all 601 exceptions can be described as either precise or imprecise and either synchronous or asynchronous. Asynchronous exceptions are caused by events external to the processor’s execution; synchronous exceptions, which are all handled precisely by the 601, are caused by instructions.

The 601 exception classes are shown in Table 1-1.

Table 1-1. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Exception Classifications

Synchronous/Asynchronous	Precise/Imprecise	Exception Type
Asynchronous	Imprecise	Machine check System reset
Asynchronous	Precise	External interrupt Decrementer
Synchronous	Precise	Instruction-caused exceptions

Although exceptions have other characteristics as well, such as whether they are maskable or nonmaskable, the distinctions shown in Table 1-1 define categories of exceptions that the 601 handles uniquely. Note that Table 1-1 includes no synchronous imprecise instructions.

While the PowerPC architecture supports imprecise handling of floating-point exceptions, the 601 implements these exception modes as precise exceptions.

The 601's exceptions, and conditions that cause them, are listed in Table 1-2. Exceptions that are specific to the 601 are indicated.

Table 1-2. Exceptions and Conditions

Exception Type	Vector Offset (hex)	Causing Conditions
Reserved	00000	—
System reset	00100	A system reset is caused by the assertion of either $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ or $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$.
Machine check	00200	A machine check is caused by the assertion of the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal during a data bus transaction.
Data access	00300	The cause of a data access exception can be determined by the bit settings in the DSISR, listed as follows: 1 Set if the translation of an attempted access is not found in the primary hash table entry group (HTEG), or in the rehashed secondary HTEG, or in the range of a BAT register; otherwise cleared. 4 Set if a memory access is not permitted by the page or BAT protection mechanism described in Chapter 6, "Memory Management Unit"; otherwise cleared. 5 Set if the access was to an I/O segment (SR[T] =1) by an **eciwx**, **ecowx**, **lwarx**, **stwcx**., or **lscbx** instruction; otherwise cleared. Set by an **eciwx** or **ecowx** instruction if the access is to an address that is marked as write-through. 6 Set for a store operation and cleared for a load operation. 9 Set if an EA matches the address in the DABR while in one of the three compare modes. 11 Set if **eciwx** or **ecowx** is used and EAR[E] is cleared.
Instruction access	00400	An instruction access exception is caused when an instruction fetch cannot be performed for any of the following reasons: • The effective (logical) address cannot be translated. That is, there is a page fault for this portion of the translation, so an instruction access exception must be taken to retrieve the translation from a storage device such as a hard disk drive. • The fetch access is to an I/O segment. • The fetch access violates memory protection. If the key bits (Ks and Ku) in the segment register and the PP bits in the PTE or BAT are set to prohibit read access, instructions cannot be fetched from this location.
External interrupt	00500	An external interrupt occurs when the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal is asserted.
Alignment	00600	An alignment exception is caused when the 601 cannot perform a memory access for any of several reasons, such as when the operand of a floating-point load or store operation is in an I/O segment (SR[T] = 1) or when a scalar load/store operand crosses a page boundary. Specific exception sources are described in Section 5.4.6, "Alignment Exception (x'00600')."

Table 1-2. Exceptions and Conditions (Continued)

Exception Type	Vector Offset (hex)	Causing Conditions
Program	00700	A program exception is caused by one of the following exception conditions, which correspond to bit settings in SRR1 and arise during execution of an instruction: • Floating-point enabled exception—A floating-point enabled exception condition is generated when the following condition is met: (MSR[FE0] | MSR[FE1]) & FPSCR[FEX] is 1. FPSCR[FEX] is set by the execution of a floating-point instruction that causes an enabled exception or by the execution of a "move to FPSCR" instruction that results in both an exception condition bit and its corresponding enable bit being set in the FPSCR. • Illegal instruction—An illegal instruction program exception is generated when execution of an instruction is attempted with an illegal opcode or illegal combination of opcode and extended opcode fields (including PowerPC instructions not implemented in the 601), or when execution of an optional instruction not provided in the 601 is attempted (these do not include those optional instructions that are treated as no-ops). The PowerPC instruction set is described in Chapter 3, "Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary." • Privileged instruction—A privileged instruction type program exception is generated when the execution of a privileged instruction is attempted and the MSR register user privilege bit, MSR[PR], is set. In the 601, this exception is generated for **mtspr** or **mfspr** with an invalid SPR field if SPR[0] = 1 and MSR[PR] = 1. This may not be true for all PowerPC processors. • Trap—A trap type program exception is generated when any of the conditions specified in a trap instruction is met.
Floating-point unavailable	00800	A floating-point unavailable exception is caused by an attempt to execute a floating-point instruction (including floating-point load, store, and move instructions) when the floating-point available bit is disabled, MSR[FP] = 0.
Decrementer	00900	The decrementer exception occurs when the most significant bit of the decrementer (DEC) register transitions from 0 to 1. Must also be enabled with the MSR[EE] bit.
I/O controller interface error	00A00	An I/O controller interface error exception is taken only when an operation to an I/O controller interface segment fails (such a failure is indicated to the 601 by a particular bus reply packet). If an I/O controller interface exception is taken on a memory access directed to an I/O segment, the SRR0 contains the address of the instruction following the offending instruction. Note that this exception is not implemented in other PowerPC processors.
Reserved	00B00	—
System call	00C00	A system call exception occurs when a System Call (**sc**) instruction is executed.
Reserved	00D00	Other PowerPC processors may use this vector for trace exceptions.
Reserved	00E00	The 601 does not generate an interrupt to this vector. Other PowerPC processors may use this vector for floating-point assist exceptions.
Reserved	00E10–00FFF	—
Reserved	01000–01FFF	Reserved, implementation-specific

Table 1-2. Exceptions and Conditions (Continued)

Exception Type	Vector Offset (hex)	Causing Conditions
Run mode/ trace exception	02000	The run mode exception is taken depending on the settings of the HID1 register and the MSR[SE] bit. The following modes correspond with bit settings in the HID1 register: • Normal run mode—No address breakpoints are specified, and the 601 executes from zero to three instructions per cycle • Single instruction step mode—One instruction is processed at a time. The appropriate break action is taken after an instruction is executed and the processor quiesces. • Limited instruction address compare—The 601 runs at full speed (in parallel) until the EA of the instruction being decoded matches the EA contained in HID2. Addresses for branch instructions and floating-point instructions may never be detected. • Full instruction address compare mode—Processing proceeds out of IQ0. When the EA in HID2 matches the EA of the instruction in IQ0, the appropriate break action is performed. Unlike the limited instruction address compare mode, all instructions pass through the IQ0 in this mode. That is, instructions cannot be folded out of the instruction stream. The following mode is taken when the MSR[SE] bit is set. • MSR[SE] trace mode—Note that in other PowerPC implementations, the trace exception is a separate exception with its own vector x'00D00'.

1.3.6 Memory Management

The following subsections describe the PowerPC memory management architecture, and the specific 601 implementation, respectively.

1.3.6.1 PowerPC Memory Management

The primary functions of the MMU are to translate logical (effective) addresses to physical addresses for memory accesses, I/O accesses (most I/O accesses are assumed to be memory-mapped), and I/O controller interface accesses, and to provide access protection on blocks and pages of memory.

There are three types of accesses generated by the 601 that require address translation: instruction accesses, data accesses to memory generated by load and store instructions, and I/O controller interface accesses generated by load and store instructions.

The PowerPC MMU and exception model support demand-paged virtual memory. Virtual memory management permits execution of programs larger than the size of physical memory; demand-paged implies that individual pages are loaded into physical memory from system memory only when they are first accessed by an executing program.

The hashed page table is a variable-sized data structure that defines the mapping between virtual page numbers and physical page numbers. The page table size is a power of 2, and its starting address is a multiple of its size.

The page table contains a number of page table entry groups (PTEGs). A PTEG contains eight page table entries (PTEs) of eight bytes each; therefore, each PTEG is 64 bytes long.

PTEG addresses are entry points for table search operations. Figure 6-16 shows two PTEG addresses (PTEGaddr1 and PTEGaddr2) where a given PTE may reside.

Address translations are enabled by setting bits in the MSR—MSR[IT] enables instruction translations and MSR[DT] enables data translations.

1.3.6.2 601 Memory Management

The 601 MMU provides 4 Gbytes of logical address space accessible to supervisor and user programs with a 4-Kbyte page size and 256-Mbyte segment size. Block sizes range from 128 Kbyte to 8 Mbyte and are software selectable. In addition, the 601 uses an interim 52-bit virtual address and hashed page tables in the generation of 32-bit physical addresses.

A UTLB provides address translation in parallel with the on-chip cache access, incurring no additional time penalty in the event of a UTLB hit. The UTLB is a cache of the most recently used page table entries. Software is responsible for maintaining the consistency of the UTLB with memory. The 601's UTLB is a 256-entry, two-way set-associative cache that contains instruction and data address translations. The 601 provides hardware table search capability through the hashed page table on UTLB misses. Supervisor software can invalidate UTLB entries selectively. In addition, UTLB control instructions can optionally be broadcast on the external interface for remote invalidations.

The 601 also provides a four-entry BAT array that maintains address translations for blocks of memory. These entries define blocks that can vary from 128 Kbytes to 8 Mbytes. The BAT array is maintained by system software.

To accelerate the instruction unit operation, the 601 uses a four-entry ITLB. The ITLB contains up to four copies of the most recently used instruction address translations (page or block) providing the instruction unit access to the most recently used translations without requiring the UTLB or BAT array. The processor ensures that the ITLB is consistent with the UTLB, and uses an LRU replacement algorithm when a miss is encountered.

The 601 MMU relies on the exception processing mechanism for the implementation of the paged virtual memory environment and for enforcing protection of designated memory areas. Exception processing is described in Chapter 5, "Exceptions." Section 2.3.1, "Machine State Register (MSR)," describes the MSR of the 601, which controls some of the critical functionality of the MMU.

As specified by the PowerPC architecture, the hashed page table is a variable-sized data structure that defines the mapping between virtual page numbers and physical page numbers. The page table size is a power of 2, and its starting address is a multiple of its size.

Also as specified by the PowerPC architecture, the page table contains a number of PTEGs. A PTEG contains eight page table entries (PTEs) of eight bytes each; therefore each PTEG is 64 bytes long. PTEG addresses are entry points for table search operations. Figure 6-16 shows two PTEG addresses (PTEGaddr1 and PTEGaddr2) where a given PTE may reside.

1.3.7 601 Instruction Timing

The 601 is a pipelined superscalar processor. A pipelined processor is one in which the processing of an instruction is broken down into discrete stages, such as decode, execute, and writeback. Because the tasks required to process an instruction are broken into a series of tasks, an instruction does not require the entire resources of an execution unit. For example, after an instruction completes the decode stage, it can pass on to the next stage, while the subsequent instruction can advance into the decode stage. This improves the throughput of the instruction flow. For example, it may take three cycles for an integer instruction to complete, but if there are no stalls in the integer pipeline, a series of integer instructions can have a throughput of one instruction per cycle.

A superscalar processor is one in which multiple pipelines are provided to allow instructions to execute in parallel. The 601 has three execution units, one each for integer instructions, floating-point instructions, and branch instructions. The IU and the FPU each have dedicated register files for maintaining operands (GPRs and FPRs, respectively), allowing integer calculations and floating-point calculations to occur simultaneously without interference.

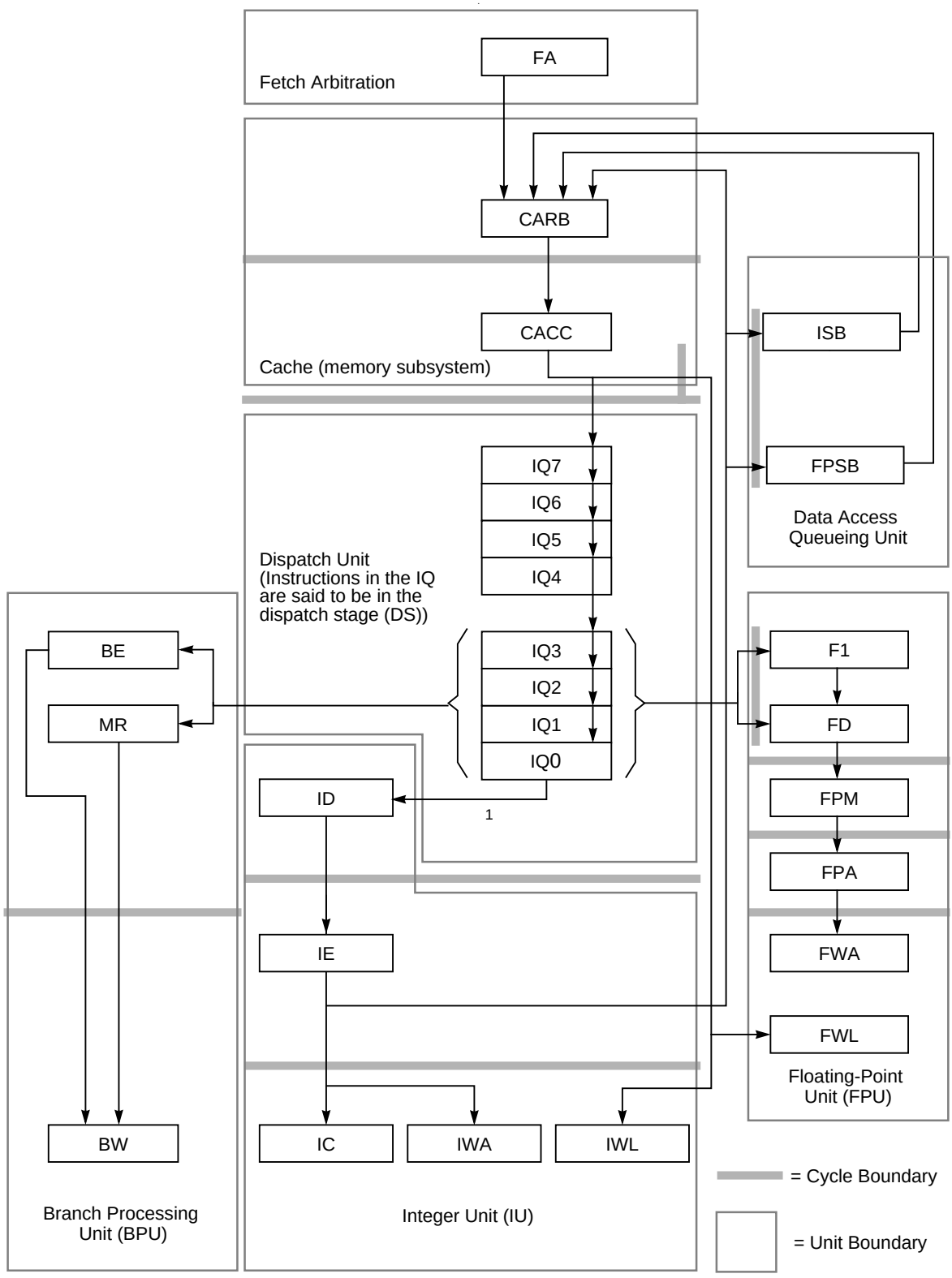
The 601 pipeline description can be broken into two parts, the processor core, where instruction execution takes place, and the memory subsystem, the interface between the processor core and system memory. The system memory includes a unified 32-Kbyte cache and the bus interface unit.

Figure 1-5 shows the 601's instruction queue and the IU, FPU, and BPU pipelines.

Each of the stages shown in Figure 1-5 is described in Section 7.2, "Pipeline Description."

As shown in Figure 1-5, integer instructions are dispatched only from IQ0 (where they are also usually decoded); whereas branch and floating-point instructions can be dispatched from any of the bottom four elements in the instruction queue (IQ0–IQ3). The dispatch of integer instructions is restricted in this manner to provide an ordered flow of instructions through the integer pipeline, which in turn provides a mechanism that ensures that all instructions appear to complete in order. As branch and floating-point instructions are dispatched their position in the instruction stream is recorded by means of tags that accompany the previous integer instruction through the integer pipeline. Note that when a floating-point or branch instruction cannot be tagged to an integer instruction, it is tagged to a no-op, or bubble, in the integer pipeline.

Logic associated with the integer completion (IC) stage reconstructs the program order, checks for data dependencies, and schedules the write-back stages of the three pipelines. Note that it is not necessary that the write-back stages need only be serialized if there are data dependencies. For example, instructions that update the condition register (CR) must perform write-back in strict order.



[1] An integer instruction can be passed to the ID stage in the same cycle in which it enters IQ0.

Figure 1-5. Pipeline Diagram of the Processor Core

The tagging mechanism is described in Section 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model.”

To minimize latencies due to data dependencies, the IU provides feed-forwarding. For example, if an integer instruction requires data that is the result of the execution of the previous instruction, that data is made available to the IU at the same time that the previous instruction’s write-back stage updates the GPR. This eliminates an additional clock cycle that would have been necessary if the IU had to access the GPR. Feed-forwarding is available between IU execute and decode stage and IU write-back and decode stage. Feed-forwarding is described in Section 7.2.1.2, “Integer Unit (IU).”

Most integer instructions require one clock cycle per stage. Because results for most integer instructions are available at the end of the execute stage, a series of single-cycle integer instructions allow a throughput of one instruction per clock cycle. Other instructions, such as the integer multiply, require more than one clock cycle to complete execution. These instructions reduce the throughput accordingly.

The floating-point pipeline has more stages than the IU pipeline, as shown in Figure 1-5. The 601 supports both single- and double-precision floating-point operations, but double-precision instructions generally take longer to execute, typically by requiring two cycles in the FD, FPM, and FPA stages. However, many of these instructions, such as the double-precision floating-point multiply (**fmul**) and double-precision floating-point accumulate instructions (**fmadd**, **fmsub**, **fnmadd**, and **fnmsub**), allow stages to overlap. For example, when the second cycle of the FD stage begins, the first stage of FPM begins. Similarly the FPM stage overlaps with the FPA stage, allowing these instructions to complete these stages in four clock cycles instead of six. The timings for these instructions are shown in Section 7.3.4.5.2, “Double-Precision Instruction Timing.”

Because the PowerPC architecture can be applied to such a wide variety of implementations, instruction timing among various PowerPC processors varies accordingly.

1.3.8 System Interface

The system interface is specific for each PowerPC processor implementation.

The 601 provides a versatile system interface that allows for a wide range of implementations. The interface includes a 32-bit address bus, a 64-bit data bus, and 52 control and information signals (see Figure 1-6). The system interface allows for address-only transactions as well as address and data transactions. The 601 control and information signals include the address arbitration, address start, address transfer, transfer attribute, address termination, data arbitration, data transfer, data termination, and processor state signals. Test and control signals provide diagnostics for selected internal circuitry.

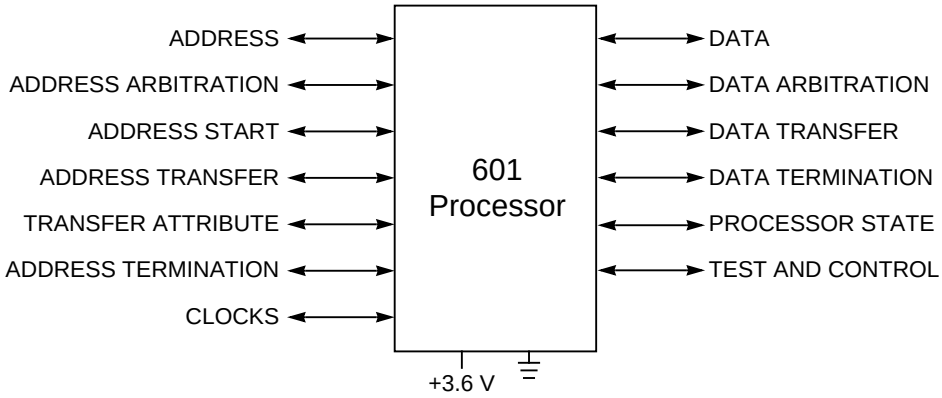


Figure 1-6. System Interface

The system interface supports bus pipelining, which allows the address tenure of one transaction to overlap the data tenure of another. The extent of the pipelining depends on external arbitration and control circuitry. Similarly, the 601 supports split-bus transactions for systems with multiple potential bus masters—one device can have mastership of the address bus while another has mastership of the data bus. Allowing multiple bus transactions to occur simultaneously increases the available bus bandwidth for other activity and as a result, improves performance.

The 601 supports multiple masters through a bus arbitration scheme that allows various devices to compete for the shared bus resource. The arbitration logic can implement priority protocols, such as fairness, and can park masters to avoid arbitration overhead. The MESI protocol ensures coherency among multiple devices and system memory. Also, the 601's on-chip cache and UTLB and optional second-level caches can be controlled externally.

The 601 clocking structure allows the bus to operate at integer multiples of the processor cycle time.

The following sections describe the 601 bus support for memory and I/O controller interface operations. Note that some signals perform different functions depending upon the addressing protocol used.

1.3.8.1 Memory Accesses

Memory accesses allow transfer sizes of 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56, or 64 bits in one bus clock cycle. Data transfers occur in either single-beat transactions or four-beat burst transactions. A single-beat transaction transfers as much as 64 bits. Single-beat transactions are caused by non-cached accesses that access memory directly (that is, reads and writes when caching is disabled, cache-inhibited accesses, and stores in write-through mode). Burst transactions, which always transfer an entire cache sector (32 bytes), are initiated when a sector in the cache is read from or written to memory. Additionally, the 601 supports address-only transactions used to invalidate entries in other processors' TLBs and caches.

1.3.8.2 I/O Controller Interface Operations

Both memory and I/O accesses can use the same bus transfer protocols. The 601 also has the ability to define memory areas as I/O controller interface areas. Accesses to the I/O controller interface redefine the function of some of the address transfer and transfer attribute signals and add control to facilitate transfers between the 601 and specific I/O devices that respond to this protocol. I/O controller interface transactions provide multiple transaction operations for variably-sized data transfers (1 to 128 bytes) and support a split request/response protocol. The distinction between the two types of transfers is made with separate signals—$\overline{\text{TS}}$ for memory-mapped accesses and $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ for I/O controller interface accesses. Refer to Chapter 9, “System Interface Operation,” for more information.

1.3.8.3 601 Signals

The 601 signals are grouped as follows:

- Address arbitration signals—The 601 uses these signals to arbitrate for address bus mastership.
- Address transfer start signals—These signals indicate that a bus master has begun a transaction on the address bus.
- Address transfer signals—These signals, which consist of the address bus, address parity, and address parity error signals, are used to transfer the address and to ensure the integrity of the transfer.
- Transfer attribute signals—These signals provide information about the type of transfer, such as the transfer size and whether the transaction is bursted, write-through, or cache-inhibited.
- Address transfer termination signals—These signals are used to acknowledge the end of the address phase of the transaction. They also indicate whether a condition exists that requires the address phase to be repeated.
- Data arbitration signals—The 601 uses these signals to arbitrate for data bus mastership.
- Data transfer signals—These signals, which consist of the data bus, data parity, and data parity error signals, are used to transfer the data and to ensure the integrity of the transfer.
- Data transfer termination signals—Data termination signals are required after each data beat in a data transfer. In a single-beat transaction, the data termination signals also indicate the end of the tenure, while in burst accesses, the data termination signals apply to individual beats and indicate the end of the tenure only after the final data beat. They also indicate whether a condition exists that requires the data phase to be repeated.
- System status signals—These signals include the interrupt signal, checkstop signals, and both soft- and hard-reset signals. These signals are used to interrupt and, under various conditions, to reset the processor.

- Processor state signals—These two signals are used to set the reservation coherency bit and set the size of the 601's output buffers.
- Miscellaneous signals—These signals provide information about the state of the reservation coherency bit.
- COP interface signals—The common on-chip processor (COP) unit is the master clock control unit and it provides a serial interface to the system for performing built-in self test (BIST).
- Test interface signals—These signals are used for internal testing.
- Clock signals—These signals determine the system clock frequency. These signals can also be used to synchronize multiprocessor systems.

NOTE

A bar over a signal name indicates that the signal is active low—for example, $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ (address retry) and $\overline{\text{TS}}$ (transfer start). Active-low signals are referred to as asserted (active) when they are low and negated when they are high. Signals that are not active-low, such as AP0–AP3 (address bus parity signals) and TT0–TT4 (transfer type signals) are referred to as asserted when they are high and negated when they are low.

1.3.8.4 Signal Configuration

Figure 1-7 illustrates the 601 microprocessor's logical pin configuration, showing how the signals are grouped.

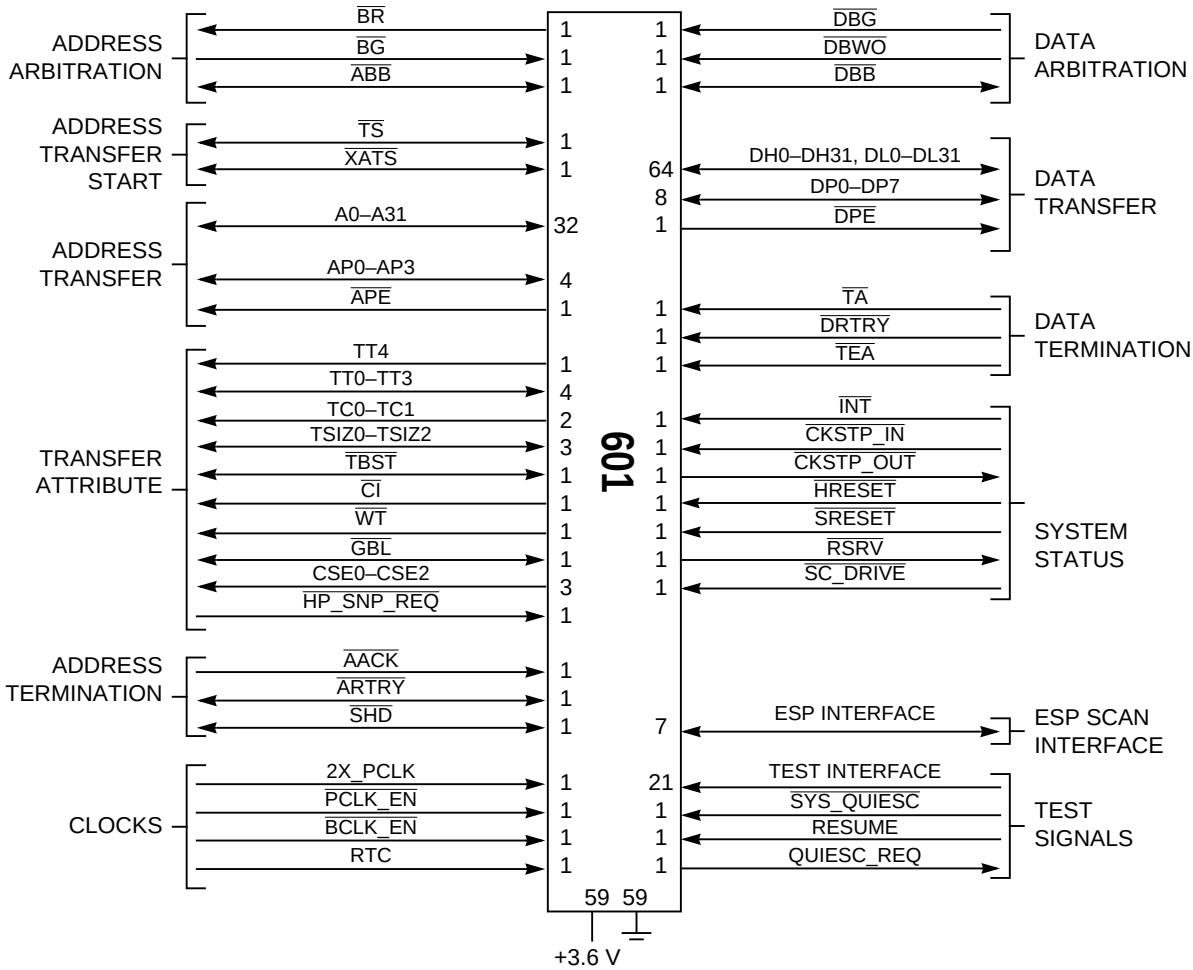


Figure 1-7. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Signal Groups

1.3.8.5 Real-Time Clock

The real-time clock (RTC) facility, which is specific to the 601, provides a high-resolution measure of real time to provide time of day and date with a calendar range of 136.19 years. The RTC consists of two registers—the RTC upper (RTCU) register and the RTC lower (RTCL) register. The RTCU register maintains the number of seconds from a point in time specified by software. The RTCL register counts nanoseconds. The contents of either register may be copied to any GPR.

Chapter 2
Registers and Data Types

This chapter describes the PowerPC 601 microprocessor's register organization, how these registers are accessed, and how data is represented in these registers. The 601 always operates in one of three distinct states which are described as follows:

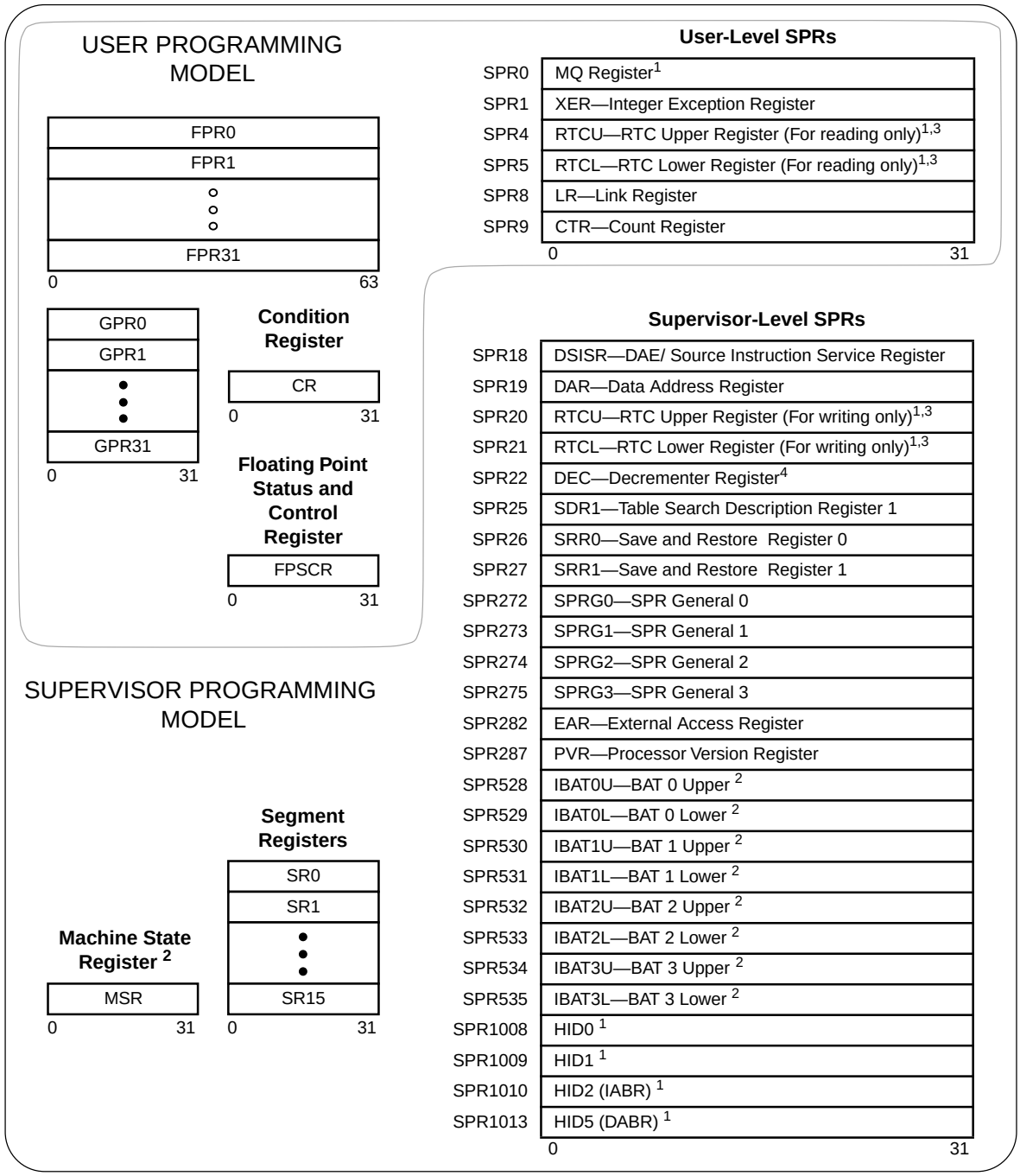
- Normal instruction execution state—In this state, the 601 executes instructions in either user mode or supervisor mode. User mode can be entered from supervisor mode by executing the appropriate instructions. If an exception is detected while in user mode, the processor enters supervisor mode and begins executing the instructions at a predetermined location associated with the type of exception detected. In supervisor mode, the program has access to memory, registers, instructions, and other resources not available to programs executing in user mode.
- Reset state—In the reset state all processor instruction execution is aborted, registers are initialized appropriately, and external signals are placed in the high-impedance state. For more information about the reset state, see Section 2.7, "Reset."
- Checkstop state—When a processor is in the checkstop state, instruction processing is suspended and generally cannot be restarted without resetting the processor. The checkstop state is provided to help identify and diagnose problems. The checkstop state is described in Section 5.4.2.2, "Checkstop State (MSR[ME] = 0)."

The PowerPC architecture defines register-to-register operations for all computational instructions. Source data for these instructions are accessed from the on-chip registers or are provided as immediate values embedded in the opcode. The three-register instruction format allows specification of a target register distinct from the two source registers, thus preserving the original data for use by other instructions and reducing the number of instructions required for certain operations. Data is transferred between memory and registers with explicit load and store instructions only.

2.1 Normal Instruction Execution State

During normal execution, a program can access the registers, shown in Figure 2-1, depending on the program's access privilege (supervisor or user, determined by the privilege-level (PR) bit in the machine state register (MSR)). The general-purpose registers (GPRs) and floating-point registers (FPRs) are accessed through instruction operands. Access to registers can be explicit (that is, through the use of specific instructions for that

purpose such as Move to Special-Purpose Register (**mtspr**) and Move from Special-Purpose Register (**mfspr**) instructions) or implicit as part of the execution of an instruction. Some registers are accessed both explicitly and implicitly.



1 601-only registers. These registers are not necessarily supported by other PowerPC processors.
2 These registers may be implemented differently on other PowerPC processors. The PowerPC architecture defines two sets of BAT registers—eight IBATs and eight DBATs.The 601 implements the IBATs and treats them as unified BATs.
3 RTCU and RTCL registers can be written only in supervisor mode, in which case different SPR numbers are used.
4 DEC register can be read by user programs by specifying SPR6 in the **mfspr** instruction (for POWER compatibility).

Figure 2-1. Programming Model—Registers

The numbers to the left of the SPRs indicate the number that is used in the syntax of the instruction operands to access the register.

The 601's user- and supervisor-level registers are described as follows:

- **User-level registers**—The user-level registers can be accessed by all software with either user or supervisor privileges. These include the following:
  - — General-purpose registers (GPRs). The 601 general-purpose register file consists of thirty-two 32-bit GPRs designated as GPR0–GPR31. This register file serves as the data source or destination for all integer instructions and provide data for generating addresses. See Section 2.2.1, "General Purpose Registers (GPRs)," for more information.
  - — Floating-point registers (FPRs). The floating-point register file consists of thirty-two 64-bit FPRs designated as FPR0–FPR31, which serves as the data source or destination for all floating-point instructions. These registers can contain data objects of either single- or double-precision floating-point format. In the 601 the floating-point register file is part of the FPU. For more information, see Section 2.2.2, "Floating-Point Registers (FPRs)."
  - — Floating-point status and control register (FPSCR). The FPSCR is a user-control register in the FPU. It contains all floating-point exception signal bits, exception summary bits, exception enable bits, and rounding control bits needed for compliance with the IEEE 754 standard. For more information, see Section 2.2.3, "Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR)."
  - — Condition register (CR). The condition register is a 32-bit register, divided into eight 4-bit fields, CR0–CR7, that reflects the results of certain arithmetic operations and provides a mechanism for testing and branching. For more information, see Section 2.2.4, "Condition Register (CR)."

  The remaining user-level registers are SPRs. Note, however, that the PowerPC architecture provides a separate mechanism for accessing SPRs (the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions). These instructions are commonly used to access certain registers, while other SPRs may be more typically accessed as the side effect of executing other instructions. The XER and MQ registers are set implicitly by many instructions.
  - — MQ register (MQ). The MQ register is a 601-specific, 32-bit register used as a register extension to accommodate the product for the multiply instructions and the dividend for the divide instructions. It is also used as an operand of long rotate and shift instructions. This register, and the instructions that require it, is provided for compatibility with POWER architecture, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. For more information, see Section 2.2.5.1, "MQ Register (MQ)." The MQ register is typically accessed implicitly as part of executing a computational instruction.
  - — Integer exception register (XER). The XER is a 32-bit register that indicates overflow and carries for integer operations. For more information, see Section 2.2.5.2, "Integer Exception Register (XER)."

— Real-time clock (RTC) registers—RTCU and RTCL (RTC upper and RTC lower). The RTCU register maintains the number of seconds from a time specified by software. The RTCL register maintains a fraction of the current second in nanoseconds. At the user-level, these registers can be read from with the **mfspr** instruction. As shown in Figure 2-1, the SPR numbers for the RTC registers depends on the type of access used. The contents of either register can be copied to any GPR. These registers are specific to the 601. These registers are not required by the PowerPC architecture, which instead uses the time base facility. For more information, see Section 2.2.5.3, "Real-Time Clock (RTC) Registers (User-Level)."

— Link register (LR). The 32-bit link register provides the branch target address for the Branch Conditional to Link Register (**bclr***x*) instruction, and can optionally be used to hold the logical address of the instruction that follows a branch and link instruction, typically used for linking to subroutines. For more information, see Section 2.2.5.4, "Link Register (LR)."

— Count register (CTR). The count register is a 32-bit register for holding a loop count that can be decremented during execution of appropriately coded branch instructions. The CTR can also provide the branch target address for the Branch Conditional to Count Register (**bcctr***x*) instruction. For more information, see Section 2.2.5.5, "Count Register (CTR)."

- **Supervisor-level registers**—The 601 incorporates registers that can be accessed only by programs executed with supervisor privileges. These registers consist of the machine state register, segment registers, and supervisor SPRs, described as follows:

  — Machine state register (MSR). A 32-bit register that defines the state of the processor; see Figure 2-11. The MSR can be modified by the Move to Machine State Register (**mtmsr**), System Call (**sc**), and Return from Exception (**rfi**) instructions. It can be read by the Move from Machine State Register (**mfmsr**) instruction. Note that the MSR is a 64-bit register in 64-bit PowerPC implementations and a 32-bit register in 32-bit PowerPC implementations. For more information see Section 2.3.1, "Machine State Register (MSR)."

  — Segment registers (SR). The 601 implements sixteen 32-bit segment registers (SR0–SR15). Figure 2-12 and Figure 2-13 show the format of a segment register. The fields in the segment register are interpreted differently depending on the value of bit 0. For more information, see Section 2.3.2, "Segment Registers."

The remaining supervisor-level registers are SPRs:

— DAE/source instruction service register (DSISR). A 32-bit register that defines the cause of data access and alignment exceptions; see Figure 2-14. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.2, “DAE/Source Instruction Service Register (DSISR).”

— Data address register (DAR). A 32-bit register shown in Figure 2-15. After a data access or an alignment exception, DAR is set to the effective address generated by the faulting instruction. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.3, “Data Address Register (DAR).”

— Real-time clock (RTC) registers—RTCU and RTCL (RTC upper and RTC lower). The registers can be read from by user-level software, but can be written to only by supervisor-level software. As shown in Figure 2-1, the SPR numbers for the RTC registers depend on the type of access used. For more information, see Section 2.2.5.3, “Real-Time Clock (RTC) Registers (User-Level).”

— Decrementer register (DEC). This register is a 32-bit decrementing counter that provides a mechanism for causing a decrementer exception after a programmable delay. In the 601, the RTC provides the frequency for the DEC. In other PowerPC implementations, the frequency is a subdivision of the processor clock. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.5, “Decrementer (DEC) Register.”

— Table search description register 1 (SDR1). This register is a 32-bit register that specifies the page table base address used in virtual-to-physical address translation. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.6, “Table Search Description Register 1 (SDR1).”

— Machine status save/restore register 0 (SRR0). This register is a 32-bit register that is used by the 601 for saving machine status on exceptions and restoring machine status when an **rfi** instruction is executed. SRR0 is shown in Figure 2-18. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.7, “Machine Status Save/Restore Register 0 (SRR0).”

— Machine status save/restore register 1 (SRR1). This register is a 32-bit register used to save machine status on exceptions and to restore machine status when an **rfi** instruction is executed. SRR1 is shown in Figure 2-19. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.8, “Machine Status Save/Restore Register 1 (SRR1).”

— General SPRs (SPRG0–SPRG3). These registers are 32-bit registers provided for operating system use. See Figure 2-20. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.9, “General SPRs (SPRG0–SPRG3).”

— External access register (EAR). This register is a 32-bit register used in conjunction with the **eciwx** and **ecowx** instructions. Note that the EAR register and the **eciwx** and **ecowx** instructions are optional in the PowerPC architecture and may not be supported in other PowerPC processors. For more information about the external control facility, see Section 2.3.3.10, “External Access Register (EAR).”

— Processor version register (PVR). This register is a 32-bit, read-only register that identifies the version (model) and revision level of the PowerPC processor. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.11, “Processor Version Register (PVR).”

— Block-address translation (BAT) registers. The 601 includes eight block-address translation registers (BATs), consisting of four pairs of BATs (IBAT0U–IBAT3U and IBAT0L–IBAT3L). See Figure 2-1 for a list of the SPR numbers for the BAT registers. Figure 2-23 and Figure 2-24 show the formats of the upper and lower BAT registers. Note that the PowerPC architecture has twice as many BAT registers as the 601. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.12, “BAT Registers.”

— Hardware implementation registers (HID0–HID2, HID5, and HID15). These registers are provided primarily for debugging. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.13.1, “Checkstop Sources and Enables Register—HID0” through Section 2.3.3.13.5, “Processor Identification Register (PIR)—HID15.” HID15 holds the four-bit processor identification tag (PID) that is useful for differentiating processors in multiprocessor system designs. For more information, see Section 2.3.3.13.5, “Processor Identification Register (PIR)—HID15.”

Note that there are registers common to other PowerPC processors that are not implemented in the 601. When the 601 detects SPR encodings other than those defined in this document, it either takes a program exception (if bit 0 of the SPR encoding is set) or it treats the instruction as a no-op (if bit 0 of the SPR encoding is clear).

2.1.1 Changing Privilege Levels

Supervisor-level access is provided through the 601’s exception mechanism. That is, when an exception is taken, either due to an error or problem that needs to be serviced or deliberately through the use of a trap or System Call (**sc**) instruction, the processor begins operating in supervisor mode. The level of access is indicated by the privilege-level (PR) bit in the MSR.

In user mode, the processor has access to user-level registers, memory, and instructions. In supervisor mode, the processor has access to additional registers, instructions, and usually has more authority to access memory. Instructions that can be accessed only from supervisor-level are listed in Section 3.2, “Exception Summary.”

2.2 User-Level Registers

This section describes in detail the registers that can be accessed by user-level software. All user-level registers can be accessed by supervisor-level software.

2.2.1 General Purpose Registers (GPRs)

Integer data is manipulated in the IU’s thirty-two 32-bit GPRs shown in Figure 2-2. These registers are accessed as source and destination registers in the instruction syntax.

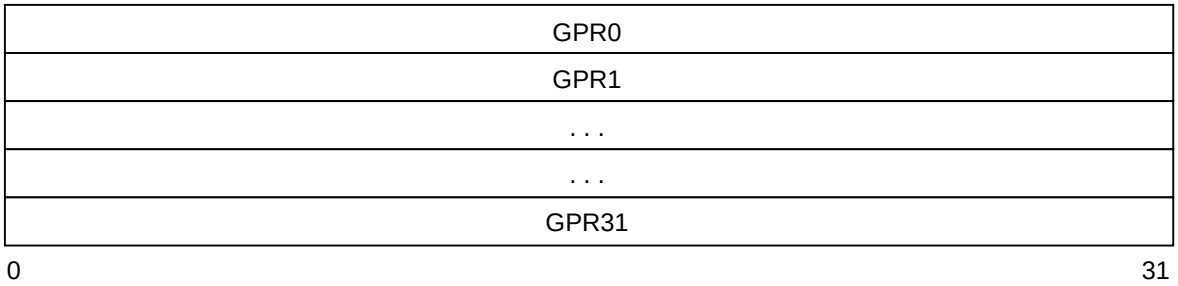


Figure 2-2. General Purpose Registers (GPRs)

All GPRs are cleared by hard reset.

2.2.2 Floating-Point Registers (FPRs)

The PowerPC architecture provides thirty-two 64-bit FPRs as shown in Figure 2-3. These registers are accessed as source and destination registers for floating-point instructions. Each FPR supports the double-precision floating-point format. Every instruction that interprets the contents of an FPR as a floating-point value uses the double-precision floating-point format for this interpretation.

All floating-point arithmetic instructions operate on data located in FPRs and, with the exception of compare instructions, place the result into an FPR. Information about the status of floating-point operations is placed into the floating-point status and control register (FPSCR) and in some cases, into CR after the completion of instruction execution. For information on how CR is affected for floating-point operations, see Section 2.2.4, “Condition Register (CR).”

Load and store double instructions transfer 64 bits of data between memory and the FPRs with no conversion. Load single instructions are provided to read a single-precision floating-point value from memory, convert it to double-precision floating-point format, and place it in the target floating-point register. Store single instructions are provided to read a double-precision floating-point value from a floating-point register, convert it to single-precision floating-point format, and place it in the target memory location.

Single- and double-precision arithmetic instructions accept values from the FPRs in double-precision format. For single-precision arithmetic instructions, all input values must be representable in single-precision format; otherwise, the result placed into the target FPR and the setting of status bits in the FPSCR and in the condition register are undefined.

The 601’s floating-point arithmetic instructions produce intermediate results that may be regarded as infinitely precise. After normalization or denormalization, if the precision of the intermediate result cannot be represented in the destination format (single or double precision), it is rounded before being placed in the target FPR. The final result is then placed into the FPR in the double-precision format.

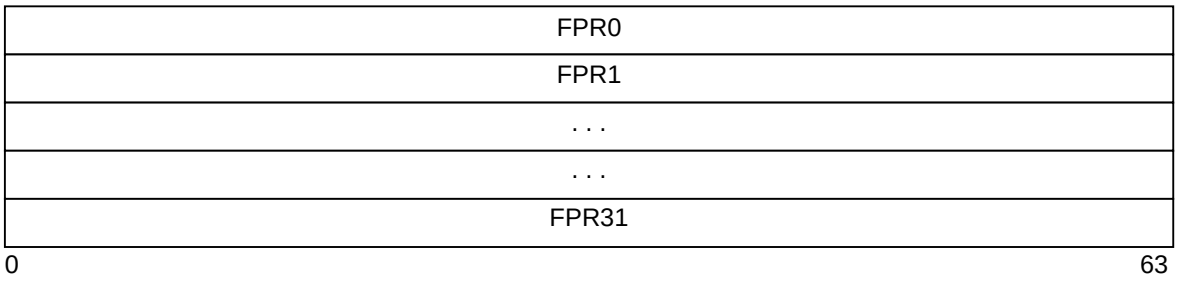


Figure 2-3. Floating-Point Registers (FPRs)

All FPRs are cleared by hard reset.

2.2.3 Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR)

The FPSCR, shown in Figure 2-4, contains bits to do the following:

- Record exceptions generated by floating-point operations
- Record the type of the result produced by a floating-point operation
- Control the rounding mode used by floating-point operations
- Enable or disable the reporting of exceptions (invoking the exception handler)

Bits 0–23 are status bits. Bits 24–31 are control bits. Bits in the FPSCR are updated at the completion of the instruction execution.

Except for the floating-point enabled exception summary (FEX) and floating-point invalid operation exception summary (VX), the floating-point exception condition bits in the FPSCR are bits 0–12 and 21–23 and are sticky. That is, once set, sticky bits remain set until they are cleared by an **mcrfs**, **mtfsfi**, **mtfsf**, or **mtfsb0** instruction.

FEX and VX are the logical ORs of other FPSCR bits. Therefore these two bits are not listed among the FPSCR bits directly affected by the various instructions.

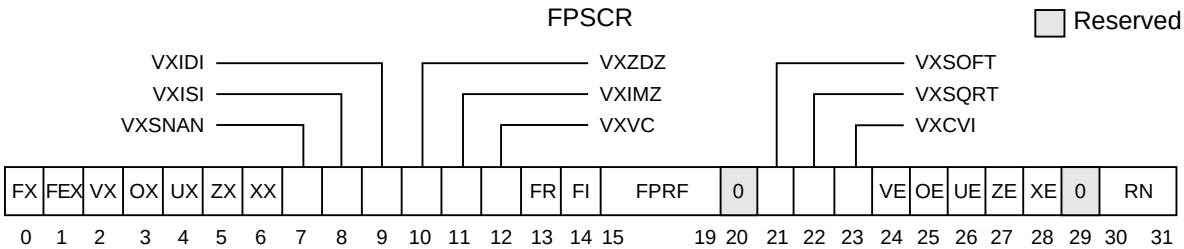


Figure 2-4. Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR)

A listing of FPSCR bit settings is shown in Table 2-1.

Table 2-2 illustrates the floating-point result flags used by the 601. The result flags correspond to FPSCR bits 15–19.

Table 2-1. FPSCR Bit Settings

Bit(s)	Name	Description
0	FX	Floating-point exception summary (FX). Every floating-point instruction implicitly sets FPSCR[FX] if that instruction causes any of the floating-point exception bits in the FPSCR to transition from 0 to 1. The **mcrfs** instruction implicitly clears FPSCR[FX] if the FPSCR field containing FPSCR[FX] is copied. The **mtfsf**, **mtfsfi**, **mtfsb0**, and **mtfsb1** instructions can set or clear FPSCR[FX] explicitly. This is a sticky bit.
1	FEX	Floating-point enabled exception summary (FEX). This bit signals the occurrence of any of the enabled exception conditions. It is the logical OR of all the floating-point exception bits masked with their respective enable bits. The **mcrfs** instruction implicitly clears FPSCR[FEX] if the result of the logical OR described above becomes zero. The **mtfsf**, **mtfsfi**, **mtfsb0**, and **mtfsb1** instructions cannot set or clear FPSCR[FEX] explicitly. This is not a sticky bit.
2	VX	Floating-point invalid operation exception summary (VX). This bit signals the occurrence of any invalid operation exception. It is the logical OR of all of the invalid operation exceptions. The **mcrfs** instruction implicitly clears FPSCR[VX] if the result of the logical OR described above becomes zero. The **mtfsf**, **mtfsfi**, **mtfsb0**, and **mtfsb1** instructions cannot set or clear FPSCR[VX] explicitly. This is not a sticky bit.
3	OX	Floating-point overflow exception (OX). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.4, “Overflow Exception Condition.”
4	UX	Floating-point underflow exception (UX). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.5, “Underflow Exception Condition.”
5	ZX	Floating-point zero divide exception (ZX). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.3, “Zero Divide Exception Condition.”
6	XX	Floating-point inexact exception (XX). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.6, “Inexact Exception Condition.”
7	VXSNAN	Floating-point invalid operation exception for SNaN (VXSNAN). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
8	VXISI	Floating-point invalid operation exception for ∞-∞ (VXISI). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
9	VXIDI	Floating-point invalid operation exception for ∞/∞ (VXIDI). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
10	VXZDZ	Floating-point invalid operation exception for 0/0 (VXZDZ). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
11	VXIMZ	Floating-point invalid operation exception for ∞*0 (VXIMZ). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
12	VXVC	Floating-point invalid operation exception for invalid compare (VXVC). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
13	FR	Floating-point fraction rounded (FR). The last floating-point instruction that potentially rounded the intermediate result incremented the fraction. See Section 2.5.6, “Rounding.” This bit is not sticky.
14	FI	Floating-point fraction inexact (FI). The last floating-point instruction that potentially rounded the intermediate result produced an inexact fraction or a disabled overflow exception. See Section 2.5.6, “Rounding.” This bit is not sticky.

Table 2-1. FPSCR Bit Settings (Continued)

Bit(s)	Name	Description
15–19	FPRF	Floating-point result flags (FPRF). This field is based on the value placed into the target register even if that value is undefined. Refer to Table 2-2 for specific bit settings. 15 Floating-point result class descriptor (C). Floating-point instructions other than the compare instructions may set this bit with the FPCC bits, to indicate the class of the result. 16–19 Floating-point condition code (FPCC). Floating-point compare instructions always set one of the FPCC bits to one and the other three FPCC bits to zero. Other floating-point instructions may set the FPCC bits with the C bit, to indicate the class of the result. Note that in this case the high-order three bits of the FPCC retain their relational significance indicating that the value is less than, greater than, or equal to zero. 16 Floating-point less than or negative (FL or <) 17 Floating-point greater than or positive (FG or >) 18 Floating-point equal or zero (FE or =) 19 Floating-point unordered or NaN (FU or ?)
20	—	Reserved
21	VXSOFT	Not implemented in the 601. This is a sticky bit. For more detailed information refer to Table 5-17 and Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
22	VXSQRT	Not implemented in the 601. For more detailed information refer to Table 5-17 and Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
23	VXCVI	Floating-point invalid operation exception for invalid integer convert (VXCVI). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
24	VE	Floating-point invalid operation exception enable (VE). See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
25	OE	Floating-point overflow exception enable (OE). See Section 5.4.7.4, “Overflow Exception Condition.”
26	UE	Floating-point underflow exception enable (UE). This bit should not be used to determine whether denormalization should be performed on floating-point stores. See Section 5.4.7.5, “Underflow Exception Condition.”
27	ZE	Floating-point zero divide exception enable (ZE). See Section 5.4.7.3, “Zero Divide Exception Condition.”
28	XE	Floating-point inexact exception enable (XE). See Section 5.4.7.6, “Inexact Exception Condition.”
29	—	Reserved. This bit may be implemented as the non-IEEE mode bit (NI) in other PowerPC implementations.
30–31	RN	Floating-point rounding control (RN). See Section 2.5.6, “Rounding.” 00 Round to nearest 01 Round toward zero 10 Round toward +infinity 11 Round toward –infinity

The FPSCR is cleared by hard reset.

Table 2-2. Floating-Point Result Flags in FPSCR

Result Flags (Bits 15–19) C < > = ?	Result value class
1 0 0 0 1	Quiet NaN
0 1 0 0 1	–Infinity
0 1 0 0 0	–Normalized number
1 1 0 0 0	–Denormalized number
1 0 0 1 0	–Zero
0 0 0 1 0	+Zero
1 0 1 0 0	+Denormalized number
0 0 1 0 0	+Normalized number
0 0 1 0 1	+Infinity

2.2.4 Condition Register (CR)

The condition register (CR) is a 32-bit register that reflects the result of certain operations and provides a mechanism for testing and branching. The bits in the CR are grouped into eight 4-bit fields, CR0–CR7, as shown in Figure 2-5.

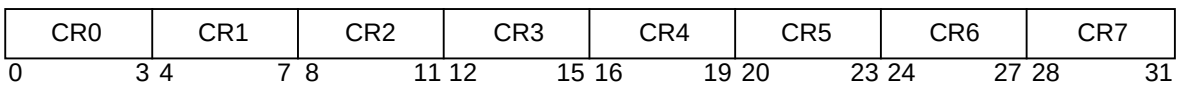


Figure 2-5. Condition Register (CR)

The CR fields can be set in one of the following ways:

- Specified fields of the CR can be set by a move instruction (**mtcrf**, or **mcrfs**) to the CR from a GPR.
- Specified fields of the CR can be moved from one CR*x* field to another with the **mcrf** instruction.
- A specified field of the CR can be set by a move instruction (**mcrxr**) to the CR from the XER.
- Condition register logical instructions can be used to perform logical operations on specified bits in the condition register.
- CR0 can be the implicit result of an integer operation.
- CR1 can be the implicit result of a floating-point operation.
- A specified CR field can be the explicit result of either an integer or floating-point compare instruction.

Branch instructions are provided to test individual CR bits. The condition register is cleared by hard reset.

2.2.4.1 Condition Register CR0 Field Definition

In most integer instructions, when the Rc bit is set, the first three bits of CR0 are set by an algebraic comparison of the result to zero; the fourth bit of CR0 is copied from XER[SO]. The **addic.**, **andi.**, and **andis.** instructions set these four bits implicitly. These bits are interpreted as shown in Table 2-3. If any portion of the result (the 32-bit value placed into the target register) is undefined, the value placed into the first three bits of CR0 is undefined.

Table 2-3. Bit Settings for CR0 Field of CR

CR0 Bit	Description
0	Negative (LT)—This bit is set when the result is negative.
1	Positive (GT)—This bit is set when the result is positive (and not zero).
2	Zero (EQ)—This bit is set when the result is zero.
3	Summary overflow (SO)—This is a copy of the final state of XER[SO] at the completion of the instruction.

2.2.4.2 Condition Register CR1 Field Definition

In all floating-point instructions except **mcrfs**, **fcmpu**, and **fcmpo**, when Rc is specified, CR1 is copied from bits 0–3 of the floating-point status and control register (FPSCR). For more information about the FPSCR, see Section 2.2.3, “Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR).” The bit settings for the CR1 field are shown in Table 2-4.

Table 2-4. Bit Settings for CR1 Field of CR

CR1 Bit	Description
4	Floating-point exception (FX)—This is a copy of the final state of FPSCR[FX] at the completion of the instruction.
5	Floating-point enabled exception (FEX)—This is a copy of the final state of FPSCR[FEX] at the completion of the instruction.
6	Floating-point invalid exception (VX)—This is a copy of the final state of FPSCR[VX] at the completion of the instruction.
7	Floating-point overflow exception (OX)—This is a copy of the final state of FPSCR[OX] at the completion of the instruction.

2.2.4.3 Condition Register CR*n* Field—Compare Instruction

When a specified CR field is set by a compare instruction, the bits of the specified field are interpreted, as shown in Table 2-5. A condition register field can also be accessed by the **mfcr**, **mcrf**, and **mtcrf** instructions.

Table 2-5. CR*n* Field Bit Settings for Compare Instructions

CR*n* Bit*	Description
0	Less than, Floating-point less than (LT, FL). For integer compare instructions, (**r**A) < SIMM, UIMM, or (**r**B) (algebraic comparison) or (**r**A) SIMM, UIMM, or (**r**B) (logical comparison). For floating-point compare instructions, (**fr**A) < (**fr**B).
1	Greater than, floating-point greater than (GT, FG). For integer compare instructions, (**r**A) > SIMM, UIMM, or (**r**B) (algebraic comparison) or (**r**A) SIMM, UIMM, or (**r**B) (logical comparison). For floating-point compare instructions, (**fr**A) > (**fr**B).
2	Equal, floating-point equal (EQ, FE). For integer compare instructions, (**r**A) = SIMM, UIMM, or (**r**B). For floating-point compare instructions, (**fr**A) = (**fr**B).
3	Summary overflow, floating-point unordered (SO, FU). For integer compare instructions, this is a copy of the final state of XER[SO] at the completion of the instruction. For floating-point compare instructions, one or both of (**fr**A) and (**fr**B) is not a number (NaN).

*Here, the bit indicates the bit number in any one of the four-bit subfields, CR0–CR7.

2.2.5 User-Level SPRs

User-level SPRs can be accessed by either user- or supervisor-level instructions. The mechanism referred to for accessing SPRs is the set of Move to Special Purpose Register (**mtspr**) and Move from Special Purpose Register (**mfspr**) instructions. These instructions are commonly used to access certain registers, while other SPRs may be more typically accessed as the side effect of executing other instructions. Some SPRs are implementation-specific; as noted, some SPRs in the 601 may not be implemented in other PowerPC processors, or may not be implemented in the same way in other PowerPC processors.

In general for registers with reserved bits, implementations return zeros or return the value last written to those bits. The only user-level SPR, in the 601,with reserved bits is the XER, which returns zeros.

The RTCL register is defined as 32 bits, but the lowest-order seven bits are not implemented. Those bits are reserved, and zeros are loaded into the respective bit positions of the target register when the RTCL is read.

When the 601 detects SPR encodings other than those defined in this document, it either takes a program exception (if bit 0 of the SPR encoding is set) or it treats the instruction as a no-op (if bit 0 of the SPR encoding is clear).

2.2.5.1 MQ Register (MQ)

The MQ register (MQ), shown in Figure 2-6, is a 32-bit register used as a register extension to accommodate the product for the multiply (**mul***x*) instruction and the dividend for the divide (**div***x*) instruction. It is also used as an operand of long rotate and shift instructions. Note that the **mul***x*, **div***x*, and some of the long rotate and shift instructions are not part of

the PowerPC architecture. See Chapter 10, “Instruction Set” for a more detailed account of instructions not implemented in the PowerPC architecture.

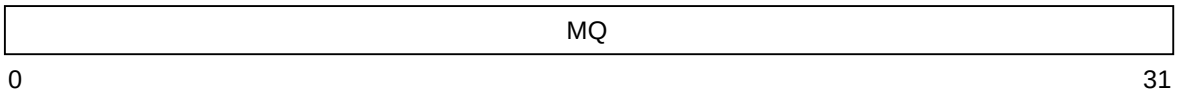


Figure 2-6. MQ Register (MQ)

The MQ register is not defined in the PowerPC architecture. However, in the 601, it may be modified as a side effect during the execution of the **mulli**, **mullw**, **mulhs**, **mulhu**, **divw**, and **divwu** instructions, which are PowerPC instructions.

The value written to the MQ register during these operations is operand-dependent and therefore, the MQ contents become undefined after any of these instructions executes. In addition, the MQ is modified by the implementation-specific instructions supported by the 601 that are not part of the PowerPC architecture. These are listed in Table 2-6.

Table 2-6. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor-Specific Instructions that Modify the MQ Register

Mnemonic	Instruction Name	Read/Write
mul	Multiply	Read/write
div	Divide	Read/write
divs	Divide Short	Read/write
sliq	Shift Left Immediate with MQ	Read/write
slliq	Shift Left Long Immediate with MQ	Read/write
sle	Shift Left Extended	Write
sleq	Shift Left Extended with MQ	Read/write
slliq	Shift Left Long Immediate with MQ	Read/write
sllq	Shift Left Long with MQ	Read/write
slq	Shift Left with MQ	Write
sraiq	Shift Right Algebraic Immediate with MQ	Write
sraq	Shift Right Algebraic with MQ	Write
sre	Shift Right Extended	Write
srea	Shift Right Extended Algebraic	Write
sreq	Shift Right Extended with MQ	Read/write
sriq	Shift Right Immediate with MQ	Write
srliq	Shift Right Long Immediate with MQ	Read/write
srlq	Shift Right Long with MQ	Read/write
srq	Shift Right with MQ	Write

The PowerPC instructions listed in Table 2-7 use the MQ register as a buffer to create a temporary 64-bit value. These instructions leave the MQ register in an undefined state.

Table 2-7. PowerPC Instructions that Use the MQ Register

Mnemonic	Instruction Name
mulli	Multiply Low Immediate
mullw	Multiply Low
mulhw	Multiply High Word
mulhwu	Multiply High Word Unsigned
divw	Divide Word
divwu	Divide Word Unsigned

The Move to Special Purpose Register (**mtspr**) and Move from Special Purpose Register (**mfspr**) can access the MQ register. The SPR number for the MQ register is 0.

The MQ register is not part of the PowerPC architecture and will not be supported in other PowerPC microprocessors.

The MQ register is cleared by hard reset.

2.2.5.2 Integer Exception Register (XER)

The integer exception register (XER) is a user-level, 32-bit register as shown in Figure 2-7.

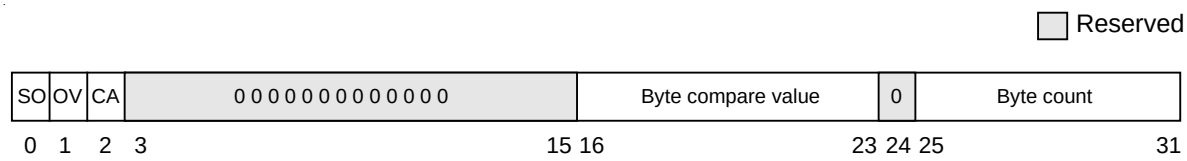


Figure 2-7. Integer Exception Register (XER)

XER is designated SPR1. The bit definitions for XER, shown in Table 2-8, are based on the operation of an instruction considered as a whole, not on intermediate results. For example, the result of the Subtract from Carrying (**subfc***x*) instruction is specified as the sum of three values. This instruction sets bits in the XER based on the entire operation, not on an intermediate sum.

Table 2-8. Integer Exception Register Bit Definitions

Bit(s)	Name	Description
0	SO	Summary Overflow (SO)—The summary overflow bit (OV) is set whenever an instruction (except **mtspr**) sets the overflow bit (OV) to indicate overflow and remains set until software clears it (with the **mtspr** or **mcrxr** instruction). It is not altered by compare instructions or other instructions that cannot overflow.
1	OV	Overflow (OV)—The overflow bit is set to indicate that an overflow has occurred during execution of an instruction. Integer and subtract instructions having OE = 1 set OV if the carry out of bit 0 is not equal to the carry out of bit 1, and clear it otherwise. The OV bit is not altered by compare instructions or other instructions that cannot overflow.
2	CA	Carry (CA)—In general, the carry bit is set to indicate that a carry out of bit 0 occurred during execution of an instruction. Add carrying, subtract from carrying, add extended, and subtract from extended instructions set CA to one if there is a carry out of bit 0, and clear it otherwise. The CA bit is not altered by compare instructions, or other instructions that cannot carry, except that shift right algebraic instructions set the CA bit to indicate whether any “1” bits have been shifted out of a negative quantity.
3–15	—	Reserved
16–23		This field contains the byte to be compared by a Load String and Compare Byte Indexed (**lscbx**) instruction. Note that **lscbx** is not a part of the PowerPC architecture.
24	—	Reserved
25–31		This field specifies the number of bytes to be transferred by a Load String Word Indexed (**lswx**), Store String Word Indexed (**stswx**) or Load String and Compare Byte Indexed (**lscbx**) instruction.

The XER is cleared by hard reset.

2.2.5.3 Real-Time Clock (RTC) Registers (User-Level)

The real-time clock (RTC) registers provide a high-resolution measure of real time for indicating the date and time of day. The RTC facility provides a calendar range of roughly 135 years. The RTC registers are 601-specific.

The RTC input is sampled using the CPU clock. Therefore, if the CPU clock is less than twice the RTC frequency, real-time clock (and decrementer) sampling and incrementing errors will occur. Therefore, in systems that change the CPU clock frequency dynamically beyond this limit, a method of saving and restoring the real-time clock register values via external means is recommended for accuracy of the RTC.

The RTC registers, shown in Figure 2-8, consist of the following:

- Real-time clock upper (RTCU)—This register specifies the number of seconds that have elapsed since the time specified in the software.
- Real-time clock lower (RTCL)—This register contains the number of nanoseconds since the beginning of the current second.

Reading any portion of the RTC registers does not affect its contents. The writing of the RTCU and RTCL registers is allowed for supervisor programs only (**mtspr** is supervisor-

only for RTC registers) and as supervisor-level registers, RTCU and RTCL must be accessed using different SPR numbers, as shown in Figure 2-1.

In user-level, RTCU and RTCL are read-only. The SPR numbers for the RTCU, RTCL, and DEC registers differ depending upon whether the **mtspr** or **mfspr** instruction is used. For the **mtspr** instruction, RTCU is SPR20, RTCL is SPR2. For the **mfspr** instruction, RTCU is SPR4, RTCL is SPR5.

For compatibility with the PowerPC user instruction set architecture, it is recommended that the Move from Time Base instruction (**mftb**) be used instead of the **mfspr** instruction. This instruction, which is not implemented in the 601, causes an illegal instruction program exception on the 601; the **mfspr** instruction can be used to perform the operation in the 601's exception handler, and will function as defined in the architecture on other PowerPC processors. The **mftb** instruction, is described in Appendix C, "PowerPC Instructions Not Implemented."

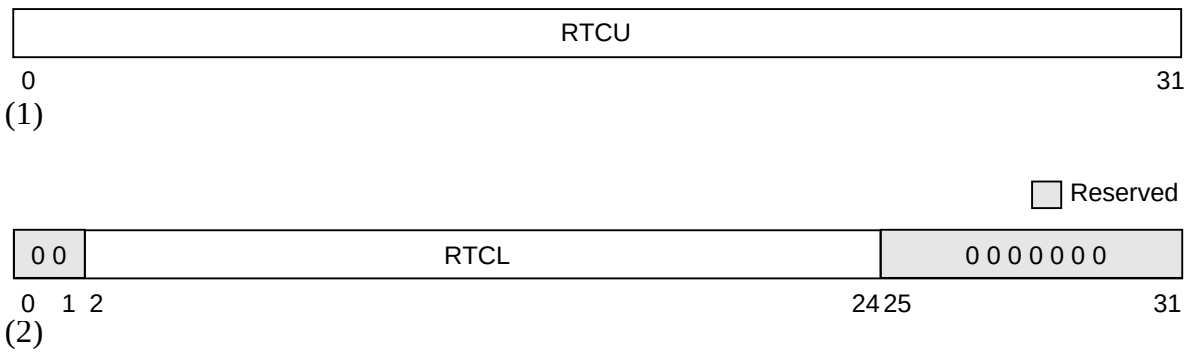


Figure 2-8. Real-Time Clock (RTC) Registers

The RTC runs constantly while power is applied and the external 7.8125 MHz oscillator is connected. Note that the RTC will not be implemented in other PowerPC processors. The condition register is cleared by hard reset. Note that when an external clock is connected to the RTC, the RTCL and RTCU registers are incremented automatically.

Both registers are cleared by a hard reset.

2.2.5.3.1 Real-Time Clock Lower (RTCL) Register

The RTCL functions as a 23-bit counter that provides the lower word of the RTC. As an indicator of the granularity of the RTC, enough bits are implemented to provide a resolution that is finer than the time required to execute 10 Add Immediate (**addi**) instructions. The following details describe the RTCL:

- Bits 0–1 and bits 25–31 are not implemented. (The number of lower order bits required is determined by the frequency of the oscillator—7.8125 MHz)
- The least significant implemented bit of the RTCL (bit 24) is incremented every 128 nS.
- The period of the RTCL is one billion nanoseconds (one second).

- Unless it is altered by software, the RTCL reaches its terminal count value of 999,999,872 (one billion minus 128) after 999,999,999 nS. The next time RTCL is incremented, it cycles to all zeros and RTCU is incremented.
- Using the **mfspr** instruction with RTCL does not affect its contents. Unimplemented bits are read as zeros.
- If the **mtspr** instruction is used to replace the contents of the RTCL with the contents of a GPR, the values of the GPR corresponding to the unimplemented bits in the RTCL are ignored.

2.2.5.3.2 Real-Time Clock Upper (RTCU) Register

The RTCU register is a 32-bit binary counter in which the least-significant bit is incremented in synchronization with the transition to zero of the RTCL counter (after one-billion nanoseconds—that is, every second). All 32 bits of the RTCU are implemented. When the RTCU is set to all ones, the next time it is incremented it becomes all zeros.

When the contents of the RTCU or the RTCL are copied to a GPR, bits in the GPR corresponding to the unimplemented bits in the RTCL are cleared.

2.2.5.3.3 Reading the RTC

The contents of either RTC register can be copied into a GPR by user programs with the **mfspr** instruction. Because the RTCL continues to increment and the RTCU may be incremented while instructions are being executed that read the two RTC registers, when the current time is required in a form that includes more than the upper or lower word of the RTC, the following procedure should be used:

1. Execute the following instruction sequence:

   mfspr rA**,r4** |**read RTCL**
   mfspr rB**,r5** |**read RTCU**
   mfspr rC**,r4** |**read RTCL**

2. If (**r**C) = (**r**A)

   then the correct value has been obtained
   else repeat step 1

Step 2 is required because the RTC continues to increment and the RTCU may increment while the instructions that read the two halves of the RTC are being executed. If the values in **r**C and **r**A match, the RTCU has not been incremented, and the RTCU value can be used along with the value in **r**B as the current RTC value. However, if the values of **r**C and **r**A differ, the RTCU has been incremented and it cannot be guaranteed which, if either, RTCU value should be associated with the value in **r**B.

Successive readings of the RTC registers do not necessarily give unique values. If unique values are required, and if updating the RTCL at least once in the time it takes to execute 10 **addi** instructions is insufficient to ensure unique values, a software solution is required.

2.2.5.3.4 RTC Synchronization in a Multiprocessor System

Typically, RTCs must be synchronized in a multiprocessor system. One way to achieve synchronization is to use a gated RTC clock as the input to all 601s in a system. The gate clock can be enabled and disabled through the use of an I/O access (either I/O controller interface store instruction to a selected BUID, or a memory-mapped I/O access). This allows the RTC input clock to all processors to be turned on and off at the same time. Each processor's RTC register can then be loaded to the same value before starting the RTC input clock.

2.2.5.4 Link Register (LR)

The 32-bit link register (LR) supplies the branch target address for the Branch Conditional to Link Register (**bclr***x*) instruction, and can be used to hold the logical address of the instruction that follows a branch and link instruction. The format of LR is shown in Figure 2-9.

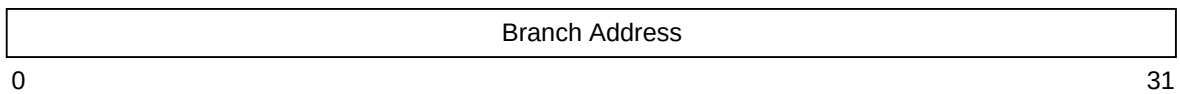


Figure 2-9. Link Register (LR)

Note that although the two least-significant bits can accept any values written to them, they are ignored when the LR is used as an address. The link register can be accessed by the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions using SPR number 8. Fetching instructions along the target path (loaded by an **mtspr** instruction) is possible provided the link register is loaded sufficiently ahead of the branch instruction. It is usually possible for the 601 to fetch along a target path loaded by a branch and link instruction.

Both conditional and unconditional branch instructions include the option of placing the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction in the LR.

As a performance optimization, and as an aid for handling the precise exception model, the 601 implements a two-entry link register shadow. Shadowing allows the link register to be updated by branch instructions that are executed out-of-order with respect to integer instructions without destroying machine state information if any integer instructions takes a precise exception. This is not visible from software. The link register is cleared by hard reset.

Note that although the 601 does not implement a link stack register, one may be implemented in subsequent PowerPC processors. For compatibility, use of the link register should be controlled following the description in Section 3.6.1.5, "Branch Conditional to Link Register Address Mode."

2.2.5.5 Count Register (CTR)

The count register (CTR) is a 32-bit register for holding a loop count that can be decremented during execution of branch instructions that contain an appropriately coded BO field. If the value in CTR is 0 before being decremented, it is –1 afterward. The count register can also provide the branch target address for the Branch Conditional to Count Register (**bcctr***x*) instruction. The CTR is shown in Figure 2-10.

Figure 2-10. Count Register (CTR)

Fetching instructions along the target path is also possible provided the count register is loaded sufficiently ahead of the branch instruction.

The count register can be accessed by the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions by specifying the SPR number 9. In branch conditional instructions, the BO field specifies the conditions under which the branch is taken. The first four bits of the BO field specify how the branch is affected by or affects the condition register and the count register. The encoding for the BO field is shown in Table 3-25. The count register is cleared by hard reset.

2.3 Supervisor-Level Registers

Some 601 registers can be accessed only by supervisor-level software. These include the machine state register (MSR), the segment registers, and several SPRs.

2.3.1 Machine State Register (MSR)

The machine state register (MSR), shown in Figure 2-11, is a 32-bit register that defines the state of the processor. When an exception occurs, MSR bits, as described in Table 2-9, are altered as determined by the exception. The MSR can also be modified by the **mtmsr**, **sc**, and **rfi** instructions. It can be read by the **mfmsr** instruction. Note that in 64-bit PowerPC implementations, the MSR is a 64-bit register.

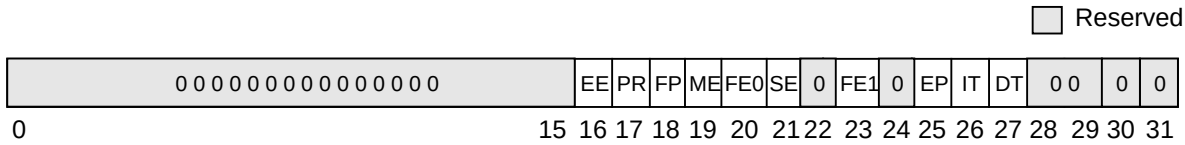


Figure 2-11. Machine State Register (MSR)

Table 2-9 shows the bit definitions for the MSR.

Table 2-9. Machine State Register Bit Settings

Bit(s)	Name	Description
0–15	—	Reserved*
16	EE	External exception enable 0 While the bit is cleared the processor delays recognition of external interrupts and decrementer exception conditions. 1 The processor is enabled to take an external interrupt or the decrementer exception.
17	PR	Privilege level 0 The processor can execute both user- and supervisor-level instructions. 1 The processor can only execute user-level instructions.
18	FP	Floating-point available 0 The processor prevents dispatch of floating-point instructions, including floating-point loads, stores, and moves. 1 The processor can execute floating-point instructions, and can take floating-point enabled exception type program exceptions.
19	ME	Machine check enable 0 A checkstop is taken, unless either HID0[CE] or HID0[EM] is cleared (disabled), in which case the machine check exception is taken. 1 Machine check exceptions are enabled. In the 601, this bit is set after a hard reset, although the PowerPC architecture specifies that this bit is cleared.
20	FE0	Floating-point exception mode 0 (See Table 2-10).
21	SE	Single-step trace enable 0 The processor executes instructions normally. 1 The processor generates a single-step trace exception upon the successful execution of the next instruction. In the 601 this is implemented as a run-mode exception; the PowerPC architecture defines this as a trace exception. When this bit is set, the processor dispatches instructions in strict program order. Successful execution means the instruction caused no other exception. Single-step tracing may not be present on all implementations.
22	—	Reserved * on the 601
23	FE1	Floating-point exception mode 1 (See Table 2-10).
24	—	Reserved. This bit corresponds to the AL bit of the POWER architecture.
25	EP	Exception prefix. The setting of this bit specifies whether an exception vector offset is prepended with Fs or 0s. In the following description, *nnnnn* is the offset of the exception. See Table 5-2. 0 Exceptions are vectored to the physical address x'000*n_nnnn*'. 1 Exceptions are vectored to the physical address x'FFF*n_nnnn*'.
26	IT	Instruction address translation 0 Instruction address translation is disabled. 1 Instruction address translation is enabled. For more information see Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.”
27	DT	Data address translation 0 Data address translation is disabled. 1 Data address translation is enabled. For more information see Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.”
28–29	—	Reserved

Table 2-9. Machine State Register Bit Settings (Continued)

Bit(s)	Name	Description
30	—	Reserved* on the 601
31	—	Reserved * on the 601

*These reserved bits may be used by other PowerPC processors. Attempting to change these bits does not affect the operation of the 601. These bit positions always return a zero value when read. Note that bits 15 and 31 (ELE and LE) are defined by the PowerPC architecture to control little- and big-endian mode.

The floating-point exception mode bits are interpreted as shown in Table 2-10. For further details, see Section 5.4.7.1, “Floating-Point Enabled Program Exceptions.” Note that these bits are logically ORed, so that if either is set the processor operates in precise mode.

Table 2-10. Floating-Point Exception Mode Bits

FE0	FE1	Mode
0	0	Floating-point exceptions disabled
0	1	Floating-point imprecise nonrecoverable*
1	0	Floating-point imprecise recoverable*
1	1	Floating-point precise mode

*Because FE0 and FE1 are logically ORed on the 601, neither of these modes is available. If either bit is set, the processor operates in precise mode.

Table 2-11 indicates the state of the MSR after a hard reset.

Table 2-11. State of MSR at Power Up

Bit	Description
0–15	0 (Reserved)
16–18	0
19	1
20–24	0
25	1
26–27	0
28–31	0 (Reserved)

2.3.2 Segment Registers

The sixteen 32-bit segment registers are present only in 32-bit PowerPC implementations. Figure 2-12 shows the format of a segment register in the 601. The value of bit 0, the T bit, determines how the remaining register bits are interpreted.

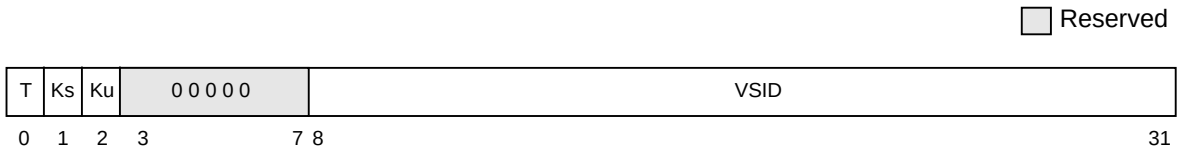


Figure 2-12. Segment Register Format (T = 0)

Segment registers can be accessed by using the **mtsr** and **mtsrin** instructions. Segment register bit settings when T = 0 are described in Table 2-12.

Table 2-12. Segment Register Bit Settings (T = 0)

Bits	Name	Description
0	T	T = 0 selects this format
1	Ks	Supervisor-state protection key
2	Ku	User-state protection key
3–7	—	Reserved
8–31	VSID	Virtual segment ID

Figure 2-13 shows the bit definition when T = 1.

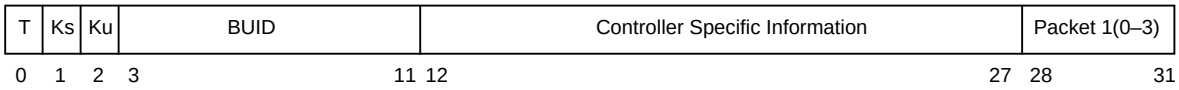


Figure 2-13. Segment Register Format (T = 1)

The bits in the segment register when T = 1 are described in Table 2-13.

Table 2-13. Segment Register Bit Settings (T = 1)

Bits	Name	Description
0	T	T = 1 selects this format.
1	Ks	Supervisor-state protection key
2	Ku	User-state protection key
3–11	BUID	Bus unit ID. If BUID = x'07F' the transaction is a memory-forced I/O controller interface operation.
12–27	—	Device specific data for I/O controller
28–31	Packet 1(0–3)	This field contains address bits 0–3 of the packet 1 cycle (address-only).

If T = 0 in the selected segment register, the effective address is a reference to an ordinary memory segment. For ordinary memory segments, the segmented address translation mechanism may be superseded by the block address translation (BAT) mechanism. If not, the 52-bit virtual address (VA) is formed by concatenating the following:

- The 24-bit VSID field from the segment register
- The 16-bit page index, EA[4–19]
- The 12-bit byte offset, EA[20–31]

The VA is then translated to a physical address as described in Section 6.8, “Memory Segment Model.”

If T = 1 in the selected segment register, the effective address is a reference to an I/O controller interface segment. No reference is made to the page tables. For further discussion of address translation see Section 6.10, “I/O Controller Interface Address Translation.”

The 601 defines two types of I/O controller interface segments (segment register T-bit set) based on the value of the bus unit ID (BUID), as follows:

- I/O controller interface (BUID ≠ x'07F')—I/O controller interface accesses include all transactions between the 601 and subsystems (referred to as bus unit controllers (BUCs) mapped through I/O controller interface address space).
- Memory-forced I/O controller interface (BUID = x'07F')—Memory-forced I/O controller interface operations access memory space. They do not use the extensions to the memory protocol described for I/O controller interface accesses, and they bypass the page- and block-translation and protection mechanisms. The physical address is found by concatenating bits 28–31 of the respective segment register with bits 4–31 of the effective address. This address is marked as noncacheable, write-through, and global.

  Because memory-forced I/O controller interface accesses address memory space, they are subject to the same coherency control as other memory reference operations. More generally, accesses to memory-forced I/O controller interface segments are considered to be cache-inhibited, write-through and memory-coherent operations with respect to the 601 cache and bus interface.

See Section 9.6.2, “I/O Controller Interface Transaction Protocol Details,” for more information about the BUID.

The segment registers are cleared by hard reset.

2.3.3 Supervisor-Level SPRs

Many of the SPRs can be accessed only by supervisor-level instructions; any attempt to access these SPRs with user-level instructions will result in a privileged exception. Some SPRs are implementation-specific; some 601 SPRs may not be implemented in other PowerPC processors, or may not be implemented in the same way. Table 2-14 summarizes how the 601 treats the undefined bits in supervisor-level SPRs.

Table 2-14. Undefined Bits in Supervisor-Level Registers

Register	Value Returned for Undefined Bits
FPSCR	Zero
SDR1	Zero
All BATs	Value last written to that bit position
HID0	Zero
HID1	Value last written to that bit position
HID2	Value last written to that bit position
HID5	Value last written to that bit position
HID15	Zero

In some cases, not all of a register's bits are implemented in hardware. For example, the RTCL register is defined to be 32 bits, but in the 601 only the 23 most significant bits exist in hardware. Similarly, the DEC register is defined as having 32 bits, but only the 25 most significant bits are implemented in hardware. In both cases, the unimplemented bits are returned as zeros when they are read by the **mfspr** instruction.

The RTCU and RTCL register in supervisor mode and the **mtspr** instruction requires a different SPR encoding. For the **mtspr** instruction, RTCU is SPR20 and RTCL is SPR21.

When the 601 detects SPR encodings other than those defined in this document, it either takes a program exception (if bit 0 of the SPR encoding is set) or it treats the instruction as a no-op (if bit 0 of the SPR encoding is clear).

2.3.3.1 Synchronization for Supervisor-Level SPRs and Segment Registers

The processor has synchronization requirements when updating the following MMU registers when the corresponding address translation is enabled (data accesses with MSR[DT] = 1 or instruction fetches with MSR[IT] = 1):

- SDR1
- BATs (if MSR[DT] = 1 or MSR[IT] = 1)
- Segment registers

In addition, there are other software requirements that should be observed when modifying these MMU registers and the MSR[IT] bit.

2.3.3.1.1 Context Synchronization

The processor checks for read and write dependencies with respect to segment registers and special purpose registers, and executes a series of instructions involving those registers so that read/write dependencies are not violated. For example, if an **mtspr** instruction writes a value to a particular SPR and an **mfspr** instruction later in the instruction stream reads the same SPR, the **mfspr** reads the value written by the **mtspr**.

It is important to note that dependencies caused by side effects of writing to segment registers and SPRs are not checked automatically. If an **mtspr** instruction writes a value to an SPR that changes how address translation is performed, a subsequent load instruction is not guaranteed to use the new translation until the processor is explicitly synchronized by using one of the following context-synchronizing operations:

- **isync** (Instruction Synchronize) instruction
- **sc** (System Call) instruction
- **rfi** (Return from Interrupt) instruction
- Any exception other than machine check and system reset

Table 2-15 provides information on data access synchronization requirements.

Table 2-15. Data Access Synchronization

Instruction/ Event	Required Prior	Required After
mtmsr (ME)	None	Context-synchronizing event
mtmsr (DT)	None	Context-synchronizing event
mtmsr (PR)	None	Context-synchronizing event
mtsr	Context-synchronizing event	Context-synchronizing event
mtspr (BAT)	Context-synchronizing event	Context-synchronizing event
mtspr (SDR1)	**sync**	Context-synchronizing event
mtspr (EAR)	Context-synchronizing event	Context-synchronizing event
tlbie[1]	Context-synchronizing event	Context-synchronizing event

[1] The context-synchronizing event (most likely an **isync** instruction) prior to the **tlbie** instruction ensures that all previously issued memory access instructions have completed to a point where they will no longer cause an exception. The context-synchronizing event following the **tlbie** instruction ensures that subsequent memory access instructions will not use the TLB entry being invalidated. To ensure that all memory accesses previously translated by the TLB entry being invalidated have completed with respect to memory and that reference and change bit updates associated with those memory accesses have completed, a **sync** instruction rather than a context-synchronizing event is required after the **tlbie** instruction. Multiprocessor systems have other requirements to synchronize TLB invalidation.

For information on instruction access synchronization requirements see Table 2-16.

Table 2-16. Instruction Access Synchronization

Instruction/ Event	Required Prior	Required After
Exception [1]	None	None
mtmsr (EP)	None	None
mtmsr (EE) [2]	None	None
mtmsr (ME)	None	Context-synchronizing event
mtmsr (IT)	None	Context-synchronizing event

Table 2-16. Instruction Access Synchronization (Continued)

Instruction/ Event	Required Prior	Required After
mtmsr (FP)	None	Context-synchronizing event
mtmsr (FE0,1)	None	Context-synchronizing event
mtmsr (SE)	None	Context-synchronizing event
rfi [1]	None	None
mtsr	None	Context-synchronizing event
mtspr (BAT)	None	Context-synchronizing event
mtspr (SDR1) [3]	None	Context-synchronizing event
tlbie	None	Context-synchronizing event

[1] These events are context-synchronizing.
[2] The effect of altering the EE bit is immediate as follows:
- If an **mtmsr** clears the EE bit, neither an external interrupt nor a decrementer exception occurs if the instruction is executed.
- If an **mtmsr** sets the EE bit, and an external interrupt or decrementer exception was being held off by the EE bit being 0, the exception is taken before the next instruction in the program stream that set the bit to 0 is issued.

[3] The **mtspr(SDR1)** instruction is shown for completeness. Data accesses have stronger requirements that override this specification.

Note that the **sync** instruction, although not defined as context-synchronizing in the PowerPC architecture, can sometimes be used to provide the required synchronization. When a **sync** instruction is encountered, the 601 processor synchronizes updates to the CR, CTR, LR, MSR, FPSCR, and XER registers.

In general, context-synchronization is required when writes to registers that affect addressing are preceded or followed by load or store instructions. Specifically, a context-synchronizing operation or a **sync** instruction must precede a modification of the BAT or segment registers when the corresponding address translations are enabled. A **sync** instruction must precede the modification of SDR1 when the corresponding (data accesses with MSR[DT] = 1 or instruction fetches with MSR[IT] = 1) address translations are enabled, guaranteeing that the reference and change bits are updated in the correct context.

If the corresponding address translations are enabled, a context synchronization operation must follow the modification of any of the above registers.

When several of the registers listed above are modified with no intervening instructions that are affected by the changes, context synchronization or **sync** instructions are not required between the alterations. However, instructions fetched and/or executed after the alteration but before the context synchronizing operation may be fetched and/or executed in either the context that existed before the alteration or the context established by the alteration.

For synchronization within a sequence of instructions, the **isync** instruction can be used as shown in the first example.

Example 1: Using the isync instruction—In this example a single segment register (*n*) needs to be updated in a context where loads and stores might otherwise execute ahead of the **mtsr** instruction and use the outdated address translation. Data and instruction address translation is enabled (MSR[DT] = 1 and MSR[IT] = 1):

```
isync
mtsr sr,rn
isync
```

The first **isync** instruction allows all instructions in the pipeline to complete, allowing the **mtsr** instruction to dispatch and execute by itself.

Example 2: Using the isync instruction with a series of register modifications—In example 1, the single **mtsr** instruction could safely be replaced with a series of **mtsr** instructions without each requiring an **isync** instruction. However, if both **mtsr** and **mfsr** instructions are needed, they should be separated by an **isync** instruction, as follows:

```
isync
mtsr sr,r0
mtsr sr,r1
...
mtsr sr,r7
isync
mfsr r8,sr
mfsr r9,sr
...
mfsr r15,sr
isync
```

Example 3: Using the rfi instruction—When several registers are updated with no intervening loads or stores with MSR[DT] = 1 or instruction fetches with MSR[IT] = 1, context-synchronization between updates is unnecessary. When an exception is taken, the processor is synchronized automatically. In this example, a list of segment registers is updated with several **mtsr** instructions followed by a single context-synchronizing operation.

Because this example modifies all 16 segment registers (and therefore, affects the segment register(s) that control instruction fetching, this particular sequence must be executed in direct address translation mode (MSR[IT] = 0). Therefore, no synchronization is required before the segment registers are loaded. Even if the segment register(s) that control instruction fetching is not to be reloaded, the sequence can be executed with instruction address translation enabled (MSR[IT] = 1) and no additional synchronization before the segment register instructions.

In this example the **rfi** instruction provides the needed synchronization after all 16 segment registers are loaded and before translated loads and stores are executed.

mtsr sr,**r**0
mtsr sr,**r**1
...
mtsr sr,**r**15
<load rest of machine state>
rfi

2.3.3.1.2 Other Synchronization Requirements by Register

This section describes additional synchronization requirements.

SDR1 and MSR—The SDR1 register should be modified only when MSR[IT] = 0. In addition, the MSR[IT] bit should be altered only by software that has an address mapping such that logical addresses map directly to physical addresses.

Segment Registers—The only fields that should be modified in a segment register currently used for instruction fetching are the Ks and Kp bits. Note that any time segment registers are updated, the changes are guaranteed to take effect (including changes of the K*x* bits) only after a context-synchronizing operation has occurred.

BAT Registers—The only fields that should be modified in a BAT register currently used for instruction fetching are the Ks, Kp and the V (valid) bits. In the case of modifying the V bit for a BAT register currently used for instruction accesses, the instructions immediately following the **mtspr** for the BAT register must also be mapped by the page address translation mechanism with the same logical to physical address mapping (or alternately, the instructions must be duplicated in the newly mapped space). Note that any time the BAT registers are updated, the changes are guaranteed to take affect (including changes of the K*x* bits) only after a context-synchronizing operation has completed.

In order to make a BAT register pair valid such that the BAT array entry then translates the current instruction stream, the following sequence should be used if fields in both the upper and lower BAT registers are to be modified (for instruction address translation):

1. Clear the V bit in the BAT register pair.
2. Initialize the other fields in the BAT register pair appropriately.
3. Set the V bit in the BAT register pair.
4. Perform a context-synchronizing operation.

2.3.3.2 DAE/Source Instruction Service Register (DSISR)

The 32-bit DSISR, shown in Figure 2-14, identifies the cause of data access and alignment exceptions.

Figure 2-14. DAE/Source Instruction Service Register (DSISR)

For information about bit settings, see Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300'),” and Section 5.4.6, “Alignment Exception (x'00600').”

The DSISR is cleared after a hard reset.

2.3.3.3 Data Address Register (DAR)

The DAR is a 32-bit register as shown in Figure 2-15.

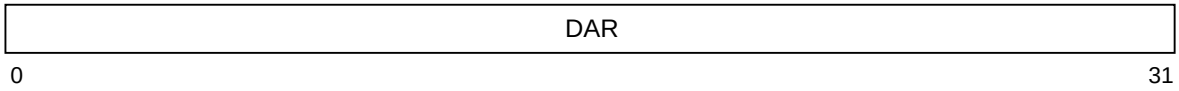


Figure 2-15. Data Address Register (DAR)

The effective address generated by a memory access instruction is placed in the DAR if the access causes an exception (I/O controller interface error, or alignment exception). For information, see Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300'),” and Section 5.4.6, “Alignment Exception (x'00600').”

2.3.3.4 Real-Time Clock (RTC) Registers (Supervisor-Level)

The RTC registers can be written to only by supervisor-level software. Different SPR numbers must be used with the **mtspr** instruction. The SPR number for the RTCU register is 20; the SPR number for RTCL is 21.

The PowerPC architecture defines the DEC register as supervisor-only access for both reads and writes. SPR22 is used for both reads and writes. The POWER architecture provides user-level read access using SPR6. To ensure compatibility with subsequent PowerPC processors, the **mfspr** instruction should not be used in user-level.

2.3.3.5 Decrementer (DEC) Register

The DEC, shown in Figure 2-16, is a 32-bit decrementing counter that provides a mechanism for causing a decrementer exception after a programmable delay. On the 601, the DEC is driven by the same frequency as the RTC (7.8125 MHz). On other PowerPC processors, the DEC frequency is based on a subdivision of the processor clock. The DEC is cleared by hard reset.

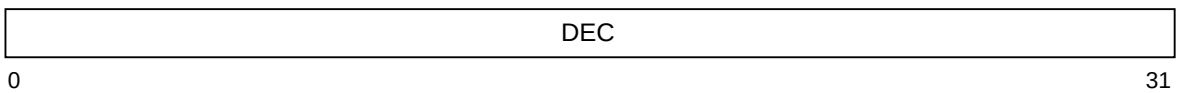


Figure 2-16. Decrementer Register (DEC)

2.3.3.5.1 Decrementer Operation

The DEC counts down, causing an exception (unless masked by MSR[EE]) when it passes through zero. The DEC satisfies the following requirements:

- The operation of the RTC and the DEC are coherent (that is, the counters are driven by the same fundamental time base).
- Loading a GPR from the DEC has no effect on the DEC.
- Storing a GPR to the DEC replaces the value in the DEC with the value in the GPR.
- Whenever bit 0 of the DEC changes from 0 to 1, a decrementer exception request is signaled. (The exception breaks the pipeline in such a way that instructions in the execute state (except for instructions that have been dispatched ahead of undispatched integer instructions) complete execution, and instructions in decode stage remain undecoded until the exception handler returns control to the interrupted program). Multiple DEC exception requests may be received before the first exception occurs; however, any additional requests are canceled when the exception occurs for the first request.
- If the DEC is altered by software and the content of bit 0 is changed from 0 to 1, an exception request is signaled.

Note that the seven low-order bits are not implemented. Bit 24 changes every 128 nS. The RTC input is sampled using the CPU clock. Therefore, if the CPU clock is less than twice the RTC frequency, real-time clock (and decrementer) sampling and incrementing errors will occur. Therefore, in systems that change the CPU clock frequency dynamically beyond this limit, a method of saving and restoring the real-time clock register values via external means is required.

2.3.3.5.2 Writing and Reading the DEC

The content of the DEC can be read or written using the **mfspr** and **mtspr** instructions, both of which are supervisor-level when they refer to the DEC. However, the 601 also allows the reading of the DEC in user mode (for POWER compatibility) via the SPR6 register. Note that this functionality will not be supported in subsequent PowerPC processors. Using a simplified mnemonic for the **mtspr** instruction, the DEC may be written from GPR **r**A with the following:

mtspr(dec) rA

If the execution of this instruction causes bit 0 of the DEC to change from 0 to 1, an exception request is signaled. The DEC may be read into GPR **r**A with the following sequence:

mfspr(dec) rA

2.3.3.6 Table Search Description Register 1 (SDR1)

The table search description register 1 (SDR1) is shown in Figure 2-17.

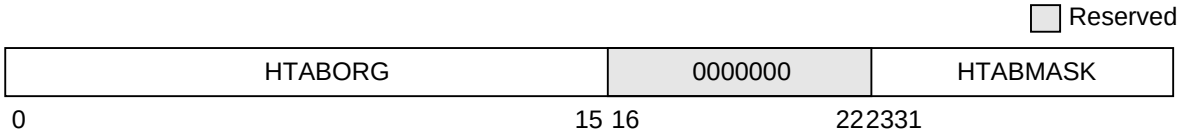


Figure 2-17. Table Search Description Register 1 (SDR1)

The bits of the SDR1 are described in Table 2-17.

Table 2-17. Table Search Description Register 1 (SDR1) Bit Settings

Bits	Name	Description
0–15	HTABORG	The high-order 16 bits of the 32-bit physical address of the page table
16–22	—	Reserved
23–31	HTABMASK	Mask for page table address

The HTABORG field in SDR1 contains the high-order 16 bits of the 32-bit physical address of the page table. Therefore, the page table is constrained to lie on a 2^{16} byte (64 Kbytes) boundary at a minimum. At least 10 bits from the hash function are used to index into the page table. The page table must consist of at least 64 Kbytes 2^{10} PTEGs of 64 bytes each.

The page table can be any size 2^n where $16 \leq n \leq 25$. As the table size is increased, more bits are used from the hash to index into the table and the value in HTABORG must have more of its low-order bits equal to 0. The HTABMASK field in SDR1 contains a mask value that determines how many bits from the hash are used in the page table index. This mask must be of the form b'00...011...1'; that is, a string of 0 bits followed by a string of 1bits. The 1 bits determine how many additional bits (at least 10) from the hash are used in the index; HTABORG must have this same number of low-order bits equal to 0. See Figure 6-21.

The number of low-order 0 bits in HTABORG must be at least the number of 1 bits in HTABMASK so that the final 32-bit physical address can be formed by logically ORing the various components.

2.3.3.7 Machine Status Save/Restore Register 0 (SRR0)

The machine status save/restore register 0 (SRR0) is a 32-bit register the 601 uses to save machine status on exceptions and restore machine status when an **rfi** instruction is executed. It also holds the EA for the instruction that follows the System Call (**sc**) instruction. The SRR0 is shown in Figure 2-18.

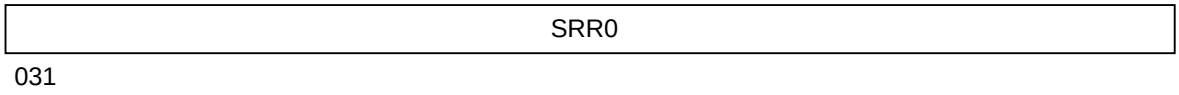


Figure 2-18. Save/Restore Register 0 (SRR0)

When an exception occurs, SRR0 is set to point to an instruction such that all prior instructions have completed execution and no subsequent instruction has begun execution. The instruction addressed by SRR0 may not have completed execution, depending on the exception type. SRR0 addresses either the instruction causing the exception or the immediately following instruction. The instruction addressed can be determined from the exception type and status bits.

The SRR0 is cleared by hard reset.

For information on how specific exceptions affect SRR0, refer to the descriptions of individual exceptions in Chapter 5, “Exceptions.”

2.3.3.8 Machine Status Save/Restore Register 1 (SRR1)

The SRR1 is a 32-bit register used to save machine status on exceptions and to restore machine status when an **rfi** instruction is executed. The SRR1 is shown in Figure 2-19.

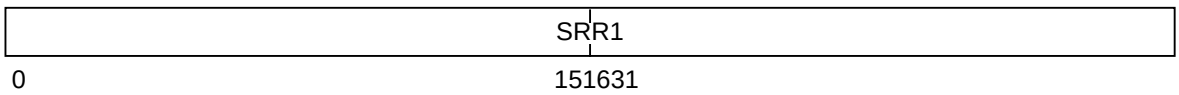


Figure 2-19. Machine Status Save/Restore Register 1 (SRR1)

In general, when an exception occurs, bits 0–15 of SRR1 are loaded with exception-specific information and bits 16–31 of MSR are placed into bits 16–31 of SRR1.

The SRR1 is cleared by hard reset.

For information on how specific exceptions affect SRR1, refer to the individual exceptions in Chapter 5, “Exceptions.”

2.3.3.9 General SPRs (SPRG0–SPRG3)

SPRG0 through SPRG3 are 32-bit registers provided for general operating system use, such as performing a fast state save or for supporting multiprocessor implementations. SPRG0–SPRG3 are shown in Figure 2-20.

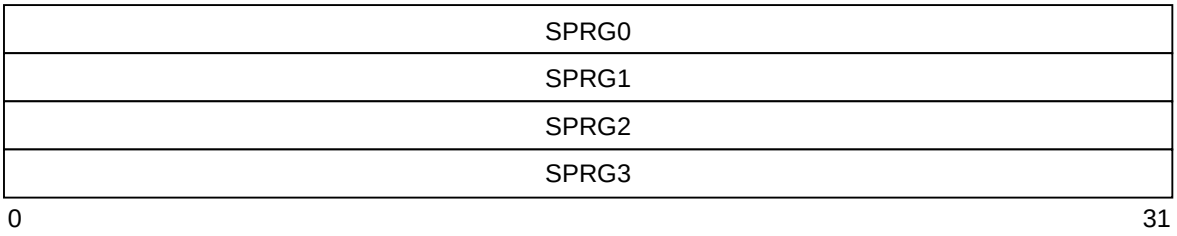


Figure 2-20. General SPRs (SPRG0–SPRG3)

2.3.3.10 External Access Register (EAR)

The EAR is a 32-bit SPR that controls access to the external control facility and identifies the target device for external control operations. The external control facility provides a means for user-level instructions to communicate with special external devices. The EAR is shown in Figure 2-21.

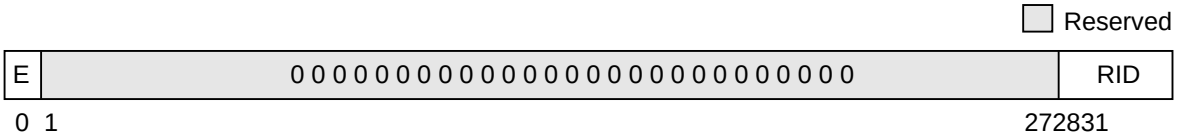


Figure 2-21. External Access Register (EAR)

This register is provided to support the External Control Input Word Indexed (**eciwx**) and External Control Output Word Indexed (**ecowx**) instructions, which are described in Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.” Although access to the EAR is privileged, the operating system can determine which tasks are allowed to issue external access instructions and when they are allowed to do so. The bit settings for the EAR are described in Table 2-18. Interpretation of the physical address transmitted by the **eciwx** and **ecowx** instructions and the 32-bit value transmitted by the **ecowx** instruction is not prescribed by the PowerPC architecture but is determined by the target device.

For example, if the external control facility is used to support a graphics adapter, the **ecowx** instruction could be used to send the translated physical address of a buffer containing graphics data to the graphics device. The **ecowx** instruction could be used to load status information from the graphics adapter.

Table 2-18. External Access Register (EAR) Bit Settings

Bit	Name	Description
0	E	Enable bit 1 Enabled 0 Disabled If this bit is set, the **eciwx** and **ecowx** instructions can perform the specified external operation. If the bit is cleared, an **eciwx** or **ecowx** instruction causes a data access exception.
1–27	—	Reserved
28–31	RID	Resource ID. The RID is formed by concatenating $\overline{\text{TBST}}$||TSIZ0–TSIZ2. Note that in other PowerPC implementations, this field may use bits 26–31.

This register can also be accessed by using the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions using the value 282, b'01000 11010'. Synchronization requirements for the EAR are shown in Table 2-15 and Table 2-16.

The EAR is cleared by hard reset.

2.3.3.11 Processor Version Register (PVR)

The PVR is a 32-bit, read-only register that identifies the version and revision level of the PowerPC processor (see Figure 2-22). The PVR cannot be modified. The contents of the PVR can be copied to a GPR by the **mfspr** instruction. Read access to the PVR is available in supervisor mode only; write access is not provided.

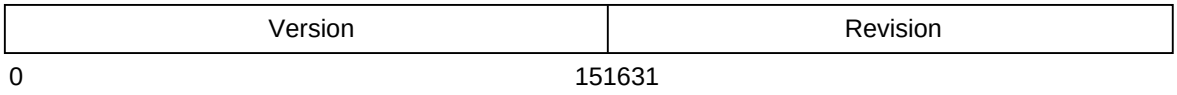


Figure 2-22. Processor Version Register (PVR)

The PVR consists of two 16-bit fields:

- Version (bits 0–15)—A 16-bit number that identifies the version of the processor and of the PowerPC architecture. The processor version number is x'0001' for the 601.
- Revision (bits 16–31)—A 16-bit number that distinguishes between various releases of a particular version, (that is, an engineering change level). The value of the revision portion of the PVR is implementation-specific. The processor revision level is changed for each revision of the device. Contact your support center for specific information about the revision of the processor you are using.

2.3.3.12 BAT Registers

The block address translation mechanism in the 601 is implemented as a software-controlled array (BAT array). The BAT array maintains the address translation information for four blocks of memory. The BAT array in the 601 is maintained by the system software and is implemented as a set of eight special-purpose registers (SPRs). Each block is defined by a pair of SPRs called upper and lower BAT registers.

The 601 includes eight block-address translation (BAT) registers, grouped into four register pairs: (IBAT0U–IBAT3U and IBAT0L–IBAT3L). Note that the PowerPC architecture identifies these SPRs as IBATs, in the 601, they are implemented as unified BATs. See Figure 2-1 for a list of the SPR numbers for the BAT registers. Note that other PowerPC implementations may have two sets of four pairs of BAT registers. The additional eight registers are data BATs, or DBATs, (DBAT0U–DBAT3U and DBAT0L–DBAT3L). These BATs use the eight SPR numbers subsequent to those used by the IBATs (536–543).

Note that the implementation of the bit fields in the BATs are different from the other PowerPC implementations. Figure 2-23 and Figure 2-24 show the format of the upper and lower BAT registers for the 601.

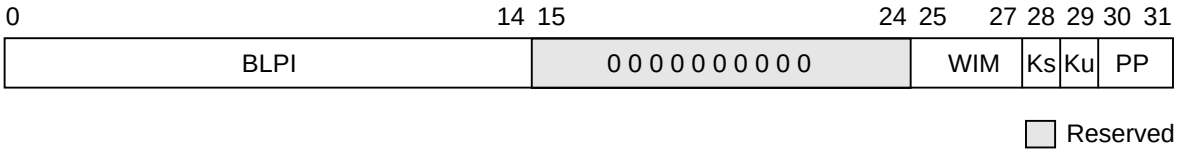


Figure 2-23. Upper BAT Register

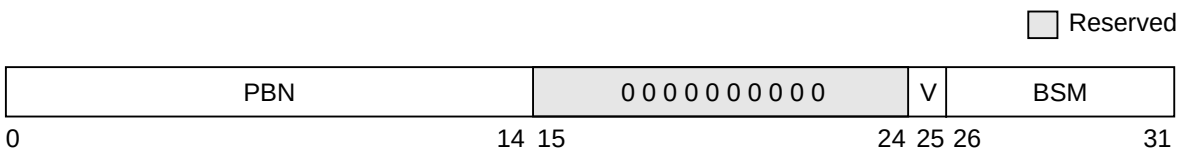


Figure 2-24. Lower BAT Register

Table 2-19 describes the bits in the BAT registers.

Table 2-19. BAT Registers

Register	Bits	Name	Description
Upper BAT Registers	0–14	BLPI	Block logical page index. This field is compared with bits 0–14 of the logical address to determine if there is a hit in that BAT array entry.
	15–24	—	Reserved
	25–27	WIM	Memory/cache access mode bits W Write-through I Caching-inhibited M Memory coherence For detailed information about the WIM bits, see Section 6.3, “Memory/Cache Access Modes.”
	28	Ks	Supervisor mode key. This bit interacts with MSR[PR] and the PP field to determine the protection for the block. For more information, see Section 6.4, “General Memory Protection Mechanism.”
	29	Ku	User mode key. This bit also interacts with MSR[PR] and the PP field to determine the protection for the block. For more information, see Section 6.4, “General Memory Protection Mechanism.”
	30–31	PP	Protection bits for block. This field interacts with MSR[PR] and the Ks or Ku to determine the protection for the block as described in Section 6.4, “General Memory Protection Mechanism.”
Lower BAT Registers	0–14	PBN	Physical block number. This field is used in conjunction with the BSM field to generate bits 0–14 of the physical address of the block.
	15–24	—	Reserved
	25	V	BAT register pair (BAT array entry) is valid if V = 1.
	26–31	BSM	Block size mask (0...5). BSM is a mask that encodes the size of the block. Values for this field are listed in Table 2-20.

Table 2-20 lists the BAT area lengths encoded in by BAT[BSM].

Table 2-20. BAT Area Lengths

BAT Area Length	BSM Encoding
128 Kbytes	00 0000
256 Kbytes	00 0001
512 Kbytes	00 0011
1 Mbyte	00 0111
2 Mbytes	00 1111
4 Mbytes	01 1111
8 Mbytes	11 1111

Only the values shown in Table 2-20 are valid for the BSM field. The rightmost bit of BSM is aligned with bit 14 of the logical address. A logical address is determined to be within a BAT area if the logical address matches the value in the BLPI field.

The boundary between the string of zeros and the string of ones in BSM determines the bits of logical address that participate in the comparison with BLPI. Bits in the logical address corresponding to ones in BSM are cleared for this comparison.

Bits in the logical address corresponding to ones in the BSM field, concatenated with the 17 bits of the logical address to the right (more significant bits) of BSM, form the offset within the BAT area. This is described in detail in Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.”

The value loaded into BSM determines both the length of the BAT area and the alignment of the area in both logical and physical address space. The values loaded into BLPI and PBN must have at least as many low-order zeros as there are ones in BSM.

The BAT registers are cleared by hard reset. Use of BAT registers is described in Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.”

2.3.3.13 601 Implementation-Specific HID Registers

PowerPC processors may have implementation-specific SPRs, referred to as HID registers. Additional SPR encodings allow access to the implementation-dependent registers within the 601. The SPR encodings for the 601’s HID registers are described in Table 2-21. Note that these encodings use split-field notation; that is, the order of two 5-bit components of the 10-bit encoding is reversed.

Table 2-21. Additional SPR Encodings

SPR Number	SPR Encoding SPR(5–9)|SPR(0–4)	Register Name	Access
1008	11111 10000	Checkstop sources and enables register (HID0)	Supervisor
1009	11111 10001	601 debug modes register (HID1)	Supervisor
1010	11111 10010	IABR (HID2)	Supervisor
1013	11111 10101	DABR (HID5)	Supervisor
1023	11111 11111	PIR (HID15)	Supervisor

For additional information about the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions, refer to Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”

2.3.3.13.1 Checkstop Sources and Enables Register—HID0

The checkstop sources and enables register (HID0), shown in Figure 2-25, is a supervisor-level register that defines enable and monitor bits for each of the checkstop sources in the 601. The SPR number for HID0 is 1008.

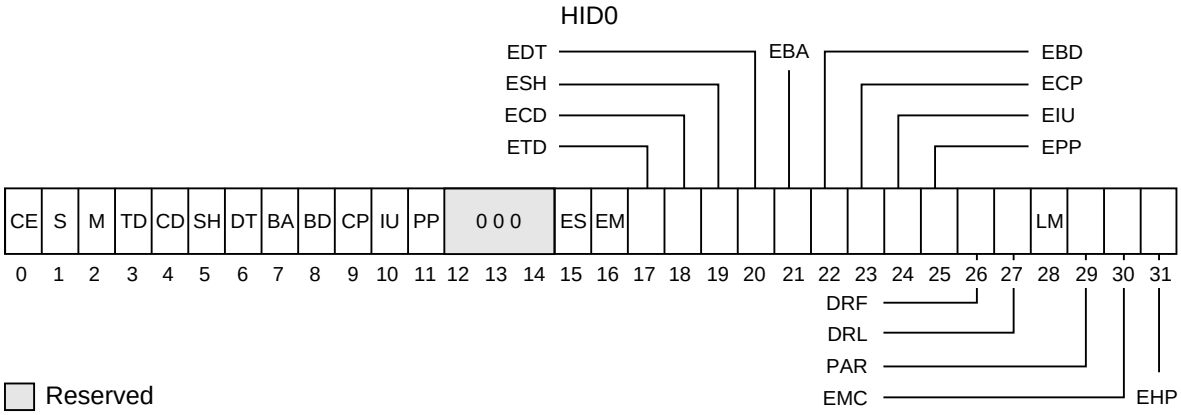


Figure 2-25. Checkstop Sources and Enables Register (HID0)

Table 2-22 defines the bits in HID0. The enable bits (bits 15–31) can be used to mask individual checkstop sources, although these are provided primarily to mask off any false reports of such conditions for debugging purposes. Bit 0 (HID0[CE]) is a master checkstop enable; if it is cleared, all checkstop conditions are disabled; if it is set, individual conditions can be enabled separately. HID0[EM] (bit 16) enables and disables machine check checkstops; clearing this bit masks machine check checkstop conditions that occur when MSR[ME] is cleared. Bits 1–11 are the checkstop source bits, and can be used to determine the specific cause of a checkstop condition.

Table 2-22. Checkstop Sources and Enables Register (HID0) Definition

Bit	Name	Description
0	CE	Master checkstop enable. Enabled if set. If this bit is cleared and the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal is asserted, a machine check exception is taken, regardless of the setting of MSR[ME].
1	S	Microcode checkstop detected if set.
2	M	Double machine check detected if set.
3	TD	Multiple TLB hit checkstop if set.
4	CD	Multiple cache hit checkstop if set.
5	SH	Sequencer time out checkstop if set.
6	DT	Dispatch time out checkstop if set.
7	BA	Bus address parity error if set.
8	BD	Bus data parity error if set.
9	CP	Cache parity error if set.
10	IU	Invalid microcode instruction if set.
11	PP	I/O controller interface access protocol error if set.
12–14	—	Reserved
15	ES	Enable microcode checkstop. Enabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.

Table 2-22. Checkstop Sources and Enables Register (HID0) Definition (Continued)

Bit	Name	Description
16	EM	Enable machine check checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set. If this bit is cleared and the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal is asserted, a machine check exception is taken, regardless of the setting of MSR[ME].
17	ETD	Enable TLB checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
18	ECD	Enable cache checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
19	ESH	Enable sequencer time out checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
20	EDT	Enable dispatch time out checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
21	EBA	Enable bus address parity checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
22	EBD	Enable bus data parity checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
23	ECP	Enable cache parity checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
24	EIU	Enable for invalid ucode instruction checkstop. Enabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
25	EPP	Enable for I/O controller interface access protocol checkstop. Disabled by hard reset. Enabled if set.
26	DRF	0 Optional reload of alternate sector on instruction fetch miss is enabled. 1 Optional reload of alternate sector on instruction fetch miss is disabled.
27	DRL	0 Optional reload of alternate sector on load/store miss is enabled. 1 Optional reload of alternate sector on load/store miss is disabled.
28	LM	0 Big-endian mode is enabled. 1 Little-endian mode is enabled. For more information about byte ordering, see Section 2.4.3, “Byte and Bit Ordering.” Note that in the PowerPC architecture, the selection between big- and little-endian mode is controlled by two bits in the MSR.
29	PAR	0 Precharge of the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ signals is enabled. 1 Precharge of the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ signals is disabled.
30	EMC	0 No error detected in main cache during array initialization. 1 Error detected in main cache during array initialization.
31	EHP	0 The $\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$ signal is disabled. Use of the WRS queue position is restricted to a snoop hit that occurs when a read is pending. That is, its address tenure is complete but the data tenure has not begun. 1 The $\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$ signal is enabled. Use of the WRS queue position is restricted to a snoop hit on an address tenure that had $\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$ asserted.

All enable bits except 15 and 24 are disabled at start up. The operating system should enable these checkstop conditions before the power-on reset sequence is complete.

Checkstop enable bits can be set or cleared without restriction. If a checkstop source bit is set, it can be cleared; however, if the corresponding checkstop condition is still present on the next clock, the bit will be set again. A checkstop source bit can only be set when the corresponding checkstop condition occurs and the checkstop enable bit is set; it cannot be set via an **mtspr** instruction. That is, you cannot manually cause a checkstop.

The HID0 register is set to x'80010080' by the hard reset operation. However, the state of the EMC bit depends on the results of the power-on diagnostics for the main cache array. This bit is set if the cache fails the built-in self test during the power-on sequence.

2.3.3.13.2 601 Debug Modes Register—HID1

The 601 debug modes register (HID1) is a supervisor-level register that defines enable bits for the various debug modes supported by the 601; see Figure 2-26. The SPR number for HID1 is 1009.

Figure 2-26. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Debug Modes Register

Table 2-23 shows bit settings for the HID1 register. Note that if both the single instruction step option is specified for the M field (b'100') and the trap to run mode exception option is specified in the RM field (b'10'), the processor iterates in an infinite loop.

Table 2-23. HID1 Register Definition

Bit	Name	Description
0	—	Reserved
1–3	M	601 run modes 000 Normal run mode 001 Undefined. Do not use. 010 Limited instruction address compare. 011 Undefined. Do not use. 100 Single instruction step 101 Undefined. Do not use. 110 Full instruction address compare 111 Full branch target address compare
4–7	—	Reserved
8–9	RM	Response to address compare or single step 00 Hard stop (Stop L1 clocks). 01 Soft stop (Wait for system activity to quiesce). 10 Trap to run mode exception (address vector x'02000'), with the base address indicated in by the setting of MSR[IP]. This mode is valid for address comparisons and may produce unpredictable results when used with HID single-instruction step mode. 11 Reserved. Do not use. Note that when HID1[8–9] = 10, the trap address of x'2000' has a base address indicated by the setting of MSR[IP]. This mode is valid for address comparisons and may produce unpredictable results when used with HID single-step mode.
10–16	—	Reserved. Do not use.
17	TL	When set, this bit disables the broadcast of the **tlbie** instruction.
18–31	—	Reserved. Do not use.

Note that when HID1[8–9] = 10, the trap address of x'2000' has a base address indicated by the setting of MSR[IP]. This mode is valid for address comparisons and may produce unpredictable results when used with the HID single-step mode.

The HID1 register is cleared by a hard reset.

2.3.3.13.3 Instruction Address Breakpoint Register (IABR)—HID2

The instruction address breakpoint register (IABR), is also HID2. The IABR, shown in Figure 2-27, is a supervisor-level register defined to hold an effective address that is used to compare with either the logical address of the instruction in the decode phase of the pipeline or the EA of a branch target depending on the mode specified by the value of HID1[M]. The results of the comparison are used differently depending on the debug mode used.

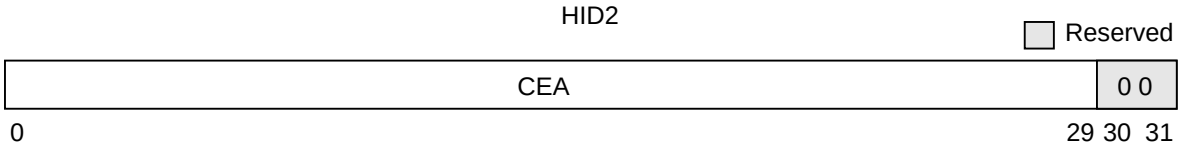


Figure 2-27. Instruction Address Breakpoint Register (IABR)—HID2

Table 2-24 lists HID2 register definitions. The HID2 register is cleared by the hard reset operation.

The SPR number for HID2 is 1010.

Table 2-24. HID2 Register Definition

Bit	Name	Description
0–29	CEA	Comparison effective address
30–31	—	Reserved. This field should be set to zero.

2.3.3.13.4 Data Address Breakpoint Register (DABR)—HID5

The data address breakpoint register (DABR) (HID5), as shown in Figure 2-28, is designed to hold an effective address that is used to compare with the effective address generated by a load or store operation. The results of the comparison are used to cause a data access exception when the appropriate 601 debug mode bits are set (as described in Section 2.3.3.13.2, “601 Debug Modes Register—HID1”).

Figure 2-28. Data Address Breakpoint Register (DABR)

Table 2-25 describes bit settings in HID5. The HID5 register is cleared by the hard reset operation.

Table 2-25. HID5 Register Definition

Bit	Name	Description
0–28	DAB	Data address breakpoint (EA). This field is set to the double-word EA to compare with enabled load or store EAs.
29	—	Reserved, although on an **mfspr** (DABR), the value returned is the value last written.
30–31	SA	Memory access types: 00 Breakpoints disabled 01 Breakpoints load accesses only 10 Breakpoints store accesses only 11 Breakpoints both load and store accesses

The SPR number for HID5 is 1013.

If the DABR feature is enabled, operations that hit against a properly enabled DABR cause a data access exception. For this type of data access exception (DAE), bit 9 of the DSISR is set and the data address register (DAR) contains the EA that caused the DABR match. If the access crossed a double-word boundary, the DAR contains the EA of the access from the first double word (even if the DABR match was on the second double word). For more information about data access exceptions, see Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').”

Table 2-26 describes how each instruction type interacts with the DABR feature.

Table 2-26. DABR Results

Operation	Description
Load instructions	If any part of the load access touches the double word specified in the DABR, and the appropriate enable bit is set, then the DAE occurs. In this case, the memory read operation is inhibited and register **r**D is not updated. If the operation is a load with update, the update to register **r**A is also inhibited.
Store instructions	If any part of the store access touches the double word specified in the DABR and the appropriate enable bit is set, the DAE occurs and the memory access is inhibited. If the operation is a store with update, then the update to register **r**A is also inhibited. If the operation is a Store Conditional instruction and the reservation bit is not set at the time of the DABR compare (at the end of execution as soon as the EA is calculated), the DAE is not taken.
Load and store string and multiple instructions	These instructions are sequenced one register (one word) at a time through the IU for EA calculation. Each access is checked against the DABR as it is presented to the ATU. If a match occurs, the instruction is aborted and a DAE is taken. If the initial EA for the string or multiple is not word-aligned, some individual accesses may cross a double-word boundary. If either double word hits in the DABR, the access is inhibited and the DAE occurs.

Table 2-26. DABR Results (Continued)

Operation	Description
lscbx instruction	This instruction is not supported by the DABR Feature. No DAE occurs, even if the EA matches.
Cache control instructions	These instructions are not supported by the DABR Feature. No DAE occurs even if the EA matches.

2.3.3.13.5 Processor Identification Register (PIR)—HID15

The PIR register, shown in Figure 2-29, is a 32-bit, supervisor-level register that holds the 4-bit processor identification tag (PID). This tag is useful for processor differentiation in multiprocessor system designs. The tag is also used to identify the sender and receiver tag for I/O controller interface operations. For more information, see Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations.” The PIR can be accessed by the **mfspr** instruction by using the SPR number 1023, as follows:

```
sync
mfspr   rD,1023
sync
```

The PIR is cleared by the hard reset operation.

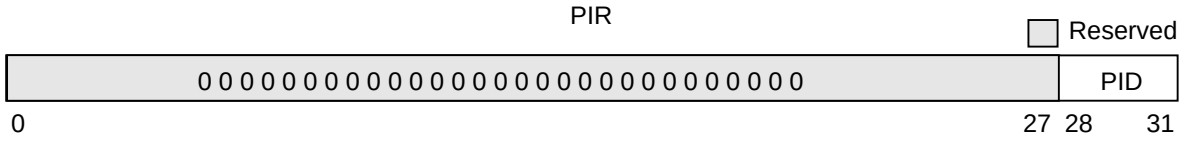


Figure 2-29. Processor Identification Register (PIR)

2.4 Operand Conventions

This section describes the conventions used for storing values in registers and memory.

2.4.1 Data Organization in Memory and Data Transfers

Bytes in memory are numbered consecutively starting with 0. Each number is the address of the corresponding byte.

Memory operands may be bytes, half words, words, or double words, or, for the load/store multiple and move assist instructions, a sequence of bytes or words. The address of a memory operand is the address of its first byte (that is, of its lowest-numbered byte). Operand length is implicit for each instruction.

2.4.1.1 Alignment and Misaligned Accesses

The operand of a single-register memory access instruction has a natural alignment boundary equal to the operand length. In other words, the “natural” address of an operand is an integral multiple of the operand length. A memory operand is said to be aligned if it is aligned at its natural boundary; otherwise it is misaligned.

Operands for single-register memory access instructions have the characteristics shown in Table 2-27. (Although not permitted as memory operands, quad words are shown because quad-word alignment is desirable for certain memory operands).

Table 2-27. Memory Operands

Operand	Length	Addr(28–31) if aligned
Byte	8 bits	xxxx
Half word	2 bytes	xxx0
Word	4 bytes	xx00
Double word	8 bytes	x000

Note: An “x” in an address bit position indicates that the bit can be 0 or 1 independent of the state of other bits in the address.

The concept of alignment is also applied more generally to data in memory. For example, 12 bytes of data are said to be word-aligned if its address is a multiple of four.

Some instructions require their memory operands to have certain alignment. In addition, alignment may affect performance. For single-register memory access instructions, the best performance is obtained when memory operands are aligned. Additional effects of data placement on performance are described in Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing.”

Instructions are four bytes long and word-aligned.

2.4.2 Effect of Operand Placement on Performance

The placement (location and alignment) of operands in memory affect the relative performance of memory accesses. Best performance is guaranteed if memory operands are aligned on natural boundaries. To obtain the best performance across the widest range of PowerPC processor implementations, the programmer should assume the performance model described in Figure 2-30 with respect to the placement of memory operands.

Operand		Boundary Crossing			
Size	Byte Alignment	None	Cache Line	Page	BAT/Segment
Integer					
4 Byte	4 <4	Optimal Good	— Good	— Poor	— Poor
2 Byte	2 <2	Optimal Good	— Good	— Poor	— Poor
1 Byte	1	Optimal	—	—	—
lmw, **stmw**	4	Good	Good	Good	Poor
String		Good	Good	Poor	Poor
Float					
8 Byte	8 4 <4	Optimal Good Poor	— Good Poor	— Poor Poor	— Poor Poor
4 Byte	4 <4	optimal Poor	— Poor	— Poor	— Poor

Figure 2-30. Performance Effects of Memory Operand Placement

The performance of accesses varies depending on the following:

- Operand size
- Operand alignment
- Crossing a cache block (sector) boundary
- Crossing a page boundary
- Crossing a BAT boundary
- Crossing a segment boundary

The load/store multiple instructions are defined by the PowerPC architecture to operate only on aligned operands, although the 601 supports unaligned operands. The move assist instructions have no alignment requirements.

2.4.2.1 Instruction Restart

If a memory access crosses a page or segment boundary, a number of conditions could abort the execution of the instruction after part of the access has been performed. For example, this may occur when a program attempts to access a page it has not previously accessed or when the processor must check for a possible change in memory attributes when an access crosses a page boundary. When this occurs, the operating system may restart the instruction. If the instruction is restarted, some bytes at that word address may be loaded from or stored to the target location a second time.

The following rules apply to memory accesses with regard to restarting the instruction:

- Aligned accesses—A single-register instruction that accesses an aligned operand is not partially executed.
- Misaligned accesses—A single-register instruction that accesses a misaligned operand may be partially executed if the access crosses a page boundary and a data access exception occurs on the second page.
- Load/store multiple, move assist—These instructions may be partially executed if, in accessing the locations specified by the instruction, a page boundary is crossed and a data access exception occurs on the second page.

2.4.2.2 Atomicity

All aligned accesses are atomic. Instructions causing multiple accesses (for example, load/store multiple and move assist instructions) are not atomic.

2.4.2.3 Access Order

The ordering of memory accesses is not guaranteed unless the programmer inserts appropriate ordering instructions, even if the accesses are generated by a single instruction. Misaligned accesses, load/store multiple instructions, and move assist instructions have no implicit ordering characteristics. For example, processor A may store a word operand on an odd half-word boundary. It may appear to processor A that the store completed atomically. Processor or other mechanism B, executing a load from the same location, may get a result that is a combination of the value of the first half word that existed prior to the store by processor A and the value of the second half word stored by processor A.

2.4.3 Byte and Bit Ordering

The PowerPC architecture supports both big- and little-endian byte ordering. The default byte- and bit ordering is big-endian, as shown in Figure 2-31. Byte ordering can be set to little-endian by setting the LM bit in the HID0 register. Note that the mechanism for selecting between byte orderings is different in the 601 than it is in the PowerPC architecture. The PowerPC architecture provides two enable bits in the MSR that allow independent control for user- and supervisor-level software.

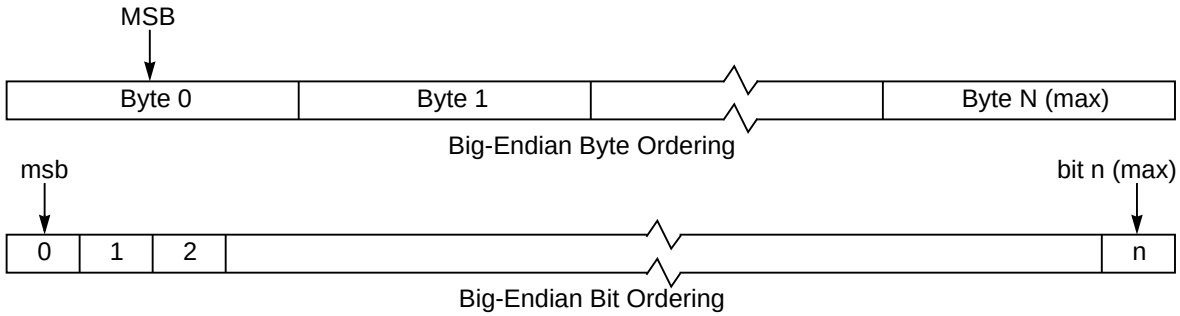


Figure 2-31. Big-Endian Byte and Bit Ordering

If individual data items were indivisible, the concept of byte ordering would be unnecessary. Order of bits or groups of bits within the smallest addressable unit of memory is irrelevant, because nothing can be observed about such order. Order matters only when scalars, which the processor and programmer regard as indivisible quantities, can be made up of more than one addressable units of memory.

For a device in which the smallest addressable unit is the 64-bit double word, there is no question of the order of bytes within double words. All transfers of individual scalars between registers and memory are of double words. A subset of the 64 bit scalar (for example, a byte) is not addressable in memory. As a result, to access any subset of the bits of a scalar, the entire 64-bit scalar must be accessed, and when a memory location is read, the 64-bit value returned is the 64-bit value last written to that location.

For PowerPC processors, the smallest addressable memory unit is the byte (8 bits), and scalars are composed of one or more sequential bytes. When a 32-bit scalar is moved from a register to memory, it occupies four consecutive byte addresses, and a decision must be made regarding the order of these bytes in these four addresses.

The choice of byte ordering is arbitrary. Although there are 24 ways (4!) to specify the ordering of four bytes within a word, illustrated as all the permutations of ordering of four elements—*ABCD*, *ABDC*, *ACBD*, *ACDB*…*DBCA*, *DCAB*, *DCBA*—where the bytes are ordered lowest address to highest address, only two of these orderings are practical—*ABCD* (big-endian) and *DCBA* (little-endian).

The following example shows how the byte ordering is changed from big- to little-endian mode by setting HID0[28] (*n* refers to the address):

```
<msr[ee] is off (zero) >
n       sync                    |Instructions
n+4     sync                    |accessed in
n+8     sync                    |big-endian mode
n+c     mtspr hid0(28)|
n+10    sync                    |Instructions
n+14    sync                    |accessed in
n+18    sync                    |little-endian mode
```

The same instruction sequence can be used to go from little- to big-endian mode by clearing HID0[28].

2.4.3.1 Little-Endian Address Manipulation

In little-endian operations, the three least significant bits of an address are manipulated to provide the appearance of a little-endian memory to the program for aligned loads and stores, as follows:

New_addr(29) <- EA(29) xor (word | half | byte)

New_addr(30) <- EA(30) xor (half | byte)

New_addr(31) <- EA(31) xor (byte)

The physical address used for an access generated by a load or a store to an operand that is less than a doubleword is modified as indicated. Addresses for aligned double-word accesses and cache control operations are not modified since the endian mode has no effect on aligned accesses larger than one word.

On a data access exception, the DAR contains the effective address (EA) generated by the memory access instruction (that is, the address before modification) regardless of the endian mode selected. SRR0 contains the EA of an instruction as described in Chapter 5, “Exceptions,” (that is, the address before modification).

If the processor is in little-endian mode, the address is modified; if the processor is in big-endian mode, the address is unmodified.

The T bit does not affect address manipulation or the detection of alignment exception conditions. Therefore I/O interface controller operations and BUID x'07F' segments receive the modified address. The **ecowx** and **eciwx** instructions are treated as no-ops if the T bit is set regardless of whether the 601 is in little-endian mode.

Because the 601 defines a cache block as 32 bytes, bits 27–31 of the address are not used for snooping. The program address should be specified, when an address is loaded into HID2 or HID5. That is, if the processor is in little-endian mode, a little-endian address should be specified, and if the processor is in big-endian mode, a big-endian address should be specified.

2.4.3.2 Little-Endian Alignment Exceptions

Additional alignment exception conditions can occur when the processor is in little-endian mode.

Load/store multiple operands (regardless of EA)

- **lmw** **stmw**
- **lscbx*x*** **stswi**
- **lswi** **stswx**
- **lswx**

The new alignment exception conditions are prioritized with other alignment exceptions ahead of data access exceptions. See Section 2.4.5.2, “Misaligned Scalars” for more information.

2.4.3.3 Little-Endian Instruction Fetching

In little-endian mode, instructions are fetched in big-endian order; however, the instructions are swapped within a double word before being passed to the instruction queue, thus putting the instructions in little-endian order for execution. On exceptions, the 601 reports the correct effective address (as defined by the programming model or computed by a storage access instruction) regardless of the endian mode selected.

2.4.3.4 Big-Endian Byte Ordering

Big-endian ordering (*ABCD*) assigns the lowest address to the highest-order eight bits of the scalar. This is called big-endian because the big end of the scalar, considered as a binary number, comes first in memory.

2.4.3.5 Little-Endian Byte Ordering

Little-endian byte ordering (*DCBA*) assigns the lowest address to the lowest-order (rightmost) 8 bits of the scalar. The little end of the scalar, considered as a binary number, comes first in memory.

2.4.4 Structure Mapping Examples

The following C programming example contains an assortment of scalars and one character string. The value presumed to be in each structure element is shown in hexadecimal in the comments and are used below to show how the bytes that comprise each structure element are mapped into memory.

```
struct {
        int       a;      /* x'11121314'                  word          */
        double    b;      /* x'2122232425262728'          doubleword    */
        char *    c;      /* x'31323334'                  word          */
        char      d[7];   /* 'A','‘B','C','D','E','F','G' array of bytes */
        short     e;      /* x'5152'                      halfword      */
        int       f;      /* x'61626364'                  word          */
} s;
```

2.4.4.1 Big-Endian Mapping

The big-endian mapping of a structure *S* is shown in Figure 2-32. Addresses are shown in hexadecimal at the left of each double word and in small figures below each byte. The content of each byte, as shown in the preceding C programming example, is shown in hexadecimal as characters for the elements of the string.

00	11 00	12 01	13 02	14 03	(*) 04	(*) 05	(*) 06	(*) 07
08	21 08	22 09	23 0A	24 0B	25 0C	26 0D	27 0E	28 0F
10	31 10	32 11	33 12	34 13	‘A’ 14	‘B’ 15	‘C’ 16	‘D’ 17
18	‘E’ 18	‘F’ 19	‘G’ 1A	(*) 1B	51 1C	52 1D	(*) 1E	(*) 1F
20	61 20	62 21	63 22	64 23				

Figure 2-32. Big-Endian Mapping of Structure *S*

Note that the C structure mapping introduces padding (skipped bytes indicated by asterisks "(*)" in Figure 2-32) in the map in order to align the scalars on their proper boundaries—4 bytes between *a* and *b*, one byte between *d* and *e*, and two bytes between *e* and *f*. Both big- and little-endian mappings use the same amount of padding.

2.4.4.2 Little-Endian Mapping

Figure 2-33 shows the structure, *S*, using little-endian mapping. Double words are laid out from right to left.

(*) 07	(*) 06	(*) 05	(*) 04	11 03	12 02	13 01	14 00	00
21 0F	22 0E	23 0D	24 0C	25 0B	26 0A	27 09	28 08	08
'D' 17	'C' 16	'B' 15	'A' 14	31 13	32 12	33 11	34 10	10
(*) 1F	(*) 1E	51 1D	52 1C	(*) 1B	'G' 1A	'F' 19	'E' 18	18
				61 23	62 22	63 21	64 20	20

Figure 2-33. Little-Endian Mapping of Structure *S*

2.4.5 PowerPC Byte Ordering

The default mapping for PowerPC processors is big-endian. In the 601, little-endian mode can be selected after a hard reset by setting the LM bit in the HID0 register in the 601 through the use of the **mtspr** instruction. Note that the PowerPC architecture defines two bits in the MSR for specifying byte ordering—LE (little-endian mode) and ELE (exception little-endian mode). These bits are not implemented in the 601.

The 601 big- and little-endian mode operation differs from the PowerPC architecture in the following ways:

- Choice of big- or little-endian modes is provided through HID0[LM]—bit 28 of HID0. The PowerPC architecture defines two bits in the MSR for this purpose.
- The basic mode switching sequence requires three **sync** instructions followed by the **mtspr** access to HID0[28], followed by three more **sync** instructions. This sequence should be used whenever the state of this bit is changed.
- External and decrementer exceptions should be disabled before executing the sequence.
- The starting address of the sequence does not matter; however, the sequence cannot cross a protection boundary.
- In some cases the **mtspr** access to HID0[LM] can occur twice depending on the alignment of the instruction.

- In some cases not all of the **sync** instructions will actually be executed, depending on the starting address of the sequence.
- Although HID0[LM] can be switched dynamically, there are certain constraints (such as turning off translation and emptying the memory queues) that must be considered before the bit can be switched. Note that, when switching modes between tasks, this code sequence may not allow the 601 to operate at an optimal performance level.

2.4.5.1 Aligned Scalars

For the load and store instructions, the effective address is computed as specified in the instruction descriptions in Chapter 3, “Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary.”

Table 2-28 shows how the physical address is modified.

Table 2-28. EA Modifications

Data Width (Bytes)	EA Modification
8	No change
4	XOR with b'100'
2	XOR with b'110'
1	XOR with b'111'

The modified physical address is passed to the data cache or the main memory and the specified width of the data is transferred between a GPR or FPR and the (as modified) addressed memory locations. Although the data is stored using big-endian byte ordering (but not in the same bytes within double words as with LM = 0), the modification of the EA makes it appear to the processor that it is stored in little-endian mode.

The structure *S* would be placed in memory as shown in Figure 2-34.

00					11	12	13	14
	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07
08	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F
10	‘D’	‘C’	‘B’	‘A’	31	32	33	34
	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	(*)	(*)	51	52	(*)	‘G’	‘F’	‘E’
	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E	1F
20	(*)	(*)	(*)	(*)	61	62	63	64
	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27

Figure 2-34. PowerPC Little-Endian Structure *S* in Memory or Cache

Because of the modifications on the EA, the same structure *S* appears to the processor to be mapped into memory this way when LM = 1 (little-endian enabled). This is shown in Figure 2-35.

07	06	05	04	11 03	12 02	13 01	14 00	00
21 0F	22 0E	23 0D	24 0C	25 0B	26 0A	27 09	28 08	08
'D' 17	'C' 16	'B' 15	'A' 14	31 13	32 12	33 11	34 10	10
(*) 1F	(*) 1E	51 1D	52 1C	(*) 1B	'G' 1A	'F' 19	'E' 18	18
				61 23	62 22	63 21	64 20	20

Figure 2-35. PowerPC Little-Endian Structure *S* as Seen by Processor

Note that as seen by the program executing in the processor, the mapping for the structure *S* is identical to the little-endian mapping shown in Figure 2-33. From outside of the processor, the addresses of the bytes making up the structure *S* are as shown in Figure 2-34. These addresses match neither the big-endian mapping of Figure 2-32 or the little-endian mapping of Figure 2-33. This must be taken into account when performing I/O operations in little-endian mode; this is discussed in Section 2.4.7, "PowerPC Input/Output in Little-Endian Mode."

2.4.5.2 Misaligned Scalars

Performing an XOR operation on the low-order bits of the address of a scalar requires the scalar to be aligned on a boundary equal to a multiple of its length. When executing in little-endian mode (LM = 1), the 601 takes an alignment exception whenever a load or store instruction is issued with a misaligned EA, regardless of whether such an access could be handled without causing an exception in big-endian mode (LM = 0).

The PowerPC architecture states that half words, words, and double words be placed in memory such that the little-endian address of the lowest-order byte is the EA computed by the load or store instruction; the little-endian address of the next-lowest-order byte is one greater, and so on. Figure 2-36 shows a four-byte word stored at little-endian address 5. The word is presumed to contain the binary representation of x'11121314'.

12 07	13 06	14 05	(*) 04	(*) 03	(*) 02	(*) 01	(*) 00	00
(*) 0F	(*) 0E	(*) 0D	(*) 0C	(*) 0B	(*) 0A	(*) 09	11 08	08

Figure 2-36. PowerPC Little-Endian Mode, Word Stored at Address 5

Figure 2-37 shows the same word stored by a little-endian program, as seen by the memory system (assuming big-endian mode).

Figure 2-37. Word Stored at Little-Endian Address 5 as Seen by Big-Endian Addressing

Note that the misaligned word in this example spans two double words. The two parts of the misaligned word are not contiguous in the big-endian addressing space.

2.4.5.3 Non-Scalars

The PowerPC architecture has two types of instructions that handle non-scalars (multiple instances of scalars). Neither type can deal with the modified EAs required in little-endian mode and both types cause alignment exceptions.

2.4.5.3.1 String Operations

The load and store string instructions, listed in Table 2-29, cause alignment exceptions when they are executed in little-endian mode (HID0[LM] = 1).

Table 2-29. Load/Store String Instructions that Take Alignment Exceptions if LM = 1

Mnemonic	Description
lswi	Load String Word Immediate
lswx	Load String Word Indexed
stswi	Store String Word Immediate
stswx	Store String Word Indexed
lscbx	Load String and Compare Byte Indexed

String accesses are inherently byte-based operations, which, for improved performance, the 601 handles as a series of word-aligned accesses.

Note that the system software must determine whether to emulate the excepting instruction or treat it as an illegal operation. Because little-endian mode programs are new with respect to the PowerPC architecture—that is, they are not POWER binaries—having the compiler generate these instructions in little-endian mode would be slower than processing the string in-line or by using a subroutine call.

2.4.5.3.2 Load and Store Multiple Instructions

The instructions in Table 2-30 cause alignment exceptions when executed in little-endian mode (HID0[LM] = 1).

Table 2-30. Load/Store Multiple Instructions that Take Alignment Exceptions if LM = 1

Mnemonic	Instruction
lmw	Load Multiple Word
stmw	Store Multiple Word

Although the words addressed by these instructions are on word boundaries, each word is in the half of its containing double word opposite from where it would be in big-endian mode.

Note that the system software must determine whether to emulate the excepting instruction or treat it as an illegal operation. Because little-endian mode programs are new with respect to the PowerPC architecture—that is, they are not POWER binaries—having the compiler generate these instructions in little-endian mode would be slower than processing the string in-line or by using a subroutine call.

2.4.6 PowerPC Instruction Memory Addressing in Little-Endian Mode

Each PowerPC instruction occupies 32 bits (one word) of memory. PowerPC processors fetch and execute instructions as if the current instruction address had been advanced one word for each sequential instruction. When operating with LM = 1, the address is modified according to the little-endian rule for fetching word-length scalars; that is, it is XORed with b'100'. A program is thus an array of little-endian words with each word fetched and executed in order (not including branches).

Consider the following example:

```
loop:
        cmplwi    r5,0
        beq       done
        lwzux     r4, r5, r6
        add       r7, r7, r4
        subi      r5, 1
        b         loop
done:
        stw       r7, total
```

Assuming the program starts at address 0, these instructions are mapped into memory for big-endian execution as shown in Figure 2-38.

00	loop: cmplwi r5, 8				beq done			
	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07
08	lwzux r4, r5, r6				add r7, r7, r4			
	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F
10	subi r5, 1				b loop			
	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	done: stw r7, total							
	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E	1F

Figure 2-38. PowerPC Big-Endian, Instruction Sequence as Seen by Processor

If this same program is assembled for and executed in little-endian mode, the mapping seen by the processor appears as shown in Figure 2-39.

Each machine instruction appears in memory as a 32-bit integer containing the value described in the instruction description, regardless of whether LM is set. This is because scalars are always mapped in memory in big-endian byte order.

beq done				loop: cmplwi				00
07	06	05	04	03	02	01	00	
add r7, r7, r4				lwzux r4, r5, r6				08
0F	0E	0D	0C	0B	0A	09	08	
b loop				subi r5, 1				10
17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	
				done: stw r7, total				18
1F	1E	1D	1C	1B	1A	19	18	

Figure 2-39. PowerPC Little-Endian, Instruction Sequence as Seen by Processor

When little-endian mapping is used, all references to the instruction stream must follow little-endian addressing conventions, including addresses saved in system registers when the exception is taken, return addresses saved in the link register, and branch displacements and addresses.

- An instruction address placed in the link register by branch and link, or an instruction address saved in an SPR when an exception is taken is the address that a program executing in little-endian mode would use to access the instruction as a word of data using a load instruction.
- An offset in a relative branch instruction reflects the difference between the addresses of the instructions, where the addresses used are those that a program executing in little-endian mode would use to access the instructions as data words using a load instruction.

- A target address in an absolute branch instruction is the address that a program executing in little-endian mode would use to access the target instruction as a word of data using a load instruction.

2.4.7 PowerPC Input/Output in Little-Endian Mode

Input/output operations, such as writing the contents of a memory page to disk, transfers a byte stream on both big- and little-endian systems. For the disk transfer, byte 0 of the page is written to the first byte of a disk record and so on.

For a PowerPC system running in big-endian mode, both the processor and the memory subsystem recognize the same byte as byte 0. However, this is not true for a PowerPC system running in little-endian mode because of the modification of the three low-order bits when the processor accesses memory.

In order for I/O transfers in little-endian mode to appear to transfer bytes properly, they must be performed as if the bytes transferred were accessed one at a time, using the little-endian address modification appropriate for the single-byte transfers (XOR the bits with b'111'). This does not mean that I/O on little-endian PowerPC machines must be done using only one-byte-wide transfers. Data transfers can be as wide as desired, but the order of the bytes within double words must be as if they were fetched or stored one at a time.

Note that I/O operations can also be performed with certain devices by merely storing to or loading from addresses that are designated as I/O controller interface addresses (SR[T] is set). Care must be taken with such operations when defining the addresses to be used because these addresses are subjected to the EA modifications described in Table 2-28. A load or store that maps to a control register on a device may require the bytes of the value transferred to be reversed. If this reversal is required, the loads and stores with byte reversal instructions may be used.

2.5 Floating-Point Execution Models

The IEEE-754 standard includes 32-bit and 64-bit arithmetic. The standard requires that single-precision arithmetic be provided for single-precision operands. The standard permits double-precision arithmetic instructions to have either (or both) single-precision or double-precision operands, but states that single-precision arithmetic instructions should not accept double-precision operands.

The PowerPC architecture follows these guidelines:

- Double-precision arithmetic instructions can have operands of either or both precisions
- Single-precision arithmetic instructions require all operands to be single-precision
- Double-precision arithmetic instructions produce double-precision values
- Single-precision arithmetic instructions produce single-precision values

For arithmetic instructions, conversions from double- to single-precision must be done explicitly by software, while conversions from single- to double-precision are done implicitly.

All PowerPC implementations provide the equivalent of the following execution models to ensure that identical results are obtained. Definition of the arithmetic instructions for infinities, denormalized numbers, and NaNs follow conventions described in the following sections.

Although the double-precision format specifies an 11-bit exponent, exponent arithmetic uses two additional bit positions to avoid potential transient overflow conditions. An extra bit is required when denormalized double-precision numbers are prenormalized. A second bit is required to permit computation of the adjusted exponent value in the following examples when the corresponding exception enable bit is one:

- Underflow during multiplication using a denormalized factor.
- Overflow during division using a denormalized divisor.

2.5.1 Execution Model for IEEE Operations

The following description uses 64-bit arithmetic as an example; 32-bit arithmetic is similar except that the fraction field is a 23-bit field and the single-precision guard, round, and sticky bits (described in this section) are logically adjacent to the 23-bit FRACTION field.

The bits and fields for the IEEE 64-bit execution model are defined as follows:

- The S bit is the sign bit.
- The C bit is the carry bit that captures the carry out of the significand.
- The L bit is the leading unit bit of the significand which receives the implicit bit from the operands.
- The FRACTION is a 52-bit field, which accepts the fraction of the operands.
- The guard (G), round (R), and sticky (X) bits are extensions to the low-order bits of the accumulator. The G and R bits are required for post normalization of the result. The G, R, and X bits are required during rounding to determine if the intermediate result is equally near the two nearest representable values. The X bit serves as an extension to the G and R bits by representing the logical OR of all bits that may appear to the low-order side of the R bit, either due to shifting the accumulator right or other generation of low-order result bits. The G and R bits participate in the left shifts with zeros being shifted into the R bit. Table 2-31 shows the significance of the G, R, and X bits with respect to the intermediate result (IR), the next lower in magnitude representable number (NL), and the next higher in magnitude representable number (NH).

Table 2-31. Interpretation of G, R, and X Bits

G	R	X	Interpretation
0	0	0	IR is exact
0	0	1	IR closer to NL
0	1	0	
0	1	1	
1	0	0	IR midway between NL & NH
1	0	1	IR closer to NH
1	1	0	
1	1	1	

The significand of the intermediate result is made up of the L bit, the FRACTION, and the G, R, and X bits.

The infinitely precise intermediate result of an operation is the result normalized in bits L, FRACTION, G, R, and X of the floating-point accumulator.

Before results are stored into an FPR, the significand is rounded if necessary, using the rounding mode specified by FPSCR[RN]. If rounding causes a carry into C, the significand is shifted right one position and the exponent is incremented by one. This may yield an inexact result and possibly exponent overflow. Fraction bits to the left of the bit position used for rounding are stored into the FPR, and low-order bit positions, if any, are set to zero.

Four rounding modes are provided which are user-selectable through FPSCR[RN] as described in Section 2.5.6, “Rounding.” For rounding, the conceptual guard, round, and sticky bits are defined in terms of accumulator bits.

Table 2-32 shows the positions of the guard, round, and sticky bits for double-precision and single-precision floating-point numbers.

Table 2-32. Location of the Guard, Round and Sticky Bits

Format	Guard	Round	Sticky
Double	G bit	R bit	X bit
Single	24	25	26–52 G,R,X

Rounding can be treated as though the significand were shifted right, if required, until the least significant bit to be retained is in the low-order bit position of the FRACTION. If any of the guard, round, or sticky bits are nonzero, the result is inexact.

Z1 and Z2, defined in Section 2.5.6, “Rounding,” can be used to approximate the result in the target format when one of the following rules is used:

- Round to nearest
  - — Guard bit = 0: The result is truncated. (Result exact (GRX = 000) or closest to next lower value in magnitude (GRX = 001, 010, or 011)
  - — Guard bit = 1: Depends on round and sticky bits:

    Case a: If the round or sticky bit is one (inclusive), the result is incremented. (result closest to next higher value in magnitude (GRX = 101, 110, or 111))

    Case b: If the round and sticky bits are zero (result midway between closest representable values) then if the low-order bit of the result is one, the result is incremented. Otherwise (the low-order bit of the result is zero) the result is truncated (this is the case of a tie rounded to even).
- If during the round to nearest process, truncation of the unrounded number produces the maximum magnitude for the specified precision, the following action is taken:
  - — Guard bit = 1: Store infinity with the sign of the unrounded result.
  - — Guard bit = 0: Store the truncated (maximum magnitude) value.
- Round toward zero—Choose the smaller in magnitude of Z1 or Z2. If the guard, round, or sticky bit is nonzero, the result is inexact.
- Round toward +infinity
  Choose Z1.
- Round toward –infinity
  Choose Z2.

  Where the result is to have fewer than 53 bits of precision because the instruction is a floating round to single-precision or single-precision arithmetic instruction, the intermediate result either is normalized or is placed in correct denormalized form before the result is potentially rounded.

2.5.1.1 Execution Model for Multiply-Add Type Instructions

The PowerPC architecture makes use of a special instruction form that performs up to three operations in one instruction (a multiply, an add, and a negate). With this added capability is the ability to produce a more exact intermediate result as an input to the rounder. The 32-bit arithmetic is similar except that the fraction field is smaller. Note that the rounding occurs only after add; therefore, the computation of the sum and product together are infinitely precise before the final result is rounded to a representable format.

The first part of the operation is a multiply. The multiply has two 53-bit significands as inputs, which are assumed to be prenormalized, and produces a result conforming to the above model. If there is a carry out of the significand (into the C bit), the significand is shifted right one position, placing the L bit into the most significant bit of the FRACTION and placing the C bit into the L bit. All 106 bits (L bit plus the fraction) of the product take part in the add operation. If the exponents of the two inputs to the adder are not equal, the

significand of the operand with the smaller exponent is aligned (shifted) to the right by an amount added to that exponent to make it equal to the other input's exponent. Zeros are shifted into the left of the significand as it is aligned and bits shifted out of bit 105 of the significand are ORed into the X' bit. The add operation also produces a result conforming to the above model with the X' bit taking part in the add operation.

The result of the add is then normalized, with all bits of the add result, except the X' bit, participating in the shift. The normalized result provides an intermediate result as input to the rounder that conforms to the model described in Section 2.5.1, "Execution Model for IEEE Operations," where:

- The guard bit is bit 53 of the intermediate result.
- The round bit is bit 54 of the intermediate result.
- The sticky bit is the OR of all remaining bits to the right of bit 55, inclusive.

If the instruction is floating negative multiply-add or floating negative multiply-subtract, the final result is negated.

Status bits are set to reflect the result of the entire operation: for example, no status is recorded for the result of the multiplication part of the operation.

2.5.2 Floating-Point Data Format

The PowerPC architecture defines the representation of a floating-point value in two different binary, fixed-length formats. The format may be a 32-bit format for a single-precision floating-point value or a 64-bit format for a double-precision floating-point value. The single-precision format may be used for data in memory. The double-precision format can be used for data in memory or in floating-point registers.

The length of the exponent and the fraction fields differ between these two precision formats. The structure of the single-precision format is shown in Figure 2-40; the structure of the double-precision format is shown in Figure 2-41.

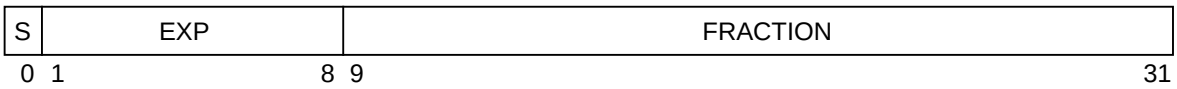


Figure 2-40. Floating-Point Single-Precision Format

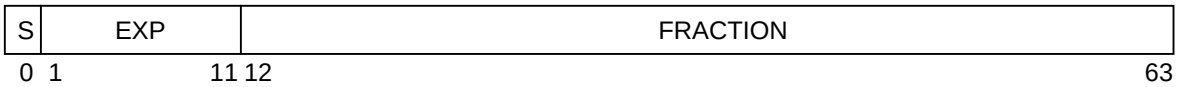


Figure 2-41. Floating-Point Double-Precision Format

Values in floating-point format consist of three fields:

- S (sign bit)
- EXP (exponent + bias)
- FRACTION (fraction)

If only a portion of a floating-point data item in memory is accessed, as with a load or store instruction for a byte or half word (or word in the case of floating-point double-precision format), the value affected depends on whether the PowerPC system is using big- or little-endian byte ordering, which is described in Section 2.4.3, “Byte and Bit Ordering.” Big-endian mode is the default.

The significand consists of a leading implied bit concatenated on the right with the FRACTION. This leading implied bit is a 1 for normalized numbers and a 0 for denormalized numbers in the unit bit position (that is, the first bit to the left of the binary point). Values representable within the two floating-point formats can be specified by the parameters listed in Table 2-33.

Table 2-33. IEEE Floating-Point Fields

Parameter	Single-Precision	Double-Precision
Exponent bias	+127	+1023
Maximum exponent (unbiased)	+127	+1023
Minimum exponent	–126	–1022
Format width	32 bits	64 bits
Sign width	1 bit	1 bit
Exponent width	8 bits	11 bits
Fraction width	23 bits	52 bits
Significand width	24 bits	53 bits

The exponent is expressed as an 8-bit value for single-precision numbers or an 11-bit value for double-precision numbers. These bits hold the biased exponent; the true value of the exponent can be determined by subtracting 127 for single-precision numbers and 1023 for double-precision values. This is shown in Figure 2-42. Note that using a bias eliminates the need for a sign bit. The highest-order bit is used both to generate the number, and is an implicit sign bit. Note also that two values are reserved—all bits set indicates that the number is an infinity or NaN and all bits cleared indicates that the number is either zero or denormalized.

	Biased Exponent (binary)	Single-Precision (unbiased)	Double-Precision (unbiased)
	11. 11	Reserved for Infinities and NaNs	
Positive	11. 10	+127	+1023
	11. 01	+126	+1022
	.	.	.
	.	.	.
	.	.	.
	10. 00	1	1
Zero →	01. 11	0	0
Negative	01. 10	–1	–1
	.	.	.
	.	.	.
	.	.	.
	00. 01	–126	–1022
	00. 00	Reserved for Zeros and Denormalized Numbers	

Figure 2-42. Biased Exponent Format

2.5.2.1 Value Representation

The PowerPC architecture defines numerical and non-numerical values representable within single- and double-precision formats. The numerical values are approximations to the real numbers and include the normalized numbers, denormalized numbers, and zero values. The non-numerical values representable are the positive and negative infinities, and the NaNs. The positive and negative infinities are adjoined to the real numbers but are not numbers themselves, and the standard rules of arithmetic do not hold when they appear in an operation. They are related to the real numbers by “order” alone. It is possible, however, to define restricted operations among numbers and infinities as defined below. The relative location on the real number line for each of the defined entities is shown in Figure 2-43.

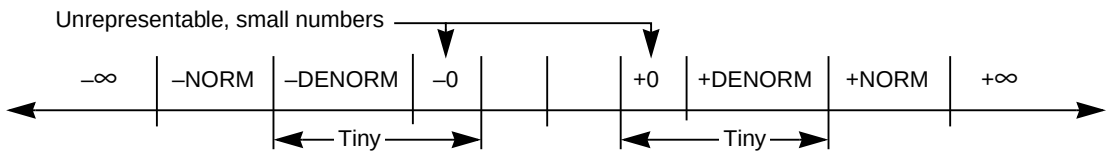


Figure 2-43. Approximation to Real Numbers

The positive and negative NaNs are not related to the numbers or ±∞ by order or value, but they are encodings that convey diagnostic information such as the representation of uninitialized variables. Table 2-34 describes each of the floating-point formats.

Table 2-34. Recognized Floating-Point Numbers

Sign Bit	Biased Exponent	Leading Bit	Fraction	Value
0	Maximum	x	Nonzero	+NaN
0	Maximum	x	Zero	+Infinity
0	0 < Exponent < Maximum	1	Nonzero	+Normalized
0	0	0	Nonzero	+Denormalized
0	0	0	Zero	+0
1	0	0	Zero	–0
1	0	0	Nonzero	–Denormalized
1	0 < Exponent < Maximum	1	Nonzero	–Normalized
1	Maximum	x	Zero	–Infinity
1	Maximum	x	Nonzero	–NaN

The following sections describe floating-point values defined in the architecture:

2.5.2.2 Binary Floating-Point Numbers

Binary floating-point numbers are machine-representable values used to approximate real numbers. Three categories of numbers are supported: normalized numbers, denormalized numbers, and zero values.

2.5.2.3 Normalized Numbers (±NORM)

The values for normalized numbers have a biased exponent value in the range:

- 1–254 in single-precision format
- 1–2046 in double-precision format

The implied unit bit is one. Normalized numbers are interpreted as follows:

$$NORM = (-1)^s \times 2^E \times (1.fraction)$$

where (s) is the sign, (E) is the unbiased exponent and (1.fraction) is the significand composed of a leading unit bit (implied bit) and a fractional part. The format for normalized numbers is shown in Figure 2-44.

Figure 2-44. Format for Normalized Numbers

The ranges covered by the magnitude (M) of a normalized floating-point number are approximately equal to the following:

Single-precision format:

$1.2 \times 10^{-38} \leq M \leq 3.4 \times 10^{38}$

Double-precision format:

$2.2 \times 10^{-308} \leq M \leq 1.8 \times 10^{308}$

2.5.2.4 Zero Values (±0)

Zero values have a biased exponent value of zero and a mantissa (leading bit = 0) value of zero. This is shown in Figure 2-45. Zeros can have a positive or negative sign. The sign of zero is ignored by comparison operations (that is, comparison regards +0 as equal to –0).

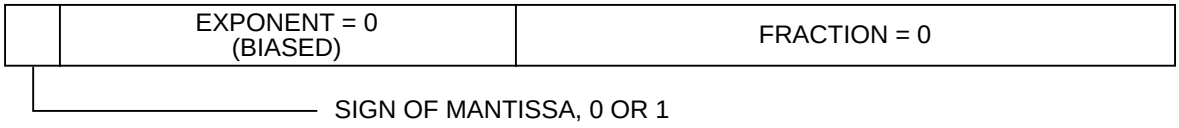


Figure 2-45. Format for Zero Numbers

2.5.2.5 Denormalized Numbers (±DENORM)

Denormalized numbers have a biased exponent value of zero and a nonzero fraction field value. The format for denormalized numbers is shown in Figure 2-46.

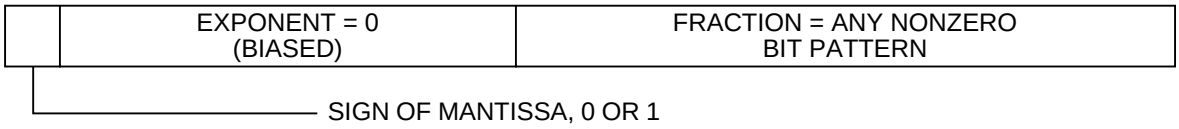


Figure 2-46. Format for Denormalized Numbers

Denormalized numbers are nonzero numbers smaller in magnitude than the representable normalized numbers. They are values in which the implied unit bit is zero. Denormalized numbers are interpreted as follows:

$$DENORM = (-1)^s \times 2^{Emin} \times (0.fraction)$$

where (Emin) is the minimum representable exponent value (–126 for single-precision, –1022 for double-precision).

2.5.2.6 Infinities (±∞)

Positive and negative infinities have the maximum biased exponent value:

- 255 in the single-precision format
- 2047 in the double-precision format

The format for infinities is shown in Figure 2-47.

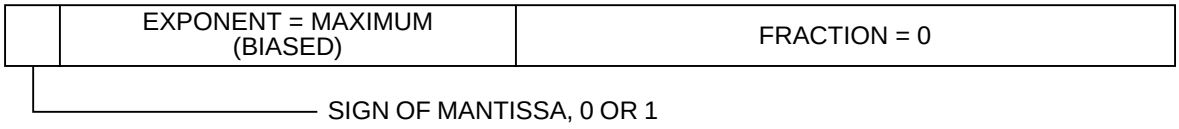


Figure 2-47. Format for Positive and Negative Infinities

The fraction value is zero. Infinities are used to approximate values greater in magnitude than the maximum normalized value. Infinity arithmetic is defined as the limiting case of real arithmetic, with restricted operations defined between numbers and infinities. Infinities and the reals can be related by ordering in the affine sense:

$-\infty <$ every finite number $< +\infty$

Arithmetic using infinite numbers is always exact and does not signal any exception, except when an exception occurs due to the invalid operations as described in Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”

2.5.2.7 Not a Numbers (NaNs)

NaNs have the maximum biased exponent value and a nonzero fraction field value. The format for NaNs is shown in Figure 2-48. The sign bit of NaNs is ignored (that is, NaNs are neither positive nor negative). If the high-order bit of the fraction field is a zero, the NaN is a signaling NaN; otherwise it is a quiet NaN (QNaN).

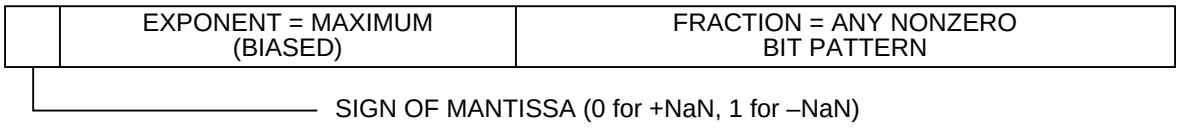


Figure 2-48. Format for NaNs

Signaling NaNs signal exceptions when they are specified as arithmetic operands.

Quiet NaNs represent the results of certain invalid operations, such as invalid arithmetic operations on infinities or on NaNs, when the invalid operation exception is disabled (FPSCR[VE] = 0). QNaNs are generated under the following conditions:

- An invalid operation occurs and FPSCR[VE] = 0
- An **mffs** instruction is executed and the upper 32 bits are undefined (this case is 601-specific).
- On Floating Convert to Integer with Round (**fctir**) and Floating Convert to Integer with Round toward Zero (**fctirz**) the PowerPC architecture defines bits 0–31 of the target floating point register as undefined. In the 601, these bits take on the value x'FFF8 0000' (which is the representation for a QNaN).

Quiet NaNs propagate through all operations, except ordered comparison and conversion to integer operations without signaling exceptions. Specific encodings in QNaNs can thus be preserved through a sequence of operations and used to convey diagnostic information to help identify results from invalid operations.

When a QNaN results from an operation because an operand is a NaN or because a QNaN is generated due to a disabled invalid operation exception, the following rule is applied to determine the QNaN with the high-order fraction bit set to one that is to be stored as the result:

```
If (frA) is a NaN
Then frD ← (frA)
    Else if (frB) is a NaN
        Then frD ← (frB)
        Else if (frC) is a NaN
            Then frD ← (frC)
            Else if generated QNaN
                Then frD ← generated QNaN
```

If the operand specified by **fr**A is a NaN, that NaN is stored as the result. Otherwise, if the operand specified by **fr**B is a NaN (if the instruction specifies an **fr**B operand), that NaN is stored as the result. Otherwise, if the operand specified by **fr**C is a NaN (if the instruction specifies an **fr**C operand), that NaN is stored as the result. Otherwise, if a QNaN is generated by a disabled invalid operation exception, that QNaN is stored as the result. If a QNaN is to be generated as a result, the QNaN generated has a sign bit of zero, an exponent field of all ones, and a high-order fraction bit of one with all other fraction bits zero. An instruction that generates a QNaN as the result of a disabled invalid operation generates this QNaN. This is shown in Figure 2-49.

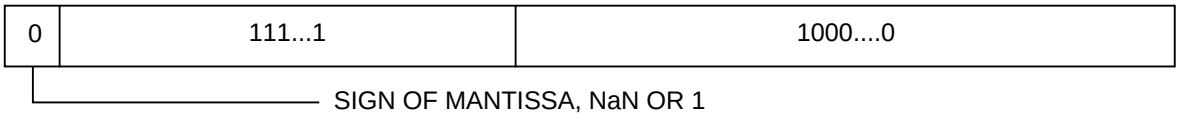


Figure 2-49. Representation of Generated QNaN

2.5.3 Sign of Result

The following rules govern the sign of the result of an arithmetic operation, when the operation does not yield an exception. These rules apply even when the operands or results are ±0 or ±∞:

- The sign of the result of an addition operation is the sign of the source operand having the larger absolute value. If both operands have the same sign, the sign of the result of an addition operation is the same as the sign of the operands. The sign of the result of the subtraction operation, x – y, is the same as the sign of the result of the addition operation, x + (–y).
- When the sum of two operands with opposite sign, or the difference of two operands with the same sign, is exactly zero, the sign of the result is positive in all rounding modes except round toward negative infinity(–∞), in which case the sign is negative.
- The sign of the result of a multiplication or division operation is the exclusive OR of the signs of the source operands.
- The sign of the result of a round to single-precision or convert to/from integer operation is the sign of the source operand.

For multiply-add instructions, these rules are applied first to the multiplication operation and then to the addition or subtraction operation (one of the source operands to the addition or subtraction operation is the result of the multiplication operation).

2.5.4 Normalization and Denormalization

When an arithmetic operation produces an intermediate result, consisting of a sign bit, an exponent, and a nonzero significand with a zero leading bit, the result is not a normalized number and must be normalized before it is stored.

A number is normalized by shifting its significand left while decrementing its exponent by one for each bit shifted, until the leading significand bit becomes one. The guard bit and the round bit participate in the shift with zeros shifted into the round bit; see Section 2.5.1, “Execution Model for IEEE Operations.” During normalization, the exponent is regarded as if its range were unlimited. If the resulting exponent value is less than the minimum value that can be represented in the format specified for the result, the intermediate result is said to be “tiny” and the stored result is determined by the rules described in Section 5.4.7.5, “Underflow Exception Condition.” The sign of the number does not change.

When an arithmetic operation produces a nonzero intermediate result whose exponent is less than the minimum value that can be represented in the format specified, the stored result may need to be denormalized. The result is determined by the rules described in Section 5.4.7.5, “Underflow Exception Condition.”

A number is denormalized by shifting its significand to the right while incrementing its exponent by one for each bit shifted until the exponent equals the format’s minimum value. If any significant bits are lost in this shifting process then “Loss of Accuracy” has occurred and an underflow exception is signaled. The sign of the number does not change.

When denormalized numbers are operands of multiply and divide operations, operands are prenormalized internally before performing the operations.

2.5.5 Data Handling and Precision

There are specific instructions for moving floating-point data between the FPRs and memory. For double-precision format data, the data is not altered during the move. For single-precision data, the format is converted to double-precision format when data is loaded from memory into an FPR. A format conversion from double- to single-precision is performed when data from an FPR is stored. Floating-point exceptions cannot occur during these operations.

All arithmetic operations use floating-point double-precision format.

Floating-point single-precision formats are used by the following four types of instructions:

- Load Floating-Point Single-Precision (**lfs**)—This instruction accesses a single-precision operand in single-precision format in memory, converts it to double-precision, and loads it into an FPR. Exceptions are not detected during the load operation.
- Floating-point Round to Single-Precision (**frsp***x*)—If the operand is not already in single-precision range, the floating round to single-precision instruction rounds a double-precision operand to single-precision, checking the exponent for single-precision range and handling any exceptions according to respective enable bits in the FPSCR. The instruction places that operand into an FPR as a double-precision operand. For results produced by single-precision arithmetic instructions and by single-precision loads, this operation does not alter the value.
- Single-precision arithmetic instructions—These instructions take operands from the FPRs in double-precision format, performs the operation as if it produced an intermediate result correct to infinite precision and with unbounded range, and then forces this intermediate result to fit in single-precision format. Status bits in the FPSCR and in the condition register are set to reflect the single-precision result. The result is then converted to double-precision format and placed into an FPR. The result falls within the range supported by the single format.
- For single-precision operations, source operands must be representable in single-precision format. If they are not, the result placed into the target FPR, and the setting of status bits in the FPSCR and in the condition register, are undefined.
- Store Floating-Point Single-Precision (**stfs**)—This form of instruction converts a double-precision operand to single-precision format and stores that operand into memory. If the operand requires denormalization in order to fit in single-precision format, it is automatically denormalized prior to being stored. No exceptions are detected on the store operation (the value being stored is effectively assumed to be the result of an instruction of one of the preceding three types).

When the result of a Load Floating-Point Single-Precision (**lfs**), Floating-Point Round to Single-Precision (**frsp***x*), or single-precision arithmetic instruction is stored in an FPR, the low-order 29 fraction bits are zero. This is shown in Figure 2-50.

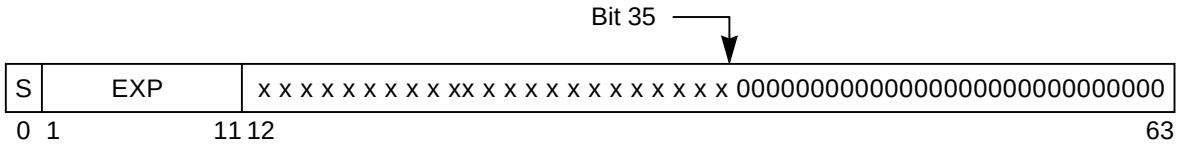


Figure 2-50. Single-Precision Representation in an FPR

The **frsp***x* instruction allows conversion from double- to single-precision with appropriate exception checking and rounding. This instruction should be used to convert double-precision floating-point values (produced by double-precision load and arithmetic instructions) to single-precision values before storing them into single-format memory elements or using them as operands for single-precision arithmetic instructions. Values produced by single-precision load and arithmetic instructions can be stored directly, or used directly as operands for single-precision arithmetic instructions, without preceding the store, or the arithmetic instruction, by **frsp***x*.

A single-precision value can be used in double-precision arithmetic operations. The reverse is true only if the double-precision value can be represented in single-precision format. Some implementations may execute single-precision arithmetic instructions faster than double-precision arithmetic instructions. Therefore, if double-precision accuracy is not required, using single-precision data and instructions can speed operations.

2.5.6 Rounding

All arithmetic instructions defined by the PowerPC architecture produce an intermediate result considered infinitely precise. This result must then be written with a precision of finite length into an FPR. After normalization or denormalization, if the infinitely precise intermediate result cannot be represented in the precision required by the instruction, it is rounded before being placed into the target FPR.

The instructions that potentially round their result are the arithmetic, multiply-add, and rounding and conversion instructions. As shown in Figure 2-51, whether rounding occurs depends on the source values.

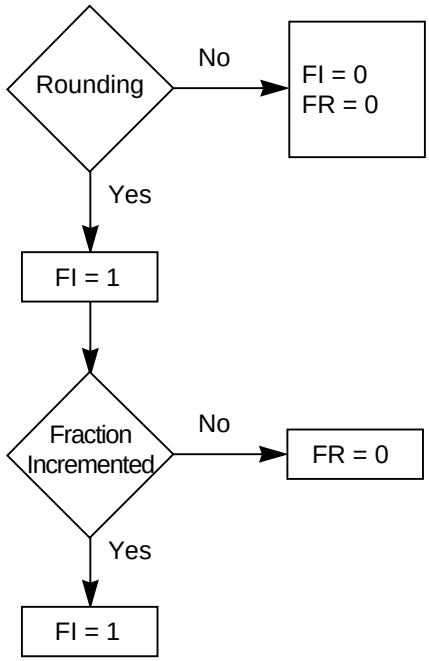


Figure 2-51. Rounding Flow Diagram

Each of these instructions sets FPSCR bits FR and FI, according to whether rounding occurs (FI) and whether the fraction was incremented (FR). If rounding occurs, FI is set to one and FR may be either zero or one. If rounding does not occur, both FR and FI are cleared. Other floating-point instructions do not alter FR and FI. Four modes of rounding are provided that are user-selectable through the floating-point rounding control field in the FPSCR. See Section 2.2.3, “Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR).” These are encoded as follows in Table 2-35.

Table 2-35. FPSCR Bit Settings—RN Field

RN	Rounding Mode
00	Round to nearest
01	Round toward zero
10	Round toward +infinity
11	Round toward –infinity

Let Z be the infinitely precise intermediate arithmetic result or the operand of a conversion operation. If Z can be represented exactly in the target format, no rounding occurs and the result in all rounding modes is equivalent to truncation of Z. If Z cannot be represented exactly in the target format, let Z1 and Z2 be the next larger and next smaller numbers representable in the target format that bound Z; then Z1 or Z2 can be used to approximate the result in the target format.

Figure 2-52 shows a graphical representation of Z, Z1, and Z2 in this case and Figure 2-53 shows the selection of Z1 and Z2 for the four rounding settings.

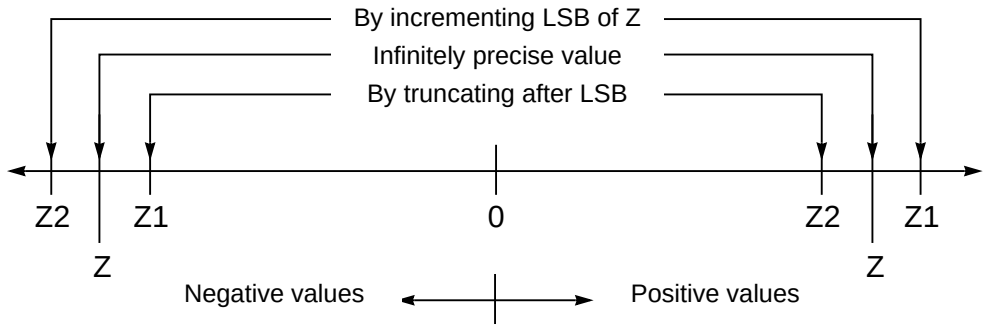


Figure 2-52. Relation of Z1 and Z2

Rounding follows the four following rules:

- Round to nearest—Choose the best approximation (Z1 or Z2. In case of a tie, choose the one which is even (least significant bit 0)).
- Round toward zero—Choose the smaller in magnitude (Z1 or Z2).
- Round toward +infinity—Choose Z1.
- Round toward –infinity—Choose Z2.

See Section 2.5.1, “Execution Model for IEEE Operations,” for a detailed explanation of rounding. If Z is to be rounded up and Z1 does not exist (that is, if there is no number larger than Z that is representable in the target format), then an overflow exception occurs if Z is positive and an underflow exception occurs if Z is negative. Similarly, if Z is to be rounded down and Z2 does not exist, then an overflow exception occurs if Z is negative and an underflow exception occurs if Z is positive. The results in these cases are defined in Section 5.4.7.1, “Floating-Point Enabled Program Exceptions.”

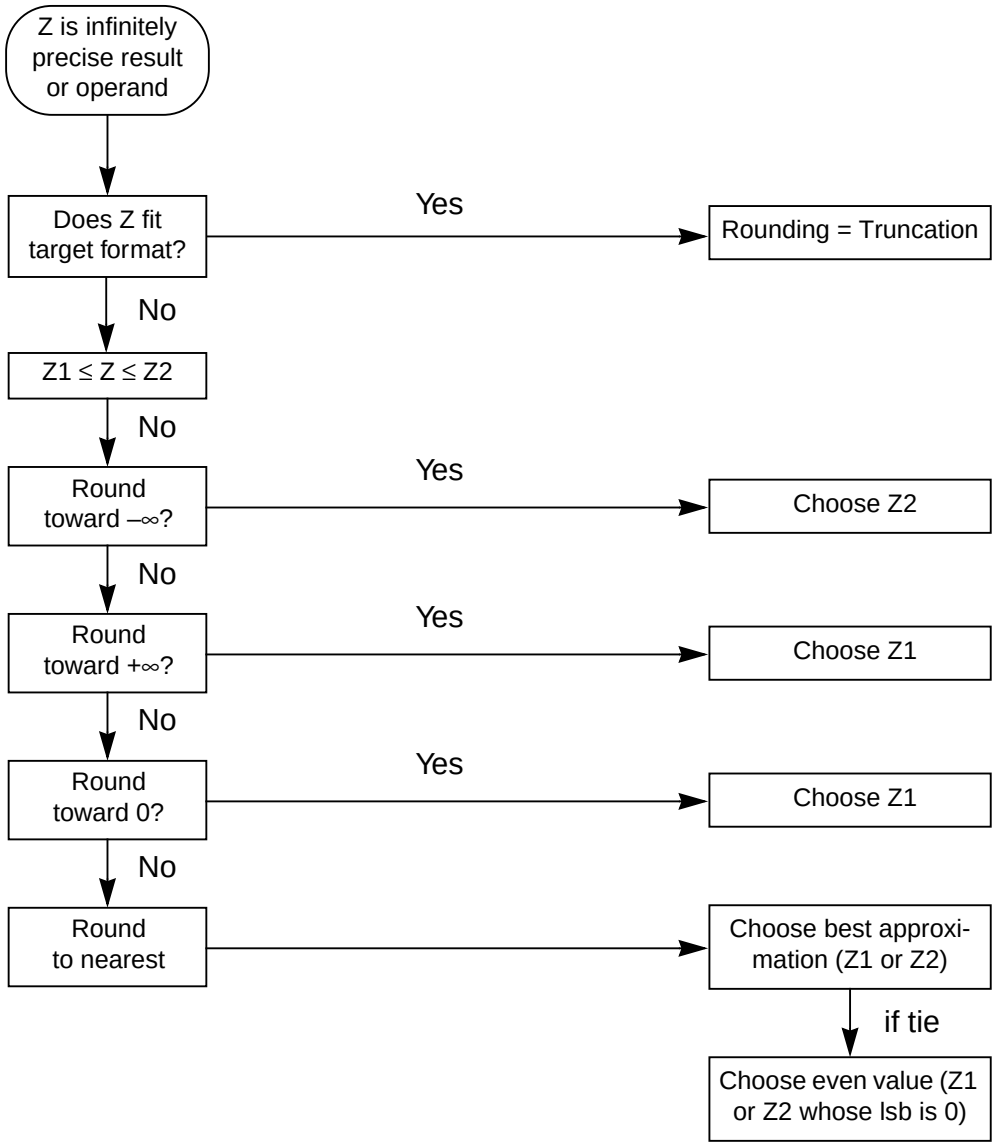


Figure 2-53. Selection of Z1 and Z2

2.6 PowerPC Registers Unimplemented in the 601

The following PowerPC registers are not implemented in the 601:

- The time base SPRs are used in the PowerPC architecture instead of the RTC registers. The architected time base facility operates as a subdivision of the frequency provided by the processor clock.
- Floating-point exception cause register (FPECR)—This is a supervisor-level SPR (1023) that is used by some implementations to determine the cause of a floating-point error.

- Address space register (ASR)—The ASR is a 64-bit SPR used in 64-bit implementations to perform address translations.
- Each PowerPC processor implements a unique set of HID registers. Note that some of these registers may be implemented the same way in more than one PowerPC processor design.

An **mtspr** or **mfspr** instruction that specifies an unimplemented register is treated as a no-op. If a privilege violation is indicated, the program exception has priority over the no-op. This can occur if a user-mode program tries to access a register with bit 0 of the SPR encoding field (in the instruction format) set. However, in this case the program exception is taken regardless of whether the SPR encoding specified an implemented register.

2.7 Reset

The following sections describe hard reset and soft reset in the 601 processor. For more information about the reset exception see Section 5.4.1, “Reset Exceptions (x'00100').”

2.7.1 Hard Reset

The hard reset sequence begins when the hard reset signal $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$ is negated after being driven as described in Section 8.2.9.4.1, “Hard reset ($\overline{\text{HRESET}}$)—Input.” Note that a hard reset operation is required on power-on in order to properly reset the 601.

Table 2-36 shows the state of the registers after a hard reset and before it fetches the first instruction from address x'FFF0 0100' in the system reset exception vector.

Table 2-36. Settings after Hard Reset (Used at Power-On)

Register	Setting	Register	Setting
GPRs	All 0s	SRR1	00000000
FPRs	All 0s	SPRG0	00000000
FPSCR	00000000	SPRG1	00000000
Condition register	All 0s	SPRG2	00000000
Segment registers	All 0s	SPRG3	00000000
MSR	00001040 (ME and EP set)	EAR	00000000
MQ	00000000	PVR	00010001[1]
XER	00000000	BAT registers	All 0s
RTCU[3]	00000000	HID0	80010080[2]
RTCL[3]	00000000[3]	HID1	00000000
Link register	00000000	HID2	00000000
CTR	00000000	HID5	00000000
DSISR	00000000	HID15	00000000

Table 2-36. Settings after Hard Reset (Used at Power-On) (Continued)

Register	Setting	Register	Setting
DAR	00000000	TLBs	All 0s
DEC[3]	00000000	Cache	All 0s
SDR1	00000000	Tag directory	All 0s. (However, the LRU bits are initialized such that each side of the cache has a unique LRU value).
SRR0	00000000		

Notes: [1] In the earliest release of the 601 (DD1), this is 00010000. Later versions of the hardware may be different.

[2] Master checkstop enable on, sequencer GPR self-test checkstop invalid microcode instruction checkstop on.

[3] Note that if external clock is connected to RTC for the 601, then the RTCL, RTCU, and DEC can change from their initial value of 0s without receiving instructions to load those registers.

The following is also true after a hard reset operation:

- External checkstops are enabled.
- The on-chip COP has given control of the PIs/POs to the rest of the chip for functional use.
- Since the reset exception has data and instruction translation disabled (MSR[DT] and MSR[IT] both cleared), the chip operates in direct address translation mode. This implies that instruction fetches as well as loads and stores are cacheable. (Operations that correspond to direct address translations are implicitly cacheable, not write-through mode, and require coherency checking on the bus).
- All internal arrays and registers are cleared during the hard reset process.
- Reinitializes big-endian mode.

2.7.2 Soft Reset

Registers are not re-initialized when a soft reset occurs ($\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ is asserted as described in Section 8.2.9.4.2, “Soft reset ($\overline{\text{SRESET}}$)—Input”). The SRR0 and SRR1 registers are updated with instruction and MSR data, and the MSR values are reset according to procedures described in Section 5.4.1, “Reset Exceptions (x'00100').”

Chapter 3
Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary

This chapter describes instructions and address modes supported by the PowerPC 601 microprocessor. These instructions are divided into the following categories:

- Integer instructions—These include arithmetic and logical instructions.
- Floating-point instructions—These include floating-point arithmetic instructions, as well as instructions that affect the floating-point status and control register.
- Load/store instructions—These include integer and floating-point load and store instructions.
- Flow control instructions—These include branching instructions, condition register logical instructions, trap instructions, and other instructions that affect the instruction flow.
- Processor control instructions—These instructions are used for synchronizing memory accesses and management of caches, TLBs, and the segment registers.

This grouping of the instructions does not necessarily indicate the execution unit that processes a particular instruction or group of instructions. This information, which is useful in taking full advantage of the 601's superscalar parallel instruction execution, is provided in Chapter 10, "Instruction Set."

Integer instructions operate on byte, half-word, and word operands. Floating-point instructions operate on single-precision and double-precision floating-point operands. The PowerPC architecture uses instructions that are four bytes long and word-aligned. It provides for byte, half-word, and word operand fetches and stores between memory and a set of 32 general-purpose registers (GPRs). It also provides for word and double-word operand fetches and stores between memory and a set of 32 floating-point registers (FPRs).

Arithmetic and logical instructions do not read or modify memory. To use the contents of a memory location in a computation and then modify the same or another memory location, the memory contents must be loaded into a register, modified, and then written back to the target location using load or store instructions.

The 601 appears to execute instructions sequentially and in program order, but the execution of a sequence of instructions may be interrupted as a result of an exception caused by one of the instructions in the sequence, or by some asynchronous event.

3.1 Memory Addressing

A program references memory using the effective (logical) address computed by the processor when it executes a memory access or branch instruction, or when the next sequential instruction is fetched.

3.1.1 Effective Address Calculation

An effective address is the 32-bit sum computed by the processor when executing a memory access or branch instruction or when fetching the next sequential instruction. For a memory access instruction, if the sum of the effective address and the operand length exceeds the maximum effective address, the memory operand is considered to wrap around from the maximum effective address through effective address 0, as described in the following paragraphs.

Effective address computations for both data and instruction accesses use 32-bit unsigned binary arithmetic. A carry from bit 0 is ignored.

Load and store operations have three categories of effective address generation:

- Register indirect with immediate index mode. The d operand is added to the contents of the GPR specified by the **r**A operand to generate the effective address.
- Register indirect with index mode. The contents of the GPR specified by **r**B operand are added to the contents of the GPR specified by the **r**A operand to generate the effective address.
- Register indirect mode. The contents of the GPR specified by the **r**A operand are used as the effective address.

Branch instructions have three categories of effective address generation:

- Immediate addressing. The BD or LI operands are sign extended, and are appended with b'00' in the two low-order bit positions (bits 30 and 31) to generate the branch effective address. If the AA bit (bit 30) is cleared, the BD or LI operands are treated as displacements; if the AA bit is set, the BD or LI operands are treated as absolute addresses.
- Link register indirect. The contents of the link register with the two low-order bits cleared to zero are used as the branch effective address.
- Count register indirect. The contents of the count register with the two low-order bits cleared to zero are used as the branch effective address.

Branch instructions can optionally load the link register with the next sequential instruction address (current instruction address + 4).

3.1.2 Context Synchronization

The System Call (**sc**), Return from Interrupt (**rfi**), and Instruction Synchronize(**isync**) instructions perform context synchronization by allowing previously issued instructions to complete before performing a context switch. Execution of one of these instructions ensures the following:

- No higher priority exception exists.
- All previous instructions have completed to a point where they can no longer cause an exception. If a prior memory access instruction causes direct-store error exceptions, the results must be determined before this instruction is executed.
- Previous instructions complete execution in the context (privilege, protection, and address translation) under which they were issued.
- The instructions following the **sc**, **rfi**, or **isync** instruction execute in the context established by these instructions.

The Move to Machine State Register instruction (**mtmsr**) is execution synchronizing. It ensures that all preceding instructions have completed execution and will not cause an exception before the instruction executes, but does not ensure subsequent instructions execute in the newly established environment. For example, if the **mtmsr** sets the MSR(PR) bit to 1, unless an **isync** immediately follows the **mtmsr**, a privileged instruction could be executed or privileged access could be performed without causing an exception even though the MSR(PR) bit indicates user mode.

3.2 Exception Summary

There are two kinds of exceptions in the 601—those caused directly by the execution of an instruction and those caused by an asynchronous event. Either may cause components of the system software to be invoked.

Exceptions can be caused directly by the execution of an instruction as follows:

- An attempt to execute an illegal instruction or an attempt by a user-level program to execute the supervisor-level instructions listed below cause the illegal instruction or supervisor-level instruction handler to be invoked. The 601provides the following supervisor-level instructions: **dcbi**, **mfmsr**, **mfspr**, **mfsr**, **mfsrin**, **mtmsr**, **mtspr**, **mtsr**, **mtsrin**, **rfi**, and **tlbie**. Note that the **mfspr** and **mtspr** instructions are executable at both the user- and supervisor-level, depending on the SPR encoding.
- An attempt to access memory in a manner that violates memory protection, or an attempt to access memory that is not available (page fault), causes the data access exception handler or instruction access exception handler to be invoked.
- An attempt to access memory with an effective address alignment that is invalid for the instruction causes the alignment exception handler to be invoked.
- The execution of an **sc** instruction causes the system service program to be invoked.

- The execution of a trap instruction that traps causes the program exception trap handler to be invoked.
- The execution of a floating-point instruction when floating-point instructions are disabled causes the floating-point unavailable handler to be invoked.
- The execution of an instruction that causes a floating-point exception while floating-point exceptions are enabled causes the floating-point enabled exception handler to be invoked.

Exceptions caused by asynchronous events are described in Chapter 5, “Exceptions.”

3.3 Integer Instructions

This section describes the integer instructions. These consist of the following:

- Integer arithmetic instructions
- Integer compare instructions
- Integer rotate and shift instructions
- Integer logical instructions.

Integer instructions use the content of the GPRs as source operands and place results into GPRs, into the integer exception register (XER), and into condition register fields. Trap instructions compare the contents of one GPR with a second GPR or with immediate data and, if the conditions are met, invoke the program exception trap handler.

These instructions treat the source operands as signed integers unless the instruction is explicitly identified as an unsigned operation.

The integer instructions that are coded to update the condition register and the integer logical and arithmetic instructions (**addic.**, **andi.**, and **andis.**) set condition register field CR0 (bits 0–3) to characterize the result of the operation. The condition register field CR0 is set as if the result were compared algebraically to zero.

The integer arithmetic instructions (**addic**, **addic.**, **subfic**, **addc**, **subfc**, **adde**, **subfe**, **addme**, **subfme**, **addze**, and **subfze**) always set integer exception register bit, CA, to reflect the carry out of bit 0. Integer arithmetic instructions with the overflow enable (OE) bit set will cause the XER bits SO and OV to be set to reflect overflow of the 32-bit result.

Unless otherwise noted, when condition register field CR0 and the XER are affected they reflect the value placed in the target register.

3.3.1 Integer Arithmetic Instructions

In the 601, instructions that select the overflow option (enable XER(OV)) or that set the integer exception register carry bit (CA) may delay the execution of subsequent instructions.

The 601 integer unit contains the user accessible MQ register and supports the multiply (**mul**), divide (**div**), shift, and rotate instructions that use this register. Neither the register nor the associated instructions are present in other PowerPC processors nor are they defined in the PowerPC architecture. The execution of any PowerPC multiply or divide instruction causes the content of the MQ to be undefined.

Table 3-1 lists the integer arithmetic instructions for the 601. Note that some of the instructions are specific to the 601 implementation.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Add Immediate	**addi**	**r**D**,r**A,SIMM	The sum (**r**A|0) + SIMM is placed into register **r**D.
Add Immediate Shifted	**addis**	**r**D**,r**A,SIMM	The sum (**r**A|0) + (SIMM || x '0000') is placed into register **r**D.
Add	**add** **add.** **addo** **addo.**	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	The sum (**r**A) + (**r**B) is placed into register **r**D. **add** Add **add.** Add with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **addo** Add with Overflow Enabled. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **addo.** Add with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Subtract from	**subf** **subf.** **subfo** **subfo.**	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	The sum ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) +1 is placed into **r**D. **subf** Subtract from **subf.** Subtract from with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **subfo** Subtract from with Overflow Enabled. The o suffix enables the overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **subfo.** Subtract from with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Add Immediate Carrying	**addic**	**r**D**,r**A,SIMM	The sum (**r**A) + SIMM is placed into register **r**D.
Add Immediate Carrying and Record	**addic.**	**r**D**,r**A,SIMM	The sum (**r**A) + SIMM is placed into **r**D. The condition register is updated.
Subtract from Immediate Carrying	**subfic**	**r**D**,r**A,SIMM	The sum ¬ (**r**A) + SIMM + 1 is placed into register **r**D.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Add Carrying	**addc** **addc.** **addco** **addco.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The sum (**r**A) + (**r**B) is placed into register **r**D. **addc** Add Carrying **addc.** Add Carrying with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **addco** Add Carrying with Overflow Enabled. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **addco.** Add Carrying with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Subtract from Carrying	**subfc** **subfc.** **subfco** **subfco.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The sum ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) + 1 is placed into register **r**D. **subfc** Subtract from Carrying **subfc.** Subtract from Carrying with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **subfco** Subtract from Carrying with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **subfco.** Subtract from Carrying with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Add Extended	**adde** **adde.** **addeo** **addeo.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The sum (**r**A) + (**r**B) + XER[CA] is placed into register **r**D. **adde** Add Extended **adde.** Add Extended with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **addeo** Add Extended with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **addeo.** Add Extended with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Subtract from Extended	**subfe** **subfe.** **subfeo** **subfeo.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The sum ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) + XER[CA] is placed into register **r**D. **subfe** Subtract from Extended **subfe.** Subtract from Extended with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **subfeo** Subtract from Extended with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **subfeo.** Subtract from Extended with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow (OV) bit in the XER.
Add to Minus One Extended	**addme** **addme.** **addmeo** **addmeo.**	**r**D,**r**A	The sum (**r**A) + XER[CA] + x'FFFFFFFF' is placed into register **r**D. **addme** Add to Minus One Extended **addme.** Add to Minus One Extended with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **addmeo** Add to Minus One Extended with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **addmeo.** Add to Minus One Extended with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow (OV) bit in the XER.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Subtract from Minus One Extended	**subfme** **subfme.** **subfmeo** **subfmeo.**	**r**D**,r**A	The sum ¬ (**r**A) + XER(CA) + x'FFFFFFFF' is placed into register **r**D. **subfme** Subtract from Minus One Extended **subfme.** Subtract from Minus One Extended with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **subfmeo** Subtract from Minus One Extended with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **subfmeo.** Subtract from Minus One Extended with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Add to Zero Extended	**addze** **addze.** **addzeo** **addzeo.**	**r**D**,r**A	The sum (**r**A) + XER[CA] is placed into register **r**D. **addze** Add to Zero Extended **addze.** Add to Zero Extended with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **addzeo** Add to Zero Extended with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **addzeo.** Add to Zero Extended with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Subtract from Zero Extended	**subfze** **subfze.** **subfzeo** **subfzeo.**	**r**D**,r**A	The sum ¬ (**r**A) + XER[CA] is placed into register **r**D. **subfze** Subtract from Zero Extended **subfze.** Subtract from Zero Extended with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **subfzeo** Subtract from Zero Extended with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **subfzeo.** Subtract from Zero Extended with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Negate	**neg** **neg.** **nego** **nego.**	**r**D**,r**A	The sum ¬ (**r**A) + 1 is placed into register **r**D. **neg** Negate **neg.** Negate with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **nego** Negate with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **nego.** Negate with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Multiply Low Immediate	**mulli**	**r**D**,r**A,SIMM	The low-order 32 bits of the 48-bit product (**r**A)*SIMM are placed into register **r**D. The low-order 32 bits of the product are the correct 32-bit product. The low-order bits are independent of whether the operands are treated as signed or unsigned integers. However, XER[OV] is set based on the result interpreted as a signed integer. The high-order bits are lost. This instruction can be used with **mulhw***x* to calculate a full 64-bit product.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Multiply Low	**mullw** **mullw.** **mullwo** **mullwo.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The low-order 32 bits of the 64-bit product (**r**A)*(**r**B) are placed into register **r**D. The low-order 32 bits of the product are the correct 32-bit product. The low-order bits are independent of whether the operands are treated as signed or unsigned integers. However, XER[OV] is set based on the result interpreted as a signed integer. The high-order bits are lost. This instruction can be used with **mulhw***x* to calculate a full 64-bit product.This instruction may execute faster if **r**B contains the operand having the smaller absolute value. **mullw** Multiply Low **mullw.** Multiply Low with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **mullwo** Multiply Low with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **mullwo.** Multiply Low with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Multiply High Word	**mulhw** **mulhw.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The contents of **r**A and **r**B are interpreted as 32-bit signed integers. The 64-bit product is formed. The high-order 32 bits of the 64-bit product are placed into **r**D. Both operands and the product are interpreted as signed integers. This instruction may execute faster if **r**B contains the operand having the smaller absolute value. **mulhw** Multiply High Word **mulhw.** Multiply High Word with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Multiply High Word Unsigned	**mulhwu** **mulhwu.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The contents of **r**A and of **r**B are extracted and interpreted as 32-bit unsigned integers. The 64-bit product is formed. The high-order 32 bits of the 64-bit product are placed into **r**D. Both operands and the product are interpreted as unsigned integers. This instruction may execute faster if **r**B contains the operand having the smaller absolute value. **mulhwu** Multiply High Word Unsigned **mulhwu.** Multiply High Word Unsigned with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Divide Word	**divw** **divw.** **divwo** **divwo.**	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	The dividend is the signed value of (**r**A). The divisor is the signed value of (**r**B). The quotient is placed into **r**D. The remainder is not supplied as a result. Both operands are interpreted as signed integers. The quotient is the unique signed integer that satisfies the following: dividend = (quotient * divisor) + r where 0 ≤ r < |divisor| if the dividend is non-negative, and –|divisor| < r ≤ 0 if the dividend is negative. If an attempt is made to perform any of the divisions x'8000_0000' /–1 or <anything> / 0 the contents of register **r**D are undefined, as are the contents of the LT, GT, and EQ bits of the condition register field CR0 if the instruction has condition register updating enabled. In these cases, if instruction overflow is enabled, then XER[OV] is set. The 32-bit signed remainder of dividing (**r**A) by (**r**B) can be computed as follows, except in the case that (**r**A) = -2^{31} and (**r**B) = –1: **divw r**D**,r**A**,r**B **r**D = quotient **mullw r**D**,r**D**,r**B **r**D = quotient * divisor **subf r**D**,r**D**,r**A **r**D = remainder **divw** Divide Word **divw.** Divide Word with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **divwo** Divide Word with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **divwo.** Divide Word with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Divide Word Unsigned	**divwu** **divwu.** **divwuo** **divwuo.**	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	The dividend is the value of (**r**A). The divisor is the value of (**r**B). The 32-bit quotient is placed into **r**D. The remainder is not supplied as a result. Both operands are interpreted as unsigned integers. The quotient is the unique unsigned integer that satisfies the following: dividend = (quotient * divisor) + r where 0 ≤ r < divisor. If an attempt is made to perform the division <anything> / 0 the contents of register **r**D are undefined, as are the contents of the LT, GT, and EQ bits of the condition register field CR0 if the instruction has the condition register updating enabled. In these cases, if instruction overflow is enabled, then XER[OV] is set. The 32-bit unsigned remainder of dividing (**r**A) by (**r**B) can be computed as follows: **divwu r**D**,r**A**,r**B **r**D = quotient **mullw r**D**,r**D**,r**B **r**D = quotient * divisor **subf r**D**,r**D**,r**A **r**D = remainder **divwu** Divide Word Unsigned **divwu.** Divide Word Unsigned with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **divwuo** Divide Word Unsigned with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **divwuo.** Divide Word Unsigned with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER.
Difference or Zero Immediate	**dozi**	**r**D**,r**A,SIMM	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** The sum ¬ (**r**A) + SIMM + 1 is placed into register **r**D if greater than 0; if the sum is less than or equal to 0, register **r**D is cleared to 0. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Difference or Zero	**doz** **doz.** **dozo** **dozo.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** The sum ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) + 1 is placed into register **r**D. If the value in register **r**A is algebraically greater than the value in register **r**B, register **r**D is cleared. If the instruction has condition register updating enabled, condition register field CR0 is set to reflect the result placed in register **r**D (i.e., if register **r**D is set to zero, EQ is set to 1). If the instruction has overflow enabled, XER[OV] is only set on positive overflows. **doz** Difference or Zero **doz.** Difference or Zero with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **dozo** Difference or Zero with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **dozo.** Difference or Zero with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Absolute	**abs** **abs.** **abso** **abso.**	**r**D,**r**A	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** The absolute value |(**r**A)| is placed into register **r**D. If register **r**A contains the most negative number (i.e., x '80000000'), the result of the instruction is the most negative number and sets the XER[OV] bit if enabled. **abs** Absolute **abs.** Absolute with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **abso** Absolute with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER **abso.** Absolute with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Negative Absolute	**nabs** **nabs.** **nabso** **nabso.**	**r**D,**r**A	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** The negative absolute value –|(**r**A)| is placed into register **r**D. Note: **nabs** never overflows. If the instruction is overflow enabled, then XER[OV] is cleared to zero and XER[SO] is not changed. **nabs** Negative Absolute **nabs.** Negative Absolute with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **nabso** Negative Absolute with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER **nabso.** Negative Absolute with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Multiply	**mul** **mul.** **mulo** **mulo.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Bits 0–31 of the product (**r**A)*(**r**B) are placed into register **r**D. Bits 32–63 of the product (**r**A)*(**r**B) are placed into the MQ register. If the condition register updating is enabled, then LT, GT, and EQ reflect the result in the low-order 32 bits (contents of MQ register). If the instruction is overflow enabled, then the XER[SO] and XER[OV] bits are set to one if the product cannot be represented in 32 bits. **mul** Multiply **mul.** Multiply with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **mulo** Multiply with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **mulo.** Multiply with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Divide	**div** **div.** **divo** **divo.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** The quotient [(**r**A) || (MQ)]/(**r**B) is placed into register **r**D. The remainder is placed in the MQ register. The remainder has the same sign as the dividend, except that a zero quotient or a zero remainder is always positive. The results obey the equation: dividend = (divisor * quotient) + remainder where dividend is the original (**r**A) || (MQ), divisor is the original (**r**B), quotient is the final (**r**D), and remainder is the final (MQ). If the condition register updating is enabled, condition register field CR0 bits LT, GT, and EQ reflect the remainder. If the instruction is overflow enabled, then the XER[SO] and XER[OV] bits are set to one if the quotient cannot be represented in 32 bits. For the case of $-2^{31}/-1$, the MQ register is cleared to zero and -2^{31} is placed in register **r**D. For all other overflows, (MQ), (**r**D), and condition register field CR0 (if condition register updating is enabled) are undefined. **div** Divide **div.** Divide with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **divo** Divide with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **divo.** Divide with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-1. Integer Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Divide Short	**divs** **divs.** **divso** **divso.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** The quotient (**r**A)/(**r**B) is placed into register **r**D. The remainder is placed in MQ. The remainder has the same sign as the dividend, except that a zero quotient or a zero remainder is always positive. The results obey the equation: dividend = (divisor * quotient) + remainder where the dividend is the original (**r**A), divisor is the original (**r**B), quotient is the final (**r**D), and remainder is the final (MQ). If the condition register updating is enabled, then the condition register field CR0 bits LT, EQ, and GT reflect the remainder. If the instruction is overflow enabled, then the XER[SO] and XER[OV] bits are set to one if the quotient cannot be represented in 32 bits (e.g., as is the case when the divisor is zero, or the dividend is -2^{31} and the divisor is –1). For the case of $-2^{31}/-1$, the MQ register is cleared and -2^{31} is placed in register **r**D. For all other overflows, (MQ), (**r**D), and condition register field CR0 (if condition register updating is enabled) are undefined. **divs** Divide Short **divs.** Divide Short with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. **divso** Divide Short with Overflow. The o suffix enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. **divso.** Divide Short with Overflow and CR Update. The o. suffix enables the update of the condition register and enables the overflow bit (OV) in the XER. This instruction is specific to the 601.

In addition to supporting all of the PowerPC integer arithmetic instructions, the 601 supports the POWER arithmetic instructions summarized in Table 3-1 and Table 3-2 and described in detail in Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.” Note that in order to achieve full compatibility with future PowerPC implementations, it is up to software to either emulate these operations in the program exception handler, or to completely avoid their use.

Table 3-2. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor-Specific Integer Arithmetic Instruction Summary

Mnemonic	Instruction Name
dozi	Difference or Zero Immediate
doz*x*	Difference or Zero
abs*x*	Absolute
nabs*x*	Negative Absolute
mul*x*	Multiply
div*x*	Divide
divs*x*	Divide Short

3.3.2 Integer Compare Instructions

The integer compare instructions algebraically or logically compare the contents of register **r**A with either the UIMM operand, the SIMM operand, or the contents of register **r**B. Algebraic comparison compares two signed integers. Logical comparison compares two unsigned numbers. Table 3-3 summarizes the integer compare instructions provided by the 601processor.

Table 3-3. Integer Compare Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Compare Immediate	**cmpi**	**crf**D,L,**r**A,SIMM	The contents of register **r**A is compared with the sign-extended value of the SIMM operand, treating the operands as signed integers. The result of the comparison is placed into the CR field specified by operand **crf**D.
Compare	**cmp**	**crf**D,L,**r**A,**r**B	The contents of register **r**A is compared with register **r**B, treating the operands as signed integers. The result of the comparison is placed into the CR field specified by operand **crf**D.
Compare Logical Immediate	**cmpli**	**crf**D,L,**r**A,UIMM	The contents of register **r**A is compared with x'0000' || UIMM, treating the operands as unsigned integers. The result of the comparison is placed into the CR field specified by operand **crf**D.
Compare Logical	**cmpl**	**crf**D,L,**r**A,**r**B	The contents of register **r**A is compared with register **r**B, treating the operands as unsigned integers. The result of the comparison is placed into the CR field specified by operand **crf**D.

While the PowerPC architecture specifies that the value in the L field determines whether the operands are treated as 32- or 64-bit values, the 601 ignores the value in the L field and treats the operands as 32-bit values. The simplified mnemonics for integer compare instructions as shown in Table 3-4 correctly clear the L value in the instruction rather than requiring it to be coded as a numeric operand.

The **crf**D field can be omitted if the result of the comparison is to be placed in CR0. Otherwise the target CR field must be specified in the instruction **crf**D field, using one of the CR field symbols (CR0–CR7) or an explicit field number.

The instructions listed in Table 3-4 are simplified mnemonics supported in all PowerPC implementations that provide compare word capability for 32-bit operands.

Table 3-4. Word Compare Simplified Mnemonics

Operation	Simplified Mnemonic	Equivalent to:
Compare Word Immediate	**cmpwi crf**D,**r**A,SIMM	**cmpi crf**D,**0,r**A,SIMM
Compare Word	**cmpw crf**D,**r**A,**r**B	**cmp crf**D,**0,r**A,**r**B
Compare Logical Word Immediate	**cmplwi crf**D,**r**A,UIMM	**cmpli crf**D,**0,r**A,UIMM
Compare Logical Word	**cmplw crf**D,**r**A,**r**B	**cmpl crf**D,**0,r**A,**r**B

The following examples demonstrate the use of the simplified word compare mnemonics:

- Compare 32 bits in register **r**A with immediate value 100 and place result in condition register field CR0.

  cmpwi rA**,100** (equivalent to **cmpi 0,0,r**A**,100**)

- Same as (1), but place results in condition register field CR4.

  cmpwi cr4,rA**,100** (equivalent to **cmpi 4,0,r**A**,100**)

- Compare registers **r**A and **r**B as logical 32-bit quantities and place result in condition register field CR0.

  cmplw rA**,r**B (equivalent to **cmpl 0,0,r**A**,r**B)

3.3.3 Integer Logical Instructions

The logical instructions shown in Table 3-5 perform bit-parallel operations. Logical instructions with the condition register update enabled and instructions **andi.** and **andis.** set condition register field CR0 to characterize the result of the logical operation. These fields are set as if the sign-extended low-order 32 bits of the result were algebraically compared to zero. Logical instructions without condition register update and the remaining logical instructions do not modify the condition register. Logical instructions do not change the XER[SO], XER[OV], and XER[CA] bits.

Table 3-5. Integer Logical Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
AND Immediate	**andi.**	**r**A,**r**S,UIMM	The contents of **r**S is ANDed with x'0000' || UIMM and the result is placed into **r**A.
AND Immediate Shifted	**andis.**	**r**A,**r**S,UIMM	The contents of **r**S is ANDed with UIMM || x'0000' and the result is placed into **r**A.
OR Immediate	**ori**	**r**A,**r**S,UIMM	The contents of **r**S is ORed with x'0000' || UIMM and the result is placed into **r**A. The preferred no-op is **ori 0,0,0**
OR Immediate Shifted	**oris**	**r**A,**r**S,UIMM	The contents of **r**S is ORed with UIMM ||x'0000' and the result is placed into **r**A.
XOR Immediate	**xori**	**r**A,**r**S,UIMM	The contents of **r**S is XORed with x'0000' || UIMM and the result is placed into **r**A.
XOR Immediate Shifted	**xoris**	**r**A,**r**S,UIMM	The contents of **r**S is XORed with UIMM ||x'0000' and the result is placed into **r**A.
AND	**and** **and.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S is ANDed with the contents of register **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A. **and** AND **and.** AND with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
OR	**or** **or.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S is ORed with the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A. **or** OR **or.** OR with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
XOR	**xor** **xor.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S is XORed with the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into register **r**A. **xor** XOR **xor.** XOR with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
NAND	**nand** **nand.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S is ANDed with the contents of **r**B and the one's complement of the result is placed into register **r**A. **nand** NAND **nand.** NAND with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. NAND with **r**A = **r**B can be used to obtain the one's complement.
NOR	**nor** **nor.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S is ORed with the contents of **r**B and the one's complement of the result is placed into register **r**A. **nor** NOR **nor.** NOR with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. NOR with **r**A = **r**B can be used to obtain the one's complement.

Table 3-5. Integer Logical Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Equivalent	**eqv** **eqv.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S is XORed with the contents of **r**B and the complemented result is placed into register **r**A. **eqv** Equivalent **eqv.** Equivalent with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
AND with Complement	**andc** **andc.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S is ANDed with the complement of the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A. **andc** AND with Complement **andc.** AND with Complement with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
OR with Complement	**orc** **orc.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S is ORed with the complement of the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A. **orc** OR with Complement **orc.** OR with Complement with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Extend Sign Byte	**extsb** **extsb.**	**r**A,**r**S	Register **r** S[24–31] are placed into **r**A[24–31]. Bit 24 of **r**S is placed into **r**A[0–23]. **extsb** Extend Sign Byte **extsb.** Extend Sign Byte with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Extend Sign Half Word	**extsh** **extsh.**	**r**A,**r**S	Register **r** S[16–31] are placed into **r**A[16–31]. Bit 16 of **r**S is placed into **r**A[0–15]. **extsh** Extend Sign Half Word **extsh.** Extend Sign Half Word with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Count Leading Zeros Word	**cntlzw** **cntlzw.**	**r**A,**r**S	A count of the number of consecutive zero bits of **r**S is placed into **r**A. This number ranges from 0 to 32, inclusive. **cntlzw** Count Leading Zeros Word **cntlzw.** Count Leading Zeros Word with CR Update**.** The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. When the Count Leading Zeros Word instruction has condition register updating enabled, the LT field is cleared to zero in CR0.

3.3.4 Integer Rotate and Shift Instructions

Rotate and shift instructions provide powerful and general ways to manipulate register contents. Table 3-6 shows the types of rotate and shift operations provided by the 601.

Table 3-6. Rotate and Shift Operations

Operation	Description
Extract	Select a field of *n* bits starting at bit position *b* in the source register, right or left justify this field in the target register, and clear all other bits of the target register to zero.
Insert	Select a field of *n* bits in the source register, insert this field starting at bit position *b* of the target register, and leave other bits of the target register unchanged. (No simplified mnemonic is provided for insertion of a field when operating on double words; such an insertion requires more than one instruction.)
Rotate	Rotate the contents of a register right or left *n* bits without masking.
Shift	Shift the contents of a register right or left *n* bits, clearing vacated bits to 0 (logical shift).
Clear	Clear the leftmost or rightmost *n* bits of a register to 0.
Clear left and shift left	Clear the leftmost *b* bits of a register, then shift the register left by *n* bits. This operation can be used to scale a known non-negative array index by the width of an element.

The IU performs rotation operations on data from a GPR and returns the result, or a portion of the result, to a GPR. Rotation operations rotate a 32-bit quantity left by a specified number of bit positions. Bits that exit from position 0 enter at position 31. A rotate right operation can be accomplished by specifying a rotation of 32-*n* bits, where *n* is the right rotation amount.

Rotate and shift instructions employ a mask generator. The mask is 32 bits long and consists of “1” bits from a start bit, MB, through and including a stop bit, ME, and “0” bits elsewhere. The values of MB and ME range from 0 to 31. If MB > ME, the “1” bits wrap around from position 31 to position 0. Thus the mask is formed as follows:

if MB ≤ ME then

```
    mask[mstart–mstop] = ones
    mask[all other bits] = zeros
else
    mask[mstart–31] = ones
    mask[0–mstop] = ones
    mask[all other bits] = zeros
```

It is not possible to specify an all-zero mask. The use of the mask is described in the following sections.

If condition register updating is enabled, rotate and shift instructions set condition register field CR0 according to the contents of **r**A at the completion of the instruction. Rotate and shift instructions do not change the values of XER[OV] and XER[SO] bits. Rotate and shift instructions, except algebraic right shifts, do not change the XER[CA] bit.

Simplified mnemonics allow simpler coding of often-used functions such as clearing the leftmost or rightmost bits of a register, left justifying or right justifying an arbitrary field, and performing simple rotates and shifts. Some of these are shown as examples with the rotate instructions.

POWER Compatibility Note: In addition to supporting the PowerPC integer rotate and shift instructions, the 601 also supports all POWER rotate and shift instructions. Note that in order to achieve full compatibility with all POWER applications on future PowerPC implementations, it is left up to software to either emulate these operations in the instruction exception handler, or to completely avoid their use. These 601-specific rotate and shift instructions are summarized in Table 3-7.

Table 3-7. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor-Specific Rotate and Shift Instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction Name
rlmi*x*	Rotate Left then Mask Insert
rrib*x*	Rotate Right and Insert Bit
maskg*x*	Mask Generate
maskir*x*	Mask Insert from Register
slq*x*	Shift Left with MQ
srq*x*	Shift Right with MQ
sliq*x*	Shift Left Immediate with MQ
slliq*x*	Shift Left Long Immediate with MQ
sriq*x*	Shift Right Immediate with MQ
srliq*x*	Shift Right Long Immediate with MQ
sllq*x*	Shift Left Long with MQ
srlq*x*	Shift Right Long with MQ
sle*x*	Shift Left Extended
sleq*x*	Shift Left Extended with MQ
sre*x*	Shift Right Extended
sreq*x*	Shift Right Extended with MQ
sraiq*x*	Shift Right Algebraic Immediate with MQ
sraq*x*	Shift Right Algebraic with MQ
srea*x*	Shift Right Extended Algebraic

3.3.4.1 Integer Rotate Instructions

Integer rotate instructions rotate the contents of a register. The result of the rotation is inserted into the target register under control of a mask (if a mask bit is 1 the associated bit of the rotated data is placed into the target register, and if the mask bit is 0 the associated bit in the target register is unchanged), or ANDed with a mask before being placed into the target register.

Rotate left instructions allow right-rotation of the contents of a register to be performed by a left-rotation of 32 – *n*, where *n* is the number of bits by which to rotate right.

The integer rotate instructions are summarized in Table 3-8.

Table 3-8. Integer Rotate Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Rotate Left Word Immediate then AND with Mask	**rlwinm** **rlwinm.**	**r**A**,r**S**,**SH**,**MB**,**ME	The contents of register **r**S are rotated left by the number of bits specified by operand SH. A mask is generated having "1" bits from the bit specified by operand MB through the bit specified by operand ME and "0" bits elsewhere. The rotated data is ANDed with the generated mask and the result is placed into register **r**A. **rlwinm** Rotate Left Word Immediate then AND with Mask **rlwinm.** Rotate Left Word Immediate then AND with Mask with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. Simplified mnemonics: **extlwi r**A**,r**S,*n*,b **rlwinm r**A**,r**S**,**b**,0,***n*-1 **srwi r**A**,r**S**,*n* **rlwinm r**A**,r**S**,**32-*n*,*n*,31 **clrrwi r**A**,r**S**,*n* **rlwinm r**A**,r**S**,0,0,**31-*n* Note**:** The **rlwinm** instruction can be used for extracting, clearing and shifting bit fields using the methods shown below: To extract an *n*-bit field that starts at bit position *b* in register **r**S, right-justified into **r**A (clearing the remaining 32-*n* bits of **r**A), set SH=*b* +*n*, MB=32-*n*, and ME=31. To extract an *n*-bit field that starts at bit position *b* in **r**S, left-justified into **r**A, set SH=*b*, MB=0, and ME=*n*–1. To rotate the contents of a register left (right) by *n* bits, set SH=*n* (32–*n*), MB=0, and ME=31. To shift the contents of a register right by *n* bits, set SH=32-*n*, MB=*n*, and ME=31. To clear the high-order *b* bits of a register and then shift the result left by *n* bits, set SH=*n*, MB=*b*–*n* and ME=31-*n*. To clear the low-order *n* bits of a register, set SH=0, MB=0, and ME=31–*n*.

Table 3-8. Integer Rotate Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Rotate Left Word then AND with Mask	**rlwnm** **rlwnm.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B,MB,ME	The contents of **r**S are rotated left by the number of bits specified by **r**B[27–31]. A mask is generated having “1” bits from the bit specified by operand MB through the bit specified by operand ME and “0” bits elsewhere. The rotated data is ANDed with the generated mask and the result is placed into **r**A. **rlwinm** Rotate Left Word then AND with Mask **rlwinm.** Rotate Left Word then AND with Mask with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. Simplified mnemonics: **rotlw r**A,**r**S,**r**B **rlwnm r**A,**r**S,**r**B,**0,31** Note: The **rlwinm** instruction can be used to extract and rotate bit fields using the methods shown below: To extract an *n*-bit field that starts at the variable bit position *b* in the register specified by operand **r**S, right-justified into **r**A (clearing the remaining 32-*n* bits of **r**A), set **r** B[27–31]=*b*+*n*, MB=32-*n*, and ME=31. To extract an *n*-bit field that starts at variable bit position *b* in the register specified by operand **r**S, left-justified into **r**A (clearing the remaining 32-*n* bits of **r**A), set **r**B[27–31]=*b*, MB=0, and ME=*n*-1. To rotate the contents of the low-order 32 bits of a register left (right) by variable *n* bits, set **r**B[27–31]=*n* (32-n), MB=0, and ME=31.
Rotate Left Word Immediate then Mask Insert	**rlwimi** **rlwimi.**	**r**A,**r**S,SH,MB,ME	The contents of **r**S are rotated left by the number of bits specified by operand SH. A mask is generated having “1” bits from the bit specified by MB through the bit specified by ME and “0” bits elsewhere. The rotated data is inserted into **r**A under control of the generated mask. **rlwimi** Rotate Left Word Immediate then Mask **rlwimi.** Rotate Left Word Immediate then Mask Insert with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. Simplified mnemonic: **inslwi r**A,**r**S,*n*,*b* **rlwimi r**A,**r**S,**32-***b*,*b*,*b***+***n***-1** Note: The opcode **rlwimi** can be used to insert a bit field into the contents of register specified by operand **r**A using the methods shown below: To insert an *n*-bit field that is left-justified in **r**S into **r**A starting at bit position *b*, set SH=32-*b*, MB=*b*, and ME=(*b*+*n*)-1. To insert an *n*-bit field that is right-justified in **r**S into **r**A starting at bit position *b*, set SH=32-(*b*+*n*), MB=*b*, and ME=(*b*+*n*)-1. Simplified mnemonics are provided for both of these methods.

Table 3-8. Integer Rotate Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Rotate Left then Mask Insert	**rlmi** **rlmi.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B,MB,ME	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** The contents of **r**S is rotated left the number of positions specified by bits 27–31 of **r**B. The rotated data is inserted into **r**A under control of the generated mask. **rlmi** Rotate Left then Mask Insert **rlmi.** Rotate Left then Mask Insert with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Rotate Right and Insert Bit	**rrib** **rrib.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Bit 0 of **r**S is rotated right the amount specified by bits 27–31 of **r**B. The bit is then inserted into **r**A. **rrib** Rotate Right and Insert Bit **rrib.** Rotate Right and Insert Bit with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Mask Generate	**maskg**
	maskg.
		rA,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.**
			Let mstart = **r**S[27–31], specifying the starting point of a mask of ones. Let mstop = **r**B[27–31], specifying the end point of the mask of ones.
			If mstart < mstop+1 then
			MASK(mstart…mstop) = ones
			MASK(all other bits) = zeros
			If mstart = mstop+1 then
			MASK(0-31) = ones
			If mstart > mstop+1 then
			MASK(mstop+1…mstart-1) = zeros
			MASK(all other bits) = ones
			MASK is then placed in **r**A.
			maskg Mask Generate
			maskg. Mask Generate with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
			This instruction is specific to the 601.

Mask Insert from Register	**maskir** **maskir.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is inserted into **r**A under control of the mask in **r**B. **maskir** Mask Insert from Register **maskir.** Mask Insert from Register with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.

3.3.4.2 Integer Shift Instructions

The instructions in this section perform left and right shifts. Immediate-form logical (unsigned) shift operations are obtained by specifying masks and shift values for certain rotate instructions. Simplified mnemonics are provided to make coding of such shifts simpler and easier to understand.

Any shift right algebraic instruction, followed by **addze**, can be used to divide quickly by 2^n.

Multiple-precision shifts can be programmed as shown in Appendix E, "Multiple-Precision Shifts."

The integer shift instructions are summarized in Table 3-9.

Table 3-9. Integer Shift Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Shift Left Word	**slw** **slw.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S are shifted left the number of bits specified by **r**B[27–31]. Bits shifted out of position 0 are lost. Zeros are supplied to the vacated positions on the right. The 32-bit result is placed into **r**A. If **r**B[26] = 1, then **r**A is filled with zeros. **slw** Shift Left Word **slw.** Shift Left Word with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Shift Right Word	**srw** **srw.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S are shifted right the number of bits specified by **r**B[27–31]. Zeros are supplied to the vacated positions on the left. The 32-bit result is placed into **r**A. If **r**B[26] = 1, then **r**A is filled with zeros. **srw** Shift Right Word **srw.** Shift Right Word with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Shift Right Algebraic Word Immediate	**srawi** **srawi.**	**r**A,**r**S,SH	The contents of **r**S are shifted right the number of bits specified by operand SH. Bits shifted out of position 31 are lost. The 32-bit result is sign extended and placed into **r**A. XER[CA] is set if **r** S contains a negative number and any "1" bits are shifted out of position 31; otherwise XER[CA] is cleared. An operand SH of zero causes **r**A to be loaded with the contents of **r**S and XER[CA] to be cleared to 0. **srawi** Shift Right Algebraic Word Immediate **srawi.** Shift Right Algebraic Word Immediate with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-9. Integer Shift Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Shift Right Algebraic Word	**sraw** **sraw.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S are shifted right the number of bits specified by **r**B[27–31]. If **r**B[26] = 1, then **r**A is filled with 32 sign bits (bit 0) from **r**S. If **r**B[26] = 0, then **r**A is filled from the left with sign bits. XER[CA] is set to 1 if **r**S contains a negative number and any "1" bits are shifted out of position 31; otherwise XER[CA] is cleared to 0. An operand (**r**B) of zero causes **r**A to be loaded with the contents of **r**S, and XER[CA] to be cleared to 0. Condition register field CR0 is set based on the value written into **r**A. **sraw** Shift Right Algebraic Word **sraw.** Shift Right Algebraic Word with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Shift Left with MQ	**slq** **slq.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a zero, a mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a one, a mask of all zeros is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed into register **r**A. **slq** Shift Left with MQ **slq.** Shift Left with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Right with MQ	**srq** **srq.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a zero, a mask of *n* zeros followed by 32-*n* ones is generated. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a one, a mask of all zeros is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed in **r**A. **srq** Shift Right with MQ **srq.** Shift Right with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-9. Integer Shift Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Shift Left Immediate with MQ	**sliq** **sliq.**	**r**A,**r**S,SH	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by operand SH. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. A mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed into register **r**A. **sliq** Shift Left Immediate with MQ **sliq.** Shift Left Immediate with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Right Immediate with MQ	**sriq** **sriq.**	**r**A,**r**S,SH	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by operand SH. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed in register **r**A. **sriq** Shift Right Immediate with MQ **sriq.** Shift Right Immediate with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Left Long Immediate with MQ	**slliq** **slliq.**	**r**A,**r**S,SH	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by SH. A mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of MQ, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed into **r**A. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register. **slliq** Shift Left Long Immediate with MQ **slliq.** Shift Left Long Immediate with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-9. Integer Shift Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Shift Right Long Immediate with MQ	**srliq** **srliq.**	**r**A,**r**S,SH	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by operand SH. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in register **r**A. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register. **srliq** Shift Right Long Immediate with MQ **srliq.** Shift Right Long Immediate with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Left Long with MQ	**sllq** **sllq.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a zero, a mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a one, a mask of 32 – *n* zeros followed by *n* ones is generated. A word of zeros is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in register **r**A. The MQ register is not altered. **sllq** Shift Left Long with MQ **sllq.** Shift Left Long with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Right Long with MQ	**srlq** **srlq.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a zero, a mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a one, a mask of *n* ones followed by 32 – n zeros is generated. A word of zeros is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in register **r**A. The MQ register is not altered. **srlq** Shift Right Long with MQ **srlq.** Shift Right Long with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-9. Integer Shift Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Shift Left Extended	**sle** **sle.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. A mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed in register **r**A. **sle** Shift Left Extended **sle.** Shift Left Extended with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Right Extended	**sre** **sre.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed in register **r**A. **sre** Shift Right Extended **sre.** Shift Right Extended with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Left Extended with MQ	**sleq** **sleq.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. A mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in register **r**A. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. **sleq** Shift Left Extended with MQ **sleq.** Shift Left Extended with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-9. Integer Shift Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Shift Right Extended with MQ	**sreq** **sreq.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in register **r**A. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register. **sreq** Shift Right Extended with MQ **sreq.** Shift Right Extended with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Right Algebraic Immediate with MQ	**sraiq** **sraiq.**	**r**A,**r**S,SH	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by the operand SH. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. The rotated word is then merged with a word of 32 sign bits from register **r**S, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in register **r**A. The rotated word is ANDed with the complement of the generated mask. This 32-bit result is ORed together and then ANDed with bit 0 of register **r**S to produce XER[CA]. Shift Right Algebraic instructions can be used for a fast divide by 2^n if followed with **addze**. **sraiq** Shift Right Algebraic Immediate with MQ **sraiq.** Shift Right Algebraic Immediate with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.

Table 3-9. Integer Shift Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Shift Right Algebraic with MQ	**sraq** **sraq.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a zero, a mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. When bit 26 of register **r**B is a one, a mask of all zeros is generated. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. The rotated word is then merged with a word of 32 sign bits from register **r**S, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in register **r**A. The rotated word is ANDed with the complement of the generated mask. This 32-bit result is ORed together and then ANDed with bit 0 of register **r**S to produce XER[CA]. Shift Right Algebraic instructions can be used for a fast divide by 2^n if followed with **addze**. **sraq** Shift Right Algebraic with MQ **sraq.** Shift Right Algebraic with MQ with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Shift Right Extended Algebraic	**srea** **srea.**	**r**A,**r**S,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of register **r**B. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. The rotated word is then merged with a word of 32 sign bits from register **r**S, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in register **r**A. The rotated word is ANDed with the complement of the generated mask. This 32-bit result is ORed together and then ANDed with bit 0 of register **r**S to produce XER[CA]. **srea** Shift Right Extended Algebraic **srea.** Shift Right Extended Algebraic with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.

3.4 Floating-Point Instructions

This section describes the floating-point instructions, which include the following:

- Floating-point arithmetic instructions
- Floating-point multiply-add instructions
- Floating-point rounding and conversion instructions
- Floating-point compare instructions
- Floating-point status and control register instructions

Floating-point loads and stores are discussed in Section 3.5, “Load and Store Instructions.”

3.4.1 Floating-Point Arithmetic Instructions

Single-precision instructions execute faster than their double-precision equivalents in the 601. For additional details on floating-point performance, refer to Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing.”

The floating-point arithmetic instructions are summarized in Table 3-10.

Table 3-10. Floating-Point Arithmetic Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Add	**fadd** **fadd.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is added to the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. Floating-point addition is based on exponent comparison and addition of the two significands. The exponents of the two operands are compared, and the significand accompanying the smaller exponent is shifted right, with its exponent increased by one for each bit shifted, until the two exponents are equal. The two significands are then added algebraically to form an intermediate sum. All 53 bits in the significand as well as all three guard bits (G, R, and X) enter into the computation. If a carry occurs, the sum's significand is shifted right one bit position and the exponent is increased by one. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fadd** Floating-Point Add **fadd.** Floating-Point Add with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-10. Floating-Point Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Add Single-Precision	**fadds** **fadds.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is added to the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. Floating-point addition is based on exponent comparison and addition of the two significands. The exponents of the two operands are compared, and the significand accompanying the smaller exponent is shifted right, with its exponent increased by one for each bit shifted, until the two exponents are equal. The two significands are then added algebraically to form an intermediate sum. All 53 bits in the significand as well as all three guard bits (G, R, and X) enter into the computation. If a carry occurs, the sum's significand is shifted right one bit position and the exponent is increased by one. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fadds** Floating-Point Single-Precision **fadds.** Floating-Point Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Subtract	**fsub** **fsub.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from the floating-point operand in register **fr**A. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a 1, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. The execution of the Floating-Point Subtract instruction is identical to that of Floating-Point Add, except that the contents of register **fr**B participates in the operation with its sign bit (bit 0) inverted. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fsub** Floating-Point Subtract **fsub.** Floating-Point Subtract with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Subtract Single-Precision	**fsubs** **fsubs.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from the floating-point operand in register **fr**A. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a 1, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. The execution of the Floating-Point Subtract instruction is identical to that of Floating-Point Add, except that the contents of register **fr**B participates in the operation with its sign bit (bit 0) inverted. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fsubs** Floating-Point Subtract Single-Precision **fsubs.** Floating-Point Subtract Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-10. Floating-Point Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Multiply	**fmul** **fmul.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a 1, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. Floating-point multiplication is based on exponent addition and multiplication of the significands. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fmul** Floating-Point Multiply **fmul.** Floating-Point Multiply with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Multiply Single-Precision	**fmuls** **fmuls.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a 1, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. Floating-point multiplication is based on exponent addition and multiplication of the significands. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fmuls** Floating-Point Multiply Single-Precision **fmuls.** Floating-Point Multiply Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Divide	**fdiv** **fdiv.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is divided by the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. No remainder is preserved. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a 1, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. Floating-point division is based on exponent subtraction and division of the significands. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1 and zero divide exceptions when FPSCR[ZE] = 1. **fdiv** Floating-Point Divide **fdiv.** Floating-Point Divide with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-10. Floating-Point Arithmetic Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Divide Single-Precision	**fdivs** **fdivs.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is divided by the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. No remainder is preserved. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a 1, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. Floating-point division is based on exponent subtraction and division of the significands. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1 and zero divide exceptions when FPSCR[ZE] = 1. **fdivs** Floating-Point Divide Single-Precision **fdivs.** Floating-Point Divide Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

3.4.2 Floating-Point Multiply-Add Instructions

These instructions combine multiply and add operations without an intermediate rounding operation. The fractional part of the intermediate product is 106 bits wide, and all 106 bits take part in the add/subtract portion of the instruction.

The floating-point multiply-add instructions are summarized in Table 3-11.

Table 3-11. Floating-Point Multiply-Add Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Multiply-Add	**fmadd** **fmadd.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is added to this intermediate result. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fmadd** Floating-Point Multiply-Add **fmadd.** Floating-Point Multiply-Add with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-11. Floating-Point Multiply-Add Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Multiply-Add Single-Precision	**fmadds** **fmadds.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is added to this intermediate result. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fmadds** Floating-Point Multiply-Add Single-Precision **fmadds.** Floating-Point Multiply-Add Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Multiply-Subtract	**fmsub** **fmsub.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from this intermediate result. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fmsub** Floating-Point Multiply-Subtract **fmsub.** Floating-Point Multiply-Subtract with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision	**fmsubs** **fmsubs.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from this intermediate result. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into register **fr**D. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fmsubs** Floating-Point Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision **fmsubs.** Floating-Point Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-11. Floating-Point Multiply-Add Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Add	**fnmadd** **fnmadd.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is added to this intermediate result. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR, then negated and placed into register **fr**D. This instruction produces the same result as would be obtained by using the floating-point multiply-add instruction and then negating the result, with the following exceptions: • QNaNs propagate with no effect on their sign bit. • QNaNs that are generated as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception have a "sign" bit of zero. • SNaNs that are converted to QNaNs as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception retain the "sign" bit of the SNaN. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fnmadd** Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Add **fnmadd.** Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Add with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Add Single-Precision	**fnmadds** **fnmadds.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is added to this intermediate result. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR, then negated and placed into register **fr**D. This instruction produces the same result as would be obtained by using the floating-point multiply-add instruction and then negating the result, with the following exceptions: • QNaNs propagate with no effect on their sign bit. • QNaNs that are generated as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception have a “sign” bit of zero. • SNaNs that are converted to QNaNs as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception retain the “sign” bit of the SNaN. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fnmadds** Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Add Single-Precision **fnmadds.** Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Add Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-11. Floating-Point Multiply-Add Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract	**fnmsub** **fnmsub.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from this intermediate result. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR, then negated and placed into register **fr**D. This instruction produces the same result as would be obtained by using the floating-point multiply-subtract instruction and then negating the result, with the following exceptions: • QNaNs propagate with no effect on their sign bit. • QNaNs that are generated as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception have a sign bit of zero. • SNaNs that are converted to QNaNs as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception retain the sign bit of the SNaN. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fnmsub** Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract **fnmsub.** Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision	**fnmsubs** **fnmsubs.**	**fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from this intermediate result. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR, then negated and placed into register **fr**D. This instruction produces the same result as would be obtained by using the floating-point multiply-subtract instruction and then negating the result, with the following exceptions: • QNaNs propagate with no effect on their "sign" bit. • QNaNs that are generated as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception have a "sign" bit of zero. • SNaNs that are converted to QNaNs as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception retain the "sign" bit of the SNaN. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **fnmsubs** Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision **fnmsubs.** Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

3.4.3 Floating-Point Rounding and Conversion Instructions

The floating-point rounding instruction is used to truncate a 64-bit double-precision number to a 32-bit single-precision floating-point number. The floating-point convert instructions converts a 64-bit double-precision floating point number to a 32-bit signed integer number.

The PowerPC architecture defines bits 0–31 of floating-point register **fr**D as undefined when executing the Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word (**fctiw**) and Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word with Round toward Zero (**fctiwz**) instructions. In the 601, these bits take on the value x'FFF8 0000' (which is the representation for a QNaN). This value may differ in future PowerPC processors, and software should avoid dependence on this 601 feature.

The floating-point rounding and conversion instructions are shown in Table 3-12.

Examples of uses of these instructions to perform various conversions can be found in Appendix F, “Floating-Point Models.”

Table 3-12. Floating-Point Rounding and Conversion Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Round to Single-Precision	**frsp** **frsp.**	**fr**D,**fr**B	If it is already in single-precision range, the floating-point operand in register **fr**B is placed into register **fr**D. Otherwise the floating-point operand in register **fr**B is rounded to single-precision using the rounding mode specified by FPSCR[RN] and placed into register **fr**D. The rounding is described fully in Appendix F, “Floating-Point Models.” FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE] = 1. **frsp** Floating-Point Round to Single-Precision **frsp.** Floating-Point Round to Single-Precision with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word	**fctiw** **fctiw.**	**fr**D,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is converted to a 32-bit signed integer, using the rounding mode specified by FPSCR[RN], and placed in bits 32–63 of register **fr**D. Bits 0–31 of register **fr**D are undefined. If the operand in register **fr**B is greater than $2^{31} – 1$, bits 32–63 of register **fr**D are set to x'7FFF_FFFF'. If the operand in register **fr**B is less than $–2^{31}$, bits 32–63 of register **fr**D are set to x '8000_0000'. The conversion is described fully in Appendix F, “Floating-Point Models.” Except for trap-enabled invalid operation exceptions, FPSCR[FPRF] is undefined. FPSCR[FR] is set if the result is incremented when rounded. FPSCR[FI] is set if the result is inexact. **fctiw** Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word **fctiw.** Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-12. Floating-Point Rounding and Conversion Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word with Round	**fctiwz** **fctiwz.**	**fr**D,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is converted to a 32-bit signed integer, using the rounding mode Round toward Zero, and placed in bits 32–63 of register **fr**D. Bits 0–31 of register **fr**D are undefined. If the operand in **fr**B is greater than $2^{31} - 1$, bits 32–63 of **fr**D are set to x'7FFF_FFFF'. If the operand in register **fr**B is less than -2^{31}, bits 32–63 of register **fr**D are set to x '8000_0000'. The conversion is described fully in Appendix F, “Floating-Point Models.” Except for trap-enabled invalid operation exceptions, FPSCR[FPRF] is undefined. FPSCR[FR] is set if the result is incremented when rounded. FPSCR[FI] is set if the result is inexact. **fctiwz** Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word with Round Toward Zero **fctiwz.** Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word with Round Toward Zero with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

3.4.4 Floating-Point Compare Instructions

Floating-point compare instructions compare the contents of two floating-point registers and the comparison ignores the sign of zero (that is, +0 = –0). The comparison can be ordered or unordered. The comparison sets one bit in the designated CR field and clears the other three bits. The FPCC (floating-point condition code; bits 16–19 in the floating-point status and control register) is set in the same way.

The CR field and the FPCC are interpreted as shown in Table 3-13.

Table 3-13. CR Bit Settings

Bit	Name	Description
0	FL	(**fr**A) < (**fr**B)
1	FG	(**fr**A) > (**fr**B)
2	FE	(**fr**A) = (**fr**B)
3	FU	(**fr**A) ? (**fr**B) (unordered)

The PowerPC architecture defines CR1 and the CR field specified by operand **crf**D as undefined when executing the Floating-Point Compare Unordered (**fcmpu**) and Floating-Point Compare Ordered (**fcmpo**) instructions with condition register updating enabled.

The floating-point compare instructions are summarized in Table 3-14.

Table 3-14. Floating-Point Compare Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Compare Unordered	**fcmpu**	**crf**D,**fr**A,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is compared to the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. The result of the compare is placed into CR field **crf**D and the FPCC. If an operand is a NaN, either quiet or signaling, CR field **crf**D and the FPCC are set to reflect unordered. If an operand is a Signaling NaN, VXSNAN is set.
Floating-Point Compare Ordered	**fcmpo**	**crf**D,**fr**A,**fr**B	The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is compared to the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. The result of the compare is placed into CR field **crf**D and the FPCC. If an operand is a NaN, either quiet or signalling, CR field **crf**D and the FPCC are set to reflect unordered. If an operand is a Signalling NaN, VXSNAN is set, and if invalid operation is disabled (VE = 0) then VXVC is set. Otherwise, if an operand is a Quiet NaN, VXVC is set.

3.4.5 Floating-Point Status and Control Register Instructions

Every FPSCR instruction appears to synchronize the effects of all floating-point instructions executed by a given processor. Executing an FPSCR instruction ensures that all floating-point instructions previously initiated by the given processor appear to have completed before the FPSCR instruction is initiated and that no subsequent floating-point instructions appear to be initiated by the given processor until the FPSCR instruction has completed. In particular:

- All exceptions caused by the previously initiated instructions are recorded in the FPSCR before the FPSCR instruction is initiated.
- All invocations of the floating-point exception handler caused by the previously initiated instructions have occurred before the FPSCR instruction is initiated.
- No subsequent floating-point instruction that depends on or alters the settings of any FPSCR bits appears to be initiated until the FPSCR instruction has completed.

Floating-point memory access instructions are not affected by the execution of the FPSCR instructions.

The floating-point status and control register instructions are summarized in Table 3-15.

Table 3-15. Floating-Point Status and Control Register Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Move from FPSCR	**mffs** **mffs.**	**fr**D	The contents of the FPSCR are placed into bits 32–63 of register **fr**D. In the 601, bits 0–31 of floating-point register **fr**D are set to the value x'FFFF_FFFF'. **mffs** Move from FPSCR **mffs.** Move from FPSCR with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Move to Condition Register from FPSCR	**mcrfs**	**crf**D**,crf**S	The contents of FPSCR field specified by operand **crf**S are copied to the CR field specified by operand **crf**D. All exception bits copied are cleared to zero in the FPSCR.
Move to FPSCR Field Immediate	**mtfsfi** **mtfsfi.**	**crf**D**,**IMM	The value of the IMM field is placed into FPSCR field **crf**D. All other FPSCR fields are unchanged. **mtfsfi** Move to FPSCR Field Immediate **mtfsfi.** Move to FPSCR Field Immediate with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. When FPSCR[0–3] is specified, bits 0 (FX) and 3 (OX) are set to the values of IMM[0] and IMM[3] (that is, even if this instruction causes OX to change from 0 to 1, FX is set from IMM[0] and not by the usual rule that FX is set to 1 when an exception bit changes from 0 to 1). Bits 1 and 2 (FEX and VX) are set according to the usual rule described in Section 2.2.3, “Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR),” and not from IMM[1–2].
Move to FPSCR Fields	**mtfsf** **mtfsf.**	FM**,fr**B	Bits 32–63 of register **fr**B are placed into the FPSCR under control of the field mask specified by FM. The field mask identifies the 4-bit fields affected. Let *i* be an integer in the range 0–7. If FM = 1 then FPSCR field *i* (FPSCR bits 4**i* through 4**i*+3) is set to the contents of the corresponding field of the low-order 32 bits of register **fr**B. **mtfsf** Move to FPSCR Fields **mtfsf.** Move to FPSCR Fields with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. In other PowerPC implementations, the **mtfsf** instruction may perform more slowly when only a portion of the fields are updated. This is not the case in the 601. When FPSCR[0–3] is specified, bits 0 (FX) and 3 (OX) are set to the values of **fr**B[32] and **fr**B[35] (that is, even if this instruction causes OX to change from 0 to 1, FX is set from **fr**B[32] and not by the usual rule that FX is set to 1 when an exception bit changes from 0 to 1). Bits 1 and 2 (FEX and VX) are set according to the usual rule described in Section 2.2.3, “Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR),” and not from **fr**B[33–34].
Move to FPSCR Bit 0	**mtfsb0** **mtfsb0.**	**crb**D	The bit of the FPSCR specified by operand **crb**D is cleared to 0. Bits 1 and 2 (FEX and VX) cannot be explicitly reset. **mtfsb0** Move to FPSCR Bit 0 **mtfsb0.** Move to FPSCR Bit 0 with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

Table 3-15. Floating-Point Status and Control Register Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Move to FPSCR Bit 1	**mtfsb1** **mtfsb1.**	**crb**D	The bit of the FPSCR specified by operand **crb**D is set to 1. Bits 1 and 2 (FEX and VX) cannot be reset explicitly. **mtfsb1** Move to FPSCR Bit 1 **mtfsb1.** Move to FPSCR Bit 1 with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

3.5 Load and Store Instructions

This section describes the load and store instructions of the 601, which consist of the following:

- Integer load instructions
- Integer store instructions
- Integer load and store with byte reversal instructions
- Integer load and store multiple instructions
- Floating-point load instructions
- Floating-point store instructions
- Floating-point move instructions
- Memory synchronization instructions

3.5.1 Integer Load and Store Address Generation

Integer load and store operations generate effective addresses using register indirect with immediate index mode, register indirect with index mode, or register indirect mode. Note that the 601 is optimized for load and store operations that are aligned on natural boundaries, and operations that are not naturally aligned may suffer performance degradation. Refer to section 5.4.6.1, “Integer Alignment Exceptions” for additional information about load and store address alignment exceptions.

3.5.1.1 Register Indirect with Immediate Index Addressing

Instructions using this addressing mode contain a signed 16-bit immediate index (d operand) which is sign extended to 32 bits, and added to the contents of a general purpose register specified in the instruction (**r**A operand) to generate the effective address. If the **r**A field of the instruction specifies **r**0, a value of zero will be added to the immediate index (d operand) in place of the contents of **r**0. The option to specify **r**A or 0 is shown in the instruction descriptions as (**r**A|0).

Figure 3-1 shows how an effective address is generated when using register indirect with immediate index addressing.

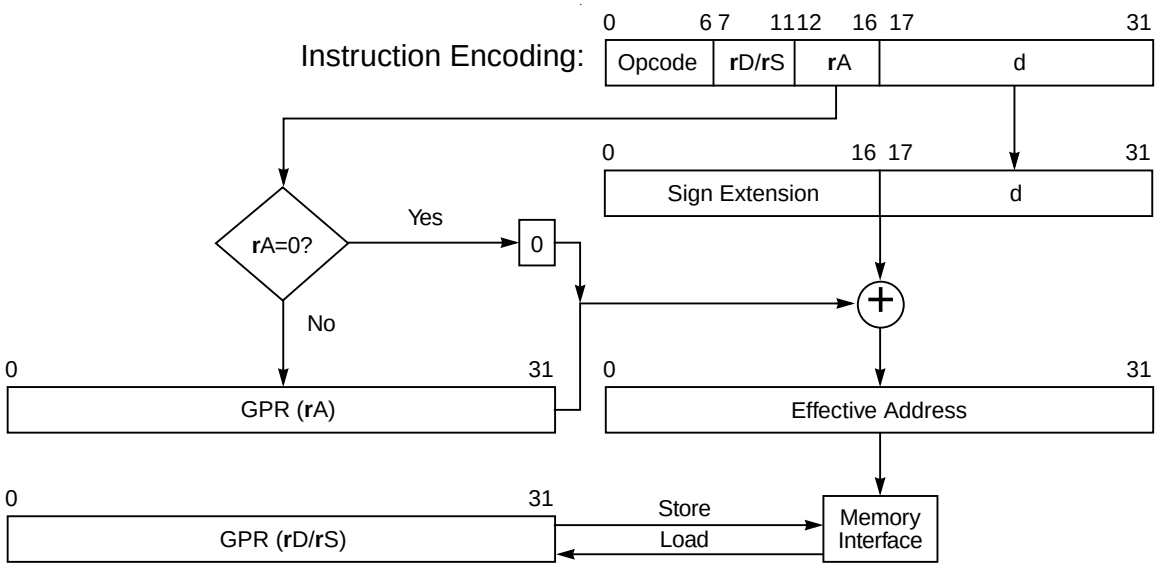


Figure 3-1. Register Indirect with Immediate Index Addressing

3.5.1.2 Register Indirect with Index Addressing

Instructions using this addressing mode cause the contents of two general purpose registers (specified as operands **r**A and **r**B) to be added in the generation of the effective address. A zero in place of the **r**A operand causes a zero to be added to the contents of the general purpose register specified in operand **r**B. The option to specify **r**A or 0 is shown in the instruction descriptions as (**r**A|0).

Figure 3-2 shows how an effective address is generated when using register indirect with index addressing.

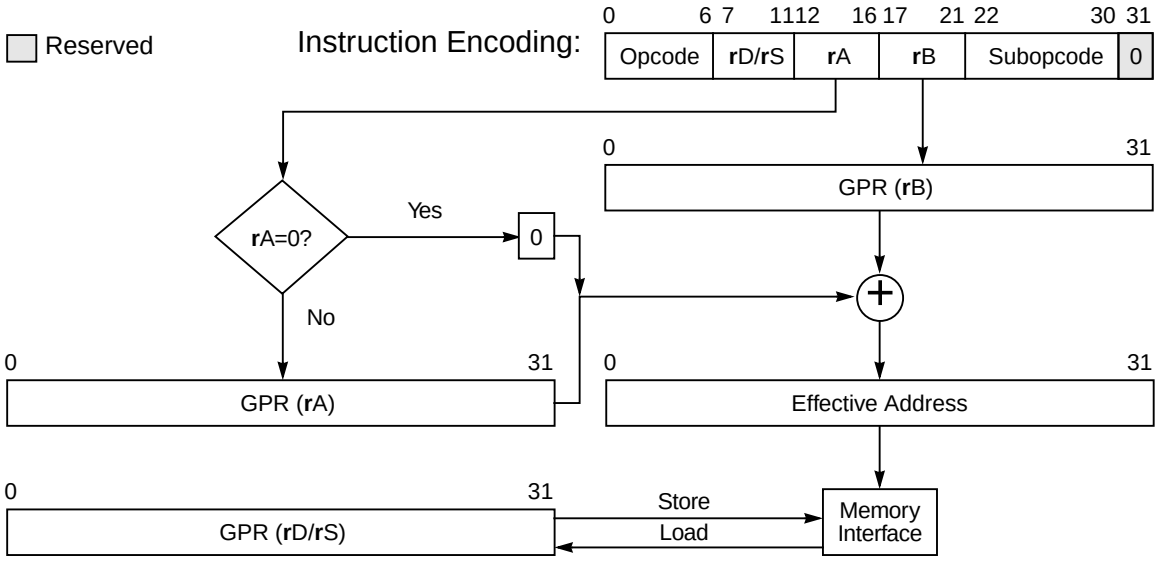


Figure 3-2. Register Indirect with Index Addressing

3.5.1.3 Register Indirect Addressing

Instructions using this addressing mode use the contents of the general purpose register specified by the **r**A operand as the effective address. A zero in the **r**A operand causes an effective address of zero to be generated. The option to specify **r**A or 0 is shown in the instruction descriptions as (**r**A|0).

Figure 3-3 shows how an effective address is generated when using register indirect addressing.

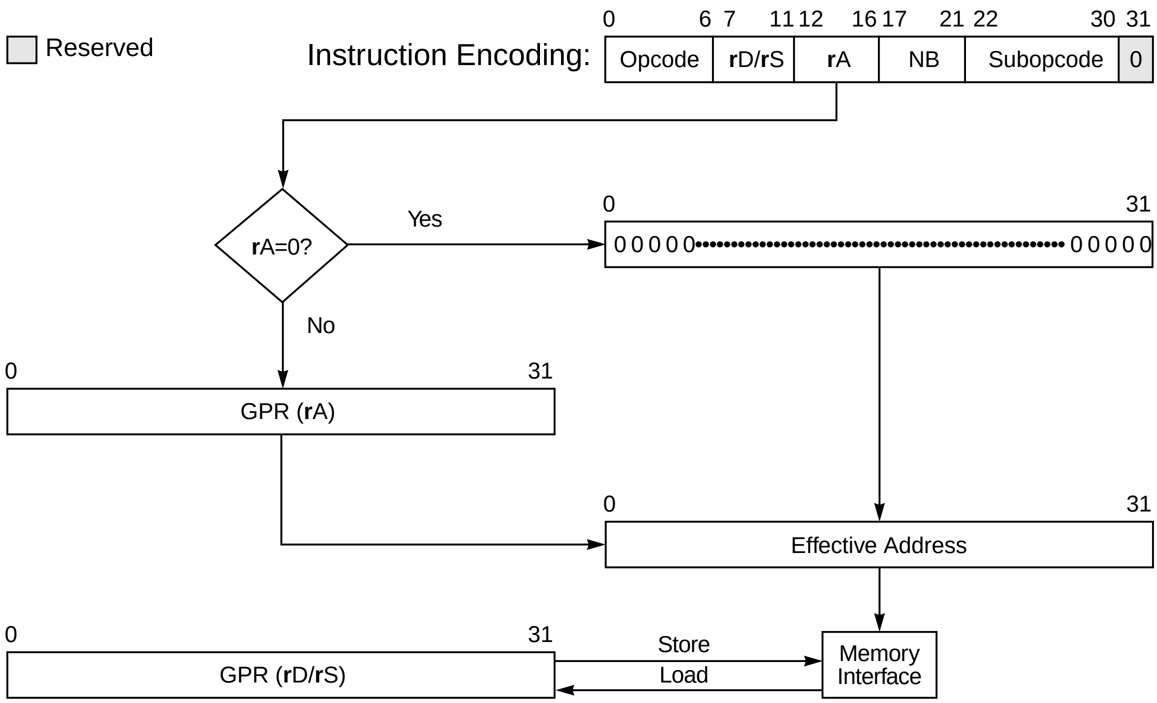


Figure 3-3. Register Indirect Addressing

3.5.2 Integer Load Instructions

For load instructions, the byte, half word, word, or double word addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D. Many integer load instructions have an update form, in which **r**A is updated with the generated effective address. For these forms, if **r**A ≠ 0 and **r**A ≠ **r**D, the effective address is placed into **r**A and the memory element (byte, half word, or word) addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D.

Note that non-601 implementations of the architecture may run the load half algebraic instructions (**lha**, **lhax**) and the load with update (**lbzu**, **lbzux**, **lhzu**, **lhzux**, **lhau**, **lhaux**) instructions with greater latency than other types of load instructions. In the 601, these instructions operate with the same latency as other load instructions. For details on instruction timing, see Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing.”

The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as an invalid form. In the POWER architecture, these forms are not considered invalid and specifications exist for these cases. To maintain compatibility with the POWER architecture, for the case where **r**A = 0, the 601 does not update **r0**. In cases where **r**A = **r**D, the load data is loaded into **r**D and the register **r**A update is suppressed. In addition, the PowerPC architecture defines integer load instructions with the condition register update option enabled to be an invalid form and the POWER architecture does not. For compatibility, the 601 executes the instruction in a manner consistent with the PowerPC architecture and it causes an undefined value to be placed into the condition register CR0 field.

Table 3-16 summarizes the load instructions available for the 601.

Table 3-16. Integer Load Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load Byte and Zero	**lbz**	**r**D,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The byte in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[24–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are cleared to 0.
Load Byte and Zero Indexed	**lbzx**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The byte in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[24–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are cleared to 0.
Load Byte and Zero with Update	**lbzu**	**r**D,d(**r**A)	The effective address (EA) is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The byte in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[24–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are cleared to 0. The EA is placed into register **r**A. If operand **r**A = 0 the 601 does not update **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. Although the PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms, the 601 allows these cases.
Load Byte and Zero with Update Indexed	**lbzux**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address (EA)is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The byte addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[24–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are cleared to 0. The EA is placed into register **r**A. If operand **r**A = 0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. Although the PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms, the 601 allows these cases.
Load Half Word and Zero	**lhz**	**r**D,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The half word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[16–31]. The remaining bits in **r**D are cleared to 0.
Load Half Word and Zero Indexed	**lhzx**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The half word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[16–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are cleared.

Table 3-16. Integer Load Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load Half Word and Zero with Update	**lhzu**	**r**D**,**d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The half word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[16–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are cleared. The EA is placed into register **r**A. If operand **r**A = 0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. Although the PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms, the 601 allows these cases.
Load Half Word and Zero with Update Indexed	**lhzux**	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The half word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[16–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are cleared. The EA is placed into register **r**A. Although the PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms, the 601 allows these cases.
Load Half Word Algebraic	**lha**	**r**D**,**d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The half word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[16–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are filled with a copy of the most significant bit of the loaded half word.
Load Half Word Algebraic Indexed	**lhax**	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The half word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[16–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are filled with a copy of the most significant bit of the loaded half word.
Load Half Word Algebraic with Update	**lhau**	**r**D**,**d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The half word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[16–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are filled with a copy of the most significant bit of the loaded half word. The EA is placed into register **r**A. If operand **r**A = 0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. Although the PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms, the 601 allows these cases.
Load Half Word Algebraic with Update Indexed	**lhaux**	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The half word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[16–31]. The remaining bits in register **r**D are filled with a copy of the most significant bit of the loaded half-word. The EA is placed into register **r**A. If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. Although the PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms, the 601 allows these cases.
Load Word and Zero	**lwz**	**r**D**,**d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[0–31].
Load Word and Zero Indexed	**lwzx**	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[0–31].

Table 3-16. Integer Load Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load Word and Zero with Update	**lwzu**	**r**D,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[0–31]. The EA is placed into register **r**A. If operand **r**A = 0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. Although the PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms, the 601 allows these cases.
Load Word and Zero with Update Indexed	**lwzux**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D[0–31]. The EA is placed into register **r**A. If operand **r**A = 0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. Although the PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms, the 601 allows these cases.

3.5.3 Integer Store Instructions

For integer store instructions, the contents of register **r**S are stored into the byte, half word, word or double word in memory addressed by EA. Many store instructions have an update form, in which register **r**A is updated with the effective address. For these forms, the following rules apply:

- If **r**A ≠ 0, the effective address is placed into register **r**A.
- If **r**S = **r**A, the contents of register **r**S are copied to the target memory element, then the generated EA is placed into **r**A.

The PowerPC architecture defines store with update instructions with **r**A = 0 as an invalid form. In the POWER architecture, this form is not considered invalid and in this case **r**A is not updated. To maintain compatibility with POWER in this case, the 601 does not update register **r0**. In addition, the PowerPC architecture defines integer store instructions with the condition register update option enabled to be an invalid form and the POWER architecture does not. To maintain compatibility in these cases, the 601 executes the instruction as described in the PowerPC architecture, and it loads an undefined value into CR0 field of the condition register.

Table 3-17 provides a summary of the integer store instructions for the 601.

Table 3-17. Integer Store Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Store Byte	**stb**	**r**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. Register **r**S[24–31] is stored into the byte in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Byte Indexed	**stbx**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). **r**S[24–31] is stored into the byte in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Byte with Update	**stbu**	**r**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. **r**S[24–31] is stored into the byte in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into register **r**A.
Store Byte with Update Indexed	**stbux**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). **r**S[24–31] is stored into the byte in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into register **r**A.
Store Half Word	**sth**	**r**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. **r**S[16–31] is stored into the half word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store half Word Indexed	**sthx**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address (EA) is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). **r**S[16–31] is stored into the half word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Half Word with Update	**sthu**	**r**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. **r**S[16–31] is stored into the half word in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into register **r**A.
Store Half Word with Update Indexed	**sthux**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). **r**S[16–31] is stored into the half word in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into register **r**A.
Store Word	**stw**	**r**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. Register **r**S is stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Word Indexed	**stwx**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). **r**S is stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Word with Update	**stwu**	**r**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. Register **r**S is stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into register **r**A.
Store Word with Update Indexed	**stwux**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). Register **r**S is stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into register **r**A.

3.5.4 Integer Load and Store with Byte Reversal Instructions

Table 3-18 describes integer load and store with byte reversal instructions. Note that in other PowerPC implementations, load byte-reverse instructions may have greater latency than other load instructions.

This is not the case in the 601. These instructions operate with the same latency as other load instructions.

Table 3-18. Integer Load and Store with Byte Reversal Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load Half Word Byte-Reverse Indexed	**lhbrx**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). Bits 0–7 of the half word in memory addressed by the EA are loaded into **r**D[24–31]. Bits 8–15 of the half word in memory addressed by the EA are loaded into **r**D[16–23]. The rest of the bits in **r**D are cleared to 0.
Load Word Byte-Reverse Indexed	**lwbrx**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). Bits 0–7 of the word in memory addressed by the EA are loaded into **r**D[24–31]. Bits 8–15 of the word in memory addressed by the EA are loaded into **r**D[16–23]. Bits 16–23 of the word in memory addressed by the EA are loaded into **r**D[8–15]. Bits 24–31 of the word in memory addressed by the EA are loaded into **r**D[0–7].
Store Half Word Byte-Reverse Indexed	**sthbrx**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). **r**S[24–31] are stored into bits 0–7 of the half word in memory addressed by the EA. **r**S[16–23] are stored into bits 8–15 of the half word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Word Byte-Reverse Indexed	**stwbrx**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). **r**S[24–31] are stored into bits 0–7 of the word in memory addressed by EA. **r**S[16–23] are stored into bits 8–15 of the word in memory addressed by the EA. **r**S[8–15] are stored into bits 16–23 of the word in memory addressed by the EA. **r**S[0–7] are stored into bits 24–31 of the word in memory addressed by the EA.

3.5.5 Integer Load and Store Multiple Instructions

The load/store multiple instructions are used to move blocks of data to and from the GPRs. The load multiple and store multiple instructions may have operands that require memory accesses crossing a 4-Kbyte page boundary. As a result, these instructions may be interrupted by a data access exception associated with the address translation of the second page. In this case, the 601 performs all of the memory references from the first page, and none of the memory references from the second page before taking the exception. For additional information, refer to Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').”

In future implementations, these instructions are likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual load or store instructions that produce the same results.

The PowerPC architecture defines the load multiple word (**lmw**) instruction with **r**A in the range of registers to be loaded as an invalid form. In the POWER architecture, this form is not considered invalid. To maintain compatibility with the POWER architecture in this case, the 601 will execute the instruction normally, except that the loading of register **r**A is skipped. If **r**A = 0, the register is not considered to be actually used for addressing, and the update of **r0** (if it is in the range of registers to be loaded) is loaded. In addition, the PowerPC architecture defines the load multiple and store multiple instructions with misaligned operands (that is, the EA is not a multiple of 4) to be an invalid form and the POWER architecture does not. To maintain compatibility with the POWER architecture, the 601 executes these instructions subject to the performance degradation as described in 5.4.6.1, “Integer Alignment Exceptions.” Note that on other PowerPC implementations, load and store multiple instructions that are not on a word boundary either take an alignment exception or generate results that are boundedly undefined.

Table 3-19 summarizes the integer load and store multiple instructions for the 601.

Table 3-19. Integer Load and Store Multiple Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load Multiple Word	**lmw**	**r**D,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. *n* = 32 – **r**D. *n* consecutive words starting at EA are loaded into the GPR specified by **r**D through GPR 31. If the EA is not a multiple of four, the alignment exception handler may be invoked if a page boundary is crossed.
Store Multiple Word	**stmw**	**r**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. *n* = (32 – **r**S). *n* consecutive words starting at the EA are stored from the GPR specified by **r**S through GPR 31. If the EA is not a multiple of four, the alignment exception handler may be invoked if a page boundary is crossed.

3.5.6 Integer Move String Instructions

The integer move string instructions allow movement of data from memory to registers or from registers to memory without concern for alignment. These instructions can be used for a short move between arbitrary memory locations or to initiate a long move between misaligned memory fields. However, in future implementations, these instructions are likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual load or store instructions that produce the same results.

Load/store string indexed instructions of zero length have no effect. Table 3-20 summarizes the integer move string instructions available for the 601.

Table 3-20. Integer Move String Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load String Word Immediate	**lswi**	**r**D,**r**A,NB	The EA is (**r**A|0). Let *n* = NB if NB ≠ 0, *n* = 32 if NB = 0; *n* is the number of bytes to load. Let *nr* = (*n*/4); *nr* is the number of registers to receive data. *n* consecutive bytes starting at the EA are loaded into GPRs **r**D through **r**D+*nr*-1. Bytes are loaded left to right in each register. The sequence of registers wraps around to **r0** if required. If the four bytes of register **r**D+*nr*-1 are only partially filled, the unfilled low-order byte(s) of that register are cleared to 0. If **r**A is in the range of registers specified to be loaded, it will be skipped in the load process. If operand **r**A = 0, the register is not considered as used for addressing, and will be loaded.
Load String Word Indexed	**lswx**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). Let *n* = XER[25–31]; *n* is the number of bytes to load. Let *nr* = CEIL(*n*/4); *nr* is the number of registers to receive data. If *n*>0, *n* consecutive bytes starting at the EA are loaded into registers **r**D through **r**D+*nr*-1. Bytes are loaded left to right in each register. The sequence of registers wraps around to **r0** if required. If the four bytes of register **r**D+*nr*-1 are only partially filled, the unfilled low-order byte(s) of that register are cleared to 0. If *n*=0, the contents of register **r**D is undefined. If **r**A is in the range of registers specified to be loaded, it will be skipped in the load process. If operand **r**A=0, the register is not considered as used for addressing, and will be loaded.

Table 3-20. Integer Move String Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load String and Compare Byte Indexed	**lscbx** **lscbx.**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). XER[25–31] contains the byte count. Register **r**D is the starting register. *n* = XER[25–31], which is the number of bytes to be loaded. *nr* = CEIL(*n*/4), which is the number of registers to receive data. Starting with the leftmost byte in **r**D, consecutive bytes in memory addressed by the EA are loaded into **r**D through **r**D+*nr*-1, wrapping around back through GPR 0 if required, until either a byte match is found with XER[16–23] or *n* bytes have been loaded. If a byte match is found, that byte is also loaded. Bytes are always loaded left to right in the register. In the case when a match was found before *n* bytes were loaded, the contents of the rightmost byte(s) not loaded of that register and the contents of all succeeding registers up to and including **r**D+*nr*-1 are undefined. Also, no reference is made to memory after the matched byte is found. In the case when a match was not found, the contents of the rightmost byte(s) not loaded of **r**D+*nr*-1 is undefined. When XER[25–31]=0, the content of **r**D is unchanged. The count of the number of bytes loaded up to and including the matched byte, if a match was found, is placed in XER[25–31]. **lscbx** Load String and Compare Byte Indexed **lscbx.** Load String and Compare Byte Indexed with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Store String Word Immediate	**stswi**	**r**S**,r**A,NB	The EA is (**r**A|0). Let *n* = NB if NB ≠ 0, *n* = 32 if NB = 0; *n* is the number of bytes to store. Let *nr* = CEIL(*n*/4); *nr* is the number of registers to supply data. *n* consecutive bytes starting at the EA are stored from register **r**S through **r**S+*nr*-1. Bytes are stored left to right from each register. The sequence of registers wraps around through **r0** if required.
Store String Word Indexed	**stswx**	**r**S**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). Let *n* = XER[25–31]; *n* is the number of bytes to store. Let *nr* = CEIL(*n*/4); *nr* is the number of registers to supply data. *n* consecutive bytes starting at the EA are stored from register **r**S through **r**S+*nr*-1. Bytes are stored left to right from each register. The sequence of registers wraps around through **r0** if required.

Load string and store string instructions may involve operands that are not word-aligned. As described in Section 5.4.6, “Alignment Exception (x'00600'),” a misaligned string operation suffers a performance penalty compared to an aligned operation of the same type. A non-word-aligned string operation that crosses a 4-Kbyte boundary, or a word-aligned string operation that crosses a 256-Mbyte boundary always causes an alignment exception.

A non-word-aligned string operation that crosses a double-word boundary is also slower than a word-aligned string operation.

Although a word-aligned string operation that crosses a 4-Kbyte boundary operates at the 601's fastest rate, the instruction may be interrupted by a data access exception associated with the address translation of the second page. In this case, the 601 performs all memory references from the first page and none from the second before taking the exception. For more information, refer to Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').”

The Load String and Compare Byte Indexed (**lscbx**) instruction can lead to several architecturally undefined results. When the last register loaded is only partially filled, the remaining bytes are considered to be undefined. If loading is terminated due to a byte match, all succeeding bytes are considered to be undefined. In addition, if the condition register update option is enabled, and XER[25–31] = 0, condition register field CR0 is undefined. In all of these cases, the 601 does not guarantee particular results for these undefined fields. The values should simply be treated as undefined.

If the EA associated with an **lscbx** instruction is directed to a memory-forced I/O controller interface segment (that is, the segment register T bit is set and the BUID field equals x'07F'), the address is translated appropriately and the operation proceeds. On the other hand, if the EA associated with an **lscbx** instruction is directed to an I/O segment (that is, the segment register T bit is set but the BUID does not equal x'07F'), the 601 takes a data access exception and sets bit 5 of the DSISR.

If **r**A is in the range of registers to be loaded for a Load String Word Immediate (**lswi**) instruction or if either **r**A or **r**B are in the range of registers to be loaded for a Load String Word Indexed (**lswx**) or **lscbx** instruction, then the PowerPC architecture considers the instruction to be of an invalid form. In the POWER architecture, this form is not considered invalid and specifications exist for these cases. To maintain compatibility with the POWER architecture in this case, the 601 executes the instruction normally, but loading of these registers is inhibited. In addition, the **lswx**, **lscbx** and **stswx** instructions that specify a string length of zero are considered an invalid form in the PowerPC architecture, but not in the POWER architecture. For compatibility with the POWER architecture, the 601 executes these instructions, but does not alter register **r**D or cause a memory access.

3.5.7 Memory Synchronization Instructions

Memory synchronization instructions control the order in which memory operations are completed with respect to asynchronous events, and the order in which memory operations are seen by other processors or memory access mechanisms. Additional information about these instructions and about related aspects of memory management can be found in Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.”

Internally, the 601 handles the synchronize (**sync**) and the Enforce In-Order Execution of I/O (**eieio**) instructions identically. These instructions delay execution of subsequent instructions until previous instructions have completed to the point that they can no longer

cause an exception, until all previous memory accesses are performed globally, and the **sync** or **eieio** operation is broadcast onto the 601 bus interface.

System designs that use a second-level cache should take special care to accept the broadcast **sync** operation and perform the appropriate actions to guarantee that memory references that may be queued internally to the second-level cache have been performed globally.

The number of cycles required to complete a **sync** or **eieio** instruction depends on system parameters and on the processor's state when the instruction is issued. As a result, frequent use of these instructions may degrade performance slightly.

The PowerPC architecture defines the **sync** instruction with condition register update enabled to be an invalid form, whereas the POWER architecture does not. For compatibility, the 601 executes the instruction consistently with the PowerPC architecture, and loads an undefined value into condition register field CR0.

The Instruction Synchronize (**isync**) instruction causes the 601 to purge its instruction buffers, wait for any preceding **sync** instructions to complete, and then branch to the next sequential instruction (which has the effect of clearing the pipeline behind the **isync** instruction).

The proper paired use of the Load Word and Reserve Indexed (**lwarx**) and Store Word Conditional Indexed (**stwcx.**) instructions allows programmers to emulate common semaphore operations such as “test and set”, “compare and swap”, “exchange memory”, and “fetch and add”. Examples of these semaphore operations can be found in Appendix G, “Synchronization Programming Examples.” The **lwarx** instruction must be paired with an **stwcx.** instruction with the same effective address used for both instructions of the pair, and the reservation granularity is 32 bytes.

The concept behind the use of the **lwarx** and **stwcx.** instructions is that a processor may load a semaphore from memory, compute a result based on the value of the semaphore, and conditionally store it back to the same location. The conditional store is performed based upon the existence of a reservation established by the preceding **lwarx**. If the reservation exists when the store is executed, the store is performed and a bit is set to one in the Condition Register. If the reservation does not exist when the store is executed, the target memory location is not modified and a bit is set to zero in the condition register.

The **lwarx** and **stwcx.** primitives allow software to read a semaphore, compute a result based on the value of the semaphore, store the new value back into the semaphore location only if that location has not been modified since it was first read, and determine if the store was successful. If the store was successful, the sequence of instructions from the read of the semaphore to the store that updated the semaphore appear to have been executed atomically (that is, no other processor or mechanism modified the semaphore location between the read and the update), thus providing the equivalent of a real atomic operation. However, other processors may have read from the location during this operation.

The **lwarx** and **stwcx.** instructions require the EA to be aligned. Exception handling software should not attempt to emulate a misaligned **lwarx** or **stwcx.** instruction, because there is no correct way to define the address associated with the reservation.

In general, the **lwarx** and **stwcx.** instructions should be used only in system programs, which can be invoked by application programs as needed.

At most one reservation exists simultaneously on any processor. The address associated with the reservation can be changed by a subsequent **lwarx** instruction. The conditional store is performed based upon the existence of a reservation established by the preceding **lwarx** regardless of whether the address generated by the **lwarx** matches that generated by the **stwcx**. A reservation held by the processor is cleared by any of the following:

- executing an **stwcx.** instruction to any address,
- execution of an **sc** instruction,
- execution of an instruction that causes an exception,
- occurrence of an asynchronous exception,
- attempt by some other device to modify a location in the reservation granularity (32 bytes).

The memory synchronization instructions available for the 601 are summarized in Table 3-21.

Table 3-21. Memory Synchronization Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Enforce In-Order Execution of I/O	**eieio**		The **eieio** instruction provides an ordering function for the effects of load and store instructions executed by a given processor. Executing an **eieio** instruction ensures that all memory accesses previously initiated by the given processor are complete with respect to main memory before allowing any memory accesses subsequently initiated by the given processor to access main memory. The **eieio** instruction orders load and store operations to cache-inhibited memory, and store operations to write-through cache memory. The **eieio** instruction performs the same function as a **sync** instruction when executed by the 601.
Instruction Synchronize	**isync**		This instruction waits for all previous instructions to complete, and then discards any fetched instructions, causing subsequent instructions to be fetched (or refetched) from memory and to execute in the context established by the previous instructions. This instruction has no effect on other processors or on their caches.

Table 3-21. Memory Synchronization Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load Word and Reserve Indexed	**lwarx**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The word in memory addressed by the EA is loaded into register **r**D. This instruction creates a reservation for use by an **stwcx.** instruction. An address computed from the EA is associated with the reservation, and replaces any address previously associated with the reservation. The EA must be a multiple of 4. If it is not, the alignment exception handler will be invoked if the word loaded crosses a page boundary, or the results may be undefined.
Store Word Conditional Indexed	**stwcx.**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). If a reservation exists, register **r**S is stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA and the reservation is cleared. If a reservation does not exist, the instruction completes without altering memory or the contents of the cache. The EQ bit in the condition register field CR0 is modified to reflect whether the store operation was performed (i.e., whether a reservation existed when the **stwcx.** instruction began execution). If the store was completed successfully, the EQ bit is set to one. The EA must be a multiple of 4; otherwise, the alignment exception handler will be invoked if the word stored crosses a page boundary, or the results may be undefined.
Synchronize	**sync**		Executing a **sync** instruction ensures that all instructions previously initiated by the given processor appear to have completed before any subsequent instructions are initiated by the given processor. When the **sync** instruction completes, all memory accesses initiated by the given processor prior to the **sync** will have been performed with respect to all other mechanisms that access memory. The **sync** instruction can be used to ensure that the results of all stores into a data structure, performed in a “critical section” of a program, are seen by other processors before the data structure is seen as unlocked. The **eieio** instruction may be more appropriate than **sync** for cases in which the only requirement is to control the order in which memory references are seen by I/O devices.

3.5.8 Floating-Point Load and Store Address Generation

Floating point load and store operations generate effective addresses using the register indirect with immediate index mode and register indirect with index mode, the details of which are described below. Floating-point loads and stores are not supported for I/O accesses when the SR[BUID] is not equal to x'07F'. The use of floating-point loads and stores for I/O access will result in an alignment exception.

3.5.8.1 Register Indirect with Immediate Index Addressing

Instructions using this addressing mode contain a signed 16-bit immediate index (d operand) which is sign extended to 32 bits, and added to the contents of a general purpose register specified in the instruction (**r**A operand) to generate the effective address. A zero in the **r**A operand causes a zero to be added to the immediate index (d operand). This is shown in the instruction descriptions as (**r**A|0).

Figure 3-4 shows how an effective address is generated when using register indirect with immediate index addressing.

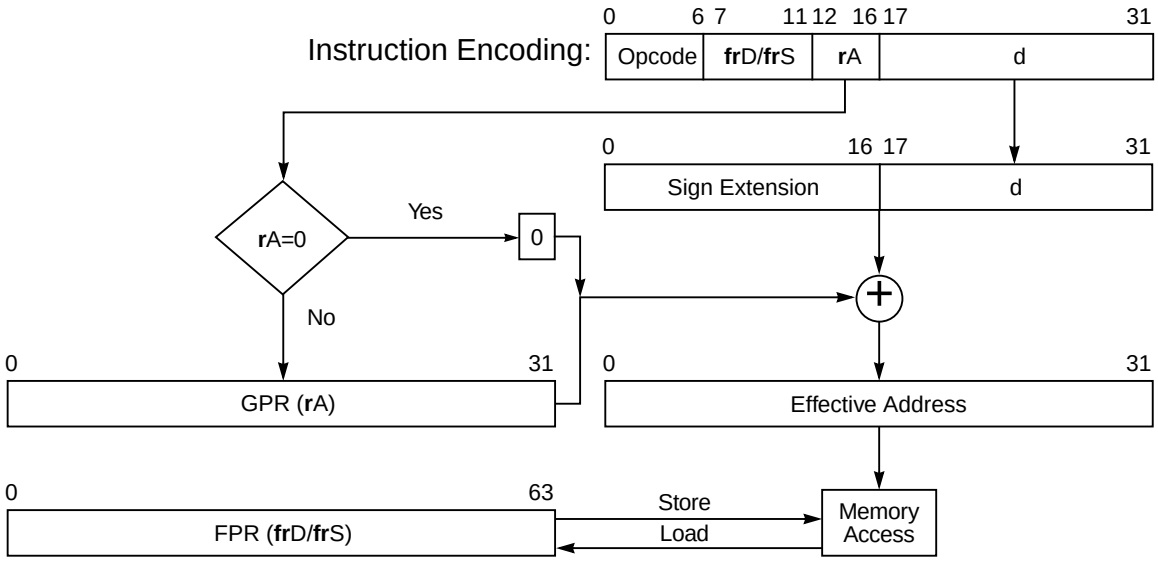


Figure 3-4. Register Indirect with Immediate Index Addressing

3.5.8.2 Register Indirect with Index Addressing

Instructions using this addressing mode add the contents of two general purpose registers (specified in operands **r**A and **r**B) to generate the effective address. A zero in the **r**A operand causes a zero to be added to the contents of general purpose register specified in operand **r**B. This is shown in the instruction descriptions as (**r**A|0).

Figure 3-5 shows how an effective address is generated when using register indirect with index addressing.

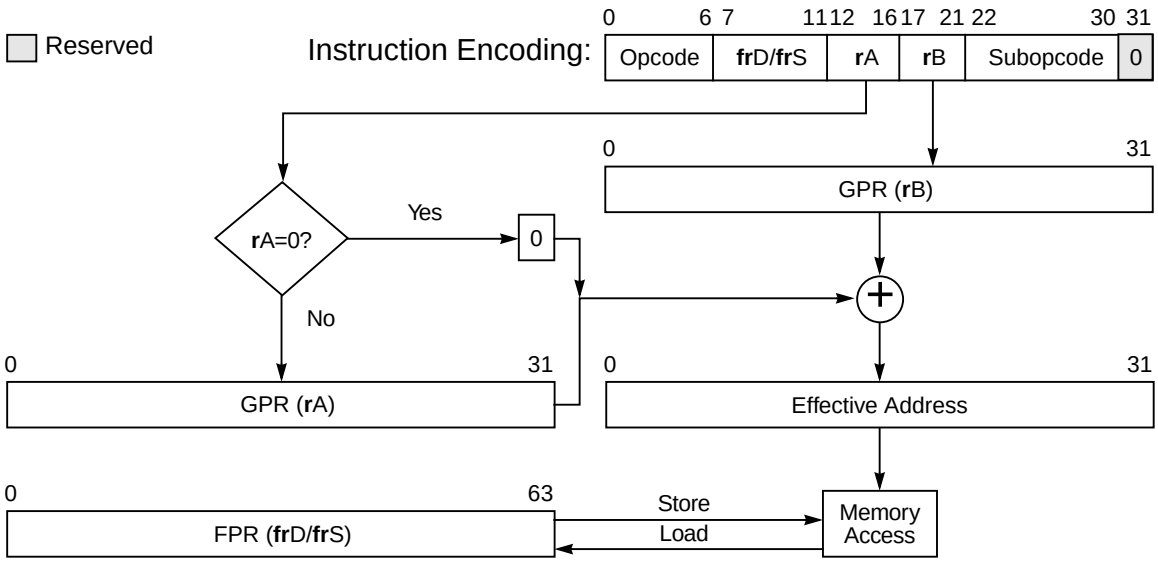


Figure 3-5. Register Indirect with Index Addressing

The PowerPC architecture defines floating-point load and store with update instructions (**lfsu**, **lfsux**, **lfdu**, **lfdux**, **stfsu**, **stfsux**, **stfdu**, **stfdux**) with operand **r**A = 0 as invalid forms of the instructions, but the POWER architecture does not. To maintain compatibility with the POWER architecture, the 601 accesses memory for these cases but inhibits the update of the integer register **r**0.

In addition, the PowerPC architecture defines floating-point load and store instructions with the condition register update option enabled to be an invalid form. For compatibility with the POWER architecture, the 601 executes the instruction normally, but also writes an undefined value into the condition register field CR1.

The PowerPC architecture defines that the FPSCR[UE] bit should not be used to determine whether denormalization should be performed on floating-point stores. The 601 complies with this definition, although this is different from some POWER architecture implementations.

3.5.9 Floating-Point Load Instructions

There are two forms of the floating-point load instruction—single-precision and double-precision formats. Because the FPRs support only floating-point, double-precision format, single-precision floating-point load instructions convert single-precision data to double-precision format before loading the operands into the target FPR. This conversion is described in Section 3.5.9.1, “Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Load Instructions.” Table 3-22 provides a summary of the floating-point load instructions.

Table 3-22. Floating-Point Load Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Load Floating-Point Single-Precision	**lfs**	**fr**D**,**d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The word in memory addressed by the EA is interpreted as a floating-point single-precision operand. This word is converted to floating-point double-precision format and placed into register **fr**D.
Load Floating- Point Single-Precision Indexed	**lfsx**	**fr**D**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r** B). The word in memory addressed by the EA is interpreted as a floating-point single-precision operand. This word is converted to floating-point double-precision and placed into register **fr**D.
Load Floating-Point Single-Precision with Update	**lfsu**	**fr**D**,**d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The word in memory addressed by the EA is interpreted as a floating-point single-precision operand. This word is converted to floating-point double-precision (see Section 3.5.9.1, “Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Load Instructions,”) and placed into register **fr**D. The EA is placed into the register specified by **r**A.
Load Floating-Point Single-Precision with Update Indexed	**lfsux**	**fr**D**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r** B). The word in memory addressed by the EA is interpreted as a floating-point single-precision operand. This word is converted to floating-point double-precision (see Section 3.5.9.1, “Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Load Instructions,”) and placed into register **fr**D. The EA is placed into the register specified by **r**A.
Load Floating-Point Double-Precision	**lfd**	**fr**D**,**d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The double word in memory addressed by the EA is placed into register **fr**D.
Load Floating-Point Double-Precision Indexed	**lfdx**	**fr**D**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r** B). The double word in memory addressed by the EA is placed into register **fr**D.
Load Floating-Point Double-Precision with Update	**lfdu**	**fr**D**,**d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The double word in memory addressed by the EA is placed into register **fr**D. The EA is placed into the register specified by **r**A.
Load Floating-Point Double-Precision with Update Indexed	**lfdux**	**fr**D**,r**A**,r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r** B). The double word in memory addressed by the EA is placed into register **fr**D. The EA is placed into the register specified by **r**A.

3.5.9.1 Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Load Instructions

The steps for converting a floating-point value from a single-precision memory format to the double-precision register format are as follows:

WORD[0–31] is the floating-point, single-precision operand accessed from memory.

Normalized Operand

```
If WORD[1–8] > 0 and WORD[1–8] < 255
    frD[0–1] < WORD[0–1]
    frD[2] < ¬WORD[1]
    frD[3] < ¬WORD[1]
    frD[4] < ¬WORD[1]
    frD[5–63] < WORD[2–31] || 29b'0'
```

Denormalized Operand

```
If WORD[1–8] = 0 and WORD[9–31] ≠ 0
    sign < WORD[0]
    exp < –126
    frac[0–52] < b'0'‘|| WORD[9–31] || 29b'0'
    normalize the operand
        Do while frac 0 = 0
            frac < frac[1–52] || b'0'
            exp < exp – 1
        End
    frD[0] < sign
    frD[1–11] < exp + 1023
    frD[12–63] < frac[1–52]
```

Infinity / QNaN / SNaN / Zero

```
If WORD[1–8] = 255 or WORD[1–31] = 0
    frD[0–1] < WORD[0–1]
    frD[2] < WORD[1]
    frD[3] < WORD[1]
    frD[4] < WORD[1]
    frD[5–63] < WORD[2–31] || 29b'0'
```

For double-precision floating-point load instructions, no conversion is required as the data from memory is copied directly into the FPRs.

Many floating-point load instructions have an update form in which register **r**A is updated with the EA. For these forms, if operand **r**A ≠ 0, the effective address is placed into register **r**A and the memory element (word or double word) addressed by the EA is loaded into the floating-point register specified by operand **fr**D.

3.5.10 Floating-Point Store Instructions

This section describes floating-point store instructions. There are two basic forms of the store instruction—single- and double-precision. Because the FPRs support only floating-point, double-precision format, single-precision floating-point store instructions convert double-precision data to single-precision format before storing the operands. The conversion steps are described in Section 3.5.10.1, “Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Store Instructions.” Table 3-23 is a summary of the floating point store instructions provided by the 601.

Table 3-23. Floating-Point Store Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Store Floating-Point Single-Precision	**stfs**	**fr**S,d(**r**A)	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The contents of register **fr**S is converted to single-precision and stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Floating-Point Single-Precision Indexed	**stfsx**	**fr**S,**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The contents of register **fr**S is converted to single-precision and stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Floating-Point Single-Precision with Update	**stfsu**	**fr**S,d(**r**A)	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The contents of register **fr**S is converted to single-precision and stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into the register specified by operand **r**A.
Store Floating-Point Single-Precision with Update Indexed	**stfsux**	**fr**S,**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The contents of register **fr**S is converted to single-precision and stored into the word in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into the register specified by operand **r**A.
Store Floating-Point Double-Precision	**stfd**	**fr**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The contents of register **fr**S is stored into the double word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Floating-Point Double-Precision Indexed	**stfdx**	**fr**S,**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The contents of register **fr**S is stored into the double word in memory addressed by the EA.
Store Floating-Point Double-Precision with Update	**stfdu**	**fr**S,d(**r**A)	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The contents of register **fr**S is stored into the double word in memory addressed by the EA. The EA is placed into register **r**A.
Store Floating-Point Double-Precision with Update Indexed	**stfdux**	**fr**S,**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The contents of register **fr**S is stored into the double word in memory addressed by EA. The EA is placed into register **r**A.

3.5.10.1 Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Store Instructions

The steps for converting a floating-point value from the double-precision register format to single-precision memory format are as follows:

Let WORD[0–31] be the word in memory written to.

No Denormalization Required

```
If frS[1–11] > 896 or frS[1–63] = 0
    WORD[0–1] < frS[0–1]
    WORD[2–31]< frS[5–34]
```

Denormalization Required

```
If 874 ≤ frS[1–11] ≤ 896
    sign < frS[0]
    exp < frS[1–11] – 1023
    frac < b'1' || frS[12–63]
    Denormalize operand
        Do while exp < –126
            frac < b'0' || frac[0–62]
            exp < exp + 1
        End
    WORD[0] < sign
    WORD[1–8] < x'00'
    WORD[9–31] < frac[1–23]
```

For double-precision floating-point store instructions, no conversion is required as the data from the FPRs is copied directly into memory. Many floating-point store instructions have an update form, in which register **r**A is updated with the effective address. For these forms, if operand **r**A ≠ 0, the effective address is placed into register **r**A.

Floating-point store instructions are listed in Table 3-23. Recall that **r**A, **r**B, and **r**D denote GPRs, while **fr**A, **fr**B, **fr**C, **fr**S, and **fr**D denote FPRs.

3.5.11 Floating-Point Move Instructions

Floating-point move instructions copy data from one floating-point register to another with data modifications as described for each instruction. These instructions do not modify the FPSCR. The condition register update option in these instructions controls the placing of result status into condition register field CR1. If the condition register update option is enabled, then CR1 is set, otherwise CR1 is unchanged. Floating-point move instructions are listed in Table 3-24.

Table 3-24. Floating-Point Move Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Floating-Point Move Register	**fmr** **fmr.**	**fr**D,**fr**B	The contents of register **fr**B is placed into **fr**D. **fmr** Floating-Point Move Register **fmr.** Floating-Point Move Register with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Negate	**fneg** **fneg.**	**fr**D,**fr**B	The contents of register **fr**B with bit 0 inverted is placed into register **fr**D. **fneg** Floating-Point Negate **fneg.** Floating-Point Negate with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Absolute Value	**fabs** **fabs.**	**fr**D,**fr**B	The contents of **fr**B with bit 0 cleared to 0 is placed into **fr**D. **fabs** Floating-Point Absolute Value **fabs.** Floating-Point Absolute Value with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.
Floating-Point Negative Absolute Value	**fnabs** **fnabs.**	**fr**D,**fr**B	The contents of **fr**B with bit 0 set to one is placed into **fr**D. **fnabs** Floating-Point Negative Absolute Value **fnabs.** Floating-Point Negative Absolute Value with CR Update. The dot suffix enables the update of the condition register.

3.6 Branch and Flow Control Instructions

Branch instructions are executed by the BPU. Some of these instructions can redirect instruction execution conditionally based on the value of bits in the condition register. When the branch processor encounters one of these instructions, it scans the execution pipelines to determine whether an instruction in progress may affect the particular condition register bit. If no interlock is found, the branch can be resolved immediately by checking the bit in the condition register and taking the action defined for the branch instruction.

If an interlock is detected, the branch is considered unresolved and the direction of the branch is predicted using the “y” bit as described in Table 3-25. The interlock is monitored while instructions are fetched for the predicted branch. When the interlock is cleared, the branch processor determines whether the prediction was correct based on the value of the condition register bit. If the prediction is correct, the branch is considered completed and instruction fetching continues. If the prediction is incorrect, the fetched instructions are purged, and instruction fetching continues along the alternate path.

3.6.1 Branch instruction Address Calculation

Branch instructions can alter the sequence of instruction execution. Instruction addresses are always assumed to be word aligned with the 601; the processor ignores the two low-order bits of the generated branch target address.

Branch instructions compute the effective address (EA) of the next instruction address using the following addressing modes:

- Branch relative
- Branch conditional to relative address
- Branch to absolute address
- Branch conditional to absolute address
- Branch conditional to link register
- Branch conditional to count register

3.6.1.1 Branch Relative Address Mode

Instructions that use branch relative addressing generate the next instruction address by sign extending and appending b'00' to the immediate displacement operand LI, and adding the resultant value to the current instruction address. Branches using this address mode have the absolute addressing option (AA) disabled. If the link register update option (LK) is enabled, the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed in the link register.

Figure 3-6 shows how the branch target address is generated when using the branch relative addressing mode.

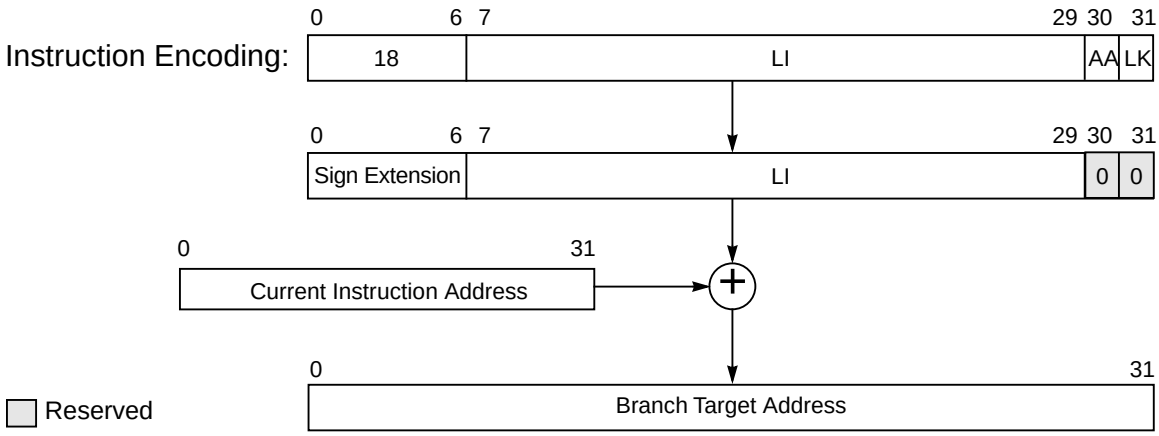


Figure 3-6. Branch Relative Addressing

3.6.1.2 Branch Conditional Relative Address Mode

If the branch conditions are met, instructions that use the branch conditional relative address mode generate the next instruction address by sign extending and appending b'00' to the immediate displacement operand (BD) and adding the resultant value to the current instruction address. Branches using this address mode have the absolute addressing option (AA) disabled. If the link register update option (LK) is enabled, the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed in the link register.

Figure 3-7 shows how the branch target address is generated when using the branch conditional relative addressing mode.

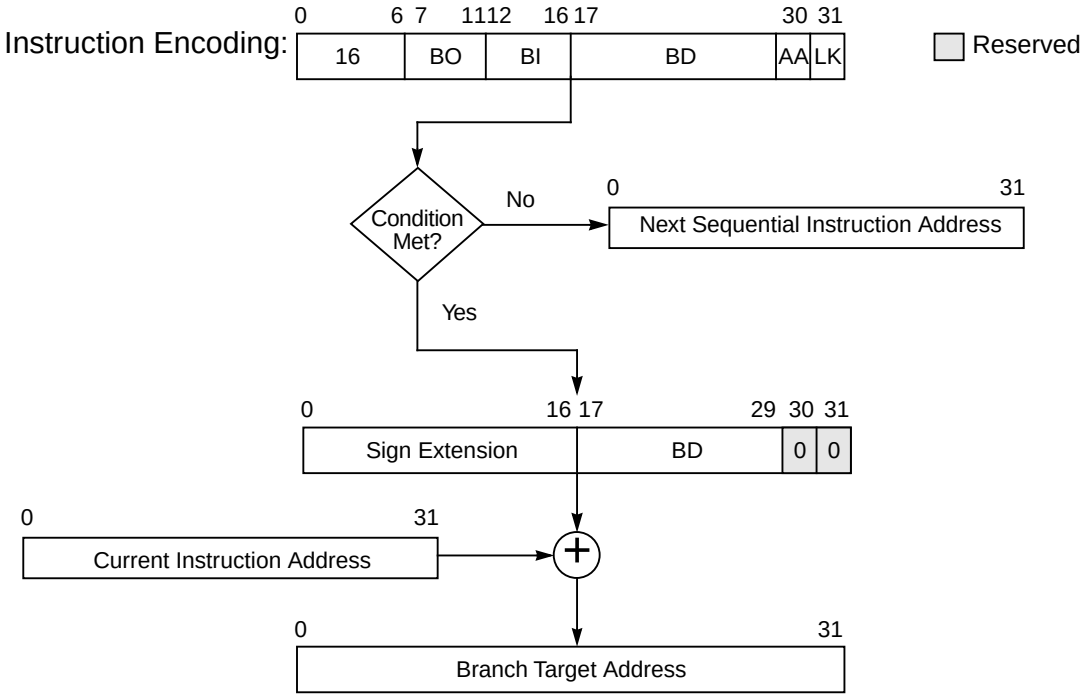


Figure 3-7. Branch Conditional Relative Addressing

3.6.1.3 Branch to Absolute Address Mode

Instructions that use branch to absolute address mode generate the next instruction address by sign extending and appending b'00' to the LI operand. Branches using this address mode have the absolute addressing option (AA) enabled. If the link register update option (LK) is enabled, the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed in the link register.

Figure 3-8 shows how the branch target address is generated when using the branch to absolute address mode.

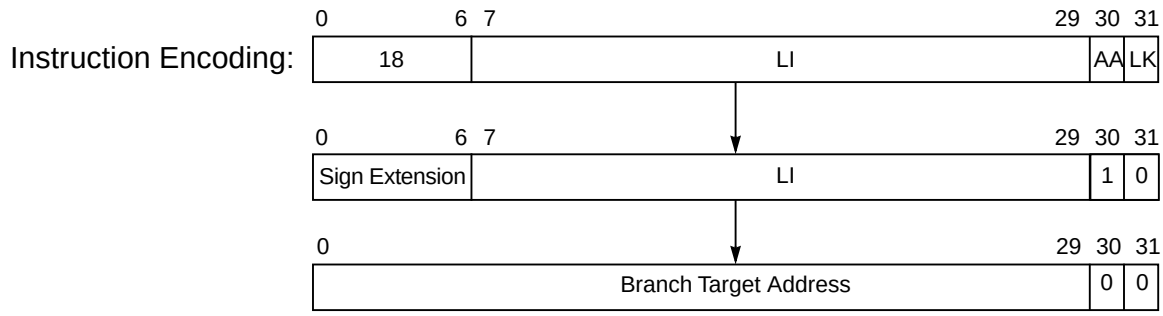


Figure 3-8. Branch to Absolute Addressing

3.6.1.4 Branch Conditional to Absolute Address Mode

If the branch conditions are met, instructions that use the branch conditional to absolute address mode generate the next instruction address by sign extending and appending b'00' to the BD operand. Branches using this address mode have the absolute addressing option (AA) enabled. If the link register update option (LK) is enabled, the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed in the link register.

Figure 3-9 shows how the branch target address is generated when using the branch conditional to absolute address mode.

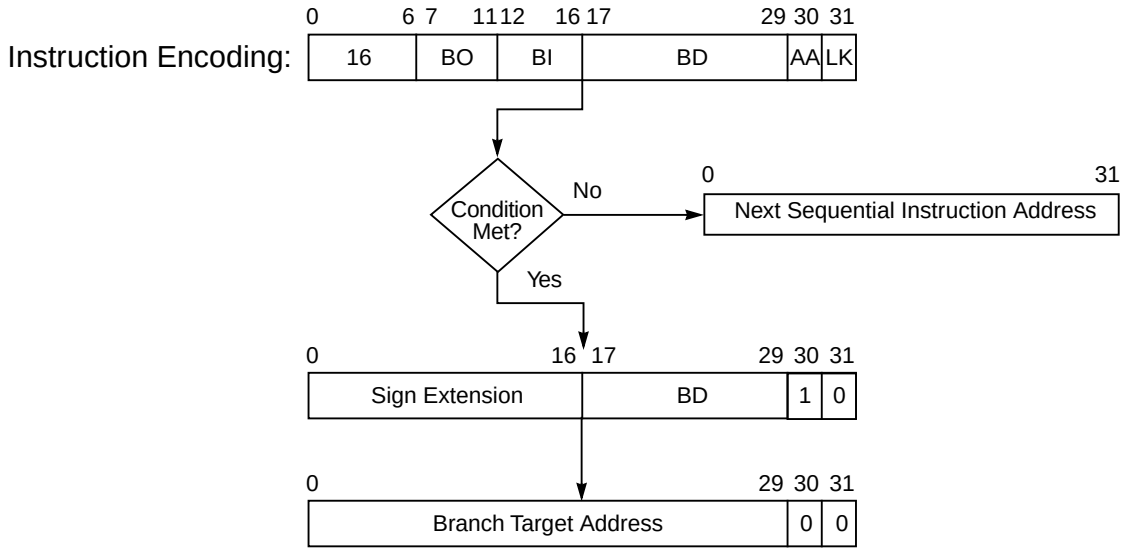


Figure 3-9. Branch Conditional to Absolute Addressing

3.6.1.5 Branch Conditional to Link Register Address Mode

If the branch conditions are met, the branch conditional to link register instruction generates the next instruction address by fetching the contents of the link register and clearing the two low order bits to zero. If the link register update option (LK) is enabled, the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed in the link register.

Figure 3-10 shows how the branch target address is generated when using the branch conditional to link register address mode.

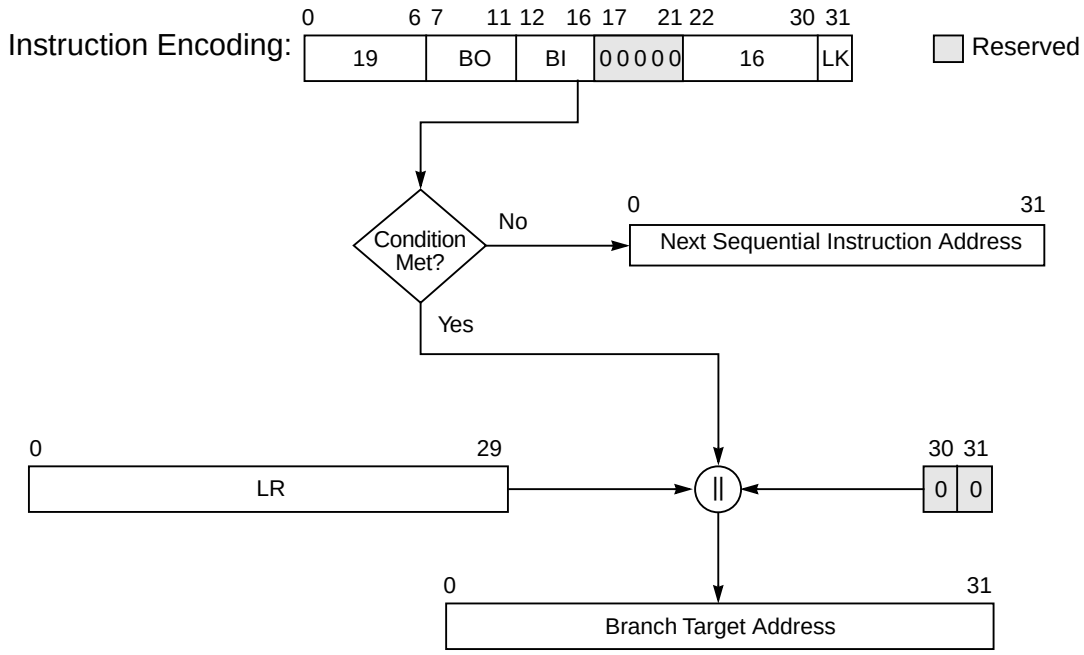


Figure 3-10. Branch Conditional to Link Register Addressing

3.6.1.6 Branch Conditional to Count Register

If the branch conditions are met, the branch conditional to count register instruction generates the next instruction address by fetching the contents of the count register and clearing the two low order bits to zero. If the link register update option (LK) is enabled, the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed in the link register.

Figure 3-11 shows how the branch target address is generated when using the branch conditional to count register address mode.

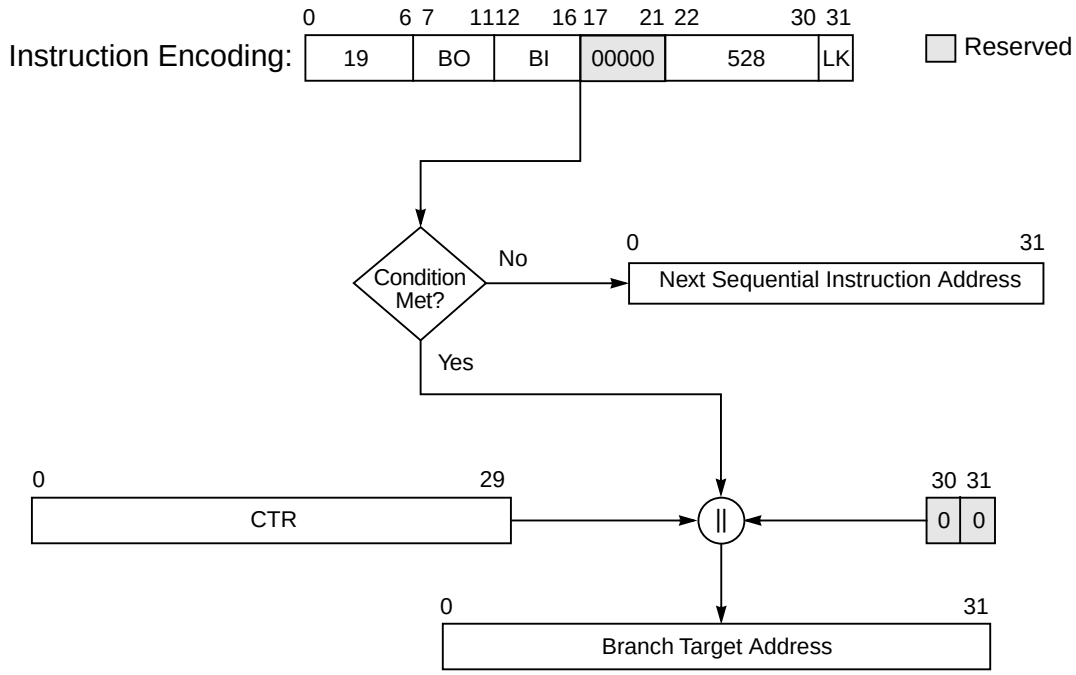


Figure 3-11. Branch Conditional to Count Register Addressing

3.6.2 Conditional Branch Control

For branch conditional instructions, the BO operand specifies the conditions under which the branch is taken. The first four bits of the BO operand specify how the branch is affected by or affects the condition and count registers. The fifth bit, shown in Table 3-25 as having the value *y*, is used by some PowerPC implementations for branch prediction as described below.

The encodings for the BO operands are shown in Table 3-25.

Table 3-25. BO Operand Encodings

BO	Description
0000*y*	Decrement the CTR, then branch if the decremented CTR ≠ 0 and the condition is FALSE.
0001*y*	Decrement the CTR, then branch if the decremented CTR = 0 and the condition is FALSE.
001*zy*	Branch if the condition is FALSE.
0100*y*	Decrement the CTR, then branch if the decremented CTR ≠ 0 and the condition is TRUE.
0101*y*	Decrement the CTR, then branch if the decremented CTR = 0 and the condition is TRUE.
011*zy*	Branch if the condition is TRUE.
1*z*00*y*	Decrement the CTR, then branch if the decremented CTR ≠ 0.

Table 3-25. BO Operand Encodings (Continued)

BO	Description
1*z*01*y*	Decrement the CTR, then branch if the decremented CTR = 0.
1*z*1*zz*	Branch always.
The *z* indicates a bit that must be zero; otherwise, the instruction form is invalid. The *y* bit provides a hint about whether a conditional branch is likely to be taken and is used by the 601 to improve performance. Other implementations may ignore the *y* bit.	

The "branch always" encoding of the BO operand does not have a "*y*" bit.

Setting the "*y*" bit to 0 indicates a predicted behavior for the branch instruction:

- For **bc**x with a negative value in the displacement operand, the branch is taken.
- In all other cases (**bc**x with a non-negative value in the displacement operand, **bclr***x*, or **bcctr***x*), the branch is not taken.

Setting the "*y*" bit to 1 reverses the preceding indications.

The sign of the displacement operand is used as described above even if the target is an absolute address. The default value for the "*y*" bit should be 0, and should only be set to 1 if software has determined that the prediction corresponding to "*y*" = 1 is more likely to be correct than the prediction corresponding to "*y*" = 0. Software that does not compute branch predictions should set the "*y*" bit to zero.

In most cases, the branch should be predicted to be taken if the value of the following expression is 1, and to fall through if the value is 0.

((BO[0] & BO[2]) | S) ⊕ BO[4]

In the expression above, S (bit 16 of the branch conditional instruction coding) is the sign bit of the displacement operand if the instruction has a displacement operand and is 0 if the operand is reserved. BO[4] is the "*y*" bit, or 0 for the "branch always" encoding of the BO operand. (Advantage is taken of the fact that, for **bclr***x* and **bcctr***x*, bit 16 of the instruction is part of a reserved operand and therefore must be 0.)

The 5-bit BI operand in branch conditional instructions specifies which of the 32 bits in the CR represents the condition to test.

When the branch instructions contain immediate addressing operands, the target addresses can be computed sufficiently ahead of the branch instruction that instructions can be fetched along the target path. If the branch instructions use the link and count registers, instructions along the target path can be fetched if the link or count register is loaded sufficiently ahead of the branch instruction.

Branching can be conditional or unconditional, and optionally a branch return address is created by the storage of the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction in the link register after the branch target address has been computed. This is done regardless of whether the branch is taken. While the 601 does not provide a link register stack, future implementations may keep a stack of the link register values most recently set by branch and link instructions, with the possible exception of the form shown below for obtaining the address of the next instruction. To benefit from this stack, the following programming conventions should be used.

In the examples below, let A, B, and Glue represent subroutine labels.

Obtaining the address of the next instruction– use the following form of branch and link.

bcl 20,31,$+4

Loop counts– keep them in the count register, and use one of the branch conditional instructions to decrement the count and to control branching (for example, branching back to the start of a loop if the decremented counter value is nonzero).

Computed GOTOs, case statements, etc.– Use the count register to hold the address to branch to, and use the **bcctr** instruction with the link register option disabled (LK = 0) to branch to the selected address.

Direct subroutine linkage– where A calls B and B returns to A. The two branches should be as follows:

- A calls B—Use a branch instruction that enables the link register (LK = 1).
- B returns to A—Use the **bclr** instruction with the link register option disabled (LK = 0) (the return address is in, or can be restored to, the link register).

Indirect subroutine linkage– where A calls Glue, Glue calls B, and B returns to A rather than to Glue. (Such a calling sequence is common in linkage code used when the subroutine that the programmer wants to call, here B, is in a different module from the caller: the binder inserts “glue” code to mediate the branch.)

The three branches should be as follows:

- A calls Glue—Use a branch instruction that sets the link register with the link register option enabled (LK = 1).
- Glue calls B—Place the address of B in the count register, and use the **bcctr** instruction with the link register option disabled (LK = 0).
- B returns to A—Use the **bclr** instruction with the link register option disabled (LK = 0) (the return address is in, or can be restored to, the link register).

3.6.3 Basic Branch Mnemonics

The mnemonics in Table 3-26 allow all the common BO operand encodings to be specified as part of the mnemonic, along with the absolute address (AA) and set link register (LK) bits.

Notice that there are no simplified mnemonics for relative and absolute unconditional branches. For these, the basic mnemonics **b**, **ba**, **bl**, and **bla** are used.

Table 3-26. Simplified Branch Mnemonics

Branch Semantics	LR bit not set				LR bit set			
	bc Relative	**bca** Absolute	**bclr** to LR	**bcctr** to CTR	**bcl** Relative	**bcla** Absolute	**bclrl** to LR	**bcctrl** to CTR
Branch unconditionally	**—**	**—**	**blr**	**bctr**	**—**	**—**	**blrl**	**bctrl**
Branch if condition true	**bt**	**bta**	**btlr**	**btctr**	**btl**	**btla**	**btlrl**	**btctrl**
Branch if condition false	**bf**	**bfa**	**bflr**	**bfctr**	**bfl**	**bfla**	**bflrl**	**bfctrl**
Decrement CTR, branch if CTR nonzero	**bdnz**	**bdnza**	**bdnzlr**	**—**	**bdnzl**	**bdnzla**	**bdnzlrl**	**—**
Decrement CTR, branch if CTR nonzero AND condition true	**bdnzt**	**bdnzta**	**bdnztlr**	**—**	**bdnztl**	**bdnztla**	**bdnztlrl**	**—**
Decrement CTR, branch if CTR nonzero AND condition false	**bdnzf**	**bdnzfa**	**bdnzflr**	**—**	**bdnzfl**	**bdnzfla**	**bdnzflrl**	**—**
Decrement CTR, branch if CTR zero	**bdz**	**bdza**	**bdzlr**	**—**	**bdzl**	**bdzla**	**bdzlrl**	**—**
Decrement CTR, branch if CTR zero AND condition true	**bdzt**	**bdzta**	**bdztlr**	**—**	**bdztl**	**bdztla**	**bdztlrl**	**—**
Decrement CTR, branch if CTR zero AND condition false	**bdzf**	**bdzfa**	**bdzflr**	**—**	**bdzfl**	**bdzfla**	**bdzflrl**	**—**

Table 3-26 provides the abbreviated set of simplified mnemonics for the most commonly performed conditional branches. Unusual cases of conditional branches can be coded using a basic branch conditional mnemonic (**bc**, **bclr**, **bcctr**) with the condition to be tested specified as a numeric first operand.

Instructions using a mnemonic from Table 3-26 that tests a condition specify the condition as the first operand of the instruction. Table 3-27 summarizes the mnemonic symbols and the equivalent numeric values used to interpret a condition register CR field during a branch conditional instruction compare operation.

Table 3-27. Condition Register CR Field Bit Symbols

Symbol	Value	Meaning
lt	0	Less than
gt	1	Greater than
eq	2	Equal
so	3	Summary overflow
un	3	Unordered (after floating-point comparison)

Table 3-28 summarizes the mnemonic symbols and the equivalent numeric values used to identify the condition register CR field to be evaluated by the compare operation.

Table 3-28. Condition Register CR Field Identification Symbols

Symbol	Value	Meaning
cr0	0	CR0
cr1	4	CR1
cr2	8	CR2
cr3	12	CR3
cr4	16	CR4
cr5	20	CR5
cr6	24	CR6
cr7	28	CR7

The simplified branch mnemonics and the symbols in Table 3-27 and Table 3-28 are combined in an expression that identifies the bit (0–31) of CR to be tested, as follows:

Examples:

- Decrement CTR and branch if it is still nonzero (closure of a loop controlled by a count loaded into CTR).

  bdnz target (equivalent to **bc** 16,0,target)

- Same as (1) but branch only if CTR is nonzero and condition in CR0 is “equal.”

  bdnzt eq,target (equivalent to **bc** 8,2,target)

- Same as (2), but “equal” condition is in CR5.

  bdnzt 4*cr5+eq,target (equivalent to **bc** 8,22,target)

- Branch if bit 27 of CR is false.

  bf 27,target (equivalent to **bc** 4,27,target)
- Same as (4), but set the link register. This is a form of conditional “call.”

  bfl 27,target (equivalent to **bcl** 4,27,target)

3.6.4 Branch Mnemonics Incorporating Conditions

The mnemonics defined in Table 3-30 are variations of the “branch if condition true” and “branch if condition false” BO encodings, with the most common values of the BI operand represented in the mnemonic rather than specified as a numeric operand.

The two-letter codes for the most common combinations of branch conditions are shown in Table 3-29.

Table 3-29. Two-Letter Codes for Branch Comparison Conditions

Code	Meaning
lt	Less than
le	Less than or equal
eq	Equal
ge	Greater than or equal
gt	Greater than
nl	Not less than
ne	Not equal
ng	Not greater than
so	Summary overflow
ns	Not summary overflow
un	Unordered (after floating-point comparison)
nu	Not unordered (after floating-point comparison)

These codes are reflected in the simplified mnemonics shown in Table 3-30.

Table 3-30. Simplified Branch Mnemonics with Comparison Conditions

Branch Semantics	LR bit not set				LR bit set			
	bc Relative	**bca** Absolute	**bclr** to LR	**bcctr** to CTR	**bcl** Relative	**bcla** Absolute	**bclrl** to LR	**bcctrl** to CTR
Branch if less than	**blt**	**blta**	**bltlr**	**bltctr**	**bltl**	**bltla**	**bltlrl**	**bltctrl**
Branch if less than or equal	**ble**	**blea**	**blelr**	**blectr**	**blel**	**blela**	**blelrl**	**blectrl**
Branch if equal	**beq**	**beqa**	**beqlr**	**beqctr**	**beql**	**beqla**	**beqlrl**	**beqctrl**
Branch if greater than or equal	**bge**	**bgea**	**bgelr**	**bgectr**	**bgel**	**bgela**	**bgelrl**	**bgectrl**
Branch if greater than	**bgt**	**bgta**	**bgtlr**	**bgtctr**	**bgtl**	**bgtla**	**bgtlrl**	**bgtctrl**
Branch if not less than	**bnl**	**bnla**	**bnllr**	**bnlctr**	**bnll**	**bnlla**	**bnllrl**	**bnlctrl**
Branch if not equal	**bne**	**bnea**	**bnelr**	**bnectr**	**bnel**	**bnela**	**bnelrl**	**bnectrl**
Branch if not greater than	**bng**	**bnga**	**bnglr**	**bngctr**	**bngl**	**bngla**	**bnglrl**	**bngctrl**
Branch if summary overflow	**bso**	**bsoa**	**bsolr**	**bsoctr**	**bsol**	**bsola**	**bsolrl**	**bsoctrl**
Branch if not summary overflow	**bns**	**bnsa**	**bnslr**	**bnsctr**	**bnsl**	**bnsla**	**bnslrl**	**bnsctrl**
Branch if unordered	**bun**	**buna**	**bunlr**	**bunctr**	**bunl**	**bunla**	**bunlrl**	**bunctrl**
Branch if not unordered	**bnu**	**bnua**	**bnulr**	**bnuctr**	**bnul**	**bnula**	**bnulrl**	**bnuctrl**

Instructions using the mnemonics in Table 3-30 specify the condition register field in an optional first operand. If the CR field being tested is CR0, this operand need not be specified. Otherwise, one of the CR field symbols listed in Table 3-28 is coded as the first operand.

Examples:

- Branch if CR0 reflects condition “not equal.”

  bne target (equivalent to **bc** 4,2,target)
- Same as (1), but condition is in CR3.

  bne cr3,target (equivalent to **bc** 4,14,target)
- Branch to an absolute target if CR4 specifies “greater than,” setting the link register. This is a form of conditional “call”, as the return address is saved in the link register.

  bgtla cr4,target (equivalent to **bcla** 12,17,target)
- Same as (3), but target address is in the count register.

  bgtctrl cr4 (equivalent to **bcctrl** 12,17)

3.6.5 Branch Instructions

Table 3-31 describes the branch instructions provided by the 601.

Table 3-31. Branch Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Branch	**b** **ba** **bl** **bla**	imm_addr	**b** Branch. Branch to the address computed as the sum of the immediate address and the address of the current instruction. **ba** Branch Absolute. Branch to the absolute address specified. **bl** Branch then Link. Branch to the address computed as the sum of the immediate address and the address of the current instruction. The instruction address following this instruction is placed into the link register (LR). **bla** Branch Absolute then Link. Branch to the absolute address specified. The instruction address following this instruction is placed into the link register (LR).
Branch Conditional	**bc** **bca** **bcl** **bcla**	BO**,**BI**,** target_addr	The BI operand specifies the bit in the condition register (CR) to be used as the condition of the branch. The BO operand is used as described in Table 3-25. **bc** Branch Conditional. Branch conditionally to the address computed as the sum of the immediate address and the address of the current instruction. **bca** Branch Conditional Absolute. Branch conditionally to the absolute address specified. **bcl** Branch Conditional then Link. Branch conditionally to the address computed as the sum of the immediate address and the address of the current instruction. The instruction address following this instruction is placed into the link register. **bcla** Branch Conditional Absolute then Link. Branch conditionally to the absolute address specified. The instruction address following this instruction is placed into the link register.
Branch Conditional to Link Register	**bclr** **bclr**l	BO**,**BI	The BI operand specifies the bit in the condition register to be used as the condition of the branch. The BO operand is used as described in Table 3-25. **bclr** Branch Conditional to Link Register. Branch conditionally to the address in the link register. **bclrl** Branch Conditional to Link Register then Link. Branch conditionally to the address specified in the link register. The instruction address following this instruction is then placed into the link register.

Table 3-31. Branch Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Branch Conditional to Count Register	**bcctr** **bcctrl**	BO,BI	The BI operand specifies the bit in the condition register to be used as the condition of the branch. The BO operand is used as described in Table 3-25. **bcctr** Branch Conditional to Count Register. Branch conditionally to the address specified in the count register. **bcctrl** Branch Conditional to Count Register then Link. Branch conditionally to the address specified in the count register. The instruction address following this instruction is placed into the link register. **Note:** If the “decrement and test CTR” option is specified (BO[2]=0), the instruction form is invalid. For the 601, the decremented count register is tested for zero and branches based on this test, but instruction fetching is directed to the address specified by the nondecremented version of the count register. Use of this invalid form of this instruction is not recommended.

3.6.6 Condition Register Logical Instructions

Condition register logical instructions, shown in Table 3-32, and the Move Condition Register Field (**mcrf**) instruction are defined as flow control instructions, although they are executed by the IU.

Note that if the link register update option (LR) is enabled for any of these instructions, the PowerPC architecture defines these forms of the instructions as invalid; however, the 601 executes these instructions and leaves the link register in an undefined state.

Table 3-32. Condition Register Logical Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Condition Register AND	**crand**	**crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B	The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ANDed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B. The result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.
Condition Register OR	**cror**	**crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B	The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ORed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B. The result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.
Condition Register XOR	**crxor**	**crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B	The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is XORed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B. The result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.
Condition Register NAND	**crnand**	**crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B	The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ANDed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B. The complemented result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.
Condition Register NOR	**crnor**	**crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B	The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ORed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B. The complemented result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.
Condition Register Equivalent	**creqv**	**crb**D,**crb**A, **crb**B	The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is XORed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B. The complemented result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.
Condition Register AND with Complement	**crandc**	**crb**D,**crb**A, **crb**B	The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ANDed with the complement of the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B and the result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.
Condition Register OR with Complement	**crorc**	**crb**D,**crb**A, **crb**B	The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ORed with the complement of the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B and the result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.
Move Condition Register Field	**mcrf**	**crf**D,**crf**S	The contents of **crf**S are copied into **crf**D. No other condition register fields are changed.

3.6.7 System Linkage Instructions

This section describes the system linkage instructions (see Table 3-33). The System Call (**sc**) instruction permits a program to call on the system to perform a service.

Table 3-33. System Linkage Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
System Call	**sc**	—	When executed, the effective address of the instruction following the **sc** instruction is placed into SRR0. Bits 16–31 of the MSR are placed into bits 16–31 of SRR1, and bits 0–15 of SRR1 are set to undefined values. Then a system call exception is generated. The exception causes the MSR to be altered as described in Section 5.4, “Exception Definitions.” The exception causes the next instruction to be fetched from offset x'C00' from the base physical address indicated by the new setting of MSR[IP]. For a discussion of POWER compatibility with respect to instruction bits 16–29, refer to Appendix B, Section B.10, “System Call/Supervisor Call.” To ensure compatibility with future versions of the PowerPC architecture, bits 16–29 should be coded as zero and bit 30 should be coded as a 1. The PowerPC architecture defines bit 31 as reserved, and thereby cleared to 0; in order for the 601 to maintain compatibility with the POWER architecture, the execution of an **sc** instruction with bit 31 (the LK bit) set to 1 will cause an update of the Link register with the address of the instruction following the **sc** instruction. This instruction is context synchronizing.
Return from Interrupt	**rfi**	—	Bits 16–31 of SRR1 are placed into bits 16–31 of the MSR, then the next instruction is fetched, under control of the new MSR value, from the address SRR0[0–29] || b'00'. This instruction is a supervisor-level instruction and is context synchronizing.

3.6.8 Simplified Mnemonics for Branch Processor Instructions

To simplify assembly language programming, a set of simplified mnemonics and symbols is provided that defines simple shorthand for the most frequently used forms of branch conditional, compare, trap, rotate and shift, and certain other instructions.

Mnemonics are provided so that branch conditional instructions can be coded with the condition as part of the instruction mnemonic rather than as a numeric operand. Some of these are shown as examples with the branch instructions.

The PowerPC architecture-compliant assemblers provide the mnemonics and symbols listed here and possibly others. Programs written to be portable across various assemblers for the PowerPC architecture should not assume the existence of mnemonics not defined here.

3.6.9 Trap Instructions and Mnemonics

The trap instructions shown in Table 3-34 are provided to test for a specified set of conditions. If any of the conditions tested by a trap instruction are met, the system trap handler is invoked. If the tested conditions are not met, instruction execution continues normally.

Table 3-34. Trap Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operand Syntax
Trap Word Immediate	**twi**	TO,**r**A,SIMM	The contents of **r**A is compared with the sign-extended SIMM operand. If any bit in the TO operand is set to 1 and its corresponding condition is met by the result of the comparison, then the system trap handler is invoked.
Trap Word	**tw**	TO,**r**A,**r**B	The contents of **r**A is compared with the contents of **r**B. If any bit in the TO operand is set to 1 and its corresponding condition is met by the result of the comparison, then the system trap handler is invoked.

The trap instructions evaluate a trap condition as follows:

The contents of register **r**A is compared with either the sign-extended SIMM field or with the contents of register **r**B, depending on the trap instruction. The comparison results in five conditions which are ANDed with operand TO. If the result is not 0, the trap exception handler is invoked. These conditions are provided in Table 3-35.

Table 3-35. TO Operand Bit Encoding

TO Bit	ANDed with Condition
0	Less than
1	Greater than
2	Equal
3	Logically less than
4	Logically greater than

A standard set of codes has been adopted for the most common combinations of trap conditions, as shown in Table 3-36. The mnemonics defined in Table 3-37 are variations of the trap instructions, with the most useful values of the trap instruction TO operand represented as a mnemonic rather than specified as a numeric operand.

Table 3-36. Trap Mnemonics Coding

Code	Meaning	TO Operand Encoding	<	>	=	<U	>U
lt	Less than	16	1	0	0	0	0
le	Less than or equal	20	1	0	1	0	0
eq	Equal	4	0	0	1	0	0
ge	Greater than or equal	12	0	1	1	0	0
gt	Greater than	8	0	1	0	0	0
nl	Not less than	12	0	1	1	0	0
ne	Not equal	24	1	1	0	0	0
ng	Not greater than	20	1	0	1	0	0
llt	Logically less than	2	0	0	0	1	0
lle	Logically less than or equal	6	0	0	1	1	0
lge	Logically greater than or equal	5	0	0	1	0	1
lgt	Logically greater than	1	0	0	0	0	1
lnl	Logically not less than	5	0	0	1	0	1
lng	Logically not greater than	6	0	0	1	1	0
(none)	Unconditional	31	1	1	1	1	1

Note: **<U** indicates an unsigned less than evaluation will be performed.
>U indicates an unsigned greater than evaluation will be performed.

These codes are reflected in the mnemonics shown in Table 3-37.

Table 3-37. Trap Mnemonics

Trap Semantics	32-Bit Comparison	
	twi Immediate	**tw Register**
Trap unconditionally	—	**trap**
Trap if less than	**twlti**	**twlt**
Trap if less than or equal	**twlei**	**twle**
Trap if equal	**tweqi**	**tweq**
Trap if greater than or equal	**twgei**	**twge**
Trap if greater than	**twgti**	**twgt**
Trap if not less than	**twnli**	**twnl**
Trap if not equal	**twnei**	**twne**
Trap if logically less than	**twllti**	**twllt**

Table 3-37. Trap Mnemonics (Continued)

Trap Semantics	32-Bit Comparison	
	twi Immediate	tw Register
Trap if not greater than	**twngi**	**twng**
Trap if logically less than	**twllti**	**twllt**
Trap if logically less than or equal	**twllei**	**twlle**
Trap if logically greater than or equal	**twlgei**	**twlge**
Trap if logically greater than	**twlgti**	**twlgt**
Trap if logically not less than	**twlnli**	**twlnl**
Trap if logically not greater than	**twlngi**	**twlng**

Examples:

- Trap if Rx, considered as a 32-bit quantity, is logically greater than x'7FF'.

  twlg rA**,** x'7FF' (equivalent to **twi 1,r**A**,** x'7FF')
- Trap unconditionally

  trap (equivalent to **tw 31,0,0**)

3.7 Processor Control Instructions

Processor control instructions are used to read from and write to the machine state register (MSR), condition register (CR), and special purpose registers (SPRs).

3.7.1 Move to/from Machine State Register and Condition Register Instructions

Table 3-38 summarizes the instructions provided by the 601 for reading from or writing to the machine state register and the condition register.

Table 3-38. Move to/from Machine State Register/Condition Register Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Move to Condition Register Fields	**mtcrf**	CRM,**r**S	The contents of **r**S are placed into the condition register under control of the field mask specified by operand CRM. The field mask identifies the 4-bit fields affected. Let *i* be an integer in the range 0–7. If CRM(*i*) = 1, then CR field *i* (CR bits 4**i* through 4**i*+3) is set to the contents of the corresponding field of **r** S. In some PowerPC implementations, this instruction may perform more slowly when only a portion of the fields are updated as opposed to all of the fields. This is not true for the 601.
Move to Condition Register from XER	**mcrxr**	**crf**D	The contents of XER[0–3] are copied into the condition register field designated by **crf**D. All other fields of the condition register remain unchanged. XER[0–3] is cleared to 0.
Move from Condition Register	**mfcr**	**r**D	The contents of the condition register are placed into **r**D.
Move to Machine State Register	**mtmsr**	**r**S	The contents of **r**S are placed into the MSR. This instruction is a supervisor-level instruction and is context synchronizing.
Move from Machine State Register	**mfmsr**	**r**D	The contents of the MSR are placed into **r**D. This is a supervisor-level instruction.

3.7.2 Move to/from Special-Purpose Register Instructions

The 601 defines an additional register (MQ register) to the user register set and programming model. As a result, the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions have been extended to accommodate access to the MQ register for the 601. The SPR field encoding for the MQ register is b'00000 00000'.

For compatibility with the POWER architecture, the 601 also allows user-level read access to the decrementer (DEC) register. Note that the PowerPC architecture does not allow user-level access to the DEC register. The SPR encoding for DEC is b'00110 00000' and is valid only for the **mfspr** instruction. For more information about the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions, refer to Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”

Simplified mnemonics are provided for the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions so they can be coded with the SPR name as part of the mnemonic rather than as a numeric operand. Some of these are shown as examples with the two instructions (see Table 3-39).

Table 3-39. Move to/from Special Purpose Register Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Move to Special Purpose Register	**mtspr**	SPR,**r**S	The SPR field denotes a special purpose register, encoded as shown in Table 3-40. The contents of **r**S are placed into the designated SPR. Simplified mnemonic examples: **mtxer r**A **mtspr** 1,**r**A **mtlr r**A **mtspr** 8,**r**A **mtctr r**A **mtspr** 9,**r**A
Move from Special Purpose Register	**mfspr**	**r**D,SPR	The SPR field denotes a special purpose register, encoded as shown in Table 3-40. The contents of the designated SPR are placed into **r**D. Simplified mnemonic examples: **mfxer r**A **mfspr r**A,1 **mflr r**A **mfspr r**A,8 **mfctr r**A **mfspr r**A,9

For **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions, the SPR number coded in assembly language does not appear directly as a 10-bit binary number in the instruction. The number coded is split into two 5-bit halves that are reversed in the instruction, with the high-order 5 bits appearing in bits 16–20 of the instruction and the low-order 5 bits in bits 11–15.

Table 3-40 summarizes the SPR encodings to which the 601 permits user-level access.

Table 3-40. User-Level SPR Encodings

Decimal Value in **r**D	SPR[0–4] SPR[5–9]	Register Name	Description
0	b'00000 00000'	MQ	MQ register
1	b'00001 00000'	XER	Integer exception register
4	b'00100 00000'	RTCU	Real- time clock upper register[1]
5	b'00101 00000'	RTCL	Real- time clock lower register[1]
6	b'00110 00000'	DEC	Decrementer register [2]
8	b'01000 00000'	LR	Link register
9	b'01001 00000'	CTR	Count register

[1] Read-only when accessed at user-level.

[2] Access to the DEC register is restricted to read-only while the processor is in the user mode. User-level decrementer access is provided for POWER compatibility, and is specific to the 601.

Table 3-41 summarizes SPR encodings that the 601 permits at the supervisor level.

Table 3-41. Supervisor-Level SPR Encodings

Decimal Value in rD	SPR[0–4] SPR[5–9]	Register Name	Description
18	b'10010 00000'	DSISR	DAE/source instruction service register
19	b'10011 00000'	DAR	Data address register
20	b'10100 00000'	RTCU	Real- time clock upper register
21	b'10101 00000'	RTCL	Real- time clock lower register
22	b'10110 00000'	DEC	Decrementer register
25	b'11001 00000'	SDR1	Table search description register 1
26	b'11010 00000'	SRR0	Save and restore register 0
27	b'11011 00000'	SRR1	Save and restore register 1
272	b'10000 01000'	SPRG0	SPR general 0
273	b'10001 01000'	SPRG1	SPR general 1
274	b'10010 01000'	SPRG2	SPR general 2
275	b'10011 01000'	SPRG3	SPR general 3
282	b'11010 01000'	EAR	External access register
287	b'11111 01000'	PVR	Processor version register
528	b'10000 10000'	IBAT0U	Instruction BAT 0 upper
529	b'10001 10000'	IBAT0L	Instruction BAT 0 lower
530	b'10010 10000'	IBAT1U	Instruction BAT 1 upper
531	b'10011 10000'	IBAT1L	Instruction BAT 1 lower
532	b'10100 10000'	IBAT2U	Instruction BAT 2 upper
533	b'10101 10000'	IBAT2L	Instruction BAT 2 lower
534	b'10110 10000'	IBAT3U	Instruction BAT 3 upper
535	b'10111 10000'	IBAT3L	Instruction BAT 3 lower
1008	b'10000 11111'	Checkstop (HID0)	Checkstop sources and enables register
1009	b'10001 11111'	Debug (HID1)	Debug modes register
1010	b'10010 11111'	IABR (HID2)	Instruction address breakpoint register
1013	b'10101 11111'	DABR (HID5)	Data address breakpoint register

Table 3-41. Supervisor-Level SPR Encodings (Continued)

Decimal Value in rD	SPR[0–4] SPR[5–9]	Register Name	Description
1023	b'11111 11111'	PIR (HID15)	Processor identification register

If the SPR field contains any value other than one of the values shown in Table 3-40, the instruction form is invalid. For an invalid instruction form in which SPR[0]=1, the system supervisor-level instruction error handler will be invoked if the instruction is executed by a user-level program. If the instruction is executed by a supervisor-level program, the result is a no-op.

SPR[0]=1 if and only if writing the register is supervisor-level. Execution of this instruction specifying a defined and supervisor-level register when MSR[PR]=1 results in a privilege violation type program exception.

SPR encodings for the DEC, MQ, RTCL, and RTCU registers are not part of the PowerPC architecture. For forward compatability with other members of the PowerPC microprocessor family the **mftb** instruction should be used to obtain the contents of the RTCL and RTCU registers. The **mftb** instruction is a PowerPC instruction unimplemented by the 601, and will be trapped by the illegal instruction exception handler, which can then issue the appropriate **mfspr** instructions for reading the RTCL and RTCU registers

The PVR (processor version register) is a read-only register.

SPR encodings shown in Table 3-40 can also be used while at the supervisor level.

The **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions specify a special purpose register (SPR) as a numeric operand. Simplified mnemonics are provided that represent the SPR in the mnemonic rather than requiring it to be coded as an operand. Table 3-42 below specifies the simplified mnemonics provided on the 601 for SPR operations.

Table 3-42. SPR Simplified Mnemonics

Special Purpose Register	Move to SPR Simplified Mnemonic	Move to SPR Instruction	Move from SPR Simplified Mnemonic	Move from SPR Instruction
Integer unit exception register	**mtxer r**S	**mtspr** 1,**r**S	**mfxer r**D	**mfspr r**D,1
Link register	**mtlr r**S	**mtspr** 8,**r**S	**mflr r**D	**mfspr r**D,8
Count register	**mtctr r**S	**mtspr** 9,**r**S	**mfctr r**D	**mfspr r**D,9
DAE/source instruction service register	**mtdsisr r**S	**mtspr** 18,**r**S	**mfdsisr r**D	**mfspr r**D,18
Data address register	**mtdar r**S	**mtspr** 19,**r**S	**mfdar r**D	**mfspr r**D,19
Decrementer	**mtdec r**S	**mtspr** 22,**r**S	**mfdec r**D	**mfspr r**D,22
Table search description register 1	**mtsdr1 r**S	**mtspr** 25,**r**S	**mfsdr1 r**D	**mfspr r**D,25
Status save/restore register 0	**mtsrr0 r**S	**mtspr** 26,**r**S	**mfsrr0 r**D	**mfspr r**D,26

Table 3-42. SPR Simplified Mnemonics (Continued)

Special Purpose Register	Move to SPR Simplified Mnemonic	Move to SPR Instruction	Move from SPR Simplified Mnemonic	Move from SPR Instruction
Status save/restore register 1	**mtsrr1 r**S	**mtspr** 27,**r**S	**mfsrr1 r**D	**mfspr r**D,27
General SPRs (SPRG0—SPRG3)	**mtsprg** *n,* **r**S	**mtspr** 272+*n*,**r**S	**mfsprg r**D*, n*	**mfspr r**D,272+*n*
External access register	**mtear r**S	**mtspr** 282,**r**S	**mfear r**D	**mfspr r**D,282
Processor version register	_	_	**mfpvr r**D	**mfspr r**D,287
BAT register, upper	**mtibatu** *n,* **r**S	**mtspr** 528+(2*n*),**r**S	**mfibatu r**D*, n*	**mfspr r**D,528+(2*n*)
Bat register, lower	**mtibatl** *n,* **r**S	**mtspr** 529+ (2*n*),**r**S	**mfibatl r**D*, n,*	**mfspr r**D,529+(2*n*)

3.8 Memory Control Instructions

This section describes memory control instructions, which include the following:

- Cache management instructions
- Segment register manipulation instructions
- Translation lookaside buffer management instructions

3.8.1 Supervisor-Level Cache Management Instruction

Table 3-43 summarizes the operation of the only supervisor-level cache management instruction implemented on the 601.

Table 3-43. Cache Management Supervisor-Level Instruction

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Data Cache Block Invalidate	**dcbi**	**r**A,**r**B	The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The action taken depends on the memory mode associated with the target, and the state (modified, unmodified) of the block. The following list describes the action to take if the block containing the byte addressed by the EA is or is not in the cache. • Coherency required (WIM = xx1) — Unmodified block—Invalidates copies of the block in the caches of all processors. — Modified block—Invalidates copies of the block in the caches of all processors. (Discards the modified contents.) — Absent block—If copies are in the caches of any other processor, causes the copies to be invalidated. (Discards any modified contents.) • Coherency not required (WIM = xx0) — Unmodified block—Invalidates the block in the local cache. — Modified block—Invalidates the block in the local cache. (Discards the modified contents.) — Absent block—No action is taken. When data address translation is enabled, MSR[DT]=1, and the logical (effective) address has no translation, a data access exception occurs. See Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').” The function of this instruction is independent of the write-through and cache-inhibited/allowed modes determined by the WIM bit settings of the block containing the byte addressed by the EA. This instruction is treated as a store to the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection. The reference and change bits are modified appropriately. If the EA specifies a memory address for which T = 1 in the corresponding segment register, the instruction is treated as a no-op. This is a supervisor-level instruction.

3.8.2 User-Level Cache Instructions

The instructions summarized in this section provide user-level programs the ability to manage the 601’s unified cache. The term block in the context of the cache refers to a sector within the cache (and not a block defined by the block address translation (BAT) mechanism).

As with other memory-related instructions, the effect of the cache instructions on memory are weakly consistent. If the programmer needs to ensure that cache or other instructions have been performed with respect to all other processors and mechanisms, a **sync** instruction must be placed in the program following those instructions.

When data address translation is disabled (MSR[DT] = 0), the Data Cache Block Set to Zero (**dcbz**) instruction allocates a line in the cache and may not verify that the physical address is valid. If a line is created for an invalid physical address, a machine check

condition may result when an attempt is made to write that line back to memory. The line could be written back as the result of the execution of an instruction that causes a cache miss and the invalid addressed line is the target for replacement or a Data Cache Block Store (**dcbst**) instruction.

Any cache control instruction that generates an effective address that corresponds to an I/O controller interface segment (SR[T] = 1) that has the SR[BUID] field equal to x'07F' translates the address appropriately and performs the cache operation based on that address. A cache control instruction that generates an effective address that corresponds to an I/O controller interface segment (SR[T] = 1), but with the SR[BUID] not equal to x'07F' is treated as a no-op.

Since the 601 is implemented with a unified (combined instruction and data) cache, the Instruction Cache Block Invalidate (**icbi**) instruction is treated as a no-op by the 601 processor. Table 3-44 summarizes the cache instructions that are accessible to user-level programs.

Table 3-44. User-Level Cache Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Data Cache Block Touch	**dcbt**	**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). This instruction provides a method for improving performance through the use of software-initiated fetch hints. The 601 performs the fetch for the cases when the address hits in the UTLB or the BTLB, and when it is permitted load access from the addressed page. The operation is treated similarly to a byte load operation with respect to memory protection. If the address translation does not hit in the UTLB or BTLB, or if it does not have load access permission, the instruction is treated as a no-op. If the access is directed to a cache-inhibited page, or to an I/O controller interface segment, then the bus operation occurs, but the cache is not updated. This instruction never affects the reference or change bits in the hashed page table. While the 601 maintains a cache line size of 64 bytes, the **dcbt** instruction may only result in the fetch of a 32-byte sector (the one directly addressed by the EA). The other 32-byte sector in the cache line may or may not be fetched, depending on activity in the dynamic memory queue. A successful **dcbt** instruction will affect the state of the TLB and cache LRU bits as defined by the LRU algorithm.
Data Cache Block Touch for Store	**dcbtst**	**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The **dcbtst** instruction operates exactly like the **dcbt** instruction as implemented on the 601.

Table 3-44. User-Level Cache Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Cache Line Compute Size	**clcs**	**r**D,**r**A	**This is a POWER instruction, and is not part of the PowerPC architecture. This instruction will not be supported by other PowerPC implementations.** This instruction places the cache line size specified by operand **r**A into register **r**D. The **r**A operand is encoded as follows: 01100 Instruction cache line size (returns value of 64) 01101 Data cache line size (returns value of 64) 01110 Minimum line size (returns value of 64) 01111 Maximum line size (returns value of 64) All other encodings of the **r**A operand return undefined values. This instruction is specific to the 601.
Data Cache Block Set to Zero	**dcbz**	**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). If the block (the cache sector consisting of 32 bytes) containing the byte addressed by the EA is in the data cache, all bytes are cleared to 0. If the block containing the byte addressed by the EA is not in the data cache and the corresponding page is caching-allowed, the block is established in the data cache without fetching the block from main memory, and all bytes of the block are cleared to 0. If the page containing the byte addressed by the EA is caching-inhibited or write-through, then the system alignment exception handler is invoked. If the block containing the byte addressed by the EA is in coherence required mode, and the block exists in the data cache(s) of any other processor(s), it is kept coherent in those caches. The **dcbz** instruction is treated as a store to the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection. If the EA corresponds to an I/O controller interface segment (SR[T] = 1), the **dcbz** instruction is treated as a no-op.
Data Cache Block Store	**dcbst**	**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum(**r**A|0)+(**r**B). If the block (the cache sector consisting of 32 bytes) containing the byte addressed by the EA is in coherence required mode, and a block containing the byte addressed by the EA is in the data cache of any processor and has been modified, the writing of it to main memory is initiated. The function of this instruction is independent of the write-through and cache-inhibited/allowed modes of the block containing the byte addressed by the EA. This instruction is treated as a load from the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection. If the EA corresponds to an I/O controller interface segment (SR[T] = 1), the **dcbst** instruction is treated as a no-op.

Table 3-44. User-Level Cache Instructions (Continued)

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Data Cache Block Flush	**dcbf**	**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The action taken depends on the memory mode associated with the target, and on the state of the block. The following list describes the action taken for the various cases, regardless of whether the page or block containing the addressed byte is designated as write-through or if it is in the caching-inhibited or caching-allowed mode. • Coherency required (WIM = xx1) — Unmodified block—Invalidates copies of the block in the caches of all processors. — Modified block—Copies the block to memory. Invalidates copies of the block in the caches of all processors. — Absent block—If modified copies of the block are in the caches of other processors, causes them to be copied to memory and invalidated. If unmodified copies are in the caches of other processors, causes those copies to be invalidated. • Coherency not required (WIM = xx0) — Unmodified block—Invalidates the block in the processor's cache. — Modified block—Copies the block to memory. Invalidates the block in the processor's cache. — Absent block—Does nothing.

3.8.3 Segment Register Manipulation Instructions

The instructions listed in Table 3-45 provide access to the segment registers of the 601. These instructions operate completely independently of the MSR[IT] and MSR[DT] bit settings. Note that the **r**A operand is not defined for the **mtsrin** and **mfsrin** instructions in the 601. Refer to Section 2.3.3.1, "Synchronization for Supervisor-Level SPRs and Segment Registers," for serialization requirements and other recommended precautions to observe when manipulating the segment registers.

Table 3-45. Segment Register Manipulation Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Move to Segment Register	**mtsr**	SR,**r**S	The contents of **r**S is placed into segment register specified by operand SR. This is a supervisor-level instruction.
Move to Segment Register Indirect	**mtsrin**	**r**S,**r**B	The contents of **r**S are copied to the segment register selected by bits 0–3 of **r**B. This is a supervisor-level instruction.
Move from Segment Register	**mfsr**	**r**D,SR	The contents of the segment register specified by operand SR are placed into **r**D. This is a supervisor-level instruction.
Move from Segment Register Indirect	**mfsrin**	**r**D,**r**B	The contents of the segment register selected by bits 0–3 of **r**B are copied into **r**D. This is a supervisor-level instruction.

3.8.4 Translation Lookaside Buffer Management Instruction

The 601 implements a TLB that caches portions of the page table. As changes are made to the address translation tables, the TLB must be updated. This is done by explicitly invalidating TLB entries (both in the set) with the Translation Lookaside Buffer Invalidate Entry **(tlbie)** instruction. Refer to Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit” for additional information about TLB operation. Table 3-46 summarizes the operation of the **tlbie** instruction.

Table 3-46. Translation Lookaside Buffer Management Instruction

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
Translation Lookaside Buffer Invalidate Entry	**tlbie**	**r**B	The effective address is the contents of **r**B. If the TLB contains an entry corresponding to the EA, that entry is removed from the TLB. The TLB search is done regardless of the settings of MSR[IT] and MSR[DT]. Also, a TLB invalidate operation is broadcast on the system bus unless disabled by setting bit 17 in HID1. Block address translation for the EA, if any, is ignored. Because the 601 supports broadcast of TLB entry invalidate operations, the following must be observed: • The **tlbie** instruction must be contained in a critical section of memory controlled by software locking, so that the **tlbie** is issued on only one processor at a time. • A **sync** instruction must be issued after every **tlbie** and at the end of the critical section. This causes hardware to wait for the effects of the preceding **tlbie** instructions(s) to propagate to all processors. A processor detecting a TLB invalidate broadcast does the following: 1. Prevents execution of any new load, store, cache control or **tlbie** instructions and prevents any new reference or change bit updates 2. Waits for completion of any outstanding memory operations (including updates to the reference and change bits associated with the entry to be invalidated) 3. Invalidates the two entries (both associativity classes) in the UTLB indexed by the matching address 4. Resumes normal execution This is a supervisor-level instruction. Nothing is guaranteed about instruction fetching in other processors if **tlbie** deletes the page in which another processor is executing.

Because the presence, absence, and exact semantics of the translation lookaside buffer management instruction is implementation dependent, system software should encapsulate uses of the instruction into subroutines to minimize the impact of migrating from one implementation to another.

3.9 External Control Instructions

The external control instructions provide a means for a user-level program to communicate with a special-purpose device. Two instructions are provided and are summarized in Table 3-47.

Table 3-47. External Control Instructions

Name	Mnemonic	Operand Syntax	Operation
External Control Input Word Indexed	**eciwx**	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). If the external access register (EAR) E-bit (bit 0) is set to 1, a load request for the physical address corresponding to the EA is sent to the device identified by the EAR Resource ID bits (bits 28–31), bypassing the cache. The word returned by the device is placed in **r**D. The EA sent to the device must be word aligned. If the EAR[E] = 0, a data access exception is invoked, with bit 11 of DSISR set to 1, and bit 6 cleared to 0 to indicate that the exception occurred during a load operation. The **eciwx** instruction is supported for EAs that reference ordinary memory segments (SR[T] = 0), for EAs mapped by BAT registers, and for EAs generated when MSR[DT] = 0.The instruction is treated as a no-op for EAs in I/O controller interface segments (SR[T] = 1). The access caused by this instruction is treated as a load from the location addressed by the EA with respect to protection and reference and change recording.
External Control Output Word Indexed	**ecowx**	**r**S,**r**A,**r**B	The EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). If the External Access Register (EAR) E-bit (bit 0) is set to 1, a store request for the physical address corresponding to the EA and the contents of **r**S are sent to the device identified by EAR[RID] (resource ID) (bits 28–31), bypassing the cache. The EA sent to the device must be word aligned. If the EAR[E] = 0, a data access exception is invoked, with bit 11 of DSISR set to 1, and bit 6 set to 1 to indicate that the exception occurred during a store operation. The **ecowx** instruction is supported for EAs that reference ordinary memory segments (SR[T] = 0), for EAs mapped by BAT registers, and for EAs generated when MSR[DT] = 0.The instruction is treated as a no-op for EAs in I/O controller interface segments (SR[T] = 1). The access caused by this instruction is treated as a store to the location addressed by the EA with respect to protection and reference and change recording

3.10 Miscellaneous Simplified Mnemonics

In order to make assembly language programs simpler to write and easier to understand, a set of simplified mnemonics is provided that define a shorthand for some of the most frequently used instructions. PowerPC compliant assemblers provide the simplified mnemonics listed here, and in the sections describing the branch, arithmetic, compare, trap, rotate and shift, and move to/from special purpose register instructions. Programs written to be portable across the various assemblers for the PowerPC architecture should not assume the existence of mnemonics not defined in this user's manual.

3.10.1 No-Op

Many PowerPC instructions can be coded in a way that, effectively, no operation is performed. An additional mnemonic is provided for the preferred form of no-op. If an implementation performs any type of run-time optimization related to no-ops, the preferred form is the no-op that will trigger this.

no-op (equivalent to **ori 0,0,0**)

3.10.2 Load Immediate

The **addi** and **addis** instructions can be used to load an immediate value into a register. Additional mnemonics are provided to convey the idea that no addition is being performed but that data is being moved from the immediate operand of the instruction to a register.

Load a 16-bit signed immediate value into **r**A:
li rD**,**value (equivalent to **addi r**A**,0,**value)

Load a 16-bit signed immediate value, shifted left by 16 bits, into **r**A:
lis rD**,**value (equivalent to **addis r**A**,0,**value)

3.10.3 Load Address

This mnemonic permits computing the value of a base-displacement operand, using the **addi** instruction which normally requires a separate register and immediate operands.

la rD,SIMM(**r**A) (equivalent to **addi r**D,**r**A,SIMM)

The **la** mnemonic is useful for obtaining the address of a variable specified by name, allowing the assembler to supply the base register number and compute the displacement. If the variable *v* is located at offset SIMM*v* bytes from the address in register **r***v*, and the assembler has been told to use register **r***v* as a base for references to the data structure containing *v*, then the following line causes the address of *v* to be loaded into register **r**D.

la rD,*v* (equivalent to **addi r**D**,r**A**,**SIMM*v*

3.10.4 Move Register

Several PowerPC instructions can be coded to simply copy the contents of one register to another. An extended mnemonic is provided to move data from one register to another with no computational activity.

The following instruction copies the contents of register **r**S into register **r**A. This mnemonic can be coded with a "." to cause the condition register update option to be specified in the underlying instruction.

mr rA,**r**S (equivalent to **or r**A,**r**S,**r**S)

3.10.5 Complement Register

Several PowerPC instructions can be coded to complement the contents of one register and place the result in another register. A simplified mnemonic is provided that complements the contents of **r**S and places the results into register **r**A**.** This mnemonic can be coded with a "." to cause the condition register update option to be specified in the underlying instruction.

not rA**,r**S (equivalent to **nor r**A**,r**S**,r**S)

Chapter 4
Cache and Memory Unit Operation

The PowerPC 601 microprocessor contains a 32-Kbyte, eight-way set associative, unified (instruction and data) cache. The cache line size is 64 bytes, divided into two eight-word sectors, each of which can be snooped, loaded, cast-out, or invalidated independently. The cache is designed to adhere to a write-back policy, but the 601 allows control of cacheability, write policy, and memory coherency at the page and block level. The cache uses a least recently used (LRU) replacement policy.

The 601's on-chip cache is nonblocking. Burst operations to the cache are the result of a cache sector reload caused by a cache miss, and are buffered such that the cache update is reduced to two single-cycle operations of four words. That is, the results of the first two and the last two beats are buffered and written to the cache in single cycles apiece. This frees the cache to perform lower priority operations in the meantime.

System operations, including cache operations, connect to the system interface through the memory unit, which includes a two-element read queue and a three-element write queue.

As shown in Figure 1-1, the cache provides an eight-word interface to the instruction fetcher and load/store unit. The surrounding logic selects, organizes, and forwards the requested information to the requesting unit. Write operations to the cache can be performed on a byte basis, and a complete read-modify-write operation to the cache can occur in each cycle.

The cache unit and the memory unit coordinate cache reload and cast-out operations so that a cache miss does not block the use of the cache for other operations during the next cycle. Cache reload operations always occur on a sector basis, with the option of reloading the additional sector as a low-priority operation. On load operations and fetch operations, the critical data is forwarded to the requesting unit without waiting for the entire cache line to be loaded.

The 601 maintains cache coherency in hardware by coordinating activity between the cache, the memory unit, and the bus interface logic. As bus operations are performed on the bus by other processors, the 601 bus snooping logic monitors the addresses that are referenced. These addresses are compared with the addresses resident in the cache. The cache unit uses a second port into its tag directory to check for a matching entry and the

memory queue unit does the same. If there is a snoop hit, the 601's bus snooping logic responds to the bus interface with the appropriate snoop status. An additional snoop action may be forwarded to the cache or to the memory unit as a result of a snoop hit.

Note that in this chapter the term multiprocessor is used in the context of maintaining cache coherency, although the system could include other devices that can access system memory, maintain their own caches, and function as bus masters requiring cache coherency.

This chapter describes the organization of the 601's on-chip cache, the MESI cache coherency protocol, special concerns for cache coherency in single- and multiple-processor systems, cache control instructions, various cache operations, and the interaction between the cache and the memory unit.

4.1 Cache Organization

The cache is configured as eight sets of 64 lines. Each line consists of two sectors, four state bits (two per sector), an address tag, and several bits to maintain the LRU function. The two state bits implement the four-state MESI (modified-exclusive-shared-invalid) protocol. Each sector contains eight 32-bit words. Note that PowerPC architecture defines the cacheable unit as a block, which is a sector in the 601.

The instruction unit accesses the cache frequently in order to maintain the flow of instructions through the instruction queue. The queue is eight words (one sector) long, so an entire sector can be loaded into the instruction unit on a single clock cycle.

The cache organization is shown in Figure 4-1. Note that the replacement algorithm is strictly an LRU algorithm; that is, the least recently used sector is used, which may mean that a modified sector will be replaced on a miss if it is the least recently used, even if invalid sectors are available. However, for performance reasons, certain conditions (for example, the execution of some cache instructions) generate accesses to the cache without modifying the bits that perform the LRU function.

Each cache line contains 16 contiguous words from memory that are loaded from a 16-word boundary (that is, bits A26–A31 of the logical (effective) addresses are zero); as a result, cache lines are aligned with page boundaries.

Note that address bits A20–A25 provide an index to select a line. Bits A26–A31 select a byte within a line. The tags consists of bits PA0–PA19. Address translation occurs in parallel, such that higher-order bits (the tag bits in the cache) are physical.

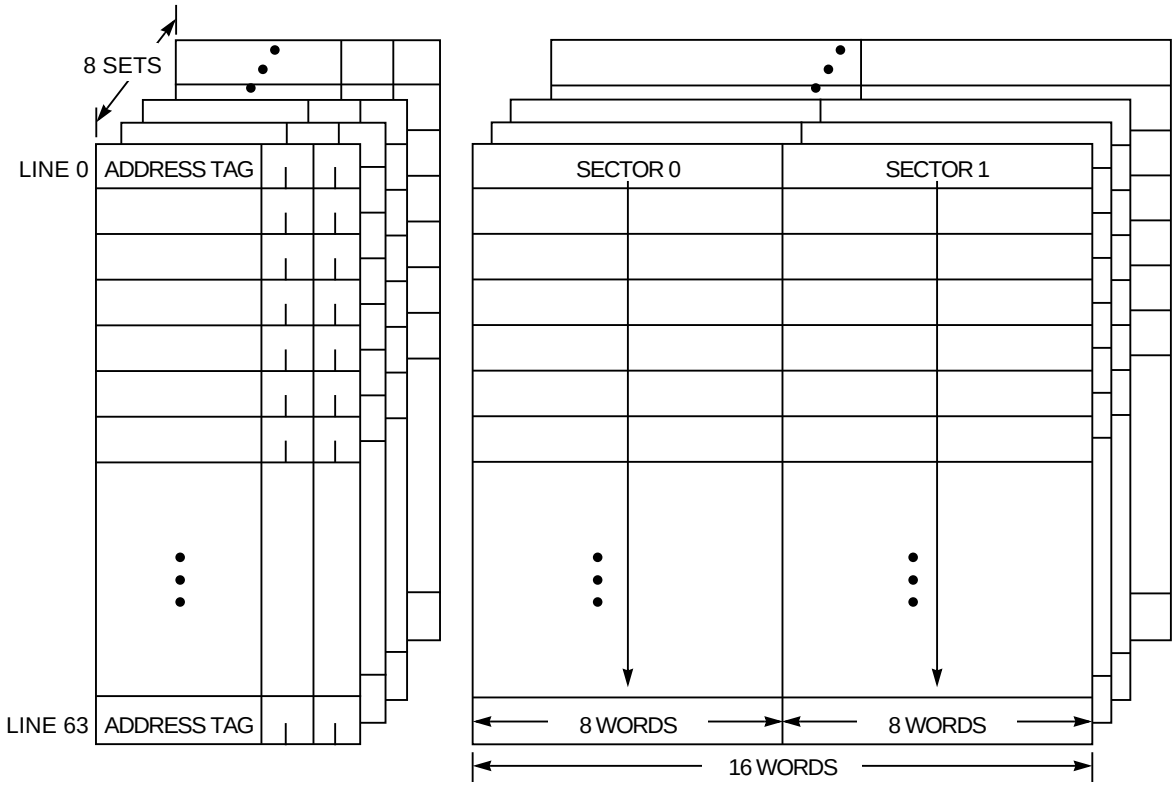


Figure 4-1. Cache Organization

4.2 Cache Arbitration

The instruction unit and the integer unit both access the cache; however, the cache unit handles only one access per cycle. Furthermore, since the cache is nonblocking, a preceding cache operation may generate a cache reload operation which must also compete for cache access. The bus snooping logic may create additional snoop actions that use the cache. The 601 efficiently handles simultaneous requests to access the on-chip cache.

The 601 implements cache arbitration logic to prioritize the various cache requests that can occur on each cycle. The cache unit provides a cache retry queue (CRTRY) if a caching operation cannot be completed. There are three entries in this queue, providing a buffer for one outstanding floating-point store, a buffer for an integer load/store or floating-point load, and a buffer for an instruction fetch. Priority is given first to floating-point stores, then to integer stores, and finally to instruction fetches.

A similar situation arises with respect to the bus. Internal bus arbitration logic chooses the highest priority operation from the memory queue for presentation onto the bus. These priorities are listed in Section 4.10.2, “Memory Unit Queuing Priorities.”

The 601 supports a fully-coherent 4-Gbyte physical memory address space. Bus snooping is used to drive a MESI four-state cache-coherency protocol that ensures the coherency of all processor and DMA transactions to and from global memory with respect to the processor's cache. The MESI protocol is described in Section 4.7.2, "MESI Protocol." All potential bus masters must employ similar snooping and coherency-control mechanisms.

4.3 Cache Access Priorities

The 601 prioritizes pending cache operations as follows:

1. Cache reloads. Note that the cache is nonblocking. Four-beat burst reloads on the system bus are buffered into two, single-cycle transactions of four words each, freeing the cache to perform lower priority operations in the meantime.
2. Second-cycle cast-out operations when the additional sector is modified
3. Snoop requests that hit in the tag directory. These may generate a cache sector push operation or cache state change.
4. Floating-point store operations.
5. Integer operation retries. If a higher priority operation occurs when an integer operation is ready to cache its results, the results are held in a buffer until the higher priority operation completes, then it is retried on the next clock cycle. This prevents the integer unit from stalling when this situation occurs.
6. Integer unit requests
7. Instruction fetches

4.4 Basic Cache Operations

This section describes operations that can occur to the cache, and how these operations are implemented in the 601.

4.4.1 Cache Reloads

A cache sector is reloaded after a read miss occurs in the cache. The cache sector that contains the address is updated by a burst transfer of the data from system memory. Note that if a read miss occurs in a multiprocessor system, and the data is modified in another cache, the modified data is first written to external memory before the cache reload occurs.

An instruction fetch that is generated to fill the instruction queue (not explicitly required by the program flow) does not generate a reload operation in the case of a cache miss.

4.4.2 Cache Cast-Out Operation

The 601 uses an LRU replacement algorithm to determine which of the eight possible cache locations should be used for a cache update. Adding a new sector to the cache causes any modified data associated with the least recently used element to be written back, or cast out,

to system memory. This may be both sectors of the line, depending on which sectors are modified, even though only one sector may be reloaded. Casting out of the adjacent sector is referred to as a second-cycle cast-out operation.

4.4.3 Cache Sector Push Operation

When a cache sector in the 601 is snooped and hit by another processor and the data is modified, the cache sector must be written to memory and made available to the snooping device. The cache sector that is hit is said to be pushed out onto the bus. The 601 supports two kinds of push operations—normal push operations and enveloped high-priority push operations, which are described in Section 4.7.11, “Enveloped High-Priority Cache Sector Push Operation.”

4.4.4 Optional Cache Sector Line-Fill Operation

The two sectors in a cache line contain contiguous memory addresses; therefore, the two sectors share the same line address tag. Cache coherency, however, is maintained on a sector granularity, so there are separate coherency state bits for each sector. If one sector of the line is filled from memory, the 601 may attempt to load the other sector as a low-priority bus operation. If the other sector is not transferred, the cache line in the snooping processor contains one sector that is in the shared state (the one that was transferred because of the snoop hit) and one sector that is invalid (if the optional cache line fill is not performed). Correspondingly, the processor issuing the reload request may bring in the second cache sector in a shared or exclusive state.

Note that the optional reload of an adjacent sector on an instruction fetch miss can be disabled globally by setting bit 26 in the HID0 register, and the optional reload of the adjacent sector on a load/store miss can be disabled by setting bit 27.

4.5 Cache Data Transactions

The 601 output signal $\overline{\text{TBST}}$ (transfer burst) indicates to the system whether the current transaction is a single-beat transaction or four-beat burst transfer. Burst transactions have an assumed address order. For cacheable load operations or cacheable, non-write-through store operations that miss the cache, the 601 presents the quad-word aligned address associated with the read or store that initiated the transaction.

As shown in Figure 4-2, this quad word contains the address of the load or store that missed the cache. This minimizes latency by allowing the critical code or data to be forwarded to the processor before the rest of the sector is filled. For all other burst operations, however, the entire sector is transferred in order (oct-word aligned).

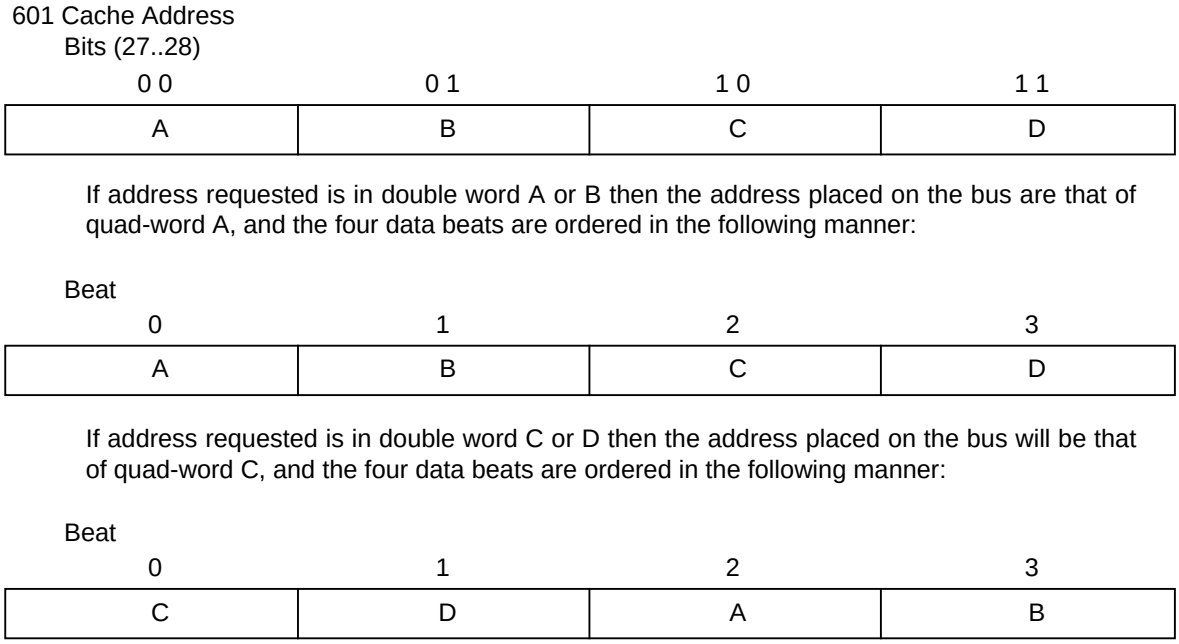


Figure 4-2. Quad-Word Address Ordering

4.6 Access to I/O Controller Interface Segments

The 601 supports both memory-mapped and I/O-mapped access to I/O devices. In addition to the high-performance bus protocol for memory-mapped I/O accesses, the 601 provides the ability to map memory areas to the I/O controller interface (SR[T] = 1) with the following two kinds of operations:

- I/O controller interface operations. These operations are considered to address the noncoherent and noncacheable I/O controller interface; therefore, the 601 does not maintain coherency for these operations, and the cache is bypassed completely.
- Memory-forced I/O controller interface operations. These operations are considered to address memory space and are therefore subject to the same coherency control as memory accesses. These operations are global memory references within the 601 and are considered to be noncacheable.

Cache behavior (write-back, cache-inhibition, and enforcement of MESI coherency) for these operations is determined by the settings of the WIM bits; see Section 6.3, “Memory/Cache Access Modes.”

4.7 Cache Coherency

The primary objective of a coherent memory system is to provide the same image of memory to all devices using the system. Coherency allows synchronization, cooperative use of shared resources, and task migration among the processors. Otherwise, multiple copies of a memory location, some containing stale values, could exist in a system resulting

in errors when the stale values are used. Each potential bus master must follow rules for managing the state of its cache. For example, a device must broadcast its intention to read a sector that is not currently in the cache. It must also broadcast the intention to write into a sector that is currently not owned exclusively. Other devices respond to these broadcasts by snooping their caches for the broadcast addresses and reporting status back to the originating device. The status returned includes a shared indicator (another device has a copy of the addressed sector) and a retry indicator (another device either has a modified copy of the addressed sector that it needs to push out of the chip, or another device had a problem that prevented appropriate snooping).

For faster performance, the 601 has a second path into the cache directory so snooping and mainstream instruction processing occur concurrently. Instruction processing is interrupted only when the snoop control logic detects a state change or that a snoop push of modified data is required to maintain memory coherency.

To maintain coherency, secondary caches must forward all relevant system bus traffic onto the 601 bus, which takes the appropriate actions to maintain the MESI protocol.

Support for **lwarx** and **stwcx.** instructions on noncacheable pages may be somewhat more complicated for a secondary cache than normal cacheable memory accesses. This is because the secondary cache may not normally forward writes to noncacheable pages in the processor. However, to maintain the reservation coherency bit, the secondary cache must forward all writes that hit against the address of a reservation set by a **lwarx** instruction until the reservation is cleared.

4.7.1 Memory Management Access Mode Bits—W, I, and M

Some memory characteristics can be set on either a block or page basis by using the WIM bits in the BAT registers or page table entry (PTE) respectively. The WIM bits control the following functionality:

- Write-through (W bit)
- Caching-inhibited (I bit)
- Memory coherency (M bit)

These bits allow both single- and multiprocessor-system designs to exploit numerous system-level performance optimizations. These bits are described in detail in Chapter 2, “Registers and Data Types,” and Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.” Using these bits carelessly can cause coherency problems—the processor must ensure that the coherency of the location is maintained (i.e., the processor must manage mismatched W bit handling in cases of mixed WIM = b'101' and WIM = b'001'.) The 601 considers either of these cases to be a programming error that may compromise memory coherency. These paradoxes can occur within a single processor or across several devices, as described in Section 4.7.5.1, “Coherency in Single-Processor Systems,” and Section 4.7.5.2, “Coherency in Multiprocessor Systems.”

4.7.2 MESI Protocol

The 601 cache characterizes each 32-byte sector it contains as being in one of four MESI states. Addresses presented to the cache are indexed into the cache directory with bits A20–A25 and the upper-order 20 bits from the physical address translation (PA0–PA19) are compared against the indexed cache directory tags. If no tags match, the result is a cache miss. If a tag matches, a cache hit occurred and the directory indicates the state of the sector through two state bits kept with the tag. The four possible states for a sector in the cache are the invalid state (I), the shared state (S), the exclusive state (E), and the modified state (M). The four MESI states are defined in Table 4-1 and illustrated in Figure 4-3.

Table 4-1. MESI State Definitions

MESI State	Definition
Modified (M)	The addressed sector is valid in the cache and in only this cache. The sector is modified with respect to system memory—that is, the modified data in the sector has not been written back to memory.
Exclusive (E)	The addressed sector is in this cache only. The data in this sector is consistent with system memory.
Shared (S)	The addressed sector is valid in the cache and in at least one other cache. This sector is always consistent with system memory. That is, the shared state is shared-unmodified; there is no shared-modified state.
Invalid (I)	This state indicates that the addressed sector is not resident in the cache.

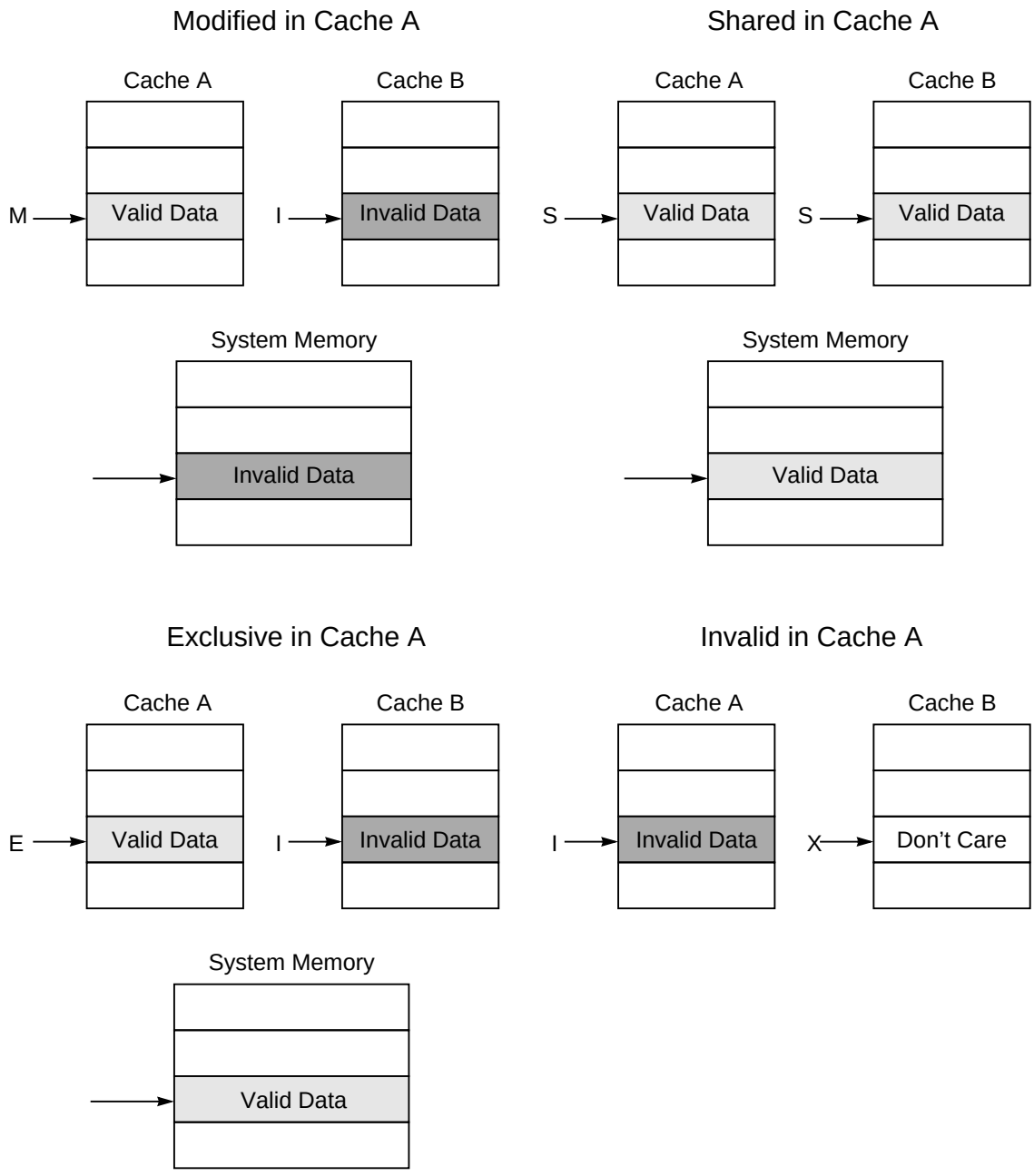


Figure 4-3. MESI States

4.7.3 MESI State Diagram

The 601 provides dedicated hardware to provide memory coherency by snooping bus transactions. The address retry capability of the 601 enforces the MESI protocol, as shown in Figure 4-4. Figure 4-4 assumes that the WIM bits are set to 001; that is, write-back, caching-not-inhibited, and memory coherency enforced.

Table 4-7 gives a detailed list of MESI transitions for various operations and WIM bit settings.

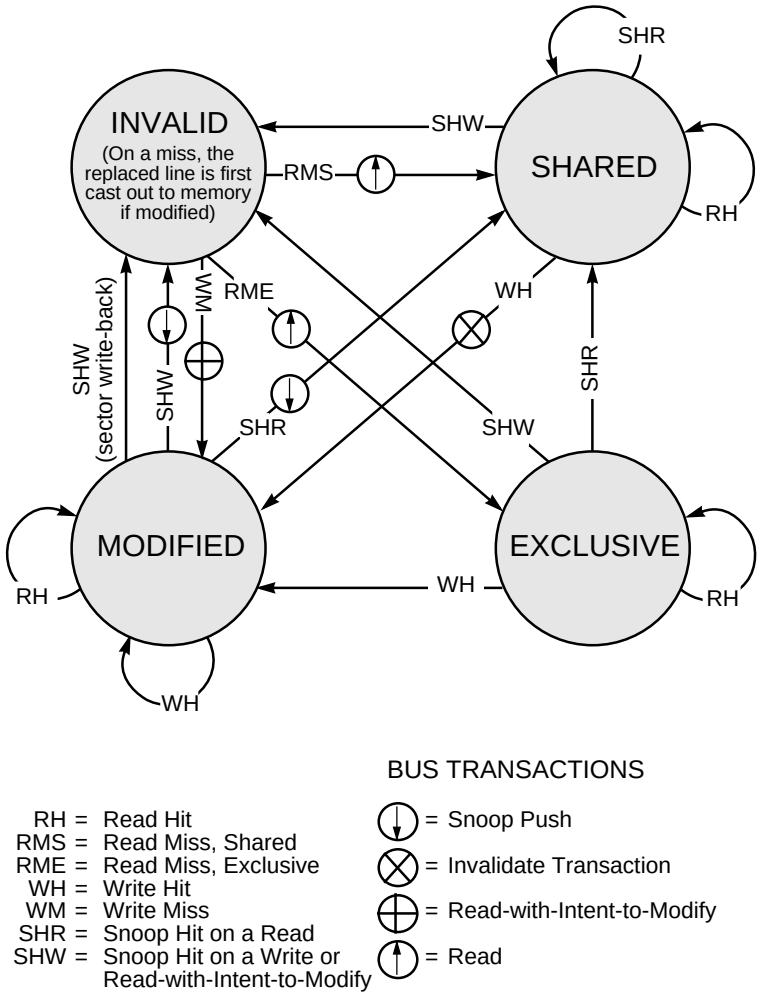


Figure 4-4. MESI Cache Coherency Protocol—State Diagram (WIM = 001)

4.7.4 MESI Hardware Considerations

In addition to the hardware required to monitor bus traffic for coherency, the 601 has a cache port dedicated to snooping so that comparing cache entries to address traffic on the bus does not affect the 601's on-chip cache.

The global ($\overline{\text{GBL}}$) signal, asserted as part of the address attribute field, enables the snooping hardware of the 601. Address bus masters assert $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ to indicate that the current transaction is a global access (that is, an access to memory shared by more than one device). If $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ is not asserted for the transaction, that transaction is not snooped.

Normally, $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ reflects the M-bit value specified for the memory reference in the corresponding translation descriptor(s). Care must be taken to minimize the number of pages marked as global, because the retry protocol enforces coherency and can use considerable bus bandwidth if much data is shared. Therefore available bus bandwidth can decrease as more traffic is marked global. Note that in Figure 4-4, write hits to unmodified lines of nonglobal pages do not generate invalidate broadcasts.

The 601 snoops a transaction if the transfer start ($\overline{\text{TS}}$) and $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ inputs are asserted together in the same bus clock (this is a *qualified* snooping condition). No snoop update to the 601 cache occurs if the snooped transaction is not marked global. This includes invalidation cycles.

When the 601 detects a qualified snoop condition, the address associated with the $\overline{\text{TS}}$ is compared with the cache tags through a dedicated cache-tag snoop port. Snooping finishes if no hit is detected. If, however, the address hits in the cache, the 601 reacts according to the MESI protocol shown in Figure 4-4.

Because they do not require snooping, cache sector cast-outs, and snoop pushes do not assert $\overline{\text{GBL}}$. The 601 marks these transactions as nonglobal.

To facilitate external monitoring of the internal cache tags, the cache set member signals (CSE0–CSE2) represent in binary the sector of the cache set being replaced on read operations (including read-with-intent-to-modify operations). This does not apply and is not necessary for write operations to memory. Note that these signals are valid only for 601 burst operations. Table 4-2 shows the (cache set element) CSE encodings.

Table 4-2. CSE0–CSE2 Signals

CSE0–CSE2	Cache Set Element
000	Set 0
001	Set 1
010	Set 2
011	Set 3
100	Set 4
101	Set 5
110	Set 6
111	Set 7

4.7.5 Coherency Precautions

Cache coherency is greatly affected by whether the 601 is used in a single- or multiple-processor implementation. This section describes precautions for implementing coherent single- and multiple-processor systems.

4.7.5.1 Coherency in Single-Processor Systems

The following situations concerning coherency can be encountered within a single-processor implementation:

- Load or store to a cache-inhibited page (WIM = b'X1X') and a cache hit occurs

  Caching is inhibited for this page (I = 1). Load or store operations to a cache-inhibited page that hit in the cache cause a paradox. If the addressed sector is not modified, the 601 invalidates the sector and performs the memory access. If the addressed sector in the cache line is modified, the 601 flushes the modified sector before accessing memory.

- Store to a page marked write-through (WIM = b'10X') and a cache hit to a modified sector

  This page is marked as write-through (W = 1). The 601 pushes the modified sector to memory and marks the sector exclusive (E). Then the 601writes the data into the cache, marking it exclusive and passing on a write-with-flush operation (to the memory queue).

Note that when WIM bits are changed, it is critical that the cache contents should reflect the new WIM bit settings. For example, if a block or page that had allowed caching becomes caching-inhibited, software should ensure that the appropriate cache sectors are flushed to memory and invalidated.

4.7.5.2 Coherency in Multiprocessor Systems

Other situations concerning coherency can occur across multiple processors (or systems that employ multiple devices that incorporate caches). Paradoxes in multiprocessor systems are particularly difficult to handle since some scenarios cause modified data to be purged and others may lead to bus deadlock scenarios.

Most multiprocessor paradoxes center around the interprocessor coherency of the memory coherency bit (the M bit). Improper use of the M bit can lead to multiple devices accepting a cache sector and marking the data as exclusive, leading to the possibility of the same cache line being modified in multiple caches.

Although these coherency paradoxes are considered programming errors, the 601 attempts to handle the offending conditions and minimize the negative effects on memory coherency. Note that the intent of this effort is to ease the debugging of multiprocessor operating system development.

The following list shows some of the operations provided by the 601:

- Noncacheable write operations appear on the processor bus as write-with-flush operations, which forces other processors with modified copies of the addressed sector to write data back to memory and to mark the sector as invalid in the cache. Devices with an unmodified copy of the sector must mark the sector as invalid in their caches.
- All noncacheable read operations appear on the 601 bus as read (with clean) operations, which forces processors with modified copies of the addressed data to write the data back to memory before the read operation completes.

Note that when WIM bits are changed, it is critical that the cache contents should reflect the new WIM bit settings. For example, if a block or page that had allowed caching becomes caching-inhibited, the appropriate cache sectors should be updated to leave no indication that caching had previously been allowed.

Additional information on bus operations that are generated for specific instructions and state conditions can be found in Chapter 9, “System Interface Operation.”

4.7.6 Memory Loads and Stores

Table 4-3 provides a general overview of memory coherency actions performed by the 601 on load operations.

Table 4-3. Memory Coherency Actions on Load Operations

Cache State	Bus Operation	$\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$	$\overline{\text{SHD}}$	Action
I	Read	Negated	Negated	Load data and mark E
I	Read	Negated	Asserted	Load data and mark S
I	Read	Asserted	Don’t care	Retry read operation
S	None	Don’t care	Don’t care	Read from cache
E	None	Don’t care	Don’t care	Read from cache
M	None	Don’t care	Don’t care	Read from cache

Noncacheable cases are not part of this table. The first three cases also involve selecting a replacement class and casting-out modified data that may have resided in that replacement class.

Table 4-4 provides an overview of memory coherency actions on store operations. This table does not include noncacheable or write-through cases nor does it completely describe the exact mechanisms for the operations described. It describes generally what happens within the chip. The read-with-intent-to-modify (RWITM) examples involve selecting a replacement class and casting-out modified data that may have resided in that replacement class.

Table 4-4. Memory Coherency Actions on Store Operations

Cache State	Bus Operation	$\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$	$\overline{\text{SHD}}$	Action
I	RWITM	Negated	Don’t care	Load data, modify it, mark M
I	RWITM	Asserted	Don’t care	Retry the RWITM
S	Kill	Negated	Don’t care	Modify cache, mark M
S	Kill	Asserted	Don’t care	Retry the kill operation
E	None	Don't care	Don’t care	Modify cache, mark M
M	None	Don't care	Don’t care	Modify cache

4.7.7 Atomic Memory References

The **lwarx**/**stwcx.** instruction combination can be used to emulate atomic memory references. These instructions are described in Chapter 3, “Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary,” and Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”

4.7.8 Snoop Response to Bus Operations

When the 601 is not the bus master, it monitors bus traffic and performs cache and memory-queue snooping as appropriate. The snooping operation is triggered by the receipt of a qualified snoop request. A qualified snoop request is generated by the simultaneous assertion of the $\overline{\text{TS}}$ and $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ bus signals.

Instruction processing is interrupted only when a snoop hit occurs and the snoop state machine determines that an additional cache snoop is required to resolve the coherency of the offended sector.

The 601 maintains a write queue of bus operations in progress and/or pending arbitration. This write queue is also be snooped in response to qualified snoop requests. Note that sector-length (four-beat) write operations, are always snooped in the write queue; however, single-beat writes are not snooped. Coherency for single-beat writes is maintained by the use of cache operations that are broadcast with the write on the system interface.

The 601 drives two snoop status signals ($\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHD}}$) in response to a qualified snoop request that hits. These signals provide information about the state of the addressed sector for the current bus operation. For more information about these signals, see Chapter 8, “Signal Descriptions.”

4.7.9 Cache Reaction to Specific Bus Operations

There are several bus transaction types defined for the 601 bus. The 601 must snoop these transactions and perform the appropriate action to maintain memory coherency; see Table 4-5. For example, because single-beat write operations are not snooped when they are queued in the memory unit, additional operations such as flush or kill operations, must be broadcast when the write is passed to the system interface to ensure coherency.

A processor may assert $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ for any bus transaction due to internal conflicts that prevent the appropriate snooping. In general, if $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is not asserted, each snooping processor must take full ownership for the effects of the bus transaction with respect to the state of the processor. The processor can assert $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ if an internal conflict prevents it from snooping properly.

The transactions in Table 4-5 correspond to the transfer type signals TT0–TT4, which are described in Section 8.2.4.1, “Transfer Type (TT0–TT4).”

Table 4-5. Response to Bus Transactions

Transaction	Response
Clean block	The clean operation is an address-only bus transaction, initiated by executing a **dcbst** instruction. This operation affects only sectors marked as modified (M). Assuming the $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ signal is asserted, modified sectors are pushed out to memory, changing the state to E.
Flush block	The flush operation is an address-only bus transaction initiated by executing a **dcbf** instruction. Assuming the $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ signal is asserted, the flush block operation results in the following: • If the addressed sector is shared or exclusive, an additional snoop action is generated internally that invalidates the addressed sector. • If the addressed sector is in the M state, $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is asserted and an additional internally generated snoop action is initiated that pushes the modified sector out of the cache and invalidates the sector. • If HID0[31] = 0, and any bus read operation is pending during this snoop operation, the write-back of the modified sector is considered to be a high-priority bus operation that may be enveloped within the pending load operation. • If HID0[31] = 1, and the snoop flush was presented with $\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$ asserted, the write-back of the modified sector is considered to be a high-priority bus operation that may be enveloped within the pending load operation. • If the addressed sector hits any of the three entries in the write queue, that entry is tagged as a high-priority push, after which it can be loaded from memory.

Table 4-5. Response to Bus Transactions (Continued)

Transaction	Response
Write with flush Write with flush atomic	Write-with-flush and write-with-flush-atomic operations occur after the processor issues a store or **stwcx.** instruction, respectively. • If the addressed sector is in the shared or exclusive state, the address snoop forces the state of the addressed sector to invalid. • If the addressed sector is in the modified state, the address snoop causes the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ to be asserted and initiates a push of the modified sector out of the cache and changes the state of the sector to invalid. • If HID0[31] = 0, and any bus read operation is pending during this snoop operation, the write-back of the modified sector is considered to be a high-priority bus operation that may be enveloped within the pending load operation. • If HID0[31] = 1, and the snoop write was presented with $\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$ asserted, the write-back of the modified sector is considered to be a high-priority bus operation that may be enveloped within the pending load operation. • If the addressed sector hits any of the three entries in the write queue, that entry is tagged as a high-priority push operation.
Kill block	The kill-block operation is an address-only bus transaction initiated when one of the following occurs: • a **dcbi** instruction is executed • a **dcbz** operation to a block marked S or I is executed • a write operation to a block marked S occurs If a snoop hit occurs, an additional snoop is initiated internally and the sector is forced to the I state, effectively killing any modified data that may have been in the sector. The three-entry write queue is also snooped, and if a queue entry hits, it is purged.
Write with kill	In a write-with-kill operation, the processor snoops the cache for a copy of the addressed sector. If one is found, an additional snoop action is initiated internally and the sector is forced to the I state, killing modified data that may have been in the sector. In addition to snooping the cache, the three-entry write queue is also snooped. A kill operation that hits an entry in the write queue purges that entry from the queue.
Read Read atomic	The read operation is used by most single-beat and burst read operations on the bus. A read on the bus with the $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ signal asserted causes the following responses: • If the addressed sector is in the cache but is invalid, the 601 takes no action. • If the sector is in the shared state, the 601 asserts the shared snoop status indicator. • If the sector is in the E state, the 601 asserts the shared snoop status indicator and initiates an additional snoop action to change the state of that sector from E to S. • If the sector is in the cache in the M state, the 601 asserts both the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ snoop status signals. It also initiates an additional snoop action to push the modified sector out of the chip and to mark that cache sector as shared. Read atomic operations appear on the bus in response to **lwarx** instructions and generate the same snooping responses as read operations.
Read with intent to modify (RWITM) RWITM atomic	An RWITM operation is issued to acquire exclusive use of a memory location for the purpose of modifying it. • If the addressed sector is in the I state, the 601 takes no action. • If the addressed sector is in the cache and in the S or E state, the 601 initiates an additional snoop action to change the state of the cache sector to I. • If the addressed sector is in the cache and in the M state, the 601 asserts both the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ snoop status signals. It also initiates an additional snoop action to push the modified sector out of the chip and to change the state of that sector in the cache from M to I. The RWITM atomic operations appear on the bus in response to **stwcx.** instructions and are snooped like RWITM instructions.

Table 4-5. Response to Bus Transactions (Continued)

Transaction	Response
sync	The **sync** instruction causes an address-only bus transaction. The 601 asserts the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ snoop status if there are any TLB-related snoop operations pending in the chip. This transaction is also generated by the **eieio** instruction on the 601.
TLB invalidate	A TLB invalidation operation is caused by executing a **tlbie** instruction. This instruction transmits the 601's TLB index (bits 12–19 of the EA) onto the system bus. Other processors on the bus invalidate TLB entries associated with EAs that match those bits.
I/O reply	The I/O reply operation is part of the I/O controller interface operation. It serves as the final bus operation in the series of bus operations that service an I/O controller interface operation.

4.7.10 Internal $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ Scenarios

The following scenarios, along with others, cause the 601 to assert the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ signal.

- Snoop hits to a sector in the M state (optional on kill requests)
- Snoop hits when a reload dump request is active
- Snoop hits on a valid (that is, not cancelled) operation that is queued internally.
- Snoop hits while a cast-out request is pending during this or the next clock cycle.

4.7.11 Enveloped High-Priority Cache Sector Push Operation

If the 601 has a read operation outstanding on the bus and another pipelined bus operation hits against a modified sector, the 601 provides a high-priority push operation. This transaction can be enveloped within the address and data tenures of a read operation. This feature prevents deadlocks in system organizations that support multiple memory-mapped buses. More specifically, the 601 internally detects the scenario where a load request is outstanding and the processor has pipelined a write operation on top of the load. Normally, when the data bus is granted to the 601, the resulting data bus tenure is used for the load operation. The enveloped high-priority cache sector push feature defines a bus signal, the data bus write only qualifier ($\overline{\text{DBWO}}$), which, when asserted with a qualified data-bus grant, indicates that the resulting data tenure should be used for the store operation instead. This signal is described in Section 9.10, "Using DBWO (Data Bus Write Only)." Note that the enveloped copy-back operation is an internally pipelined bus operation.

4.8 Cache Control Instructions

Software must use the appropriate cache management instructions to ensure that caches are kept consistent when data is modified by the processor or by input data transfer. When a processor alters a memory location that may be contained in an instruction cache, software must ensure that updates to memory are visible to the instruction fetching mechanism.

Although the instructions to enforce coherency vary among implementations and hence many operating systems will provide a system service for this function, the following sequence is typical:

1. **dcbst** (update memory)
2. **sync** (wait for update)
3. **icbi** (invalidate copy in cache)
4. **isync** (invalidate copy in own instruction buffer)

These operations are necessary because the processor is not required to maintain instruction memory consistent with data memory. Software is responsible for enforcing consistency of instruction and data memory. Since instruction fetching may bypass the data cache, changes made to items in the data cache may not be reflected in memory until after the instruction fetch completes.

The PowerPC architecture defines instructions for controlling both the instruction and data caches. Instruction cache control instructions are valid instructions on the 601, but may function differently than they do when used on PowerPC processors that have separate instruction and data caches.

Note that in the PowerPC architecture, the term cache block, or simply block when used in the context of cache implementations, refers to the unit of memory at which coherency is maintained. For the 601 this is the eight-word sector. This value may be different for other PowerPC implementations. In-depth descriptions of coding these instructions is provided in Chapter 3, “Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary,” and Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”

4.8.1 Cache Line Compute Size Instruction (clcs)

The **clcs** instruction places the cache information specified in the instruction into a target register. This instruction is used by the POWER architecture to determine the maximum and minimum line sizes for cache implementations. For a complete description of this instruction, refer to Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”

4.8.2 Data Cache Block Touch Instruction (dcbt)

This instruction provides a method for improving performance through the use of software-initiated fetch hints. The 601 performs the fetch for the cases when the address hits in the UTLB or the BTLB, and when it is permitted load access from the addressed page. The operation is treated similarly to a byte load operation with respect to memory protection.

If the address translation does not hit in the UTLB or BTLB, or if it does not have load access permission, the instruction is treated as a no-op.

If the access is directed to a cache-inhibited page, or to an I/O controller interface segment, then the bus operation occurs, but the cache is not updated.

This instruction never affects the reference or change bits in the hashed page table.

While the 601 maintains a cache line size of 64 bytes, the **dcbt** instruction may only result in fetching a 32-byte sector (the one directly addressed by the EA). The other 32-byte sector in the cache line may or may not be fetched, depending on activity in the dynamic memory queue.

A successful **dcbt** instruction will affect the state of the UTLB and cache LRU bits as defined by the LRU algorithm.

4.8.3 Data Cache Block Touch for Store Instruction (dcbtst)

The **dcbtst** instruction behaves exactly like the **dcbt** instruction as implemented on the 601.

4.8.4 Data Cache Block Set to Zero Instruction (dcbz)

If the block (the cache sector consisting of 32 bytes) containing the byte addressed by the EA is in the data cache, all bytes are cleared to 0.

If the block containing the byte addressed by the EA is not in the data cache and the corresponding page is caching-allowed, the block is established in the data cache without fetching the block from main memory, and all bytes of the block are cleared to 0.

If the page containing the byte addressed by the EA is caching-inhibited or write-through, then the system alignment exception handler is invoked.

If the block containing the byte addressed by the EA is in coherence required mode, and the block exists in the data cache(s) of any other processor(s), it is kept coherent in those caches.

The **dcbz** instruction is treated as a store to the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection.

If the EA corresponds to an I/O controller interface segment (SR[T] = 1), the **dcbz** instruction is treated as a no-op.

See Chapter 5, “Exceptions,” for more information about a possible delayed machine check exception interrupt that can occur by use of **dcbz** if the operating system has set up an incorrect memory mapping.

4.8.5 Data Cache Block Store Instruction (dcbst)

If the block (the cache sector consisting of 32 bytes) containing the byte addressed by the EA is in coherence required mode, and a block containing the byte addressed by the EA is in the data cache of any processor and has been modified, the writing of it to main memory is initiated.

The function of this instruction is independent of the write-through and cache-inhibited/allowed modes of the block containing the byte addressed by the EA.

This instruction is treated as a load from the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection.

If the EA specifies a memory address for an I/O controller interface segment (segment register T-bit = 1), the **dcbst** instruction is treated as a no-op.

4.8.6 Data Cache Block Flush Instruction (dcbf)

The action taken depends on the memory mode associated with the target, and on the state of the sector. The list below describes the action taken for the various cases. The actions described must be executed regardless of whether the page containing the addressed byte is in caching-inhibited or caching-allowed mode.

- Coherence-required mode

  Unmodified sector—Invalidates copies of the sector in the caches of all processors.

  Modified sector—Copies the sector to memory. Invalidates copies of the sector in the caches of all processors.

  Absent sector—If modified copies of the sector are in the caches of other processors, causes them to be copied to memory and invalidated. If unmodified copies are in the caches of other processors, cause those copies to be invalidated.

- Coherence-not-required mode

  Unmodified sector—Invalidates the sector in the processor's cache.

  Modified sector—Copies the sector to memory. Invalidate the sector in the processor's cache.

  Absent sector—Does nothing.

The 601 treats this instruction as a load from the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection.

4.8.7 Enforce In-Order Execution of I/O Instruction (eieio)

The **eieio** instruction provides an ordering function for the effects of load and store instructions executed by a given processor. Executing **eieio** ensures that all memory accesses previously initiated by the given processor are completed with respect to main memory before any memory accesses subsequently initiated by the processor access main memory.

The **eieio** instruction orders loads and stores to caching-inhibited memory only.

The **eieio** instruction is intended for use only in doing memory-mapped I/O. It can be thought of as placing a barrier into the stream of memory accesses issued by a processor, such that any given memory access appears to be on the same side of the barrier to both the processor and the I/O device.

The **eieio** instruction may complete before previously initiated memory accesses have been performed with respect to other processors and mechanisms.

Unlike the **sync** instruction, **eieio** need not serialize the processor. It requires only that the processor execute memory accesses in the order described above, and enforce that order in any queues in the memory subsystem.

4.8.8 Instruction Cache Block Invalidate Instruction (icbi)

The **icbi** instruction is provided in the PowerPC architecture for use in processors with separate instruction and data caches. The effective (logical) address is computed, translated, and checked for protection violations as defined in the PowerPC architecture; however, the instruction functions as a no-op on the 601.

In the PowerPC architecture, the **icbi** instruction performs the following function:

- If the block (sector) containing the byte addressed by EA is in coherency-required mode and a sector containing the byte addressed by EA is in the instruction cache of any processor, the sector is made invalid in all such processors, so that subsequent references cause the sector to be refetched.
- If coherency is not required for the sector containing the byte addressed by EA and a sector containing the byte addressed by EA is in the instruction cache of this processor, the sector is made invalid in this processor so that subsequent references cause the sector to be fetched from main memory (or from a cache).

4.8.9 Instruction Synchronize Instruction (isync)

The **isync** instruction waits for all previous instructions to complete and then discards any previously fetched instructions, causing subsequent instructions to be fetched (or refetched) from memory and to execute in the context established by the previous instructions. This instruction has no effect on other processors or on their caches.

4.9 Bus Operations Caused by Cache Control Instructions

Table 4-6 provides an overview of the bus operations initiated by cache control instructions. Note that Table 4-6 assumes that the WIM bits are set to 001; that is, since the cache is operating in write-back mode, caching is permitted and coherency is enforced.

Table 4-6. Bus Operations Caused by Cache Control Instructions (WIM = 001)

Operation	Cache State	Next Cache State	Bus Operations	Comment
sync/eieio	Don't care	No change	**sync**	First clears memory queue
dcbi	Don't care	I	Kill	—
dcbf	I, S, E	I	Flush	—
dcbf	M	I	Write with kill	Sector is pushed
dcbst	I, S, E	No change	Clean	—
dcbst	M	E	Write with kill	Sector is pushed
dcbz	I	M	Kill	May also cast out a sector
dcbz	S	M	Kill	—
dcbz	E, M	M	None	Writes over modified data
dcbt	I	No change	Read	State change on reload may cast out sector
dcbt	S, E, M	No change	None	—

Table 4-6 does not include noncacheable or write-through cases, nor does it completely describe the mechanisms for the operations described. For more information, see Section 4.11, "MESI State Transactions."

Chapter 3, "Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary," and Chapter 10, "Instruction Set," describe the cache control instructions in detail. Several of the cache control instructions broadcast onto the 601 interface so that all processors in a multiprocessor system can take appropriate actions. The 601 contains snooping logic to monitor the bus for these commands and the control logic required to keep the cache and the memory queues coherent. For additional details about the specific bus operations performed by the 601, see Chapter 9, "System Interface Operation."

4.10 Memory Unit

The 601's memory unit contains read and write queues that buffer operations between the external interface and the cache. These operations are comprised of operations resulting from load and store instructions that are cache misses, read and write operations required to maintain cache coherency, and table search operations. As shown in Figure 4-5, the read queue contains two elements and the write queue contains three elements. Each element of the write queue can contain as many as eight words (one sector) of data. One element of the write queue, marked snoop in Figure 4-5, is dedicated to writing cache sectors to system memory after a modified sector is hit by a snoop from another processor or snooping device on the system bus. The use of this queue guarantees that a high-priority operation receives a deterministic response time when snooping hits a modified sector.

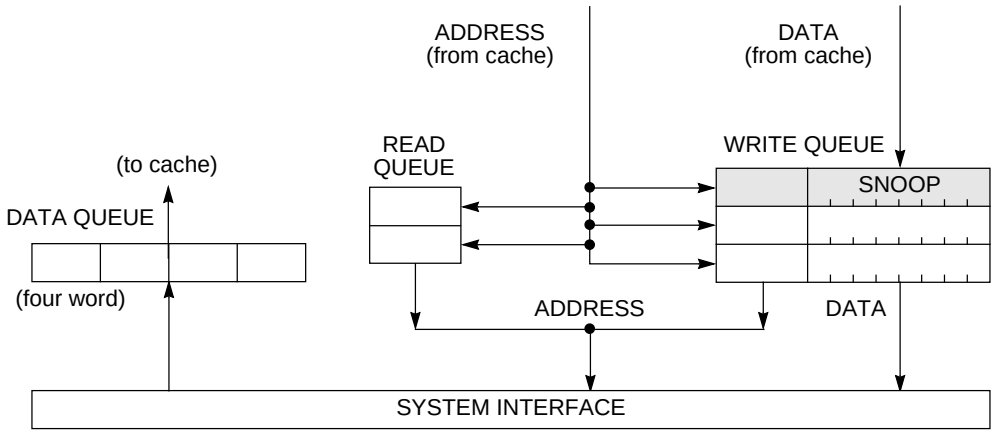


Figure 4-5. Memory Unit

The other two elements in the write queue are used for store operations and writing back modified sectors that have been deallocated by updating the queue; that is, when a cache sector is full, the least-recently used cache sector is deallocated by first being copied into the write queue and from there to system memory if it is modified. Note that snooping can occur after a sector has been pushed out into the write queue and before the data has been written to system memory. Therefore, to maintain a coherent memory, the write queue elements are compared to snooped addresses in the same way as the cache tags. If a snoop hits a write queue element, the data is first stored in system memory before it can be loaded into the cache of the snooping bus master. Full coherency checking between the cache and the write queue prevents dependency conflicts.

For a detailed discussion about the retry signals and bus operations pertaining to snooping, see Chapter 9, “System Interface Operation.”

Execution of a load or store instruction is considered complete when the associated address translation completes, guaranteeing that the instruction has completed to the point where it is known that it will not generate an internal exception. However, after address translation is complete, a read or write operation can generate an external exception.

Load and store instructions are always issued and translated in program order with respect to other load and store instructions. However, a load or store operation that hits in the cache can complete ahead of those that miss in the cache; additionally, loads and stores that miss the cache can be reordered as they arbitrate for the system bus.

If a load or store misses in the cache, the operation is managed by the memory unit which prioritizes accesses to the system bus. Read requests, such as loads, RWITMs, and instruction fetches have priority over single-beat write operations The priorities for accessing the system bus are listed in Section 4.10.2, “Memory Unit Queuing Priorities.” The 601 ensures memory consistency by comparing target addresses and prohibiting

instructions from completing out of order if an address matches. Load and store operations can be forced to execute in strict program order by inserting a sync instruction between each sequential memory access instruction.

4.10.1 Memory Unit Queuing Structure

The memory queue receives requests from the cache unit for arbitration onto the 601 bus interface. These requests may either be presented immediately to the bus interface logic or they may be queued for future arbitration onto the bus. The memory queue consists of a two-element read queue and a three-element write queue. Each write queue element can hold a sector of data (32 bytes) associated with a single address.

Some operations presented to the memory queue cannot be queued. These operations typically require synchronization with respect to either the execution units, the cache, or the memory queue itself. In general, when these requests are presented and not arbitrated directly onto the bus, they stall above the cache (but do not necessarily prevent use of the cache) and attempt to re-arbitrate on the next cycle. These operations include the following:

- Cache control instructions that are broadcast
- Execution of the **tlbie** instruction
- Execution of the **sync** instruction
- Execution of the **eieio** instruction
- Cache requests for exclusive ownership when the sector is resident but not exclusive in the cache

The memory queue also allows the optional loading of the sector adjacent to the one containing the critical data. As the memory read queue receives and processes cache sector reload requests, it is advantageous to fetch the other sector if it is not already in the cache unless fetching the other sector delays access to data required for the machine to continue processing. The memory unit logic detects whether other operations are pending; if not, it initiates a fetch for the other sector. Note that this function can be disabled by setting bit 26 in HID0 (for instruction fetch misses) and bit 27 in HID0 (for load/store misses).

4.10.2 Memory Unit Queuing Priorities

This section describes the priorities for access to the system interface:

1. High-priority cache push-out operations
2. Normal snoop push-out operations
3. I/O controller interface segment accesses that incur no additional delays (that is, they have not been retried because of latency).
4. Cache instruction operations
5. Read requests, such as loads, RWITMs, and instruction fetches
6. Single-beat write operations
7. **sync** instructions

8. Optional cache-line fill operations
9. Cache sector cast-out operations
10. I/O controller interface segment accesses that incur additional delays (that is, they have been retried because of external device latency)

4.10.3 Bus Interface

The bus interface logic sequences operations onto the 601 bus according to defined protocols. The bus interface logic is also responsible for snooping other bus traffic, presenting these operations to the rest of the device for coherency considerations and reporting the appropriate snoop status onto the bus.

For additional information about the 601 bus interface and the bus protocols, refer to Chapter 9, “System Interface Operation.”

4.11 MESI State Transactions

Table 4-7 shows MESI state transitions for various operations. The bus synchronization column indicates whether exclusivity is required. Bus operations are described in Table 4-5.

Table 4-7. MESI State Transitions

Operation	Cache Operation	Bus sync	WIM	Current State	Next State	Cache Actions	Bus Operation
Load or Fetch (T = 0)	Read	No	x0x	I	Same	1 Cast out of modified sector 1 (as required)	Write with kill
						2 Pass four-beat read to memory queue	Read
						3 Secondary cast out of sector 2 (as required)	Write with kill
Load or Fetch (T = 0)	Read	No	x0x	S,E,M	Same	Read data from cache	—
Load or Fetch T = 0 or Load (T = 1, BUID = x'7F')	Read	No	x1x	I	Same	Pass single-beat read to memory queue	Read
Load or Fetch T = 0 or Load (T = 1, BUID = x'7F')	Read	No	x1x	S,E	I	CRTRY read	—
Load or Fetch T = 0 or Load (T = 1, BUID = x'7F')	Read	No	x1x	M	I	CRTRY read (push sector to write queue)	Write with kill

Table 4-7. MESI State Transitions (Continued)

Operation	Cache Operation	Bus sync	WIM	Current State	Next State	Cache Actions	Bus Operation
Load (T = 1, BUID ≠ x'7F')	I/O controller load	—	x1x	—	—	—	I/O load
lwarx	Read	Acts like other reads but bus operation uses special encoding					
Store (T = 0)	Write	No	00x	I	Same	1 Cast out of modified sector (if necessary)	Write with kill
						2 Pass RWITM to memory queue	RWITM
						3 Cast out of sector 2 (if necessary)	Write with kill
Store (T = 0)	Write	Yes	00x	S	Same	1 CRTRY write	—
						2 Pass kill	Kill
					M	3 Write data to cache	—
Store (T = 0)	Write	No	00x	E,M	M	Write data to cache	—
Store ≠ **stwcx.** (T = 0)	Write	No	10x	I	Same	Pass single-beat write to memory queue	Write with flush
Store ≠ **stwcx.** (T = 0)	Write	No	10x	S,E	Same	1 Write data to cache	—
						2 Pass single-beat write to memory queue	Write with flush
Store ≠ **stwcx.** (T = 0)	Write	No	10x	M	E	1 CRTRY write	—
						2 Push sector to write queue	Write with kill
Store (T = 0) or **stwcx.** (WIM = 10x) or store (T = 1, BUID = x'7F'	Write	No	x1x	I	Same	Pass single-beat write to memory queue	Write with flush
Store (T = 0) or **stwcx.** (WIM = 10x) or store (T = 1, BUID = x'7F')	Write	No	x1x	S,E	I	CRTRY write	—
Store (T = 0) or **stwcx.** (WIM = 10x) or store (T = 1, BUID = x'7F')	Write	No	x1x	M	I	1 CRTRY write	—
						2 Push sector to write queue	Write with kill
Store (T = 1, BUID ≠ x'7F')	I/O controller	No	—	—	—	—	I/O store request

Table 4-7. MESI State Transitions (Continued)

Operation	Cache Operation	Bus sync	WIM	Current State	Next State	Cache Actions	Bus Operation
stwcx.	Conditional write	If the reserved bit is set, this operation is like other writes except the bus operation uses a special encoding.					
dcbf	Data cache block flush	Yes	xxx	I,S,E	Same	1 CRTRY **dcbf**	—
						2 Pass flush	Flush
				Same	I	3 State change only	—
dcbf	Data cache block flush	No	xxx	M	I	Push sector to write queue	Write with kill
dcbst	Data cache block store	Yes	xxx	I,S,E	Same	1 CRTRY **dcbst**	—
						2 Pass clean	Clean
				Same	Same	3 No action	—
dcbst	Data cache block store	No	xxx	M	E	Push sector to write queue	Write with kill
dcbz	Data cache block set to zero	No	x1x	x	x	Alignment trap	—
dcbz	Data cache block set to zero	No	10x	x	x	Alignment trap	—
dcbz	Data cache block set to zero	Yes	00x	I	Same	1 CRTRY **dcbz**	—
						2 Cast out of modified sector	Write with kill
						3 Pass kill	Kill
						4 Secondary cast out of sector 2	Write with kill
				Same	M	5 Clear sector	—
dcbz	Data cache block set to zero	Yes	00x	S	Same	1 CRTRY **dcbz**	—
						2 Pass kill	Kill
				Same	M	3 Clear sector	—
dcbz	Data cache block set to zero	No	00x	E,M	M	Clear sector	—
dcbt	Data cache block touch	No	x1x	I	Same	Pass single-beat read to memory queue	Read
dcbt	Data cache block touch	No	x1x	S,E	I	CRTRY read	—
dcbt	Data cache block touch	No	x1x	M	I	1 CRTRY read	—
						2 Push sector to write queue	Write with kill

Table 4-7. MESI State Transitions (Continued)

Operation	Cache Operation	Bus sync	WIM	Current State	Next State	Cache Actions	Bus Operation
dcbt	Data cache block touch	No	x0x	I	Same	1 Cast out of modified sector (as required)	Write with kill
						2 Pass four-beat read to memory queue	Read
						3 Secondary cast out of sector (as required)	Write with kill
dcbt	Data cache block touch	No	x0x	S,E,M	Same	No action	—
Secondary cast out	Secondary cast out	No	xxx	I	Same	Cast out	Write with kill
Single-beat read	Reload dump 1	No	xxx	I	Same	Forward data_in	—
Four-beat read (quad-word 1)	Reload dump 1	No	xxx	I	Same	1 Forward data_in	—
						2 Write data_in to cache	—
Four-beat read (quad-word 2)—S	Reload dump 2	No	xxx	I	S	Write data_in to cache	—
Four-beat read (quad-word 2)—E	Reload dump 2	No	xxx	I	E	Write data_in to cache	—
Four-beat write (quad-word 1)	Reload dump1	No	xxx	I	Same	1 Splice and forward data_in	—
						2 Write data_in to cache	—
Four-beat write (quad-word 2)	Reload dump 2	No	xxx	I	M	Write data_in to cache	—
Optional reload of adjacent sector (quad-word 1)	Reload dump 1	No	xxx	I	Same	Write data_in to cache	—
Optional reload of adjacent sector (quad-word 2)—S	Reload dump 2	No	xxx	I	S	Write data_in to cache	—
Optional reload of adjacent sector (quad-word 2)—E	Reload dump 2	No	xxx	I	E	Write data_in to cache	—

Table 4-7. MESI State Transitions (Continued)

Operation	Cache Operation	Bus sync	WIM	Current State	Next State	Cache Actions	Bus Operation
E⟶S	Snoop read	No	xxx	E	S	State change only (committed)	—
S⟶I	Snoop write or kill	No	xxx	S	I	State change only (committed)	—
E⟶I	Snoop write or kill	No	xxx	E	I	State change only (committed)	—
M⟶I	Snoop kill	No	xxx	M	I	State change only (committed)	—
Push M⟶S	Snoop read	No	xxx	M	S	Conditionally push	Write with kill
Push M⟶I	Snoop flush	No	xxx	M	I	Conditionally push	Write with kill
Push M⟶E	Snoop clean	No	xxx	M	E	Conditionally push	Write with kill
tlbie	TLB invalidate	Yes	xxx	x	x	1 CRTRY TLB invalidate	—
						2 Pass TLB invalidate	TLB invalidate
						3 No action	—
sync/**eieio**	Synchronization	Yes	xxx	x	x	1 CRTRY **sync**	—
						2 Pass **sync**	dsync
						3 No action	—

Note that **dcbt** is presented to the cache as a load operation. The instructions **tlbie** and **sync**/**eieio** cause no state transitions and are not cache operations but are included in the table to show how they are performed by the memory unit queueing mechanism.

Note also that single-beat writes are not snooped in the write queue.

Chapter 5
Exceptions

The PowerPC exception mechanism allows the processor to change to supervisor state as a result of external signals, errors, or unusual conditions arising in the execution of instructions. When exceptions occur, information about the state of the processor is saved to certain registers and the processor begins execution at an address (exception vector) predetermined for each exception. The exception handler at the specified vector is then processed with the processor in supervisor mode.

Although multiple exception conditions can map to a single exception vector, a more specific condition may be determined by examining a register associated with the exception—for example, the DAE/source instruction service register (DSISR) and the floating-point status and control register (FPSCR). Additionally, some exception conditions can be explicitly enabled or disabled by software.

Except for the catastrophic asynchronous exceptions (machine check and system reset) the PowerPC 601 microprocessor exception model is precise, defined as follows:

- The exception handler is given the address of the excepting instruction (or the next instruction to execute in the case of asynchronous, precise exceptions).
- All instructions prior to the excepting instruction in the instruction stream have completed execution and have written back their results.
- No instructions subsequent to the excepting instruction in the instruction stream have been issued.

A detailed description of how the instruction flow is handled in a precise fashion is provided in 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model.”

The PowerPC architecture requires that exceptions be handled in program order; therefore, although a particular implementation may recognize exception conditions out of order, they are presented strictly in order. When an instruction-caused exception is recognized, any unexecuted instructions that appear earlier in the instruction stream, including any that have not yet entered the execute state, are required to complete before the exception is taken. Any exceptions caused by those instructions are handled first. Likewise, exceptions that are asynchronous and precise are recognized when they occur, but are not handled until all instructions currently in the execute stage successfully complete execution and report their results.

Unless a catastrophic condition causes a system reset or machine check exception, only one exception is handled at a time. If, for example, a single instruction encounters multiple exception conditions, those conditions are encountered sequentially. After the exception handler handles an exception, the instruction execution continues until the next exception condition is encountered. However, in many cases there is no attempt to reexecute the instruction. This method of recognizing and handling exception conditions sequentially guarantees that exceptions are recoverable.

Exception handlers should save the information stored in SRR0 and SRR1 early to prevent the program state from being lost due to a system reset and machine check exception or to an instruction-caused exception in the exception handler, and before enabling external interrupts.

This chapter describes the 601 exception model, it explains each class of instruction, and it describes how the program state is saved for individual exceptions.

5.1 Exception Classes

As specified by the PowerPC architecture, all 601 exceptions can be described as either precise or imprecise and either synchronous or asynchronous. Asynchronous exceptions are caused by events external to the processor's execution; synchronous exceptions, which are all handled precisely by the 601, are caused by instructions.

The 601 exceptions are shown in Table 5-1.

Table 5-1. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Exception Classifications

Synchronous/Asynchronous	Precise/Imprecise	Exception Type
Asynchronous	Imprecise	Machine check System reset
Asynchronous	Precise	External interrupt Decrementer
Synchronous	Precise	Instruction-caused exceptions

Although exceptions have other characteristics as well, such as whether they are maskable or nonmaskable, the distinctions shown in Table 5-1 define categories of exceptions that the 601 recognizes. Note that Table 5-1 includes no synchronous imprecise instructions. While the PowerPC architecture supports imprecise floating-point exceptions, they do not occur in the 601.

Exceptions, and conditions that cause them, are listed in Table 5-2.

Table 5-2. Exceptions, Vector Offsets, and Conditions

Exception Type	Vector Offset (hex)	Causing Conditions
Reserved	00000	—
System reset	00100	A system reset is caused by the assertion of either $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ or $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$.
Machine check	00200	A machine check is caused by the assertion of the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal during a data bus transaction.
Data access	00300	The cause of a data access exception can be determined by the bit settings in the DSISR, listed as follows: 1 Set if the translation of an attempted access is not found in the primary hash table entry group (HTEG), or in the rehashed secondary HTEG, or in the range of a BAT register; otherwise cleared. 4 Set if a memory access is not permitted by the page or BAT protection mechanism described in Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit”; otherwise cleared. 5 Set if the access was to an I/O segment (SR[T] =1) by an **eciwx**, **ecowx**, **lwarx**, **stwcx**., or **lscbx** instruction; otherwise cleared. Set by an **eciwx** or **ecowx** instruction if the access is to an address that is marked as write-through. 6 Set for a store operation and cleared for a load operation. 9 Set if an EA matches the address in the DABR while in one of the three compare modes. 11 Set if **eciwx** or **ecowx** is used and EAR[E] is cleared.
Instruction access	00400	An instruction access exception is caused when an instruction fetch cannot be performed for any of the following reasons: • The effective (logical) address cannot be translated. That is, there is a page fault for this portion of the translation, so an instruction access exception must be taken to retrieve the translation from a storage device such as a hard disk drive. • The fetch access is to an I/O segment. • The fetch access violates memory protection. If the key bits (Ks and Ku) in the segment register and the PP bits in the PTE or BAT are set to prohibit read access, instructions cannot be fetched from this location.
External interrupt	00500	An external interrupt occurs when the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal is asserted.
Alignment	00600	An alignment exception is caused when the 601 cannot perform a memory access for any of several reasons, such as when the operand of a floating-point load or store operation is in an I/O segment (SR[T] = 1) or a scalar load/store operand crosses a page boundary. Specific exception sources are described in Section 5.4.6, “Alignment Exception (x'00600').”

Table 5-2. Exceptions, Vector Offsets, and Conditions (Continued)

Exception Type	Vector Offset (hex)	Causing Conditions
Program	00700	A program exception is caused by one of the following exception conditions, which correspond to bit settings in SRR1 and arise during execution of an instruction: • Floating-point enabled exception—A floating-point enabled exception condition is generated when the following condition is met: (MSR[FE0] | MSR[FE1]) & FPSCR[FEX] is 1. FPSCR[FEX] is set by the execution of a floating-point instruction that causes an enabled exception or by the execution of a "move to FPSCR" instruction that results in both an exception condition bit and its corresponding enable bit being set in the FPSCR. • Illegal instruction—An illegal instruction program exception is generated when execution of an instruction is attempted with an illegal opcode or illegal combination of opcode and extended opcode fields (including PowerPC instructions not implemented in the 601), or when execution of an optional instruction not provided in the 601 is attempted (these do not include those optional instructions that are treated as no-ops). The PowerPC instruction set is described in Chapter 3, "Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary." • Privileged instruction—A privileged instruction type program exception is generated when the execution of a supervisor instruction is attempted and the MSR register user privilege bit, MSR[PR], is set. In the 601, this exception is generated for **mtspr** or **mfspr** with an invalid SPR field if SPR[0] = 1 and MSR[PR] = 1. This may not be true for all PowerPC processors. • Trap—A trap type program exception is generated when any of the conditions specified in a trap instruction is met.
Floating-point unavailable	00800	A floating-point unavailable exception is caused by an attempt to execute a floating-point instruction (including floating-point load, store, and move instructions) when the floating-point available bit is disabled (MSR[FP] = 0).
Decrementer	00900	The decrementer exception occurs when the most significant bit of the decrementer (DEC) register transitions from 0 to 1. Must also be enabled with the MSR[EE] bit.
I/O controller interface error	00A00	An I/O controller interface error exception is taken only when an operation to an I/O controller interface segment fails (such a failure is indicated to the 601 by a particular bus reply packet). If an I/O controller interface exception is taken on a memory access directed to an I/O segment, the SRR0 contains the address of the instruction following the offending instruction. Note that this exception is not implemented in other PowerPC processors.
Reserved	00B00	—
System call	00C00	A system call exception occurs when a System Call (**sc**) instruction is executed.
Reserved	00D00	Other PowerPC processors may use this vector for trace exceptions.
Reserved	00E00	The 601 does not generate an interrupt to this vector. Other PowerPC processors may use this vector for floating-point assist exceptions.
Reserved	00E10–00FFF	—
Reserved	01000–01FFF	Reserved, implementation-specific

Table 5-2. Exceptions, Vector Offsets, and Conditions (Continued)

Exception Type	Vector Offset (hex)	Causing Conditions
Run mode/ trace exception	02000	The run mode exception is taken depending on the settings of the HID1 register and the MSR[SE] bit. The following modes correspond with bit settings in the HID1 register: • Normal run mode—No address breakpoints are specified, and the 601 executes from zero to three instructions per cycle • Single instruction step mode—One instruction is processed at a time. The appropriate break action is taken after an instruction is executed and the processor quiesces. • Limited instruction address compare—The 601 runs at full speed (in parallel) until the EA of the instruction being decoded matches the EA contained in HID2. Addresses for branch instructions and floating-point instructions may never be detected. • Full instruction address compare mode—Processing proceeds out of IQ0. When the EA in HID2 matches the EA of the instruction in IQ0, the appropriate break action is performed. Unlike the limited instruction address compare mode, all instructions pass through the IQ0 in this mode. That is, instructions cannot be folded out of the instruction stream. The following mode is taken when the MSR[SE] bit is set. • MSR[SE] trace mode—Note that in other PowerPC implementations, the trace exception is a separate exception with its own vector x'00D00'.
Reserved	02001–03FFF	—

5.1.1 Precise Exceptions

In the 601, all synchronous exceptions and the asynchronous external interrupt and decrementer exceptions are handled precisely; that is, all instructions that occur in the instruction stream before the excepting event appear to complete and subsequent instructions execute after the exception has been handled. When one of the 601's precise exceptions occurs, SRR0 is set to point to an instruction such that all prior instructions in the instruction stream have completed execution and no subsequent instruction has begun execution. However, depending on the exception type, the instruction addressed by SRR0 may not have completed execution.

When an exception occurs, instruction dispatch (the issuance of instructions by the instruction fetch unit to any instruction execution unit) is halted and the following synchronization is performed:

1. The exception mechanism waits for all previous instructions in the instruction stream to complete to a point where they report all exceptions they will cause.
2. The processor ensures that all previous instructions in the instruction stream complete in the context in which they began execution.
3. The exception mechanism is responsible for saving and restoring the processor state. After control passes back to the program that encountered the exception, there are no instructions in execute stage, and the user program instructions are dispatched and executed in this new context.

5.1.1.1 Synchronous/Precise Exceptions

In the 601, all exceptions caused by instructions are precise. When instruction execution causes a precise exception, the following conditions exist at the exception point:

- Depending on the type of exception, SRR0 addresses either the instruction causing the exception or the immediately following instruction. The instruction addressed can be determined from the exception type and status bits, which are described with the description of each exception.
- All instructions that precede the excepting instruction are allowed to complete before the exception is processed. However, some memory accesses generated by these preceding instructions may not have been performed with respect to all other processors or system devices.
- The instruction causing the exception may not have begun execution, may have partially completed, or may have completed, depending on the exception type.
- No subsequent instructions in the instruction stream complete execution.

Note that other PowerPC microprocessors may support optional imprecise floating-point exception modes. While parallel processing allows the possibility of two instructions reporting exceptions during the same cycle, they are handled in program order. If a single instruction generates multiple exception conditions, those exceptions are handled sequentially, as described in Section 5.1.3, “Recognition of Exceptions.” Exception priorities are described in Section 5.1.2, “Exception Priorities.”

5.1.1.2 Asynchronous/Precise Exceptions

The 601 supports two asynchronous, precise exceptions—external interrupt and decrementer exceptions. For asynchronous exceptions, the following conditions exist at the exception point:

- All instructions issued before the event that caused the exception, and any undispatched instructions that precede those instructions in the instruction stream, appear to have completed before the exception is processed. However, some memory accesses generated by these preceding instructions may not have been performed with respect to all other processors or system devices.
- SRR0 addresses the instruction that would have been executed next had the exception not occurred.
- Architecturally, no subsequent instructions in the instruction stream complete execution.

These two exceptions are maskable. When the machine state register external interrupt enable bits are cleared (MSR[EE] = 0), these exception conditions are latched and are not recognized until the EE bit is set. MSR[EE] is cleared automatically when an exception is taken to delay recognition of conditions causing asynchronous, precise exceptions. No two precise exceptions can be recognized simultaneously. Handling of an asynchronous, precise exception does not begin until all currently executing instructions complete and any synchronous, precise exceptions caused by those instructions have been handled, as

described in Section 5.1.3, “Recognition of Exceptions.” Exception priorities are described in Section 5.1.2, “Exception Priorities.”

5.1.1.3 Asynchronous, Imprecise Exceptions

There are two asynchronous, imprecise exceptions—system reset and machine check. These two exceptions have the highest priority and can occur while other exceptions are being processed. Note that asynchronous, imprecise exceptions cannot be masked; therefore, if two of these exceptions occur in immediate succession, the state information saved by the first exception may be overwritten when the subsequent exception occurs.

These exceptions cannot be masked by using the MSR[EE] bit. A machine check exception occurs if the machine check enable bit, MSR[ME], is set. If MSR[ME] is cleared, the processor goes directly into checkstop state (if the machine-check checkstop condition is properly enabled). When an imprecise exception occurs, the following conditions exist at the exception point:

- The integer instruction pipeline acts as the synchronizing mechanism for the three pipelines (branch, floating-point, and integer). When an asynchronous interrupt occurs, integer instructions that have entered or passed through the integer execute stage and the instructions tagged to them are allowed to complete, no other instructions are allowed to start execution and synchronization. The value in SRR0 is the address of the instruction, which would execute after the last instruction that was actually completed.

  For more information on the tagging mechanism, refer to Section 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model.”
- SRR0 addresses either the instruction that would have completed or some instruction following it that would have completed if the exception had not occurred.
- An exception is generated such that all instructions preceding the instruction addressed by SRR0 appear to have completed with respect to the executing processor.

5.1.2 Exception Priorities

This section describes how exceptions are prioritized. Exceptions are roughly prioritized by exception class, as follows:

1. Asynchronous, imprecise exceptions have priority over all other exceptions. These exceptions do not wait for the completion of any precise exception handling.
2. Synchronous, precise exceptions are caused by instructions and are presented in strict program order.
3. Asynchronous, precise exceptions (external interrupt and decrementer exceptions) are delayed until higher priority exceptions are presented.

The exceptions are listed in Table 5-3 in order of highest to lowest priority.

Table 5-3. Exception Priorities

Exception Class	Priority	Exception
Asynchronous, imprecise	1	System reset—The system reset exception has the highest priority of all exceptions. If this exception exists, the exception mechanism ignores all other exceptions and generates a system reset exception. Instructions issued before the generation of a system reset exception cannot generate a nonmaskable exception.
	2	Machine check—The machine check exception is the second-highest priority exception. If this exception occurs, the exception mechanism ignores all other exceptions (except reset) and generates a machine check exception. Instructions issued before the generation of a machine check exception cannot generate a nonmaskable exception.
Synchronous, precise	3	Instruction dependent— When an instruction causes an exception, the exception mechanism waits for any instructions prior to the excepting instruction in the instruction stream to execute. Any exceptions caused by these instructions are handled first. It then generates the appropriate exception if no higher priority exception exists. Note that a single instruction can cause multiple exceptions. The ordering of such exceptions is described in 5.1.3, “Recognition of Exceptions.”
Asynchronous, precise	4	External interrupt—The external interrupt mechanism waits for instructions currently dispatched to complete execution. After all dispatched instructions are executed, and any exceptions caused by those instructions are handled, the exception mechanism generates this exception if no higher priority exception exists. This exception is delayed while MSR[EE] is cleared.
	5	Decrementer—This exception is the lowest priority exception. When this exception is created, the exception mechanism waits for all other possible exceptions to be reported. It then generates this exception if no higher priority exception exists. This exception is delayed while MSR[EE] is cleared.

5.1.3 Recognition of Exceptions

The order in which exceptions are recognized is determined by program order and whether the exception is synchronous or asynchronous, precise or imprecise, and masked or nonmasked.

Synchronous, precise exceptions (that is, exceptions that are caused by instructions) are handled in strict program order, even though instructions can execute and exceptions can be detected out of order. Therefore, before the 601 processes an instruction-caused exception, it executes all instructions, and handles any resulting exceptions, that appear earlier in the instruction stream.

A single instruction may generate multiple exception conditions. Of these exceptions, the 601 handles the exception it encounters first; software determines if execution of instructions is resumed after an exception.

If the exception is asynchronous and precise (namely an external interrupt or decrementer exception), the 601 synchronizes the pipeline by completing the execution of any

instruction in the execute stage and any undispatched instructions that appear earlier in the instruction stream (including any exceptions they generate) before handling the external interrupt or decrementer exceptions.

5.1.3.1 Recognition of Asynchronous, Imprecise Exceptions

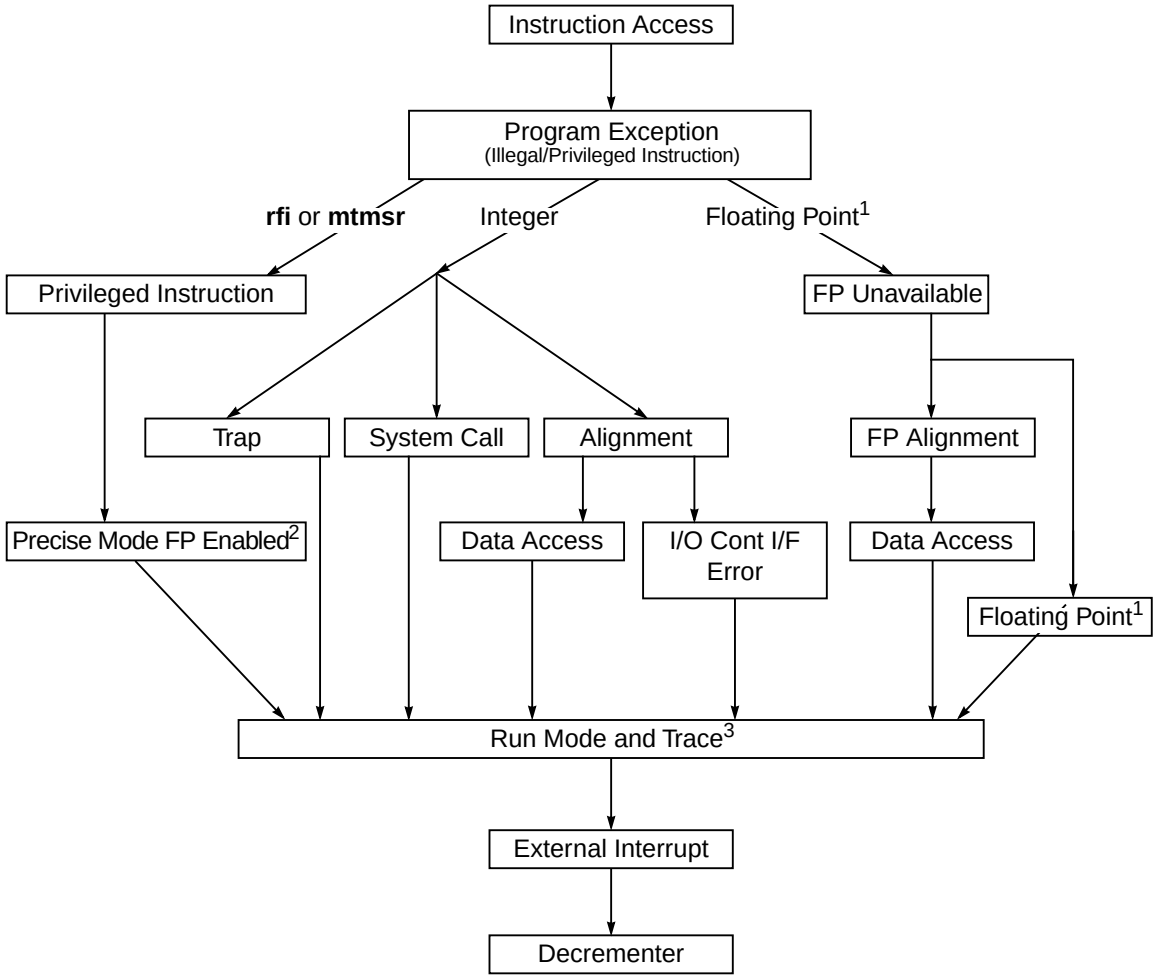
Exceptions that are nonmasked, imprecise, and asynchronous (namely system reset or machine check exceptions) may occur at any time. That is, these exceptions are not delayed if another exception is being handled. As a result, state information for the interrupted exception may be lost; therefore, these exceptions are typically nonrecoverable.

All other exceptions have lower priority than system reset and machine check exceptions.

5.1.3.2 Recognition of Precise Exceptions

Only one precise exception can be reported at a time. (Note that PowerPC implementations that support imprecise-mode floating-point enabled exceptions allow those to be handled in the same manner as described in this section.)

Figure 5-1 illustrates the ordering of precise exceptions. Note that this ordering is on a per-instruction basis. If a precise, asynchronous exception condition occurs while instruction-caused exceptions are being processed, its handling is delayed until all instruction-caused exceptions are handled.



[1]Not all floating-point instructions can cause enabled exceptions.

[2]If the MSR bits FE0 and FE1 are set such that precise mode floating-point enabled exceptions are enabled and the FPSCR[FEX] bit is set, a program exception results.

[3]Floating-point precise exceptions are taken only when either MSR[FE0] or MSR[FE1] are set.

Figure 5-1. Recognition of Precise Exception Conditions

5.2 Exception Processing

When an exception is taken, the 601 uses the save/restore registers, SRR0 and SRR1, to save the contents of the machine state register and to identify where instruction execution should resume after the exception is handled. The machine status save/restore register 0 (SRR0) is a 32-bit register that the 601 uses to save either the address of the instruction that causes the exception, the one that follows, or the next instruction that would have executed in the case of an asynchronous, imprecise exception. This address is used typically when a Return from Interrupt (**rfi**) instruction is executed. The SRR0 is shown in Figure 5-2.

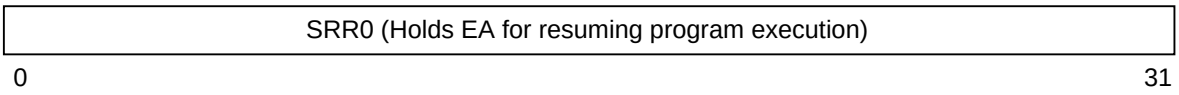


Figure 5-2. Machine Status Save/Restore Register 0 (SRR0)

When an exception occurs, SRR0 is set to point to an instruction such that all prior instructions have completed execution and no subsequent instruction has begun execution. The instruction addressed by SRR0 may not have completed execution, depending on the exception type. SRR0 addresses either the instruction causing the exception or the immediately following instruction. The instruction addressed can be determined from the exception type bits.

The SRR1 is a 32-bit register used to save machine status on exceptions and to restore machine status when **rfi** is executed. The SRR1 is shown in Figure 5-3.

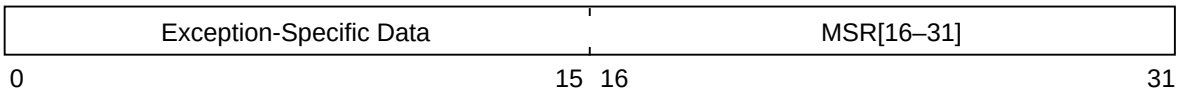


Figure 5-3. Machine Status Save/Restore Register 1 (SRR1)

In general, when an exception occurs, bits 0–15 of SRR1 are loaded with exception-specific information and bits 16–31 of the machine state register (MSR) are placed into bits 16–31 of SRR1. The machine state register is shown in Figure 5-4.

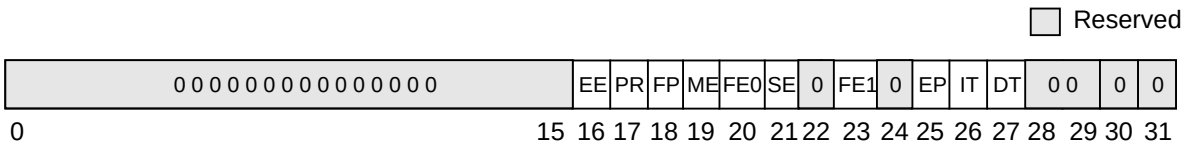


Figure 5-4. Machine State Register (MSR)

Table 5-4 shows the bit definitions for the MSR.

Table 5-4. Machine State Register Bit Settings

Bit(s)	Name	Description
0–15	—	Reserved
16	EE	External interrupt enable 0 The processor delays recognition of external interrupts and decrementer exception conditions. 1 The processor is enabled to take an external interrupt or the decrementer exception.
17	PR	Privilege level 0 The processor can execute both user and supervisor instructions. 1 The processor can only execute user-level instructions.

Table 5-4. Machine State Register Bit Settings (Continued)

Bit(s)	Name	Description
18	FP	Floating-point available 0 The processor prevents dispatch of floating-point instructions, including floating-point loads, stores, and moves. Floating-point enabled program exceptions can still occur and the FPRs can still be accessed. 1 The processor can execute floating-point instructions, and can take floating-point enabled exception type program exceptions.
19	ME	Machine check enable 0 Machine check exceptions are disabled. If this bit is cleared, the 601 attempts to go into checkstop mode. Note however, if is not enabled in HID0, the machine check exception is taken. 1 Machine check exceptions are enabled.
20	FE0	Floating-point exception mode 0 (See Table 5-5.)
21	SE	Single-step trace enable 0 The processor executes instructions normally. 1 The processor generates a trace exception upon the successful execution of the next instruction. When this bit is set, the processor dispatches instructions in strict program order. Successful execution means the instruction caused no other exception. Single-step tracing may not be present on all implementations. If the function is not implemented, MSR[SE] should be treated as a reserved MSR bit: **mfmsr** may return the last value written to the bit, or may return 0 always.
22	—	Reserved * on the 601
23	FE1	Floating-point exception mode 1 (See Table 5-5.)
24	—	Reserved. This bit corresponds to the AL bit of the POWER Architecture.
25	EP	Exception prefix. The setting of this bit specifies whether an exception vector offset is prepended with Fs or 0s. In the following description, *nnnnn* is the offset of the exception. See Table 5-2. 0 Exceptions are vectored to the physical address x'000*n_nnnn*'. 1 Exceptions are vectored to the physical address x'FFF*n_nnnn*'.
26	IT	Instruction address translation 0 Instruction address translation is disabled. When instruction address translation is disabled, EA is interpreted as described in Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.” 1 Instruction address translation is enabled.
27	DT	Data address translation 0 Data address translation is disabled. When data relocation is off, EA is interpreted as described in Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.” 1 Data address translation is enabled.
28–29	—	Reserved
30	—	Reserved * on the 601
31	—	Reserved * on the 601

*These reserved bits may be used by other PowerPC processors. Attempting to change these bits does not affect the operation of the processor. These bit positions always return a zero value when read.

The floating-point exception mode bits are interpreted as shown in Table 5-5. For further details see Section 5.4.7.1, “Floating-Point Enabled Program Exceptions.”

Table 5-5. Floating-Point Exception Mode Bits

FE0	FE1	Mode
0	0	Floating-point exceptions disabled
0	1	Floating-point imprecise nonrecoverable *
1	0	Floating-point imprecise recoverable*
1	1	Floating-point precise mode

* Not implemented in the 601

MSR bits 16–31 are guaranteed to be written to SRR1 when the first instruction of the exception handler is encountered.

The data address register (DAR) is a 32-bit register used by several exceptions (data access, I/O controller interface error, and alignment) to identify the address of a memory element.

5.2.1 Enabling and Disabling Exceptions

When a condition exists that causes an exception to be generated, it must be determined whether the exception is enabled for that condition.

- Floating-point enabled exceptions (a type of program exception) can be disabled by clearing both MSR[FE0] and MSR[FE1]. If either or both of these bits are set, all floating-point exceptions are taken and are precise and cause a program exception. Other PowerPC processors may support imprecise floating-point exceptions. Individual conditions that can generate floating-point exceptions can be enabled and disabled with bits in the FPSCR register.
- Asynchronous, precise exceptions are enabled by setting the MSR[EE] bit. When MSR[EE] = 0, recognition of these exception conditions is delayed. MSR[EE] is cleared automatically when an exception is taken to delay recognition of conditions causing those exceptions.
- A machine check exception can only occur if the machine check enable bit, MSR[ME], is set. If MSR[ME] is cleared, the processor goes directly into checkstop state when a machine-check exception condition occurs.
- The run mode exception, which is used to set an instruction breakpoint, can be enabled and disabled using bits 8 and 9 of HID1 (HID1[RM]). Note that this stops the processor and is used for debug purposes only.
- The data address breakpoint can be enabled and disabled using bits 30 and 31 of the DABR (HID5[SA]).
- System reset exceptions cannot be masked.

5.2.2 Steps for Exception Processing

After it is determined that the exception can be taken (by confirming that any instruction-caused exceptions occurring earlier in the instruction stream have been handled, and by confirming that the exception is enabled for the exception condition), the 601 does the following:

1. The SRR0 is loaded with an instruction address that depends on the type of exception. See the individual exception description for details about how this register is used for specific exceptions.
2. Bits 0–15 of SRR1 are loaded with 16 bits of information specific to the exception type or all zeros.
3. Bits 16–31 of SRR1 are loaded with a copy of bits 16–31 of the MSR.
4. The MSR is set as described in Table 5-4. The new values take effect beginning with the fetching of the first instruction of the exception-handler routine located at the exception vector address.

   Note that MSR[IT] and MSR[DT] are cleared for all exception types; therefore, address translation is disabled for both instruction fetches and data accesses beginning with the first instruction of the exception-handler routine.
5. Instruction fetch and execution resumes, using the new MSR value, at a location specific to the exception type. The location is determined by adding the exception's vector (see Table 5-2) to the base address determined by MSR[EP]. If EP is cleared, exceptions are vectored to the physical address x'000*n_nnnn*'. If EP is set, exceptions are vectored to the physical address x'FFF*n_nnnn*'. For a machine check exception that occurs when MSR[ME] = 0 (machine check exceptions are disabled), the checkstop state is entered (the machine stops executing instructions). See Section 5.4.2, “Machine Check Exception (x'00200').”
6. The **lwarx** and **stwcx.** instructions require special handling if a reservation is still set when an exception occurs. Exceptions clear reservations set with **lwarx** (or **ldarx**).

5.2.3 Returning from Supervisor Mode

The Return from Interrupt (**rfi**) instruction performs context synchronization by allowing previously issued instructions to complete before returning to the interrupted process. Execution of the **rfi** instruction ensures the following:

- All previous instructions have completed to a point where they can no longer cause an exception. If a prior instruction causes an I/O controller interface error exception, the results must be determined before this instruction is executed.
- Previous instructions complete execution in the context (privilege, protection, and address translation) under which they were issued.
- The instructions following this instruction execute in the context established by this instruction.

5.3 Process Switching

The operating system should execute the following when processes are switched:

- The **sync** instruction, to resolve any data dependencies between the processes and to synchronize the use of segment registers and SPRs. For an example showing use of the **sync** instruction, see Section 2.3.3.1, “Synchronization for Supervisor-Level SPRs and Segment Registers.”
- The **isync** instruction, to ensure that undispatched instructions not in the new process are not used by the new process
- The **stwcx.** instruction, to clear any outstanding reservations, which ensures that an **lwarx** instruction in the old process is not paired with an **stwcx**. in the new process.

Note that if an exception handler is used to emulate an instruction that is not implemented in the 601, the exception handler must report in SRR0 (and in the data address register [DAR] if applicable) the EA computed by the instruction being emulated and not one used to emulate the instruction being emulated. For example, the Move to Time Base instruction (**mttb**) was created for compatibility between the 601 and other PowerPC processors. The 601 implements a real-time clock (RTC) rather than the time base (TB), and when this instruction is encountered by the 601 an illegal instruction program exception is taken and the operation is performed by the 601’s **mtspr** instruction that accesses the appropriate RTC register. When the exception caused by the **mttb** instruction is taken, the EA reported should be that computed by the **mttb** instruction and not the **mtspr** instruction used in the exception handler.

5.4 Exception Definitions

Table 5-6 shows all the types of exceptions that can occur with the 601 and the MSR bit settings when the processor transitions to supervisor mode. The state of these bits prior to the exception is typically stored in SRR1.

Table 5-6. MSR Setting Due to Exception

Exception Type	MSR Bit									
	EE 16	**PR** 17	**FP** 18	**ME** 19	**FE0** 20	**SE** 21	**FE1** 23	**EP** 25	**IT** 26	**DT** 27
Soft reset	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
Machine check	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	—	0	0
Data access	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
Instruction access	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
External	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
Alignment	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
Program	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0

Table 5-6. MSR Setting Due to Exception (Continued)

Exception Type	MSR Bit									
	EE 16	**PR** 17	**FP** 18	**ME** 19	**FE0** 20	**SE** 21	**FE1** 23	**EP** 25	**IT** 26	**DT** 27
Floating-point unavailable	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
Decrementer	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
System call	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
Run mode/ trace exception	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0
I/O controller interface error exception	0	0	0	—	0	0	0	—	0	0

0 Bit is cleared
1 Bit is set
— Bit is not altered
Reserved bits are read as if written as 0.

The setting of the exception prefix (EP) bit in the MSR determines how exceptions are vectored. If the bit is cleared, exceptions are vectored to the physical address x'000*n_nnnn'* (where *nnnnn* is the vector offset); if EP is set, exceptions are vectored to the physical address x'FFF*n_nnnn*'. Table 5-2 shows the exception vector offset of the first instruction of the exception handler routine for each exception type.

5.4.1 Reset Exceptions (x'00100')

The system reset exception is a nonmaskable, asynchronous exception signaled to the 601 either through the assertion of either of the reset signals ($\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ or $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$). The assertion of the soft reset signal, $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$, as described in Section 8.2.9.4.2, “Soft Reset (SRESET)—Input” causes the soft reset exception to be taken and the physical base address of the handler is determined by the MSR[EP] bit. The assertion of the hard reset signal, $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$, as described in Section 8.2.9.4.1, “Hard Reset (HRESET)—Input” causes the hard reset exception to be taken and the physical address of the handler is always x'FFF0 0100'.

5.4.1.1 Soft Reset

When a soft reset exception occurs, registers are set as shown in Table 5-7.

Table 5-7. Soft Reset Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction that the processor would have attempted to execute next if no exception conditions were present.
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR. Note that if the processor state is corrupted to the extent that execution cannot be reliably restarted, SRR1[30] is cleared.
MSR	EE 0 SE 0 PR 0 FE1 0 FP 0 EP — ME — IT 0 FE0 0 DT 0

When a soft reset exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00100' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

Before returning to the main program, the exception handler should do the following:

1. SRR0 and SRR1 should be given the values used by the **rfi** instruction.
2. Execute **rfi**.

It is not guaranteed that execution is recoverable. Other registers and the MSR are not reset by hardware.

5.4.1.2 Hard Reset

This section describes the 601's reset state after performing a hard reset operation (asserting $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$ as described in Section 8.2.9.4.1, "Hard Reset (HRESET)—Input"). Note that a hard reset operation should be performed on power-on to appropriately reset the processor. Table 5-8 shows the state of the machine just before it fetches the first instruction after a hard reset. Because of the setting of the MSR[EP] bit caused by a hard reset, the first instruction is fetched from address x'FFF0 0100'.

Table 5-8. Settings Caused by Hard Reset

Register	Setting
GPRs	All 0s
FPRs	All 0s
FPSCR	00000000
CR	All 0s
SRs	All 0s
MSR	00001040
MQ	00000000
XER	00000000

Table 5-8. Settings Caused by Hard Reset (Continued)

Register	Setting
RTCU	00000000
RTCL	00000000[3]
LR	00000000
CTR	00000000
DSISR	00000000
DAR	00000000
DEC	00000000
SDR1	00000000
SRR0	00000000
SRR1	00000000
SPRGs	00000000
EAR	00000000
PVR	00010001[1]
BATs	All 0s
HID0	80010080[2]
HID1	00000000
HID2	00000000
HID5	00000000
HID15	00000000
TLBs	All 0s
Cache	All 0s
Tag directory	All 0s. (However, LRU bits are initialized so each side of the cache has a unique LRU value.)

[1] Early releases (DD1) of the 601 hardware set this to x'00010000'. Other versions of silicon may be different (see Section 2.3.3.11, “Processor Version Register (PVR)” for setting information).

[2] Master checkstop enabled; internal power-on reset checkstops enabled.

[3] Note that if external clock is connected to RTC for the 601, then the RTCL, RTCU, and DEC registers can change from their initial value of 0s without receiving instructions to load those registers.

The following is also true after a hard reset operation:

- External checkstops are enabled.
- The on-chip test interface has given control of the I/Os to the rest of the chip for functional use.
- Since the reset exception has data and instruction translation disabled (MSR[DT] and MSR[IT] both cleared), the chip operates in direct address translation mode. This implies that instruction fetches as well as loads and stores are cacheable. (Operations that correspond to direct address translations are implicitly cacheable, not write-through mode, and require coherency checking on the bus.)
- All internal arrays and registers are cleared during the hard reset process.

5.4.2 Machine Check Exception (x'00200')

The 601 conditionally initiates a machine-check exception after detecting the assertion of the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal on the 601 interface. The assertion of the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal indicates that a bus error occurred and the system terminates the current transaction. One clock cycle after $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ is asserted, the data bus signals go to the high-impedance state; however, data entering the GPR or the cache is not invalidated.

If the MSR[ME] bit is set, the exception is recognized and handled; otherwise, the 601 attempts to enter an internal checkstop condition. This may not lead to a checkstop depending upon the state of the various checkstop enable control bits in the HID0 register. These are shown in Table 5-9. If the ME bit is cleared, and the HID0[CE] and HID0[EM] bits are cleared (that is, when both the master checkstop and the machine check checkstops are disabled), the machine check exception is taken.

The ability to disable the machine-check checkstop is useful for debugging. The HID0 register is described in Section 2.3.3.13.1, “Checkstop Sources and Enables Register—HID0.”

In general, it is expected that the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal would be used by a memory controller to indicate a memory parity error or an uncorrectable memory ECC error. Note that the resulting machine check exception is imprecise and has priority over any exceptions caused by the instruction that generated the bus operation.

Machine check exceptions are enabled when MSR[ME] = 1; this is described in Section 5.4.2.1, “Machine Check Exception Enabled (MSR[ME] = 1).” If MSR[ME] = 0 and a machine check occurs, the processor enters the checkstop state. Checkstop state is described in 5.4.2.2, “Checkstop State (MSR[ME] = 0).”

5.4.2.1 Machine Check Exception Enabled (MSR[ME] = 1)

When a machine check exception is taken, registers are updated as shown in Table 5-9.

Table 5-9. Machine Check Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Set to the address of the next instruction that would have been executed in the interrupted instruction stream. Neither this instruction nor any others beyond it will have been executed. All preceding instructions will have been completed.
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from MSR[16–31]. Note that if the processor state is corrupted to the extent that execution cannot be reliably restarted, SRR1[30] is cleared.
MSR	EE 0 PR 0 FP 0 ME 0 Note that when a machine check exception is taken, the exception handler should set MSR[ME] as soon as it is practical to handle another $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ assertion. Otherwise, subsequent $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ assertions cause the processor to automatically enter the checkstop state. FE0 0 SE 0 FE1 0 EP Value is not altered IT 0 DT 0

When a machine check exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00200' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

Before returning to the main program, the exception handler should do the following:

1. SRR0 and SRR1 should be given the values to be used by the **rfi** instruction.
2. Execute **rfi**.

5.4.2.2 Checkstop State (MSR[ME] = 0)

When a processor is in the checkstop state, instruction processing is suspended and generally cannot be restarted without resetting the processor. The contents of all latches are frozen within two cycles upon entering checkstop state so that the state of the processor can be analyzed as an aid in problem determination.

A machine check exception may result from referring to a nonexistent physical address. In some implementations, for example, execution of a Data Cache Block Set to Zero (**dcbz**) instruction that introduces a block into the cache associated with a nonexistent physical address may delay the machine check exception until an attempt is made to store that block to main memory.

Note that not all PowerPC processors provide the same level of error checking. The reasons a processor can enter checkstop state is implementation-dependent.

5.4.3 Data Access Exception (x'00300')

A data access exception occurs when no higher priority exception exists and a data memory access cannot be performed. The condition that caused the data access exception can be determined by reading the DAE/source instruction service register (DSISR), a supervisor-level SPR (SPR18) that can be read by using the **mfspr** instruction. Bit settings are provided in Table 5-10. Table 5-10 also indicates which memory element is saved to the DAR. Data access exceptions can occur for any of the following reasons:

- The effective address cannot be translated. That is, there is a page fault for this portion of the translation, so a data access exception must be taken to retrieve the translation from a storage device such as a hard disk drive.
- The instruction is not supported for the type of memory addressed. Invalid instructions are described in Section D.1.1.1, “Invalid Instruction Forms.” I/O controller interface segments are described in Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations.”
- The access violates memory protection. Access is not permitted by the key (Ks and Ku) and PP bits, which are set in the segment register and PTE for page protection and in the BATs for block protection.
- The execution of an **eciwx** or **ecowx** instruction is disallowed because the external access register enable bit (EAR[E]) is cleared.

These scenarios are common among all PowerPC processors. The following additional scenarios can cause a data access exception in the 601:

- An **lwarx**, **stwcx.**, or **lscbx** instruction refers to a non–memory-forced I/O controller interface segment (that is, when SR[T] = 1 and BUID ≠ x'07F').
- An effective address matches the address in the data-address breakpoint register (DABR) while in one of the appropriate compare modes. For additional information on the DABR and the compare modes, refer to Section 2.3.3.13.4, “Data Address Breakpoint Register (DABR)—HID5.”

Data access exceptions can be generated by load/store instructions, and the cache control instructions (**dcbi**, **dcbz**, **dcbst**, and **dcbf**).

Although the 601 does not generally support memory accesses that cross a page boundary, load or store multiple as well as load or store string instructions that are word-aligned and cross a page boundary are handled. In these cases, if the second page has a translation error or protection violation associated with it, the 601 takes the data access exception in the middle of the instruction. In this case, the data address register (DAR) always points to the first byte address of the offending page.

If an **stwcx.** instruction has an effective address for which a normal store operation would cause a data access exception but the processor does not have the reservation from **lwarx**, the 601 determines whether a data access exception occurs as follows:

- If the reservation bit is cleared before the **stwcx.** instruction executes, that instruction cannot generate an exception, regardless of whether the address translation would have failed, page protection would have been violated, or the address matches one in the DABR.
- A data access exception is taken if there is an address translation or page protection error, or if the address hits in the DABR as long as the reservation bit is set when the **stwcx.** instruction begins execution. In particular, the exception is taken even if the reservation bit is cleared after execution begins.

If the XER indicates that the byte count for an **lswi**, **stswi** or **lscbx** instruction is zero, a data access exception does not occur, regardless of the effective address.

The condition that caused the exception is defined in the DSISR. These conditions also use the data address register (DAR) as shown in Table 5-10.

Table 5-10. Data Access Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction that caused the exception.
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR
MSR	EE 0 PR 0 FP 0 ME Value is not altered FE0 0 SE 0 FE1 0 EP Value is not altered IT 0 DT 0
DSISR	0 Reserved on the 601. The PowerPC architecture uses this bit for I/O controller interface error exceptions, which are vectored to x'00A00' on the 601. 1 Set if the translation of an attempted access is not found in the primary hash table entry group (HTEG), or in the rehashed secondary HTEG, or in the range of a BAT register; otherwise cleared. 2–3 Cleared 4 Set if a memory access is not permitted by the page or BAT protection mechanism; otherwise cleared. 5 Set if the **eciwx**, **ecowx**, **lwarx**, **stwcx.**, or **lscbx** instruction is attempted to I/O controller interface space, or if the **lwarx** or **stwcx.** instruction is used with addresses that are marked as write-through. 6 Set for a store operation and cleared for a load operation. 7–8 Cleared 9 Set if an EA matches the address in the DABR while in one of the three compare modes. 10 Cleared. 11 Set if the instruction was an **eciwx** or **ecowx** and EAR[E] = 0. 12–31 Cleared

Table 5-10. Data Access Exception—Register Settings (Continued)

Register	Setting Description
DAR	Set to the effective address of a memory element as described in the following list: • A byte in the first word accessed in the page that caused the data access exception, for a byte, half word, or word memory access. • A byte in the first double word accessed in the page that caused the data access exception, for a double-word memory access.

When a data access exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00300' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

The architecture permits certain instructions to be partially executed when they cause a data access exception. These are as follows:

- Load multiple or load string instructions—Some registers in the range of registers to be loaded may have been loaded. On the 601, all of the first page is accessed and none of the second page is accessed.
- Store multiple or store string instructions—Some bytes of memory in the range addressed may have been updated. On the 601, all of the first page is accessed and none of the second page is accessed.

In the cases above, the questions of how many registers and how much memory is altered are instruction- and boundary-dependent. However, memory protection is not violated. Furthermore, if some of the data accessed is in memory-forced I/O controller interface space (SR[T] = 1) and BUID = x'7F', and the instruction is not supported for I/O controller interface accesses, the locations in I/O controller interface space are not accessed.

For update forms, the update register (**r**A) is not altered.

5.4.4 Instruction Access Exception (x'00400')

An instruction access exception occurs when no higher priority exception exists and an attempt to fetch the next instruction to be executed cannot be performed for any of the following reasons:

- The effective address cannot be translated. That is, there is a page fault for this portion of the translation, so an instruction access exception must be taken to retrieve the translation from a storage device such as a hard disk drive.
- The fetch access is to an I/O controller interface segment that is not memory-forced.
- The fetch access violates memory protection. Access is not permitted by the key bits (Ks and Ku) and PP bits, which are set in the segment register and PTE for page protection and in the BATs for block protection.

An instruction fetch to an I/O controller interface segment while MSR[IT] is set causes an instruction access exception on the 601. Register settings for instruction access exceptions are shown in Table 5-11.

Table 5-11. Instruction Access Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction that the processor would have attempted to execute next if no exception conditions were present (if the exception occurs on attempting to fetch a branch target, SRR0 is set to the branch target address).
SRR1	0 Cleared 1 Set if the translation of an attempted access is not found in the primary hash table entry group (HTEG), or in the rehashed secondary HTEG, or in the range of a BAT register; otherwise cleared. 2 Cleared 3 Cleared. Note that the PowerPC architecture defines this as set if the fetch access was to an I/O controller interface segment (SR[T]=1). Note that this condition causes SRR1[0–15] to be cleared in the 601. 4 Set if a memory access is not permitted by the page or BAT protection mechanism, described in Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit”; otherwise cleared. 5–9 Cleared 10 Set if the page table search fails to find a translation for the effective address; otherwise cleared. 11–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR
MSR	EE 0 SE 0 PR 0 FE1 0 FP 0 EP Value is not altered ME Value is not altered IT 0 FE0 0 DT 0

When an instruction access exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00400' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

5.4.5 External Interrupt (x'00500')

An external interrupt is signaled to the 601 by the assertion of the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal as described in Section 8.2.9.1, “Interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$)—Input.” The interrupt may be delayed by other higher priority exceptions or if the MSR[EE] bit is cleared when the exception occurs.

After the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ is detected, the 601 stops dispatching instructions and waits for executing instructions to complete. Therefore, exceptions caused by instructions in progress are taken before the external interrupt exception is taken. After all instructions complete, the 601 takes the external interrupt exception.

The register settings for the external interrupt exception are shown in Table 5-12.

Table 5-12. External Interrupt—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction that the processor would have attempted to execute next if no interrupt conditions were present.
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR
MSR	EE 0 SE 0 PR 0 FE1 0 FP 0 EP Value is not altered ME Value is not altered IT 0 FE0 0 DT 0

When an external interrupt exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00500' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

In early versions of the 601 (processor revision level x'0000'), the external interrupt is a level-sensitive signal and should be held active until reset by the interrupt service routine. Phantom interrupts due to phenomena such as crosstalk and bus noise should be avoided.

The $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal is used to signal an external interrupt to the 601. The 601 latches the interrupt condition if the MSR[EE] bit is set; and it ignores the interrupt condition if the MSR[EE] bit is cleared. To guarantee that the external interrupt is taken, the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal must be held active until the 601 takes the interrupt. If the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal is negated before the interrupt is taken, the 601 is not guaranteed to take an external interrupt, depending on whether the MSR[EE] bit was set while $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal was held active. To clear the interrupt, the interrupt handler must send a command to the device that signaled the interrupt.

5.4.6 Alignment Exception (x'00600')

This section describes conditions that can cause alignment exceptions in the 601. Similar to data access exceptions, alignment exceptions use the SRR0 and SRR1 to save the machine state and the DSISR to determine the source of the exception.

The register settings for alignment exceptions are shown in Table 5-13.

Table 5-13. Alignment Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction that caused the exception.
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR
MSR	EE 0 SE 0 PR 0 FE1 0 FP 0 EP Value is not altered ME Value is not altered IT 0 FE0 0 DT 0

Table 5-13. Alignment Exception—Register Settings (Continued)

Register	Setting Description
DSISR	0–11 Cleared 12–13 Cleared. (Note that these bits can be set by several 64-bit PowerPC instructions that are not supported in the 601.) 14 Cleared 15–16 For instructions that use register indirect with index addressing—set to bits 29–30 of the instruction. For instructions that use register indirect with immediate index addressing—cleared. 17 For instructions that use register indirect with index addressing—set to bit 25 of the instruction. For instructions that use register indirect with immediate index addressing— Set to bit 5 of the instruction 18–21 For instructions that use register indirect with index addressing—set to bits 21–24 of the instruction. For instructions that use register indirect with immediate index addressing—set to bits 1–4 of the instruction. 22–26 Set to bits 6–10 (source or destination) of the instruction. Undefined for **dcbz**. 27–31 Set to bits 11–15 of the instruction (**r**A) Set to either bits 11–15 of the instruction or to any register number not in the range of registers loaded by a valid form instruction, for **lmw**, **lswi**, and **lswx** instructions. Otherwise undefined. Note that for load or store instructions that use register indirect with index addressing, the DSISR can be set to the same value that would have resulted if the corresponding instruction uses register indirect with immediate index addressing had caused the exception. Similarly, for load or store instructions that use register indirect with immediate index addressing, DSISR can hold a value that would have resulted from an instruction that uses register indirect with index addressing. For example, an unaligned **lwax** instruction that crosses a protection boundary would normally cause the DSISR to be set to the following binary value: 000000000000 00 0 01 0 0101 ttttt ????? The value ttttt refers to the destination and ????? indicates undefined bits. However, this register may be set as if the instruction were **lwa**, as follows: 000000000000 10 0 00 0 1101 ttttt ????? If there is no corresponding instruction, no alternative value can be specified.
DAR	Set to the EA of the data access as computed by the instruction causing the alignment exception.

5.4.6.1 Integer Alignment Exceptions

The 601 is optimized for load and store operations that are aligned on natural boundaries. Operations that are not naturally aligned may suffer performance degradation, depending on the type of operation, the boundaries crossed, and the mode that the processor is in during execution. More specifically, these operations may either cause an alignment exception or they may cause the processor to break the memory access into multiple, smaller accesses with respect to the cache and the memory subsystem.

The 601 can initiate alignment exception for the accesses as shown in Table 5-14. In all of these cases, the appropriate range check is performed before the instruction begins

execution. As a result, if an alignment exception is taken, it is guaranteed that no portion of the instruction has been executed.

Table 5-14. Access Types

MSR[DT]	SR[T]	SR[BUID]	Access Type
0	0	x	Direct translation access
x	1	Not x'07F'	I/O controller interface access
x	1	x'07F'	Memory-forced I/O controller interface access
1	0	x	Page-address translation access

5.4.6.1.1 Direct-Translation Access

A direct-translation access occurs when both MSR[DT] and SR[T] are cleared. If a 256-Mbyte boundary is crossed by any portion of the memory being accessed by an instruction (including string/multiples), an alignment exception is taken.

5.4.6.1.2 I/O Controller Interface Access

The 601 supports memory-mapped I/O with the high-performance memory bus protocol. Additionally, the 601 has an I/O controller interface for compatibility with certain external devices that implement this protocol. An I/O controller interface access occurs when a data access is initiated, SR[T] is set, and SR[BUID] is not equal to x'07F'. In the 601 (but not for the general PowerPC processor case), MSR[DT] is a don't care for this case. The following apply for I/O controller interface accesses:

- If a 256-Mbyte boundary will be crossed by any portion of the I/O controller interface space accessed by an instruction (the entire string for strings/multiples), an alignment exception is taken.
- Floating-point loads and stores to I/O controller interface segments always cause an alignment exception, regardless of operand alignment.

Note that other I/O controller interface errors may generate an I/O controller interface error exception, as described in Section 5.4.10, “I/O Controller Interface Error Exception (x'00A00').”

5.4.6.1.3 Memory-Forced I/O Controller Interface Access

A memory-forced I/O controller interface access occurs when SR[T] is set, and SR[BUID] is x'07F' in the 601 (not defined as part of the PowerPC architecture). MSR[DT] is a don't care for this case.

If a 256-Mbyte boundary is crossed by any portion of the memory being accessed by an instruction (including string/multiples), an alignment exception is taken.

Note that floating-point instructions and **lwarx**, **stwcx.**, and **lscbx** instructions are handled as the page- and block-address translation cases for the memory-forced I/O controller interface segments.

5.4.6.1.4 Page Address Translation Access

A page-address translation access occurs when MSR[DT] is set, SR[T] is cleared, and there is not a BAT array match. Note the following points:

- The following is true for all loads and stores except strings/multiples:
  - — An alignment exception is taken if the operand spans a 4-Kbyte boundary.
  - — Byte operands never cause an alignment exception.
  - — Half-word operands cause an alignment exception if the EA ends in x'FFF'.
  - — Word operands cause an alignment exception if the EA ends in x'FFD–FFF'.
  - — Double-word operands cause an alignment exception if the EA ends in x'FF9–FFF'.
- The **lscbx** instruction causes an alignment exception if any portion of the entire string crosses into the next 4-Kbyte page of memory. This is taken regardless of the starting address, even if the **lscbx** operand starts on a word boundary.
- All other string/multiple instructions (except **lscbx**) take alignment exceptions as follows:
  - — If the string/multiple starts on a word boundary and a 256-Mbyte boundary is crossed by any portion of the entire string/multiple, an alignment exception is taken. Note that it must be a 256-Mbyte crossing—a simple 4-Kbyte crossing does not cause an exception for a word-aligned string/multiple operation.
  - — If any portion of the string/multiple will cross into the next 4-Kbyte page of memory, an alignment exception is taken.

  Note that on other PowerPC implementations, load and store multiple instructions that are not on a word boundary either take an alignment exception or generate results that are boundedly undefined.
- The **dcbz** instruction causes an alignment exception if the access is to a page or block with the W (write-through) or I (cache-inhibit) bit set in the UTLB or BAT array entry, respectively.

Note that the above summary indicates that a 256-Mbyte crossing always causes an alignment exception. This includes accesses of all four types regardless of alignment. Of course, non-string/multiple load and store operations can only cross this boundary if they are not aligned.

Misaligned memory accesses that do not cause an alignment exception may not perform as well as an aligned access of the same type. In general, the IU is designed to efficiently handle memory access quantities of eight bytes or fewer that lie within a double-word boundary. Internally, all integer memory access instructions that involve more than four bytes of data are broken into multiple access of four bytes or fewer. Floating-point memory access instructions always involve either four or eight bytes of data. Any memory access that crosses a double-word boundary is further broken into two smaller accesses that do not

cross the double-word boundary. For multiple-word and string operations, the 601 does not force alignment to reduce the number of accesses.

The resulting performance degradation due to misaligned accesses depends on how well each individual access behaves with respect to the memory hierarchy. At a minimum, additional cache access cycles are required that can delay other processor resources from using the cache. More dramatically, for an access to a noncacheable page, each discrete access involves individual 601 bus operations that reduce the effective bandwidth of that bus.

Finally, note that when the 601 is in page address translation mode, there is no special handling for accesses that fall into BAT regions. If one of the 4-Kbyte crossing conditions indicated above happens to be completely contained within a BAT register, the 601 still takes the alignment exception.

5.4.6.2 Floating-Point Alignment Exceptions

An alignment exception occurs when no higher priority exception exists and the 601 cannot perform a memory access for one of the following reasons:

- The operand of a floating-point load or store operation is in a non–memory-forced I/O controller interface segment (SR[T] = 1).
- The operand of a load or store crosses a 4-Kbyte boundary if MSR[DT] is set or if the operand crosses a 256-Mbyte boundary if MSR[DT] is cleared or set.

5.4.6.3 Little-Endian Mode Alignment Exceptions

In little-endian mode, any operand that is not properly aligned (as described in Section 2.4.3, “Byte and Bit Ordering”), causes an alignment exception. Additionally, any attempted execution of the string/multiple instructions causes an alignment exception.

5.4.6.4 Interpretation of the DSISR as Set by an Alignment Exception

For most alignment exceptions, an exception handler may be designed to emulate the instruction that causes the exception.

In order for emulation to occur, it needs the following characteristics of the instruction:

- Load or store
- Length (half word, word, or double word)
- String, multiple, or normal load/store
- Integer or floating-point
- Whether the instruction performs update
- Whether the instruction performs byte reversal
- Whether it is a **dcbz** instruction

The PowerPC architecture provides this information implicitly, by setting opcode bits in the DSISR that identify the excepting instruction type. The exception handler does not need to

load the excepting instruction from memory. The mapping for all exception possibilities is unique except for the few exceptions discussed below.

Table 5-15 shows the inverse mapping—how the DSISR bits identify the instruction that caused the exception.

The alignment exception handler cannot distinguish a floating-point load or store that causes an exception because it is misaligned, or because it addresses the I/O controller interface space. However, this does not matter; in either case it is emulated with integer instructions.

Table 5-15. DSISR(15–21) Settings to Determine Misaligned Instruction

DSISR[15–21]	Instruction
00 0 0000	**lwarx**, **lwz**, reserved [1]
00 0 0010	**stw**
00 0 0100	**lhz**
00 0 0101	**lha**
00 0 0110	**sth**
00 0 0111	**lmw**
00 0 1000	**lfs**
00 0 1001	**lfd**
00 0 1010	**stfs**
00 0 1011	**stfd**
00 1 0000	**lwzu**
00 1 0010	**stwu**
00 1 0100	**lhzu**
00 1 0101	**lhau**
00 1 0110	**sthu**
00 1 0111	**stmw**
00 1 1000	**lfsu**
00 1 1001	**lfdu**
00 1 1010	**stfsu**
00 1 1011	**stfdu**
01 0 0101	**lwax**
01 0 1000	**lswx**
01 0 1001	**lswi**
01 0 1010	**stswx**
01 0 1011	**stswi**

Table 5-15. DSISR(15–21) Settings to Determine Misaligned Instruction (Continued)

01 1 0101	**lwaux**
10 0 0010	**stwcx.**
10 0 1000	**lwbrx**
10 0 1010	**stwbrx**
10 0 1100	**lhbrx**
10 0 1110	**sthbrx**
10 1 1111	**dcbz**
11 0 0000	**lwzx**
11 0 0010	**stwx**
11 0 0100	**lhzx**
11 0 0101	**lhax**
11 0 0110	**sthx**
11 0 1000	**lfsx**
11 0 1001	**lfdx**
11 0 1010	**stfsx**
11 0 1011	**stfdx**
11 1 0000	**lwzux**
11 1 0010	**stwux**
11 1 0100	**lhzux**
11 1 0101	**lhaux**
11 1 0110	**sthux**
11 1 1000	**lfsux**
11 1 1001	**lfdux**
11 1 1010	**stfsux**
11 1 1011	**stfdux**

[1] The instructions **lwz** and **lwarx** give the same DSISR bits (all zero). But if **lwarx** causes an alignment exception, it is an invalid form, so it need not be emulated in any precise way. It is adequate for the alignment exception handler to simply emulate the instruction as if it were an **lwz**. It is important that the emulator use the address in the DAR, rather than computing it from **r**A/**r**B/D, because **lwz** and **lwarx** use different addressing modes.

5.4.7 Program Exception (x'00700')

A program exception occurs when no higher priority exception exists and one or more of the following exception conditions, which correspond to bit settings in SRR1, occur during execution of an instruction:

- System floating-point enabled exception—A system floating-point enabled exception is generated when the following condition is met:

  (MSR[FE0] | MSR[FE1]) & FPSCR[FEX] is 1.

  FPSCR[FEX] is set by the execution of a floating-point instruction that causes an enabled exception or by the execution of a "move to FPSCR" type instruction that sets an exception bit when its corresponding enable bit is set. In the 601, all floating-point enabled exceptions are handled in a precise manner. As a result, all program exceptions taken on behalf of a floating-point enabled exception clear SRR1[15] to indicate that the address in SRR0 points to the instruction that caused the exception. For more information, refer to Section 5.4.7.1, "Floating-Point Enabled Program Exceptions."
- Illegal instruction—An illegal instruction program exception is generated when execution of an instruction is attempted with an illegal opcode or illegal combination of opcode and extended opcode fields (these include PowerPC instructions not implemented in the 601), or when execution of an optional instruction not provided in the 601 is attempted.
- Privileged instruction—A privileged instruction type program exception is generated when the execution of a supervisor instruction is attempted and the MSR register user privileged bit, MSR[PR], is set. Some implementations may generate this exception for **mtspr** or **mfspr** with an invalid SPR field if SPR[0] = 1 and MSR[PR] = 1.
- Trap—A trap type program exception is generated when any of the conditions specified in a trap instruction is met. Trap instructions are described in Chapter 3, "Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary."

Note that instructions using an invalid instruction form do not take a program exception, but instead cause results that are boundedly undefined.

The register settings are shown in Table 5-16.

Table 5-16. Program Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Contains the effective address of the excepting instruction
SRR1	0–10 Cleared 11 Set for a floating-point enabled program exception; otherwise cleared. 12 Set for an illegal instruction program exception; otherwise cleared. 13 Set for a privileged instruction program exception; otherwise cleared. 14 Set for a trap program exception; otherwise cleared. 15 Cleared if SRR0 contains the address of the instruction causing the exception, and set if SRR0 contains the address of a subsequent instruction. 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR. Note that only one of bits 11–14 can be set.
MSR	EE 0 PR 0 FP 0 ME Value is not altered FE0 0 SE 0 FE1 0 EP Value is not altered IT 0 DT 0

When a program exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00700' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

5.4.7.1 Floating-Point Enabled Program Exceptions

In the 601, floating-point exceptions are signaled by condition bits set in the floating-point status and control register (FPSCR). They can cause the system floating-point enabled exception error handler to be invoked. All floating-point exceptions are handled precisely. The FPSCR is shown in Figure 5-5.

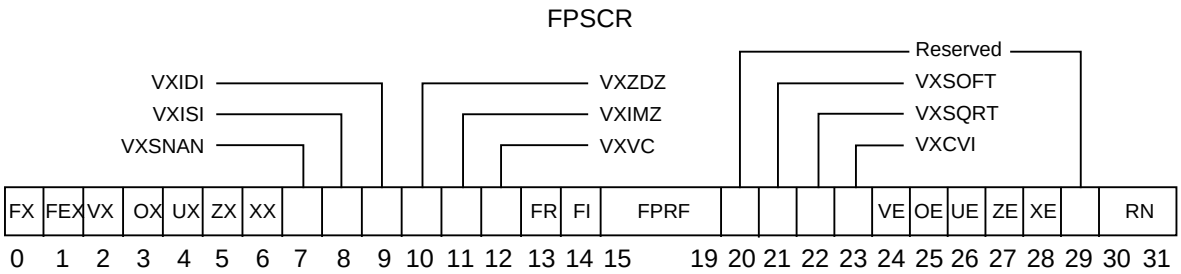


Figure 5-5. Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR)

A listing of FPSCR bit settings is shown in Table 5-17.

Table 5-17. FPSCR Bit Settings

Bit(s)	Description
0	Floating-point exception summary (FX). Every floating-point instruction implicitly sets FPSCR[FX] if that instruction causes any of the floating-point exception bits in the FPSCR to transition from 0 to 1. The **mcrfs** instruction implicitly clears FPSCR[FX] if the FPSCR field containing FPSCR[FX] is copied. The **mtfsf**, **mtfsfi**, **mtfsb0**, and **mtfsb1** instructions can set or clear FPSCR[FX] explicitly. This is a sticky bit.
1	Floating-point enabled exception summary (FEX). This bit signals the occurrence of any of the enabled exception conditions. It is the logical OR of all the floating-point exception bits masked with their respective enables. The **mcrfs** instruction implicitly clears FPSCR[FEX] if the result of the logical OR described above becomes zero. The **mtfsf**, **mtfsfi**, **mtfsb0**, and **mtfsb1** instructions cannot set or clear FPSCR[FEX] explicitly. This is not a sticky bit.
2	Floating-point invalid operation exception summary (VX). This bit signals the occurrence of any invalid operation exception. It is the logical OR of all of the invalid operation exceptions. The **mcrfs** implicitly clears FPSCR[VX] if the result of the logical OR described above becomes zero. The **mtfsf**, **mtfsfi**, **mtfsb0**, and **mtfsb1** instructions cannot set or clear FPSCR[VX] explicitly. This is not a sticky bit.
3	Floating-point overflow exception (OX). This is a sticky bit.
4	Floating-point underflow exception (UX). This is a sticky bit.
5	Floating-point zero divide exception (ZX). This is a sticky bit.
6	Floating-point inexact exception (XX). This is a sticky bit.
7	Floating-point invalid operation exception for SNaN (VXSNAN). This is a sticky bit.
8	Floating-point invalid operation exception for ∞-∞ (VXISI). This is a sticky bit.
9	Floating-point invalid operation exception for ∞/∞ (VXIDI). This is a sticky bit.
10	Floating-point invalid operation exception for 0/0 (VXZDZ). This is a sticky bit.
11	Floating-point invalid operation exception for ∞*0 (VXIMZ). This is a sticky bit.
12	Floating-point invalid operation exception for invalid compare (VXVC). This is a sticky bit.
13	Floating-point fraction rounded (FR). The last floating-point instruction that potentially rounded the intermediate result incremented the fraction.
14	Floating-point fraction inexact (FI). The last floating-point instruction that potentially rounded the intermediate result produced an inexact fraction or a disabled exponent overflow.
15–19	Floating-point result flags (FPRF). This field is based on the value placed into the target register even if that value is undefined. Refer to Table 2-2 for specific bit settings. 15 Floating-point result class descriptor (C). Floating-point instructions other than the compare instructions may set this bit with the FPCC bits, to indicate the class of the result. 16–19 Floating-point condition code (FPCC). Floating-point compare instructions always set one of the FPCC bits to one and the other three FPCC bits to zero. Other floating-point instructions may set the FPCC bits with the C bit, to indicate the class of the result. Note that in this case the high-order three bits of the FPCC retain their relational significance indicating that the value is less than, greater than, or equal to zero. 16 Floating-point less than or negative (FL or <) 17 Floating-point greater than or positive (FG or >) 18 Floating-point equal or zero (FE or =) 19 Floating-point unordered or NaN (FU or ?)
20	Reserved

Table 5-17. FPSCR Bit Settings (Continued)

Bit(s)	Description
21	Floating-point invalid operation exception for software request (VXSOFT). This bit can be altered only by th**e mcrfs**, **mtfsfi**, **mtfsf**, **mtfsb0**, or **mtfsb1** instructions. The purpose of VXSOFT is to allow software to cause an invalid operation condition for a condition that is not necessarily associated with the execution of a floating-point instruction. For example, it might be set by a program that computes a square root if the source operand is negative. This is a sticky bit.
22	Floating-point invalid operation exception for invalid square root (VXSQRT). This is a sticky bit. This guarantees that software can simulate **fsqrt** and **frsqrte**, and to provide a consistent interface to handle exceptions caused by square-root operations.
23	Floating-point invalid operation exception for invalid integer convert (VXCVI). This is a sticky bit. See Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions."
24	Floating-point invalid operation exception enable (VE)
25	Floating-point overflow exception enable (OE)
26	Floating-point underflow exception enable (UE). This bit should not be used to determine whether denormalization should be performed on floating-point stores
27	Floating-point zero divide exception enable (ZE)
28	Floating-point inexact exception enable (XE)
29	Reserved. This bit may be implemented as the non-IEEE mode bit (NI) in other PowerPC implementations.
30–31	Floating-point rounding control (RN). 00 Round to nearest 01 Round toward zero 10 Round toward +infinity 11 Round toward –infinity

The following conditions that can cause program exceptions are detected by the processor. These conditions may occur during execution of floating-point arithmetic instructions. The corresponding bits set in the FPSCR are indicated in parentheses.

- Invalid floating-point operation exception condition (VX)
  - SNaN condition (VXSNAN)
  - Infinity–infinity condition (VXISI)
  - Infinity/infinity condition (VXIDI)
  - Zero/zero condition (VXZDZ)
  - Infinity*zero condition (VXIMZ)
  - Illegal compare condition (VXVC)

  These exception conditions are described in Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
- Software request condition (VXSOFT). These exception conditions are described in Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”
- Illegal integer convert condition (VXCVI). These exception conditions are described in Section 5.4.7.2, “Invalid Operation Exception Conditions.”

- Zero divide exception condition (ZX). These exception conditions are described in Section 5.4.7.3, “Zero Divide Exception Condition.”
- Overflow Exception Condition (OX). These exception conditions are described in Section 5.4.7.4, “Overflow Exception Condition.”
- Underflow Exception Condition (UX). These exception conditions are described in Section 5.4.7.5, “Underflow Exception Condition.”
- Inexact Exception Condition (XX). These exception conditions are described in Section 5.4.7.6, “Inexact Exception Condition.”

Each floating-point exception condition and each category of illegal floating-point operation exception condition, has a corresponding exception bit in the FPSCR. In addition, each floating-point exception has a corresponding enable bit in the FPSCR. The exception bit indicates the occurrence of the corresponding condition. If a floating-point exception occurs, the corresponding enable bit governs the result produced by the instruction and, in conjunction with bits FE0 and FE1, whether and how the system floating-point enabled exception error handler is invoked. (The “enabling” specified by the enable bit is of invoking the system error handler, not of permitting the exception condition to occur. The occurrence of an exception condition depends only on the instruction and its inputs, not on the setting of any control bits.)

The floating-point exception summary bit (FX) in the FPSCR is set when any of the exception condition bits transitions from a zero to a one or when explicitly set by software. The floating-point enabled exception summary bit (FEX) in the FPSCR is set when any of the exception condition bits is set and the exception is enabled (enable bit is one).

A single instruction may set more than one exception condition bit in the following cases:

- The inexact exception condition bit may be set with overflow exception condition.
- The inexact exception condition bit may be set with underflow exception condition.
- The illegal floating-point operation exception condition bit (SNaN) may be set with illegal floating-point operation exception condition (∞*0) for multiply-add instructions.
- The illegal operation exception condition bit (SNaN) may be set with illegal floating-point operation exception condition (illegal compare) for compare ordered instructions.
- The illegal floating-point operation exception condition bit (SNaN) may be set with illegal floating-point operation exception condition (illegal integer convert) for convert to integer instructions.

When an exception occurs, the instruction execution may be suppressed or a result may be delivered, depending on the exception condition.

Instruction execution is suppressed for the following kinds of exception conditions, so that there is no possibility that one of the operands is lost:

- Enabled illegal floating-point operation
- Enabled zero divide

For the remaining kinds of exception conditions, a result is generated and written to the destination specified by the instruction causing the exception. The result may be a different value for the enabled and disabled conditions for some of these exception conditions. The kinds of exception conditions that deliver a result are the following:

- Disabled illegal floating-point operation
- Disabled zero divide
- Disabled overflow
- Disabled underflow
- Disabled inexact
- Enabled overflow
- Enabled underflow
- Enabled inexact

Subsequent sections define each of the floating-point exception conditions and specify the action taken when they are detected.

The IEEE standard specifies the handling of exception conditions in terms of traps and trap handlers. In the PowerPC architecture, setting an FPSCR exception enable bit causes generation of the result value specified in the IEEE standard for the trap enabled case—the expectation is that the exception is detected by software, which will revise the result. Clearing an FPSCR exception enable bit causes generation of the default result value specified for the trap disabled case (or no trap occurs or trap is not implemented)—the expectation is that the exception will not be detected by software, and the default result is used. The result to be delivered in each case for each exception is described in the following paragraphs.

The IEEE default behavior when an exception occurs, which is to generate a default value and not to notify software, is obtained by clearing all FPSCR exception enable bits and using ignore exceptions mode (see Table 5-18). In this case the system floating-point enabled exception error handler is not invoked, even if floating-point exceptions occur. If necessary, software can inspect the FPSCR exception bits to determine whether exceptions have occurred.

If the program exception handler notifies software that a given exception condition has occurred, the corresponding FPSCR exception enable bit must be set and a mode other than ignore exceptions mode must be used. In this case the system floating-point enabled exception error handler is invoked if an enabled floating-point exception condition occurs.

Whether and how the system floating-point enabled exception error handler is invoked if an enabled floating-point exception occurs is controlled by MSR bits FE0 and FE1 as shown in Table 5-18. (The system floating-point enabled exception error handler is never invoked if the appropriate floating-point exception is disabled.)

Table 5-18. MSR[FE0] and MSR[FE1] Bit Settings

FE0	FE1	Description
0	0	Ignore exceptions mode—Floating-point exceptions do not cause the program exception error handler to be invoked.
0	1	Imprecise nonrecoverable mode—This mode is not applicable to the 601. FE0 and FE1 are ORed, so setting either bit results in running the processor in precise mode. Note that in PowerPC processors that support this mode, the system floating-point enabled exception error handler is invoked at some point at or beyond the instruction that caused the enabled exception. The state of the processor may include conditions and data affected by the exception (that is, hazards are not avoided). It may not be possible to identify the excepting instruction or the data that caused the exception (that is, the data is not recoverable).
1	0	Imprecise recoverable mode—This mode is not applicable to the 601. FE0 and FE1 are ORed, so setting either bit results in running the processor in precise mode. Note that in PowerPC processors that support this mode, the system floating-point enabled exception error handler is invoked at some point at or beyond the instruction that caused the enabled exception. Sufficient information is provided to the system floating-point enabled exception error handler that it can identify the excepting instruction and the operands, and correct the result. All hazards caused by the exception are avoided (for example, use of the data that would have been produced by the excepting instruction).
1	1	Precise mode—The system floating-point enabled exception error handler is invoked precisely at the instruction that caused the enabled exception.

Note that in the 601, FE0 and FE1 are ORed; therefore, unless both FE0 and FE1 are cleared, the 601 operates in precise mode. Whether a floating-point result is stored and what value is stored is determined by the FPSCR exception enable bits, as described in subsequent sections, and are not affected by any MSR bit settings.

Whenever the system floating-point enabled exception error handler is invoked, the microprocessor ensures that all instructions logically residing before the excepting instruction have completed, and no instruction after that instruction has been executed.

If exceptions are ignored, an FPSCR instruction can be used to force any exceptions, due to instructions initiated before the FPSCR instruction, to be recorded in the FPSCR. A **sync** instruction can also be used to force exceptions, but is likely to degrade performance more than an FPSCR instruction.

For the best performance across the widest range of implementations, the following guidelines should be considered:

- If the IEEE default results are acceptable to the application, FE0 and FE1 should be cleared (ignore exceptions mode). All FPSCR exception enable bits should be cleared.
- Ignore exceptions mode should not, in general, be used when any FPSCR exception enable bits are set.
- Precise mode may degrade performance in some implementations, perhaps substantially, and therefore should be used only for debugging and other specialized applications.

5.4.7.2 Invalid Operation Exception Conditions

An invalid operation exception occurs when an operand is invalid for the specified operation. The invalid operations are as follows:

- Any operation except load, store, move, select, or **mtfsf** on a signaling NaN (SNaN)
- For add or subtract operations, magnitude subtraction of infinities (∞-∞)
- Division of infinity by infinity (∞/∞)
- Division of zero by zero (0/0)
- Multiplication of infinity by zero (∞*0)
- Ordered comparison involving a NaN (invalid compare)
- Square root or reciprocal square root of a negative, nonzero number (invalid square root)
- Integer convert involving a number that is too large to be represented in the format, an infinity, or a NaN (invalid integer convert)

FPSCR[VXSOFT] allows software to cause an invalid operation exception for a condition that is not necessarily associated with the execution of a floating-point instruction. For example, it might be set by a program that computes a square root if the source operand is negative. This facilitates the emulation of PowerPC instructions not implemented in the 601.

5.4.7.2.1 Action for Invalid Operation Exception Conditions

The action to be taken depends on the setting of the invalid operation exception enable bit of the FPSCR. When invalid operation exception is enabled (FPSCR[VE] = 1) and invalid operation occurs or software explicitly requests the exception, the following actions are taken:

- One or two invalid operation exceptions is set
  FPSCR[VXSNAN] (if SNaN)
  FPSCR[VXISI] (if ∞-∞)
  FPSCR[VXIDI] (if ∞/∞)
  FPSCR[VXZDZ](if 0/0)
  FPSCR[VXIMZ] (if ∞*0)
  FPSCR[VXVC] (if invalid comparison)
  FPSCR[VXSOFT] (if software request)
  FPSCR[VXCVI] (if invalid integer convert)
- If the operation is an arithmetic or convert-to-integer operation,
  the target FPR is unchanged
  FPSCR[FR FI] are cleared
  FPSCR[FPRF] is unchanged
- If the operation is a compare,
  FPSCR[FR FI C] are unchanged
  FPSCR[FPCC] is set to reflect unordered
- If software explicitly requests the exception,
  FPSCR[FR FI FPRF] are as set by the **mtfsfi**, **mtfsf**, or **mtfsb1** instruction

When invalid operation exception condition is disabled (FPSCRVE = 0) and invalid operation occurs or software explicitly requests the exception, the following actions are taken:

- One or two invalid operation exception condition bits is set
  FPSCR[VXSNAN] (if SNaN)
  FPSCR[VXISI] (if ∞-∞)
  FPSCR[VXIDI] (if ∞/∞)
  FPSCR[VXZDZ] (if 0/0)
  FPSCR[VXIMZ] (if ∞*0)
  FPSCR[VXVC] (if invalid comparison)
  FPSCR[VXSOFT] (if software request)
  FPSCR[VXCVI] (if invalid integer convert)
- If the operation is an arithmetic operation, the target FPR is set to a quiet NaN
  FPSCR[FR FI] are cleared
  FPSCR[FPRF] is set to indicate the class of the result (quiet NaN)

- If the operation is a convert to 32-bit integer operation, the target FPR is set as follows:
  FRT[0–31] = undefined
  FRT[32–63] = most negative 32-bit integer FPSCR[FR FI] are cleared
  FPSCR[FPRF] is undefined
- If the operation is a convert to 64-bit integer operation, the target FPR is set as follows:
  FRT[0–63] = most negative 64-bit integer
  FPSCR[FR FI] are cleared
  FPSCR[FPRF] is undefined
- If the operation is a compare,
  FPSCR[FR FI C] are unchanged
  FPSCR[FPCC] is set to reflect unordered
- If software explicitly requests the exception,
  FPSCR[FR FI FPRF] are as set by the **mtfsfi**, **mtfsf**, or **mtfsb1** instruction

5.4.7.3 Zero Divide Exception Condition

A zero divide exception condition occurs when a divide instruction is executed with a zero divisor value and a finite, nonzero dividend value.

The name is a misnomer used for historical reasons. The proper name for this exception condition should be exact infinite result from finite operands exception condition corresponding to a mathematical pole.

5.4.7.3.1 Action for Zero Divide Exception Condition

The action to be taken depends on the setting of the zero divide exception condition enable bit of the FPSCR. When the zero divide exception condition is enabled (FPSCR[ZE] = 1) and a zero divide condition occurs, the following actions are taken:

- Zero divide exception condition bit is set
  FPSCR[ZX] = 1
- The target FPR is unchanged
- FPSCR[FR FI] are cleared
- FPSCR[FPRF] is unchanged

When zero divide exception condition is disabled (FPSCR[ZE] = 0) and zero divide occurs, the following actions are taken:

- Zero divide exception condition bit is set
  FPSCR[ZX] = 1
- The target FPR is set to a ±infinity, where the sign is determined by the XOR of the signs of the operands
- FPSCR[FR FI] are cleared
- FPSCR[FPRF] is set to indicate the class and sign of the result (±infinity)

5.4.7.4 Overflow Exception Condition

Overflow occurs when the magnitude of what would have been the rounded result, if the exponent range were unbounded, exceeds that of the largest finite number of the specified result precision.

5.4.7.4.1 Action for Overflow Exception Condition

The action to be taken depends on the setting of the overflow exception condition enable bit of the FPSCR. When the overflow exception condition is enabled (FPSCR[OE] = 1) and an exponent overflow condition occurs, the following actions are taken:

- Overflow exception condition bit is set
  FPSCR[OX] = 1
- For double-precision arithmetic instructions, the exponent of the normalized intermediate result is adjusted by subtracting 1536
- For single-precision arithmetic instructions and the floating round to single-precision instruction, the exponent of the normalized intermediate result is adjusted by subtracting 192
- The adjusted rounded result is placed into the target FPR
- FPSCR[FPRF] is set to indicate the class and sign of the result (±normal number)

When the overflow exception condition is disabled (FPSCR[OE] = 0) and an overflow condition occurs, the following actions are taken:

- Overflow exception condition bit is set
  FPSCR[OX] = 1
- Inexact exception condition bit is set
  FPSCR[XX] = 1
- The result is determined by the rounding mode (FPSCR[RN]) and the sign of the intermediate result as follows:
  - — Round to nearest
    Store ±infinity, where the sign is the sign of the intermediate result
  - — Round toward zero
    Store the format’s largest finite number with the sign of the intermediate result
  - — Round toward +infinity
    For negative overflows, store the format’s most negative finite number; for positive overflows, store +infinity
  - — Round toward –infinity
    For negative overflows, store –infinity; for positive overflows, store the format's largest finite number

- The result is placed into the target FPR
- FPSCR[FR FI] are cleared
- FPSCR[FPRF] is set to indicate the class and sign of the result (±infinity or ±normal number)

5.4.7.5 Underflow Exception Condition

The underflow exception condition is defined separately for the enabled and disabled states:

- Enabled—Underflow occurs when the intermediate result is “Tiny.”
- Disabled—Underflow occurs when the intermediate result is “Tiny” and there is “Loss of Accuracy.”

A “Tiny” result is detected before rounding, when a nonzero result value computed as though the exponent range were unbounded would be less in magnitude than the smallest normalized number.

If the intermediate result is “tiny” and the underflow exception condition enable bit is cleared (FPSCR[UE]=0), the intermediate result is denormalized (see Section 2.5.4, “Normalization and Denormalization”) and rounded (see Section 2.5.6, “Rounding”).

“Loss of Accuracy” is detected when the delivered result value differs from what would have been computed were both the exponent range and precision unbounded.

5.4.7.5.1 Action for Underflow Exception Condition

The action to be taken depends on the setting of the underflow exception condition enable bit of the FPSCR.

When the underflow exception condition is enabled (FPSCR[UE]=1) and an exponent underflow condition occurs, the following actions are taken:

- Underflow exception condition bit is set
  FPSCR[UX] = 1
- For double-precision arithmetic and conversion instructions, the exponent of the normalized intermediate result is adjusted by adding 1536.
- For single-precision arithmetic instructions and the Floating-Point Round to Single-Precision (**frsp**) instruction, the exponent of the normalized intermediate result is adjusted by adding 192.
- The adjusted rounded result is placed into the target FPR.
- FPSCR[FPRF] is set to indicate the class and sign of the result (±normalized number).

The FR and FI bits in the FPSCR allow the system floating-point enabled exception error handler, when invoked because of an underflow exception condition, to simulate a trap disabled environment. That is, the FR and FI bits allow the system floating-point enabled exception error handler to unround the result, thus allowing the result to be denormalized.

When the underflow exception condition is disabled (FPSCR[UE]=0) and an underflow condition occurs, the following actions are taken:

- Underflow exception condition enable bit is set
  FPSCR[UX] = 1
- The rounded result is placed into the target FPR
- FPSCR[FPRF] is set to indicate the class and sign of the result
  (±denormalized number or ±zero)

5.4.7.6 Inexact Exception Condition

The inexact exception condition occurs when one of two conditions occur during rounding:

- The rounded result differs from the intermediate result assuming the intermediate result exponent range and precision to be unbounded.
- The rounded result overflows and overflow exception condition is disabled.

5.4.7.6.1 Action for Inexact Exception Condition

The action to be taken does not depend on the setting of the inexact exception condition enable bit of the FPSCR.

When the inexact exception condition occurs, the following actions are taken:

- Inexact exception condition enable bit in the FPSCR is set
  FPSCR[XX] = 1
- The rounded or overflowed result is placed into the target FPR
- FPSCR[FPRF] is set to indicate the class and sign of the result

In other PowerPC implementations, enabling inexact exception conditions may have greater latency than enabling other types of floating-point exception condition.

5.4.8 Floating-Point Unavailable Exception (x'00800')

A floating-point unavailable exception occurs when no higher priority exception exists, an attempt is made to execute a floating-point instruction (including floating-point load, store, and move instructions), and the floating-point available bit in the MSR is disabled, (MSR[FP]=0).

The register settings for floating-point unavailable exceptions are shown in Table 5-19.

Table 5-19. Floating-Point Unavailable Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description			
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction that caused the exception.			
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR			
MSR	EE 0 PR 0 FP 0 ME Value is not altered FE0 0		SE 0 FE1 0 EP Value is not altered IT 0 DT 0	

When a floating-point unavailable exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00800' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

5.4.9 Decrementer Exception (x'00900')

A decrementer exception occurs when no higher priority exception exists, the decrementer register has completed decrementing, and MSR[EE] = 1. The decrementer exception request is canceled when the exception is handled. The decrementer register counts down, causing an exception (unless masked) when passing through zero. The decrementer implementation meets the following requirements:

- The operation of the RTC and the decrementer are coherent; that is, the counters are driven by the same fundamental time base (7.8125 MHz).
- Loading a GPR from the decrementer does not affect the decrementer.
- Storing a GPR value to the decrementer replaces the value in the decrementer with the value in the GPR.
- Whenever bit 0 of the decrementer changes from 0 to 1, an exception request is signaled. If multiple decrementer exception requests are received before the first can be reported, only one exception is reported. The occurrence of a decrementer exception cancels the request.
- If the decrementer is altered by software and if bit 0 is changed from 0 to 1, an interrupt request is signaled.

The register settings for the decrementer exception are shown in Table 5-20.

Table 5-20. Decrementer Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction that the processor would have attempted to execute next if no exception conditions were present.
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR
MSR	EE 0 SE 0 PR 0 FE1 0 FP 0 EP Value is not altered ME Value is not altered IT 0 FE0 0 DT 0

When a decrementer exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00900' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

5.4.10 I/O Controller Interface Error Exception (x'00A00')

An I/O controller interface error exception occurs when no higher-order priority exists and a load or store corresponding to an I/O controller interface segment generates an error. I/O controller interface operations are described in Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations.”

This exception is taken only when an operation to an I/O controller interface segment fails (such a failure is indicated to the 601 by a particular bus reply packet). If an I/O controller interface error exception occurs, the SRR0 contains the address of the instruction following the excepting instruction.

Note the following:

- Illegal accesses to I/O controller interface space cause alignment or data access exceptions. For information refer to Section 5.4.6.1.2, “I/O Controller Interface Access.” Note that this exception is specific to the 601. The PowerPC architecture treats I/O controller interface exceptions as data access exceptions (x'00300').
- Unlike exceptions that occur with memory accesses, loads and both loads and stores with update cause the target register to be updated, even though an exception is taken.
- The **lwarx**, **stwcx.** and **lscbx** instructions never cause an I/O controller interface error exception; instead they take a data access exception as defined in the PowerPC architecture.
- Floating point loads and stores to I/O controller interface segments are not supported on the 601 even though they are allowed in the PowerPC architecture. For those instructions, the 601 takes an alignment interrupt.

The register settings for I/O controller interface error exceptions are shown in Table 5-21.

Table 5-21. I/O Controller Interface Error Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction following the instruction that caused the instruction. This and subsequent instructions have not been executed. SRR0 contains the EA of the instruction following the load or store that caused the exception.
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR
MSR	EE 0 SE 0 PR 0 FE1 0 FP 0 EP Value is not altered ME Value is not altered IT 0 FE0 0 DT 0
DSISR	Unchanged.
DAR	For scalar (nonmultiple or string) loads and stores, the DAR points to the first byte of the operand, regardless of the alignment. For multiple and string loads and stores, the DAR points to the first byte in the last word.
GPRs	• On update form loads/stores, **r**A contains the updated EA. If **r**A=0, then R0 is not updated. If **r**A = **r**D, the register gets the target data instead of the updated EA. • On simple loads, the target register **r**D will have been updated with the word (or bytes) received from the I/O controller interface operation. • On simple stores the source register **r**S will have been sent to the I/O controller as store data. Whether the store actually occurred at the I/O device depends on the controller implementation and perhaps the specific type of error detected. • On load multiples and load strings, all of the target registers will have been updated with data received from the I/O controller. However, the addressing registers are not updated if they are in the range of target registers specified by the instruction. • On store multiples and store strings, all source registers will have been presented to the I/O controller via normal extended transfer bus protocols.

When an I/O controller interface error exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00A00' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

5.4.11 System Call Exception (x'00C00')

A system call exception occurs when a System Call (**sc**) instruction is executed. The effective address of the instruction following the **sc** instruction is placed into SRR0. Bits 16–31 of the MSR are placed into bits 16–31 of SRR1, and bits 0–15 of SRR1 are set to undefined values. Then a system call exception is generated.

The system call exception causes the next instruction to be fetched from offset x'00C00' from the physical base address indicated by the setting of MSR[EP]. This instruction is context synchronizing. That is, when a system call exception occurs, instruction dispatch is halted.

The following synchronization is performed:

1. The exception mechanism waits for all instructions in execution to complete to a point where they report all exceptions they will cause.
2. The processor ensures that all instructions in execution complete in the context in which they began execution.
3. Instructions dispatched after the exception is processed are fetched and executed in the context established by the exception mechanism.

Register settings are shown in Table 5-22.

Table 5-22. System Call Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting Description
SRR0	Set to the effective address of the instruction following the **sc** instruction
SRR1	0–15 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the instruction 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR
MSR	EE 0 PR 0 FP 0 ME Value is not altered FE0 0 SE 0 FE1 0 EP Value is not altered IT 0 DT 0

When a system call exception is taken, instruction execution resumes at offset x'00C00' from the physical base address indicated by MSR[EP].

5.4.12 Run Mode/Trace Exception (x'02000')

Vector x'02000' is used for the implementation-specific run mode exception, and the trace exception, which is defined in the PowerPC architecture, but which uses a different vector.

5.4.12.1 Run Mode Exception

The 601 defines an implementation-specific exception called the run mode exception. This exception is taken by the 601 under the following circumstances:

- Instruction address compare
- Branch target address compare
- Trace mode (MSR[SE] is set)—When an instruction clears MSR[SE], trace mode ends immediately. Note that other PowerPC processors implement a separate trace exception at vector x'00D00'.

Note that this exception may not be implemented by other PowerPC processors, and that this exception can be enabled and disabled using bits 8 and 9 in HID1; the exception is enabled when HID1[8,9] = b'10'. When this exception occurs, the registers are set as indicated in Table 5-23.

Table 5-23. Run Mode Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting
SRR0	Set to the address of the instruction that causes the run mode exception
SRR1	Loaded from bits 0–31 of the MSR.
MSR	EE 0 PR 0 FP 0 ME Value is not altered FE0 0 SE 0 FE1 0 EP Value is not altered IT 0 DT 0

The run mode is determined by the settings of HID1[1–3]. These settings are defined in Table 5-24.

Table 5-24. Run Mode Exception Actions

HID1(1–3) Setting	Mode	Description
000	Normal Run Mode	No address break points are specified and the 601 processes zero to three instructions per cycle.
001	—	Undefined. Do not use.
010	Limited Instruction Address Compare Mode	The 601 runs at full speed until the EA of the instruction in the lowest position in the instruction queue (IQ0) matches the one specified in HID2. At this point the appropriate break action is performed. This is a limited compare in that branches and floating-point operations and the addresses associated with them may never be detected.
011	—	Undefined. Do not use.
100	Single Instruction Step Mode	If you clear HID1[1:3] and set HID1[8:9] to 10, the processor branches to offset x'02000' and enters an infinite loop, executing the instruction at x'02000'. Unless the user needs this mode specifically, the trace exception should be used.
101	—	Undefined. Do not use.
110	Full Instruction Address Compare Mode	In full instruction address compare mode, processing proceeds out of IQ0. When the EA in HID2 matches the EA of the instruction in IQ0, the appropriate break action is performed. Unlike the limited instruction address compare mode, all instructions pass through the IQ0 in this mode. That is, instructions cannot be folded out of the instruction stream.
111	Full Branch Target Address Compare Mode	This mode is similar to full instruction address compare mode except that the branch target is compared against HID2. When addresses match, the appropriate break action is taken. This allows the programmer to see how a program got to an address. This mode can be used with **b**, **bc**, **bcr**, and **bcc** instructions.

5.4.12.2 Trace Exception

When the trace exception is enabled, (MSR[SE] is set), a trace interrupt is taken after each instruction that completes without causing a exception or context change (such as a **sc**, **rfi**, or a load instruction that causes an exception). MSR[SE] is cleared when the trace exception is taken. In the normal use of this function, MSR[SE] is restored when the exception handler returns to the interrupted program using an **rfi** instruction.

Register settings for the trace mode are described in Table 5-25.

Table 5-25. Trace Exception—Register Settings

Register	Setting
SRR0	Set to the address of the next instruction to be executed in the program for which the trace exception was generated.
SRR1	0–15 Cleared 16–31 Loaded from bits 16–31 of the MSR
MSR	EE 0 SE 0 PR 0 FE1 0 FP 0 EP Value is not altered ME Value is not altered IT 0 FE0 0 DT 0

When a run mode or trace exception is taken, instruction execution resumes as offset x'02000' from the base address indicated by MSR[EP].

Chapter 6
Memory Management Unit

This chapter describes the PowerPC 601 microprocessor's memory management unit (MMU). The primary functions of the MMU are to translate logical (effective) addresses to physical addresses for memory accesses, I/O accesses (most I/O accesses are assumed to be memory-mapped), and I/O controller interface accesses, and to provide access protection on a block or page basis.

There are three types of accesses generated by the 601 that require address translation: instruction accesses, data accesses to memory generated by load and store instructions, and I/O controller interface accesses generated by load and store instructions.

The 601 MMU provides 4 Gbytes of logical address space accessible to supervisor and user programs with a 4-Kbyte page size and 256-Mbyte segment size. Block sizes range from 128 Kbyte to 8 Mbyte and are software selectable. In addition, the 601 uses an interim 52-bit virtual address and hashed page tables in the generation of 32-bit physical addresses.

The MMU contains three translation lookaside buffers (TLBs). There is a 256-entry, two-way set-associative unified (instruction and data address) TLB (UTLB) for storing recently-used address translations, and a four-entry fully-associative first-level instruction TLB (ITLB) that is used only by instruction accesses for storing recently used instruction address translations. Additionally, there is a four-entry block address translation array (BAT array) that stores the available block address translations (for instruction or data addresses). BAT array entries are implemented as the block address translation (BAT) registers that are accessible as supervisor special-purpose registers (SPRs). UTLB entries are generated automatically by the 601 hardware via a search of the page tables in memory. The 601 maintains all the segment information on-chip in 16 supervisor-level segment registers.

This chapter describes the MMU address translation mechanisms, the MMU conditions that cause 601 exceptions, the instructions used to program the MMU, and the corresponding registers.

The 601 MMU relies on the exception processing mechanism for the implementation of the paged virtual memory environment and for enforcing protection of designated memory areas. Exception processing is described in Chapter 5, "Exceptions." Section 2.3.1, "Machine State Register (MSR)," describes the MSR of the 601, which controls some of the critical functionality of the MMU.

The operation of the 601 MMU conforms to the operating environment defined by the PowerPC architecture for 32-bit implementations in most respects. However, the number and format of the BAT registers is different, as is the available range of block sizes. In addition, the protection mechanism provided by the BAT registers is different from that defined for the PowerPC architecture, as is the bit settings in the SRR1 register for one case of the instruction access exception. Also, the PowerPC architecture defines the concept of guarded memory that is not implemented in the 601. Finally, some MMU instructions of the PowerPC architecture (including **tlbsync**) are not implemented in the 601.

Note that the memory-forced I/O controller interface functionality described for the 601 is not defined as part of the PowerPC architecture, and will not be present in other PowerPC processors. Also note that the hardware implementation details of the 601 MMU are not contained in the architectural definition of PowerPC processors and are invisible to the programming model.

6.1 MMU Overview

The 601 MMU and exception model support demand paged virtual memory. Virtual memory management permits execution of programs larger than the size of physical memory; demand paged implies that individual pages are loaded into physical memory from backing storage only as they are accessed by an executing program.

The memory management model of the 601 includes the concept of a virtual address that is not only larger than that of the maximum physical memory allowed but a virtual address space that is also larger than the logical address space. Each logical address generated by the 601 is 32 bits wide. In the address translation process, a logical address is converted to a 52-bit virtual address (as governed by the operating system) and then translated back to a 32-bit physical address.

The operating system is responsible for managing the system's physical memory resources. Consequently, the operating system programs the MMU registers (segment registers, BAT registers, and table search description register 1 (SDR1)) and sets up the page tables in memory appropriately. The MMU then assists the operating system by managing page status and maintaining the recently-used address translations on-chip for quick access.

The 601 logical address spaces are divided into 256-Mbyte regions called segments or other large regions called blocks (128 Kbyte–8 Mbyte). Segments that correspond to memory or memory-mapped devices can be further subdivided into smaller regions called pages (4 Kbyte). For each block or page, the operating system creates an address descriptor (page table entry (PTE) or BAT array entry) that the MMU uses to generate the physical address and the protection and other access control information when an address within the block or page is accessed. Address descriptors for pages reside in tables (as PTEs) in the physical memory; for faster accesses, the MMU maintains on-chip copies of recently used PTEs in the ITLB and UTLB, and keeps the block information on-chip in the BAT array (comprised of the BAT registers).

This section provides an overview of the high-level organization and operational concepts of the 601 MMU, and a summary of all MMU control registers. Section 2.3.3.6, “Table Search Description Register 1 (SDR1),” describes the SDR1 register, Section 2.3.2, “Segment Registers,” describes the segment registers, Section 2.3.1, “Machine State Register (MSR),” describes the MSR, and Section 2.3.3.12, “BAT Registers,” describes the BAT registers.

6.1.1 Memory Addressing

A program references memory using the effective (logical) address computed by the processor when it executes a load, store, branch, or cache instruction, and when it fetches the next instruction. The effective (logical) address is translated to a physical address according to the procedures described throughout this chapter. The memory subsystem uses the physical address for the access.

For a complete discussion of effective address calculation, see Section 3.1.1, “Effective Address Calculation.”

6.1.2 MMU Organization

Figure 6-1 shows the conceptual organization of the MMU and its relationship to some of the other functional units in the 601. The instruction unit generates all instruction addresses; these addresses are both for sequential instruction fetches and addresses that correspond to a change of program flow. The integer unit generates addresses for data accesses (both for memory and the I/O controller interface).

After an address is generated, the upper order bits of the logical address, LA0–LA19 (or a smaller set of address bits, LA0–LA*n*, in the cases of blocks), are translated by the MMU into physical address bits PA0–PA19. Simultaneously, the lower order address bits, A20–A31 (that are untranslated and therefore considered both logical and physical), are directed to the on-chip cache where they form the index into the eight-way set-associative tag array. After translating the address, the MMU passes the higher-order bits of the physical address to the cache, and the cache lookup completes. For cache-inhibited accesses or accesses that miss in the cache, the untranslated lower order address bits are concatenated with the translated higher-order address bits; the resulting 32-bit physical address is then used by the memory unit and the system interface, which accesses external memory.

In addition to the upper-order address bits, the MMU automatically keeps an internal indicator of whether each access was generated as an instruction or data access and a supervisor/user indicator that reflects the state of the PR bit of the MSR when the logical address was generated. In addition, for data accesses, there is an indicator of whether the access is for a load or a store operation. This information is then used by the MMU to appropriately direct the address translation and to enforce the protection hierarchy programmed by the operating system. See Section 2.3.1, “Machine State Register (MSR),” for more information about the MSR.

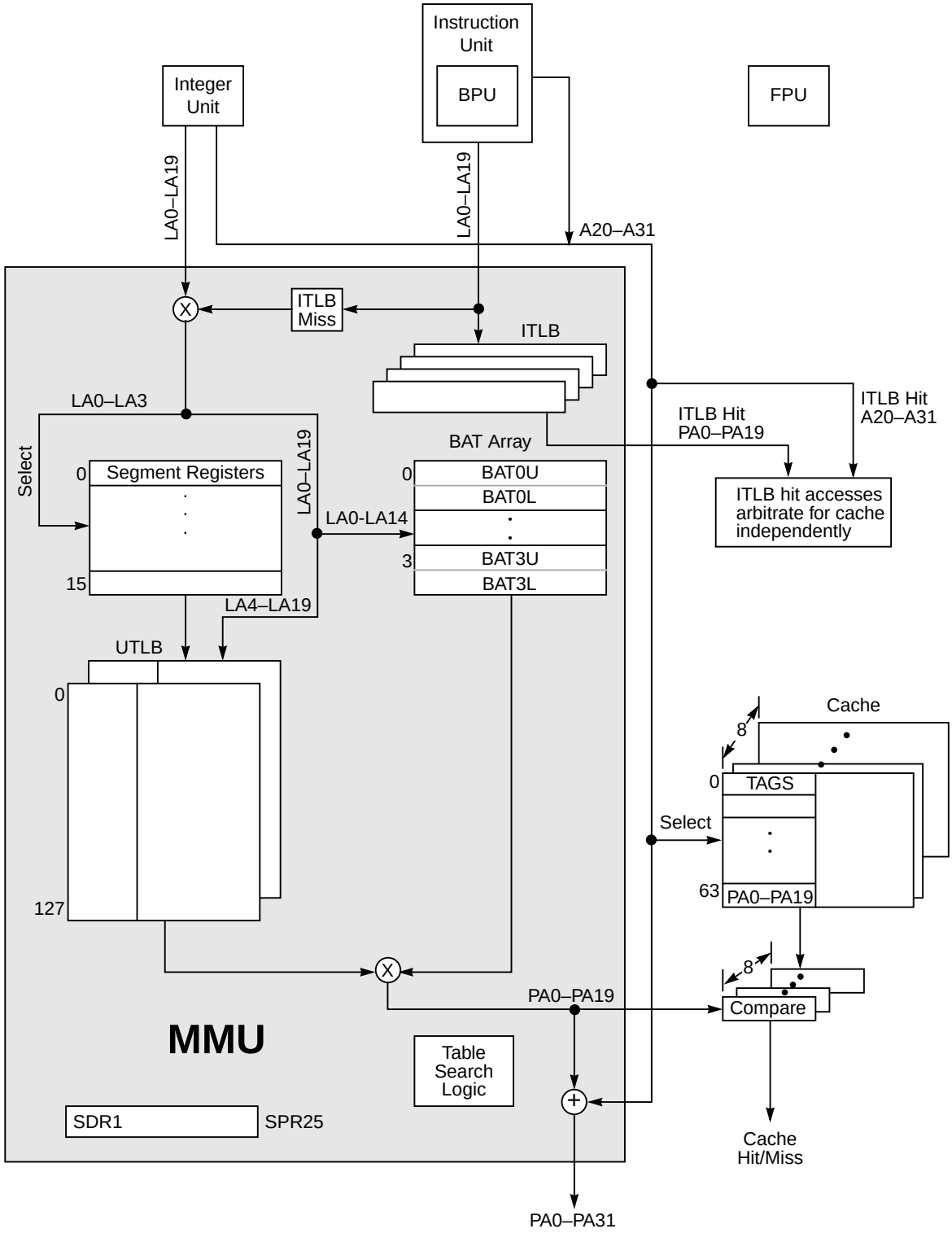


Figure 6-1. MMU Block Diagram

For instruction accesses, the MMU first performs a lookup in the four entries of the ITLB for the physical address translation. Instruction accesses that miss in the ITLB and data accesses cause a lookup in the UTLB and BAT array for the physical address translation. In most cases, the physical address translation resides in one of the TLBs and the physical address bits are readily available to the on-chip cache. In the case where the physical address translation misses in the TLBs, the 601 automatically performs a search of the translation tables in memory using the information in the SDR1 and the corresponding segment register.

6.1.3 Address Translation Mechanisms

The 601 supports the following four main types of address translation:

- Page address translation—translates the page frame address for a 4-Kbyte page size
- Block address translation—translates the block number for blocks that range in size from 128 Kbyte to 8 Mbyte
- I/O controller interface address translation—used to generate I/O controller interface accesses on the external bus
- Direct address translation—when address translation is disabled, the physical address is identical to the logical address

Figure 6-2 shows the four main address translation mechanisms provided by the 601. The segment registers shown in the figure control both the page and I/O controller interface address translation mechanisms. When an access uses the page or I/O controller interface address translation, one of the 16 on-chip segment registers is selected by the highest-order logical address bits. A control bit in the corresponding segment register then determines if the access is to memory (memory-mapped) or to the I/O controller interface space.

For memory accesses selected by the segment register, the segment register information is used to generate the interim 52-bit virtual address. Page address translation corresponds to the conversion of this virtual address into the 32-bit physical address used by the cache or by external memory. In most cases, the physical address for the page resides in the UTLB and is available for quick access. However, if the page address translation misses in the UTLB, the 601 automatically searches the page tables in memory (using the virtual address information and a hashing function) to locate the required physical address.

Block address translation occurs in parallel with page and I/O controller interface address translation and is similar to page address translation, except that there are fewer upper-order logical address bits to be translated into physical address bits (more lower-order address bits (at least 17) are untranslated to form the offset into a block). Also, instead of segment registers and a UTLB, block address translations use the on-chip BAT registers as a fully-associative array. If the logical address of an access matches the corresponding field of a BAT register, the information in the BAT register is used to generate the physical address; in this case, the results of the page translation (occurring in parallel) are ignored.

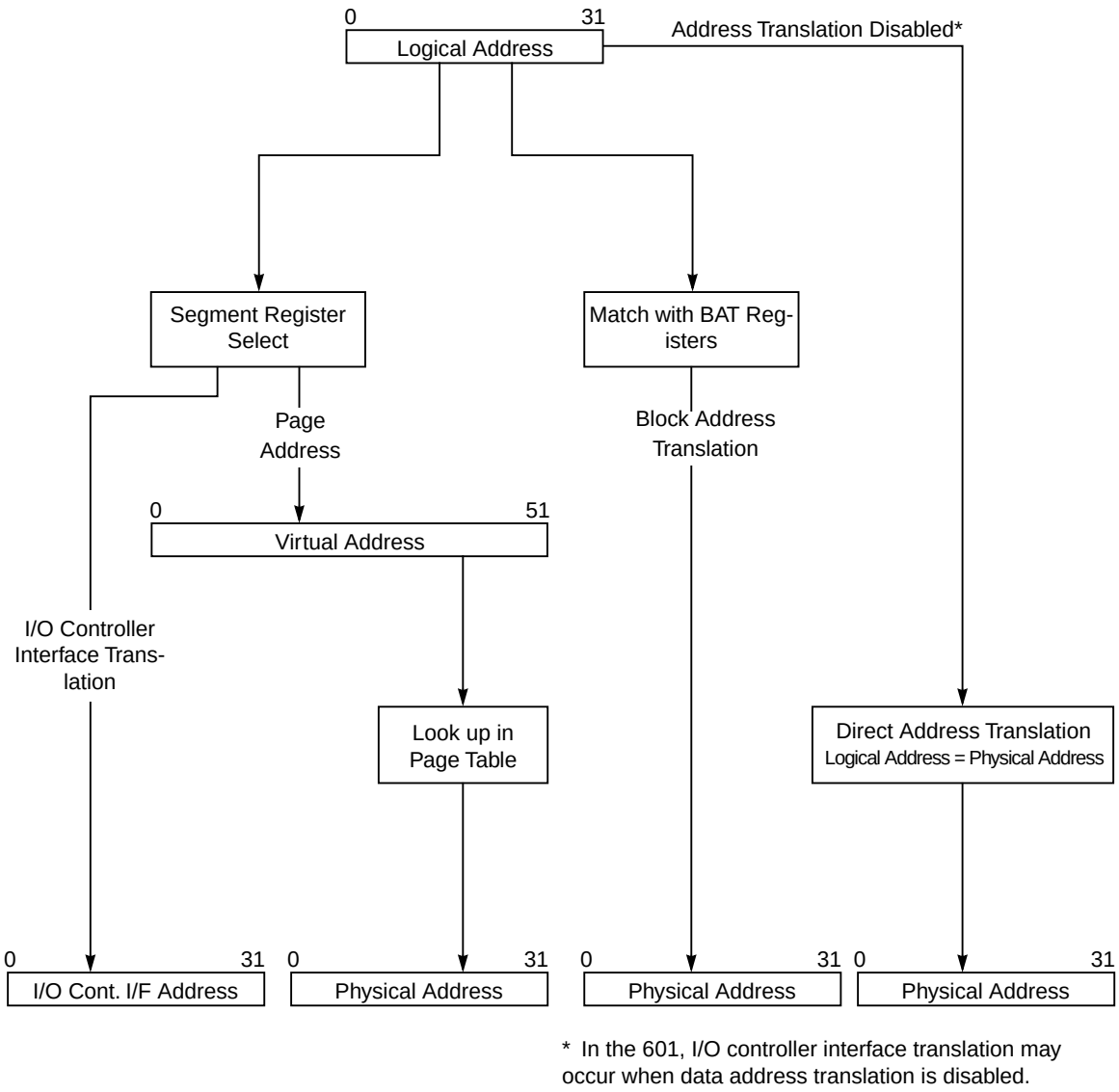


Figure 6-2. Address Translation Types

I/O controller interface address translation is enabled when the I/O controller interface translation control bit (T-bit) in the selected segment register (segment register selected by the highest-order address bits) is set. In this case, the remaining information in the segment register is interpreted as identifier information that is used with the remaining logical address bits to generate the packets used in an I/O controller interface access on the external interface; additionally, no UTLB lookup or page table search is performed and the BAT array lookup results are ignored. For more information about the I/O controller interface operations, see Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations.”

A special case of I/O controller interface address translation (not shown in Figure 6-2) is supported that forces an I/O controller interface address translation to be interpreted as a memory access (that is, it uses the usual memory access protocol rather than the I/O

controller interface access protocol on the external interface). This occurs when a field in the selected segment register (with the T-bit set) is encoded as memory-forced I/O controller space. This feature effectively allows the specification of a 256-Mbyte “block” of memory (with a common physical block number) with the use of only one segment register, bypassing the page and block address translation and protection mechanisms described above.

Direct address translation occurs when address translation is disabled; in this case the physical address generated is identical to the logical address. The translation of addresses for instruction and data accesses is enabled (and disabled) independently with the MSR[IT] and MSR[DT] bits, respectively. Thus when the instruction unit generates an instruction access, and instruction address translation is disabled (MSR[IT] = 0), the resulting physical address is identical to the logical address and all other translation mechanisms are ignored.

When a data access occurs and MSR[DT] = 0, the resulting physical address is identical to the logical address with one exception—I/O controller interface address translation for data accesses is allowed, even when MSR[DT] = 0. In this case, the segment registers are used in the same way as if translation were enabled. Note that this case of data accesses to the I/O controller interface while MSR[DT] = 0 will not be supported in other PowerPC processors.

6.1.4 Memory Protection Facilities

In addition to the translation of logical addresses to physical addresses, the MMU provides access protection of supervisor areas from user access and can designate areas of memory as read-only. Table 6-1 shows the four protection options supported by the 601.

Table 6-1. Access Protection Options

Option	User Read	User Write	Supervisor Read	Supervisor Write
Supervisor-only	Not allowed	Not allowed	√	√
Supervisor-write-only	√	Not allowed	√	√
Both user/supervisor	√	√	√	√
Both read-only	√	Not allowed	√	Not allowed

Each of these options is enforced at the block or page level. Thus, the supervisor-only option allows only read and write operations generated while the 601 is operating in supervisor mode (corresponding to MSR[PR] = 0) to use the selected address translation (block or page). User accesses that map into these blocks or pages cause an exception to be taken.

As shown in the table, the supervisor-write-only option allows both user and supervisor accesses to read from the selected area of memory but only supervisor programs can update (write to) that area. There is also an option that allows both supervisor and user programs read and write access (both user/supervisor option), and finally, there is an option to

designate an area of memory as read-only, both for user and supervisor programs (both read-only option).

For I/O controller interface segments, the MMU calculates a “key” bit based on the protection values programmed in the segment register, and the specific user/supervisor and read/write information for the particular access. However, this bit is merely passed on to the system interface to be transmitted in the context of the I/O controller interface protocol as described in Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations.” The MMU does not itself enforce any protection or cause any exception based on the state of the key bit for these accesses. The I/O controller device or other external hardware can optionally use this bit to enforce any protection required.

6.1.5 Page History Information

The 601 MMU also maintains reference (R) and change (C) bits in the page address translation mechanism that can be used as history information relevant to the page. This information can then be used by the operating system to determine which areas of memory to write back to disk when new pages must be allocated in main memory. While these bits are initially programmed by the operating system into the page table, the 601 automatically updates these bits when required. Note that the updates to these bits in the page tables are performed with standard read and write transactions on the bus (not locked read-modify-write operations). However, when multiple 601 devices have shared access to the page tables, the bit settings are guaranteed to be updated correctly.

6.1.6 General Flow of MMU Address Translation

When an instruction or data access is generated and the corresponding instruction or data translation is disabled (MSR[IT] = 0 or MSR[DT] = 0), direct translation is used and the access continues to the cache. When the selected segment register indicates that the access is an I/O controller interface access, I/O controller interface address translation occurs. See Section 6.5, “Selection of Address Translation Type” for more information regarding the selection of address translation mode used for all cases.

For instruction accesses, if translation is enabled (MSR[IT] = 1), the ITLB is first checked for a matching page or block address translation. If there is a miss, then the MMU uses the block and page address translation mechanisms to find the address translation. Figure 6-3 shows the flow used to search for the block or page address translation.

Although the 601 performs the block and page TLB lookups simultaneously, the flow diagram shows that if a BAT array hit occurs, that particular translation is performed regardless of the results of the UTLB lookup. If the BAT array misses, the results of the UTLB search are considered. If the UTLB hits, the page translation occurs and the physical address bits are forwarded to the cache (if the access is cacheable).

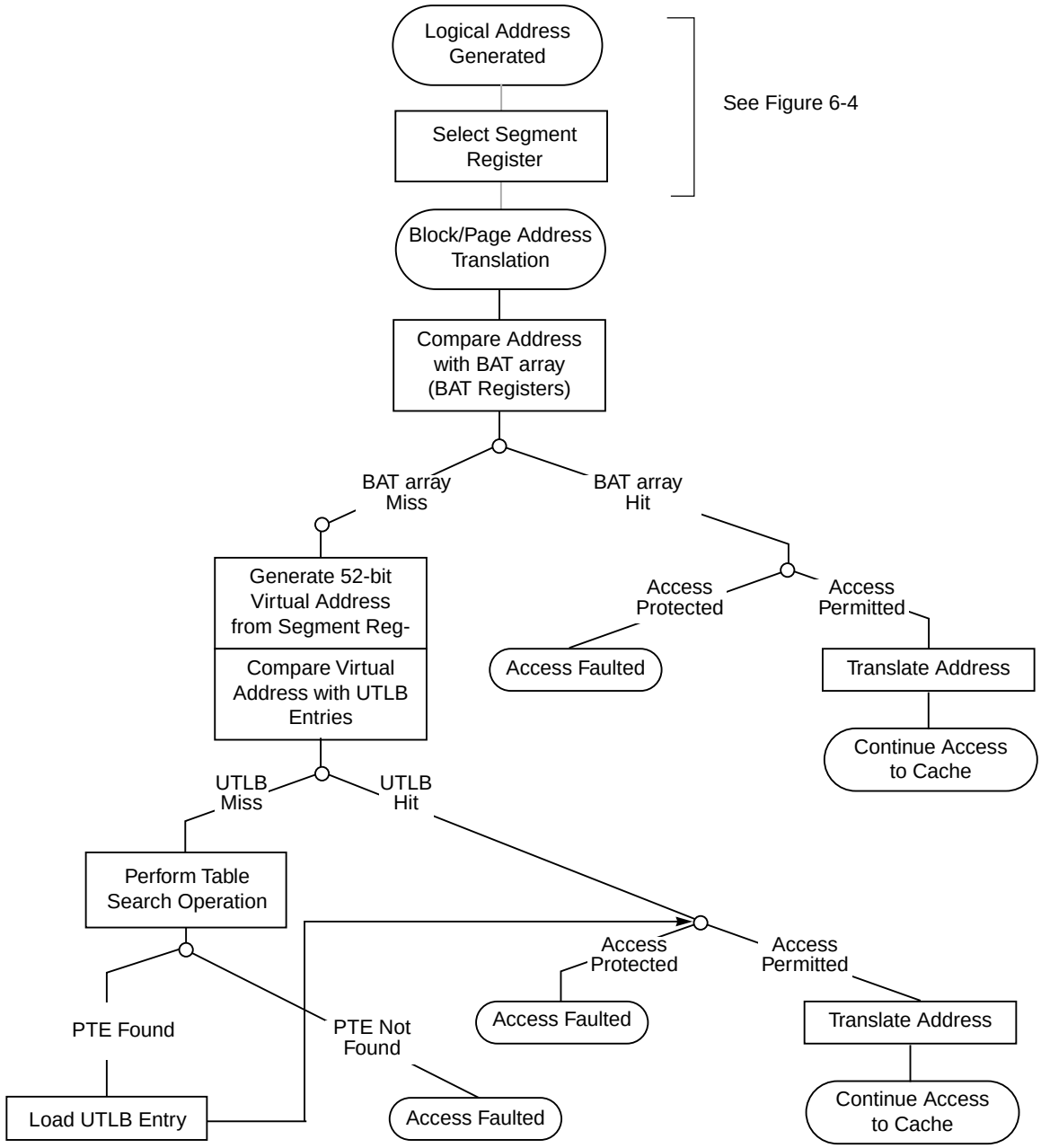


Figure 6-3. MMU Block and Page Address Translation Flow

If the UTLB misses, the 601 automatically searches the page tables in memory. If the page table entry (PTE) is successfully read, a new UTLB entry (and an ITLB entry for the instruction access case) is created and the page translation is once again attempted. This time, the UTLB (and ITLB for instruction access case) is guaranteed to hit. If the PTE is not found by the table search operation, an instruction access or data access exception is generated.

Note that if either the BAT array or UTLB results in a hit, the access is qualified with the appropriate protection bits. If the access is determined to be protected (not allowed), an exception (instruction access or data access) is generated.

6.1.7 Memory/MMU Coherency Model

The memory model of the 601 provides the following features:

- Performance benefits of weak ordering of memory accesses
- Memory coherency among processors and between a processor and I/O devices controlled at the block and page level
- Instructions that ensure a coherent and ordered memory state.
- Processor address order guaranteed

The memory implementations in 601 systems can take advantage of the performance benefits of weak ordering of memory accesses between processors or between processors and other external devices without any additional complications. The MMU assumes that all accesses are ordered. Thus, the priority of accesses is determined at the external interface in a way that provides maximum throughput for most cases.

In addition, at the system level, the memory coherency among processors and between a processor and I/O devices is programmed through the following three mode control bits in the MMU:

- Write-through (W bit)
- Caching-inhibited (I bit)
- Memory coherency (M bit)

Both the block and page address translation mechanisms contain the WIM bits for each TLB entry; these bits are used to control all accesses that correspond to the particular block or page. The four possible combinations of the W and M bits yield modes that are supported for I = 0 (caching-allowed) as shown in Table 6-2. For the caching-inhibited (I = 1) case, there are only two modes defined, corresponding to W=0/M=0, and W=0/M=1.

Table 6-2. Defined WIM Combinations

W	I	M
0	0	0
0	0	1
1	0	0
1	0	1
0	1	0
0	1	1

The 601 also provides instructions (the cache instructions, **isync**, **sync**, **eieio**, **lwarx**, and **stwcx.**) to ensure a coherent and ordered memory state. These instructions are described in Chapter 3, “Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary,” and in Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.” Memory accesses performed by a single processor appear to complete sequentially from the view of the programming model but may complete out of order with respect to the ultimate destination in the memory hierarchy. Order is guaranteed at each level of the memory hierarchy for accesses to the same address from the same processor.

Memory coherency can be enforced externally by a snooping bus design, a centralized cache directory design, or other design that can take advantage of these coherency features.

6.1.8 Effects of Instruction Fetch on MMU

Speculative instruction execution occurs when the 601 executes instructions in advance in case the result is needed. If subsequent events indicate that the speculative instruction should not have been executed, the processor abandons the results produced by that instruction. Typically, the 601 executes instructions speculatively when it has resources that would otherwise be idle, so the operation is done at little or no cost.

The 601 executes computational instructions speculatively (beyond a branch instruction) and performs instruction fetches speculatively (it fetches instructions ahead in the instruction stream). However, the 601 does not execute any load or store instructions speculatively. Speculative execution of computational instructions does not involve the MMU.

To avoid instruction fetch delay, the processor typically fetches instructions in advance of when they are needed. Such instruction fetching is speculative in that fetched instructions may not be executed due to intervening branches or exceptions.

Instruction fetching from I/O controller interface segments (T = 1) only occurs from those segments designated as memory-forced I/O controller interface segment. See Section 6.10, “I/O Controller Interface Address Translation” for more information about I/O controller interface segments.

Machine check exceptions that result from instruction fetching may be generated, even if the instruction fetched would not have been executed because of a previous branch or change in program flow. See Section 5.4.2, “Machine Check Exception (x'00200'),” for more information on the machine check exception.

Memory in 601 systems is considered not “guarded” in the sense that fetching may occur to any area of memory. For example, if a data area is adjacent to an instruction area of memory, the 601 could fetch from that data area. Furthermore, if a word in that data area contains the encoding for an unconditional branch instruction, the processor could even continue to fetch from the address it interprets as the target of the branch. Care may be required to prevent these situations, particularly if peripheral devices that cannot recover from extraneous accesses reside in these areas. Areas of memory in other PowerPC

processors may be designated as guarded within the MMU in that speculative operations do not occur.

6.1.9 Breakpoint Facility

Through the use of the HIDx registers (HID1, HID2, and HID5), the 601 has the ability to perform a breakpoint operation for both instruction and data accesses independently. For instruction accesses, the logical addresses of instructions in decode are compared with the address specified in the instruction address breakpoint register (IABR). If there is a match, then the processor takes a run mode exception. Similarly, data breakpoints occur when the logical address of a data access matches the address specified in the data address breakpoint register (DABR) register. However, when a data address matches, the 601 takes a data access exception.

The instruction and data breakpoint functionality is controlled by bit settings in the 601debug modes register (HID1). Various combinations and levels of breakpoints can be enabled. Section 2.3.3.13, “601 Implementation-Specific HID Registers” describes the breakpoint functionality provided in the 601. Note that these breakpoints occur completely independently of the MSR[DT] and MSR[IT] bit settings.

6.1.10 MMU Exceptions Summary

In order to complete any memory access, the logical address must be translated to a physical address. An MMU exception condition occurs if this translation fails for one of the following reasons:

- There is no valid entry in the page table for the page specified by the logical address (and segment register).
- An address translation is found but the access is not allowed by the memory protection mechanism.

Most MMU exception conditions cause either the instruction access exception or the data access exception to be taken. The state saved by the 601 for each of these exceptions contains information that identifies the address of the failing instruction. Refer to Chapter 5, “Exceptions,” for a more detailed description of exception processing.

There are 11 types of conditions that can cause an MMU exception to occur. The exception conditions map to the 601 exception as shown in Table 6-3. The only MMU exception condition recognized when MSR[IT] = 0 is the instruction breakpoint match condition. The only exception conditions that occur when MSR[DT] = 0 are the data breakpoint match condition and the conditions that cause the alignment exception for data accesses. For more detailed information about the conditions that cause the alignment exception (in particular for string/multiple instructions) see 5.4.6, “Alignment Exception (x'00600').”

Table 6-3. MMU Exception Conditions/Exception Mapping

Condition	Description	Exception
Page fault	No matching PTE found in page tables	I access: instruction access exception SRR1[1] = 1
		D access: data access exception DSISR[1] = 1
Block protection violation	Conditions described in Table 6-7 for block	I access: instruction access exception SRR1[4] = 1
		D access: data access exception DSISR[4] =1
Page protection violation	Conditions described in Table 6-7 for page	I access: instruction access exception SRR1[4] = 1
		D access: data access exception DSISR[4] = 1
dcbz with W or I = 1	**dcbz** instruction to write-through or cache-inhibited segment or block	Alignment exception
Instruction access to I/O controller interface space	Attempt to fetch instruction when SR[T] = 1, SR[BUID] ≠ '07F'	Instruction access exception Causes no SRR1 bits to be set*
lwarx, **stwcx.**, **lscbx** instruction to I/O controller interface space	Reservation instruction or load string and compare byte instruction when SR[T] = 1, SR[BUID] ≠ '07F'	Data access exception DSISR[5] = 1
Floating-point load or store to I/O controller interface space	FP memory access when SR[T] = 1, SR[BUID] ≠ '07F'	Alignment exception
Instruction breakpoint match	Instruction address matches the address in HID2	Run mode exception
Data breakpoint match	Data address matches the address in HID5	Data access exception DSISR[9] = 1
Operand misalignment: 256-Mbyte boundary	Operand crosses a 256-Mbyte boundary (regardless of MSR[DT] and MSR[IT] setting)	Alignment exception
Operand misalignment: 4-Kbyte boundary	Translation enabled and operand crosses a 4 Kbyte boundary (page or block)	Alignment exception
* This is only true for the 601; other PowerPC processors will set SRR1[3] for this case.		

6.1.11 MMU Instructions and Register Summary

Table 6-4 summarizes the instructions of the 601 that specifically control the MMU. For more detailed information about the instructions, refer to Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”

Table 6-4. Instruction Summary—Control MMU

Instruction	Description
mtsr SR,**r**S	Move to Segment Register SR[SR#]← **r**S
mtsrin rS,**r**B	Move to Segment Register Indirect SR[**r**B[0–3]]←**r**S
mfsr rD,SR	Move from Segment Register **r**D←SR[SR#]
mfsrin rD,**r**B	Move from Segment Register Indirect **r**D←SR[**r**B[0–3]]
tlbie rB	Translation Lookaside Buffer Invalidate Entry If TLB hit (for logical address specified as **r**B), TLB[V]←0 Causes TLBI operation on the system bus.

Table 6-5 summarizes the registers that the operating system uses to program the MMU. These registers are accessible to supervisor-level software only. These registers are described in detail in Chapter 2, “Registers and Data Types.”

Table 6-5. MMU Registers

Register	Description
Segment registers (SR0–SR15)	The sixteen 32-bit segment registers are present only in 32-bit implementations of the PowerPC architecture. Figure 6-13 shows the format of a segment register. The fields in the segment register are interpreted differently depending on the value of bit 0. The segment registers are accessed by the **mtsr**, **mtsrin**, **mfsr**, and **mfsrin** instructions
BAT registers (BAT0U–BAT3U and BAT0L–BAT3L)	The 601 includes eight block-address translation registers (BATs), organized as four pairs (BAT0U–BAT3U and BAT0L–BAT3L). Figure 6-6 and Figure 6-7 show the format of the upper and lower BAT registers. These are special-purpose registers that are accessed by the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions.
Table search description register 1 (SDR1)	The 32-bit table search description register 1 (SDR1) specifies the variables used in accessing the page tables in memory. This is a special-purpose register that is accessed by the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions.

6.1.12 TLB Entry Invalidation

The UTLB (and ITLB) maintains on-chip copies of the PTEs that are resident in physical memory. The 601 has the ability to invalidate resident UTLB entries through the use of the **tlbie** instruction. Additionally, the **tlbie** instruction optionally (as programmed in the HID1 register—see Section 2.3.3.13.2, “601 Debug Modes Register—HID1”) causes a TLB invalidate broadcast (an address-only operation) to occur on the system bus so that other processors also invalidate their resident copies of the matching PTE. See Chapter 10,

“Instruction Set” for detailed information about the **tlbie** instruction and Section 9.3.2.2.1, “Transfer Type (TT0–TT4) Signals” for more information on address-only bus transactions.

The snooping hardware of the 601 detects when other processors perform a TLB invalidate broadcast on the bus. In the case of a hit with an on-chip UTLB entry, the 601 performs the following:

1. Prevents execution of any new load, store, cache control or **tlbie** instructions and prevents any new reference or change bit updates
2. Waits for completion of any outstanding memory operations (including updates to the reference and change bits associated with the entry to be invalidated)
3. Invalidates the two entries (both associativity classes) in the UTLB indexed by the matching address
4. Invalidates all entries in the ITLB
5. Resumes normal execution

6.2 ITLB Description

The 601 implements a four-entry, fully-associative TLB for storing the most recently used instruction address translations. The 601 automatically generates an entry in the ITLB whenever the page or block address translation mechanism generates a new logical-to-physical mapping for a page or block used for instruction fetch. Each ITLB entry can contain the translation information for either an entire block or a page. The 601 uses the ITLB for address translation of instruction accesses when MSR[IT] = 1.

The instruction unit accesses the ITLB independently of the rest of the MMU. Therefore, when instruction accesses hit in the ITLB, the page and block translation mechanisms are available for use by data accesses simultaneously.

The 601 also automatically maintains the integrity of the entries in the ITLB by purging the contents when any of the following conditions occur:

- An **mtsr** or **mtsrin** instruction is executed
- An **mtspr** instruction that modifies any of the BAT registers is executed
- A **tlbie** instruction is executed
- A TLB invalidate operation is detected on the system interface (via snooping)

Since these conditions potentially cause the MMU context to be changed, the ITLB entries may no longer be valid. Therefore, the MMU automatically detects these conditions and clears all the valid bits in the ITLB array.

Finally, the 601 replaces ITLB entries on a least-recently-used (LRU) basis. Throughout the remainder of this chapter, the page and block translations that are resident in the ITLB are described within the context of page address translation and block address translation, as

the contents of the ITLB are always a subset of translations that were generated for the UTLB and/or the BAT array.

Accesses to the ITLB are transparent to the executing program, except that hits in the ITLB contribute to a higher overall instruction throughput by allowing data translations to occur in parallel.

6.3 Memory/Cache Access Modes

All instruction and data accesses are performed under the control of the three mode control bits that are defined by the MMU for each access. The three mode control bits, W, I, and M, have the following effects. The W and I bits control how the processor performing the access uses its own cache. The M bit specifies whether the processor performing the access must use the memory coherency protocol to ensure that all copies of the addressed memory location are consistent.

When an access requires coherency, the processor performing the access must inform the coherency mechanisms throughout the system that the access requires memory coherency. The M bit determines the kind of access performed on the bus (global or local). Note that these mode-control bits are relevant only when an address is translated and are not saved along with data in the on-chip cache (for cacheable accesses). Once an access has been translated, the MESI bits in the cache then control the coherency to that cache location made by subsequent accesses from other processors. See Chapter 4, “Cache and Memory Unit Operation,” for more information about cache accesses.

The operating system programs the WIM bits for each page or block as required. The WIM bits reside in the BAT registers for block address translation and in the PTEs for page address translation. Thus these bits are programmed as follows:

- The operating system uses the **mtspr** instruction to program the WIM bits in the BAT registers for block address translation.
- The operating system programs the WIM bits for each page into the PTEs in system memory as it sets up the page tables.

Note that for accesses performed with direct address translation (MSR[IT] = 0 or MSR[DT] = 0 for instruction or data access, respectively), the WIM bits are automatically generated as b'001' (the data is write-back, caching is enabled, and memory coherency is enforced).

6.3.1 Write-Through Bit (W)

When an access is designated as write-through (W = 1), if the data is in the cache, a store operation updates the cached copy of the data. In addition, the update is written to the external memory location (as described below). Store-combining compiler optimizations are allowed for write-through accesses except when the store instructions are separated by a **sync** instruction. Note that a store operation that uses the write-through mode may cause any part of valid data in the cache to be written back to main memory.

The definition of the external memory location to be written to in addition to the on-chip cache depends on the implementation of the memory system but can be illustrated by the following examples:

- RAM—The store must be sent to the RAM controller to be written into the target RAM.
- I/O device—The store must be sent to the I/O control hardware to be written to the target register or memory location.

In systems with multilevel caching, the store must be written to at least a depth in the memory hierarchy that is seen by all processors and devices.

Accesses that correspond to W = 0 are considered write-back. For this case, although the store operation is performed to the cache, it is only made to external memory when a copy-back operation is required. Use of the write-back mode (W = 0) can improve overall performance for areas of the memory space that are seldom referenced by other masters in the system. See Chapter 4, “Cache and Memory Unit Operation,” for more information about cache accesses.

6.3.2 Caching Inhibited Bit (I)

If I = 1, the memory access is completed by referencing the location in main memory, completely bypassing the on-chip cache of the 601. During the access, the accessed location is not loaded into the cache nor is the location allocated in the cache. If a copy of the accessed data is in the cache, that copy is not updated, flushed, or invalidated. Data accesses from more than one instruction may not be combined (as a compiler optimization) for cache-inhibited operations.

6.3.3 Memory Coherence Bit (M)

This mode control bit is provided to allow improved performance in systems where hardware-enforced coherency is relatively slow, and software is able to enforce the required coherency. When M = 0, the 601 does not enforce data coherency. When M = 1, the processor enforces data coherency and the corresponding access is considered to be a global access. When the M bit is set, and the access is performed to external memory, the $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ signal is asserted and the access is designated as global. Other processors affected by the access must then respond to this global access and signal whether it is shared. If the data in another processor is modified, then address retry is signaled.

6.3.4 W, I, and M Bit Combinations

Table 6-6 summarizes the six combinations of the WIM bits defined for the 601..

Table 6-6. Combinations of W, I, and M Bits

WIM Setting	Meaning
000	Data may be cached. Loads or stores whose target hits in the cache use that entry in the cache. Exclusive ownership of the block containing the target location is not required for store accesses and coherency operations for the block do not occur when fetching the block, storing it back, or changing its state from shared to exclusive.
001	Data may be cached. Loads or stores whose target hits in the cache use that entry in the cache. Memory coherency is enforced by hardware as follows: exclusive ownership of the block containing the target location is required before store accesses are allowed. When fetching the block, the processor indicates on the bus transaction that coherency is to be enforced. If the state of the block is shared-unmodified, the processor must gain exclusive use of the block before storing into it. This encoding is used for addresses translated via direct address translation (MSR[IT] = 0 or MSR[DT] = 0).
010	Caching is inhibited. The access is performed to external memory, completely bypassing the cache. Hardware enforced memory coherency is not required.
011	Caching is inhibited. The access is performed to external memory, completely bypassing the cache. Memory coherency must be enforced by external hardware (601 asserts $\overline{\text{GBL}}$).
100	Data may be cached. Loads whose target hits in the cache use that entry in the cache. Stores are written to external memory. The target location of the store may be cached and is updated on a hit. Exclusive ownership of the block containing the target location is not required for store accesses and coherency operations for the block do not occur when fetching the block, storing it back, or changing its state from shared to exclusive.
101	Data may be cached. Loads whose target hits in the cache use that entry in the cache. Stores are written to external memory. The target location of the store may be cached and is updated on a hit. Memory coherency is enforced by hardware as follows: exclusive ownership of the block containing the target location is required before store accesses are allowed. When fetching the block, the processor indicates on the bus transaction that coherency is to be enforced. If the state of the block is shared, the processor must gain exclusive use of the block before storing into it.

If the system software maps the same physical page with multiple page table entries that have different W, I, or M values, the results of the translation are undefined.

6.4 General Memory Protection Mechanism

Another aspect of the MMU that is programmed at the block and page level is the memory protection option. The memory protection mechanism allows selectively granting read access, granting read/write access, and prohibiting access to areas of memory based on a number of control criteria.

The memory protection mechanism is used by both the block and page address translation mechanisms in a similar way, as described here. However, the protection mechanism in the 601 differs from that defined in the PowerPC architecture in that the PowerPC operating environment architecture defines valid bits rather than key bits for the block address translation mechanism. For specific information unique to block address translation, refer to Section 6.7.4, “Block Memory Protection.” For specific information unique to page address translation, refer to Section 6.8.5, “Page Memory Protection.”

For both block and page address translation in the 601, the memory protection mechanism is controlled by the following:

- MSR[PR], which defines the mode of the access as follows:
  - MSR[PR] = 0 corresponds to supervisor mode
  - MSR[PR] = 1 corresponds to user mode
- Ks and Ku, the supervisor and user key bits, which define the key for the block or page
- The PP bits, which define the access options for the block or page

The key bits (Ks and Ku) and the PP bits are located as follows for block and page address translation:

- Ks and Ku are located in the upper BAT register for block address translation and in the selected segment register for a page address translation.
- The PP bits are located in the upper BAT register for block address translation and in the PTE for page address translation.

The key bits, the PP bits, and the MSR[PR] bit are used as follows:

- When an access is generated, one of the key bits (Ks or Ku) is selected to be the key as follows:
  - For supervisor accesses (MSR[PR] = 0), the Ks bit is used and Ku is ignored
  - For user accesses (MSR[PR] = 1), the Ku bit is used and Ks is ignored
- The selected key is used with the PP bits to determine if the load or store access is allowed.

Table 6-7 shows the types of accesses that are allowed for the general case (all possible Ks, Ku, and PP bit combinations).

Table 6-7. Access Protection Control with Key

Key[1]	PP[2]	Block or Page Type
0	00	Read/write
0	01	Read/write
0	10	Read/write
0	11	Read only
1	00	No access
1	01	Read only
1	10	Read/write
1	11	Read only

[1] Ks or Ku selected by state of MSR[PR]
[2] PP protection option bits in BAT array entry or PTE

Thus, the conditions that cause a protection violation are depicted in Table 6-8. Any access attempted (read or write) when the key = 1 and PP = 00, results in a protection violation exception condition. When key = 1 and PP = 01, an attempt to perform a write access causes a protection violation exception condition. When PP = 10, all accesses are allowed, and when PP = 11, write accesses always cause an exception. The 601 takes either the instruction access exception or the data access exception (for an instruction or data access, respectively) when there is an attempt to violate the memory protection.

Table 6-8 . Exception Conditions for Key and PP Combinations

Key	PP	Prohibited Accesses
1	00	Read/write
1	01	Write
x	10	None
x	11	Write

Although any combination of the Ks, Ku and PP bits is allowed, the Ks and Ku bits can be programmed so that the value of the key bit for Table 6-7 directly matches the MSR[PR] bit for the access. In this case, the encoding of Ks = 0 and Ku = 1 is used for the BAT array entry or the PTE, and the PP bits then enforce the protection options shown in Table 6-9.

Table 6-9. Access Protection Encoding of PP Bits

PP Field	Option	User Read (Key = 1)	User Write (Key = 1)	Supervisor Read (Key = 0)	Supervisor Write (Key = 0)
00	Supervisor-only	Not allowed	Not allowed	√	√
01	Supervisor-write-only	√	Not allowed	√	√
10	Both user/supervisor	√	√	√	√
11	Both read-only	√	Not allowed	√	Not allowed

However, if the setting Ks = 1 is used, supervisor accesses are treated as user reads and writes with respect to Table 6-9. Likewise, if the setting Ku = 0 is used, user accesses to the block or page are treated as supervisor accesses in relation to Table 6-9. Therefore, by modifying one of the key bits (in either the BAT register or the segment register), the way the 601 interprets accesses (supervisor or user) in a particular block or segment can easily be changed. Note, however, that only supervisor programs can modify the key bits for the block or the segment as access to the BAT registers and the segment registers is privileged.

When the memory protection mechanism prohibits a reference, one of the following occurs, depending on the type of access that was attempted:

- For data accesses, a data access exception is generated and bit 4 of DSISR is set. If the access is a store, bit 6 of DSISR is also set.
- For instruction accesses, an instruction access exception is generated and bit 4 of SRR1 is set.

See Chapter 5, “Exceptions,” for more information about these exceptions.

6.5 Selection of Address Translation Type

A description of the selection flow for determining the type of address translation to be performed is provided in Figure 6-4. The selection of address translation type differs for instruction and data accesses in that I/O controller interface accesses are not allowed for instruction accesses when instruction address translation is disabled, and I/O controller interface accesses for data occur without regard for the enabling of data address translation.

6.5.1 Address Translation Selection for Instruction Accesses

Addresses for instruction accesses are translated under control of the IT bit of MSR. When any context-synchronizing event occurs within the 601, any fetched instructions are discarded and refetched using the updated state of MSR[IT].

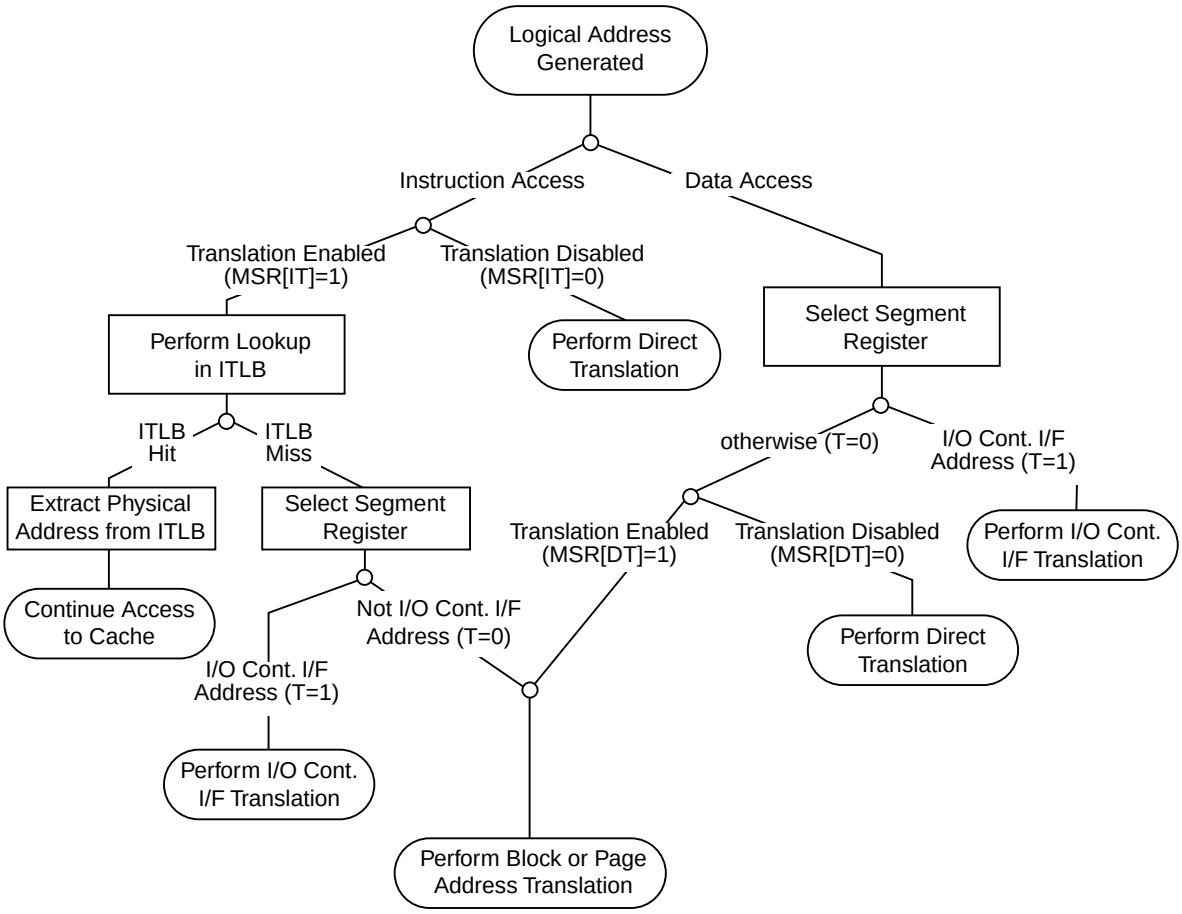


Figure 6-4. Address Translation Type Selection

6.5.1.1 Instruction Address Translation Disabled: MSR[IT] = 0

When instruction address translation is disabled, designated by MSR[IT] = 0, the logical address is interpreted as described in Section 6.6, “Direct Address Translation.”

6.5.1.2 Instruction Address Translation Enabled: MSR[IT] = 1

When instruction address translation is enabled (MSR[IT] = 1), instruction fetching occurs under control of one of the following address translation mechanisms:

- Page address translation
- Block address translation

Note that for either of these translation mechanisms, the ITLB is first checked for the address translation. If the ITLB misses, then the corresponding segment register is accessed to see if the access is to the I/O controller interface space. If the access is not to the I/O controller interface space, the page and block address translation mechanisms are used as shown in Figure 6-3.

In most cases, instructions cannot be fetched from the I/O controller interface segments and attempting to fetch an instruction from an I/O controller interface segment causes an instruction access exception. However, instruction fetches are allowed when the address translation maps to segments with the T bit set (I/O controller interface segment) and with the memory-forced I/O controller interface encoding. This case is described in more detail in Section 6.10.4, “Memory-Forced I/O Controller Interface Accesses.”

6.5.2 Address Translation Selection for Data Accesses

As shown in Figure 6-4, for data accesses, the corresponding segment register is selected independent of the DT bit of MSR. Addresses for data accesses are translated first under control of the T bit of the selected segment register. If T = 1, the translation is to an I/O controller interface segment. Otherwise, the translation is governed by the state of the DT bit of MSR. When the state of MSR[DT] changes, subsequent accesses are made using the new state of MSR[DT].

6.5.2.1 I/O Controller Interface Address Translation: T = 1 in Segment Register

I/O controller interface segments are used independently of MSR[DT]. When the segment register indexed by the upper-order logical address bits has the T bit set, the access is considered an I/O controller interface access and the I/O controller interface protocol of the external interface is used to perform the access to I/O controller space.

Note, however, that an x'07F' encoding in the BUID field of the segment register defines an access as a memory-forced I/O controller interface access. In this case, the memory protocol is used on the external interface. See Section 6.10, “I/O Controller Interface Address Translation” for more information on address translation for I/O controller interface accesses.

6.5.2.2 Data Translation Disabled: MSR[DT] = 0

When MSR[DT] = 0, the logical address is interpreted as described in Section 6.6, “Direct Address Translation.” Note that as shown in Figure 6-4, the determination of whether the address maps to an I/O controller interface segment occurs prior to the checking of MSR[DT]. Therefore, I/O controller interface address translation occurs independently of MSR[DT] for data accesses. The attempted execution of the **eciwx** or **ecowx** instructions while MSR[DT] = 0 causes boundedly undefined results.

6.5.2.3 Data Translation Enabled: MSR[DT] = 1

When data address translation is enabled (MSR[DT] = 1), data accesses employ one of the following translation mechanisms:

- Page address translation
- Block address translation

The block and page address translation mechanisms locate the physical address for the access as described in Figure 6-3.

6.6 Direct Address Translation

If address translation is disabled (MSR[IT] = 0 or MSR[DT] = 0) for a particular access (fetch, load, or store), the logical address is treated as the physical address and is passed directly to the memory subsystem as a direct address translation.

The addresses for accesses that occur in direct translation mode bypass all memory protection checks as described in Section 6.4, “General Memory Protection Mechanism,” and do not cause the recording of reference and change information (described in Section 6.8.4, “Page History Recording”). Such accesses are performed as though the memory access mode bits (“WIM”) were 001. That is, the cache is write-back and system memory does not need to be updated (W = 0), caching is enabled (I = 0), and data coherency is enforced with memory, I/O, and other processors (caches) (M = 1 so data is global).

Whenever an exception occurs, the 601 clears both the MSR[IT] and MSR[DT] bits. Therefore, at least at the beginning of all exception handlers (including reset), the 601 operates in direct address translation mode for instruction accesses (and data accesses that do not map to I/O controller interface space). If address translation is required for the exception handler code, the software must explicitly enable address translation by accessing the MSR as described in Chapter 2, “Registers and Data Types.”

Note that when translation is disabled, I/O controller interface segments can still be used for data accesses as the T bit of the segment registers is checked and segment registers with T = 1 are used independently of MSR[DT].

Note also that an attempt to fetch from, load from, or store to a physical address that is not physically present in the system may cause a machine check exception (or even a checkstop condition), depending on the response by the system for this case. See Section 5.4.2, “Machine Check Exception (x'00200'),” for more information on machine check exceptions.

6.7 Block Address Translation

The block address translation (BAT) mechanism in the 601provides a way to map ranges of logical addresses larger than a single page into contiguous areas of physical memory. Such areas can be used for data that is not subject to normal virtual memory handling (paging), such as a memory-mapped display buffer or an extremely large array of numerical data.

The implementation of block address translation in the 601 including the block protection mechanism is described followed by a block translation summary with a detailed flow diagram.

6.7.1 BAT Array Organization

The block address translation mechanism in the 601 is implemented as a software-controlled array (BAT array). The BAT array maintains the address translation information for four blocks of memory. The BAT array in the 601 is maintained by the system software and is implemented as a set of eight special-purpose registers (SPRs). Each block is defined by a pair of SPRs called upper and lower BAT registers.

The BAT registers can be read from or written to by the **mfspr** and **mtspr** instructions; access to the BAT registers is privileged. Section 6.7.3, “BAT Register Implementation of BAT Array,” gives more information about the BAT registers. Note that the BAT array entries are completely ignored for TLB invalidate operations detected on the system bus and in the execution of the **tlbie** instruction.

Figure 6-5 shows the organization of the BAT array. Four pairs of BAT registers are provided for translating instruction and data addresses. These four pairs of BAT registers comprise the four-entry fully-associative BAT array (each BAT array entry corresponds to a pair of BAT registers). The BAT array is fully-associative in that all four entries are compared with the logical address of the access to check for a match simultaneously.

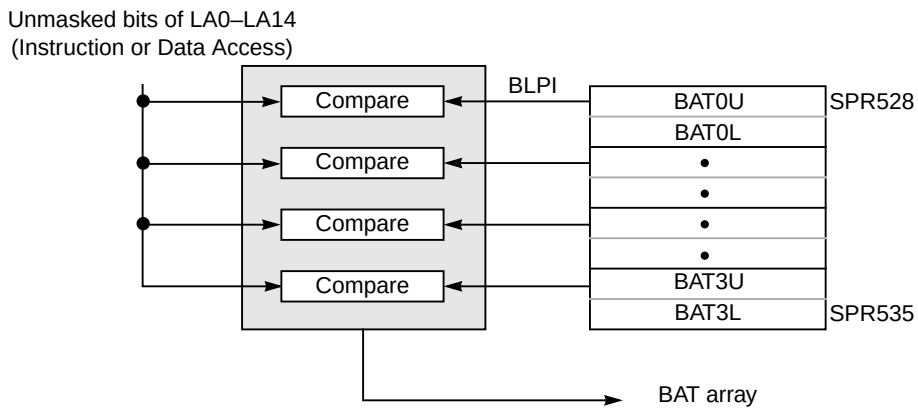


Figure 6-5. BAT Array Organization

Each pair of BAT registers defines the starting address of a block in the logical address space, the size of the block, and the start of the corresponding block in physical address space. If a logical address is within the range defined by a pair of BAT registers, its physical address is defined as the starting physical address of the block plus the lower order logical address bits.

Blocks are restricted to a finite set of sizes, from 128 Kbytes (2^{17} bytes) to 8 Mbytes (2^{23} bytes). The starting address of a block in both logical address space and physical address space is defined as a multiple of the block size.

Because the BAT array entries are used for both instruction and data access, if the same memory address is to be mapped for both instruction fetching and data load and store operations, the address mapping must only be loaded into one register pair.

It is an error for system software to program the BAT registers such that a logical address is translated by more than one BAT pair. If this occurs, the results are undefined and may include a spurious violation of the memory protection mechanism, a machine check exception, or a check stop condition.

6.7.2 Recognition of Addresses in BAT Array

The BAT array (BAT registers) is accessed in parallel with segmented address translation to determine whether a particular logical address corresponds to a block defined by the BAT array. If a logical address is within a valid BAT area, the physical address for the memory access is determined, as described in Section 6.7.5, “Block Physical Address Generation.”

Block address translation is enabled only when address translation is enabled (MSR[IT] = 1 and/or MSR[DT] = 1) and only when the indexed segment register specifies T = 0. That is, the BAT mechanism in the 601 does not apply to I/O controller interface segments (T = 1). When the segment register has T = 1, the segment register translation is used. (This is true for both I/O controller interface segments and memory-forced I/O controller interface segments.) Note, however, that this differs from other PowerPC processors, as the PowerPC operating environment architecture defines that a matching BAT array entry always takes precedence over any segment register translation, independent of the setting of the SR[T] bit.

The BAT registers and the segmented address translation mechanism can be programmed such that a particular logical address is within a BAT area and that logical address also has a segment register translation that corresponds to page address translation (T = 0 in the segment register). When this occurs, the block address translation is used as shown in Table 6-10 and the segment address translation is ignored.

Table 6-10. Address Translation Precedence for Blocks and Segments

Segment Register T bit	Address Translation
0	Matching BAT array entry prevails
1	Segment register prevails

Additionally, a block can be defined to overlay part of a segment such that the block portion is non-paged although the rest of the segment is pageable. This allows non-paged areas to be specified within a segment, and PTEs for the part of the segment overlaid by the block are not required.

6.7.3 BAT Register Implementation of BAT Array

Recall that the BAT array is comprised of four entries used for instruction accesses and data accesses. Each BAT array entry consists of a pair of BAT registers—an upper and a lower BAT register for each entry. The BAT registers are accessed with the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions and are only accessible to supervisor-level programs. See Section 3.7, "Processor Control Instructions," for a list of simplified mnemonics for use with the BAT registers.

Figure 6-6 shows the format of the upper BAT registers and Figure 6-7 shows the format of the lower BAT registers. The format and bit definitions of the upper and lower BAT registers in the 601 differs from that of the BAT registers in other PowerPC processors.

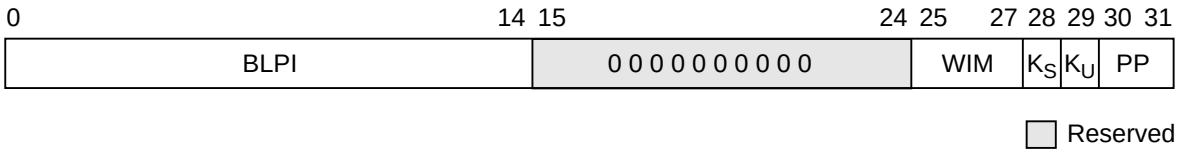


Figure 6-6. Format of Upper BAT Registers

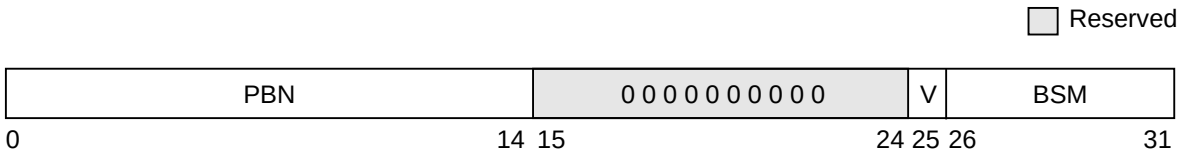


Figure 6-7. Format of Lower BAT Registers

The BAT registers contain the logical to physical address mappings for blocks of memory. This mapping information includes the logical address bits that are compared with the logical address of the access, the memory/cache access mode bits (WIM) and the protection bits for the block. In addition, the size of the block and the starting address of the block are defined by the block page number and block size mask fields.

Table 6-11 describes the bits in the upper and lower BAT registers.

Table 6-11. BAT Registers—Field and Bit Descriptions

Register	Bits	Name	Description
Upper BAT Registers	0–14	BLPI	Block logical page index. This field is compared with bits 0–14 of the logical address to determine if there is a hit in that BAT array entry.
	15–24	—	Reserved
	25–27	WIM	Memory/cache access mode bits W Write-through I Caching-inhibited M Memory coherence For detailed information about the WIM bits, see Section 6.3, “Memory/Cache Access Modes."
	28	Ks	Supervisor mode key. This bit interacts with MSR[PR] and the PP field to determine the protection for the block. For more information, see Section 6.4, “General Memory Protection Mechanism."
	29	Ku	User mode key. This bit also interacts with MSR[PR] and the PP field to determine the protection for the block. For more information, see Section 6.4, “General Memory Protection Mechanism."
	30–31	PP	Protection bits for block. This field interacts with MSR[PR] and the Ks or Ku to determine the protection for the block as described in Section 6.4, “General Memory Protection Mechanism."
Lower BAT Registers	0–14	PBN	Physical block number. This field is used in conjunction with the BSM field to generate bits 0-14 of the physical address of the block.
	15–24	—	Reserved
	25	V	BAT register pair (BAT array entry) is valid if V = 1
	26–31	BSM	Block size mask (0...5). BSM is a mask that encodes the size of the block. Values for this field are listed in Table 6-12.

The BSM field in the lower BAT register is a mask that encodes the size of the block. Table 6-12 defines the bit encodings for the BSM field of the lower BAT register. Note that the range of block sizes is a subset of that defined by the PowerPC architecture.

Table 6-12. Lower BAT Register Block Size Mask Encodings

Block Size	BSM Encoding
128 Kbytes	00 0000
256 Kbytes	00 0001
512 Kbytes	00 0011
1 Mbyte	00 0111
2 Mbytes	00 1111
4 Mbytes	01 1111
8 Mbytes	11 1111

Only the values shown in Table 6-12 are valid for BSM. A logical address is determined to be within a BAT area if the appropriate bits (determined by the BSM field) of the logical address matches the value in the BLPI field of the upper BAT register, and if the valid bit (V) of the corresponding lower BAT register is set.

The boundary between the strings of zeros and ones in the BSM field determines the bits of the logical address that are used in the comparison with the BLPI field to determine if there is a hit in that BAT array entry. The rightmost bit of the BSM field is aligned with bit 14 of the logical address; bits of the logical address corresponding to ones in the BSM field are then forced to zero for the comparison.

The value loaded into the BSM field determines both the length of the block and the alignment of the block in both logical address space and physical address space. The values loaded into the BLPI and PBN fields must have at least as many low-order zeros as there are ones in BSM.

6.7.4 Block Memory Protection

If a logical address is determined to be within a block defined by the BAT array, the access is next validated by the memory protection mechanism. If this protection mechanism prohibits the access, a block protection violation exception condition (data access exception or instruction access exception) is generated.

The block protection mechanism provides protection at the granularity defined by the block size (128 Kbyte to 8 Mbyte) and is described in Section 6.4, “General Memory Protection Mechanism.”

The Ks, Ku, and PP bits are located in the upper BAT register for block address translation. Note, however, that the block protection defined by the PowerPC architecture’s operating environment implements valid bits rather than key bits in defining user and supervisor blocks.

When the block protection mechanism prohibits a reference, one of the following occurs, depending on the type of access that was attempted:

- For data accesses, a data access exception is generated and bit 4 of DSISR is set. If the access was a store, bit 6 of DSISR is additionally set.
- For instruction accesses, an instruction access exception is generated and bit 4 of SRR1 is set.

6.7.5 Block Physical Address Generation

If the block protection mechanism validates the access, a physical address is formed as shown in Figure 6-8. Bits in the logical address corresponding to ones in the BSM field, concatenated with the 17 lower-order bits of the logical address form the offset within the block of memory in the case of a hit. Bits in the logical address corresponding to zeros in the BSM field are then logically ORed with the corresponding bits in the PBN field to form

the next higher-order bits of the physical address. Finally, the highest-order nine bits of the PBN field form bits 0–8 of the physical address (PA0–PA8).

Access to the physical memory within the block is made according to the memory/cache access mode defined by the WIM bits in the upper BAT register. These bits apply to the entire block rather than to an individual page and are described in Section 6.3, “Memory/Cache Access Modes.”

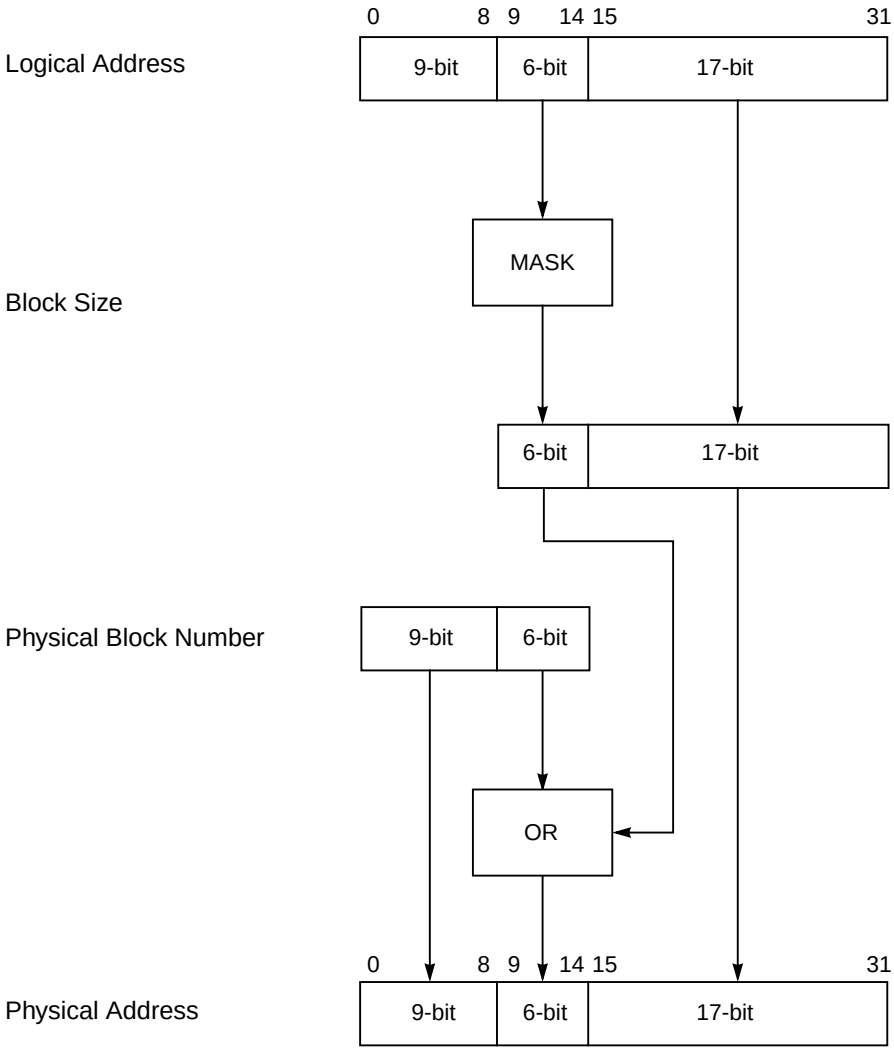


Figure 6-8. Block Physical Address Generation

6.7.6 Block Address Translation Summary

Figure 6-9 provides the detailed flow for the block address translation mechanism. Figure 6-9 is an expansion of the “BAT Array Hit” branch of Figure 6-3. Note that if the **dcbz** instruction is attempted to be executed with either W = 1 or I = 1, the alignment exception is generated.

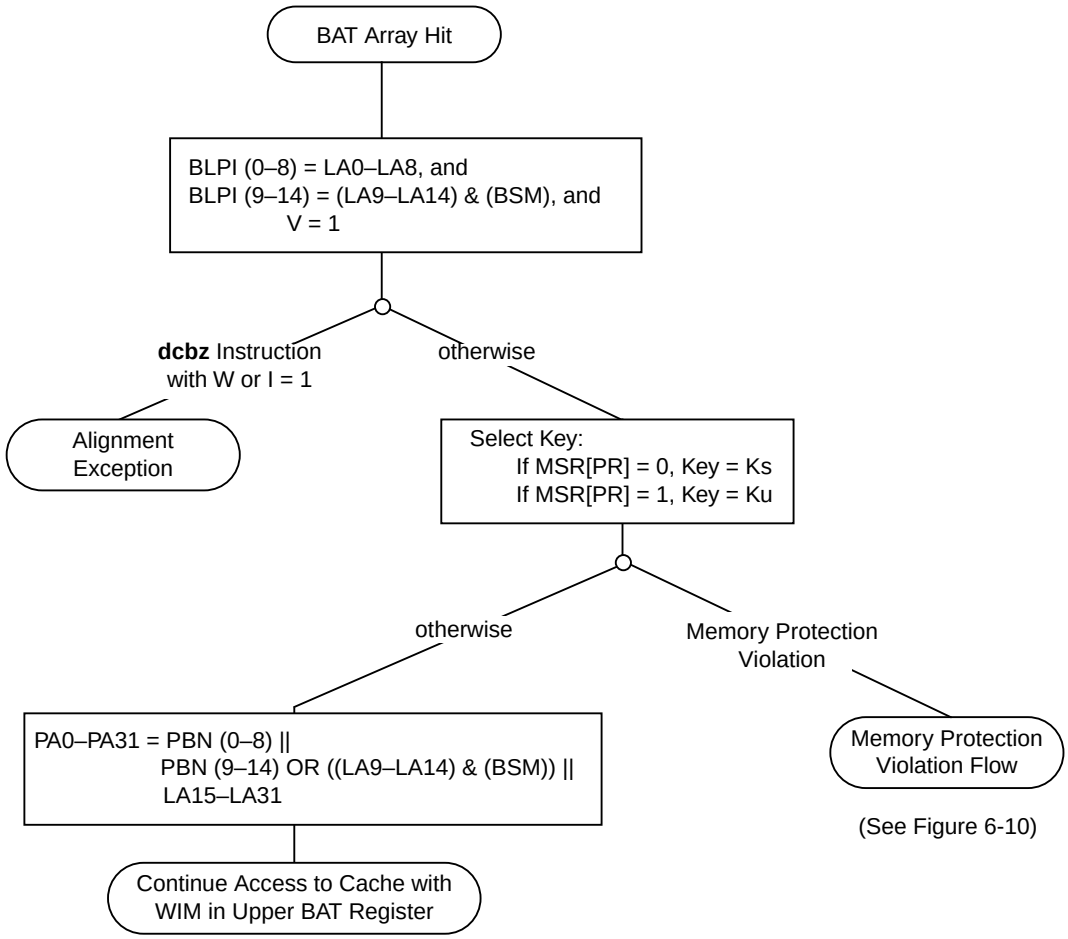


Figure 6-9. Block Address Translation Flow

Figure 6-10 further expands on the determination of a memory protection violation and the subsequent actions taken by the processor in this case. Note that in the case of a memory protection violation for the attempted execution of a **dcbt** of **dcbtst** instruction, the translation is aborted and the instruction executes as a no-op (no violation is reported).

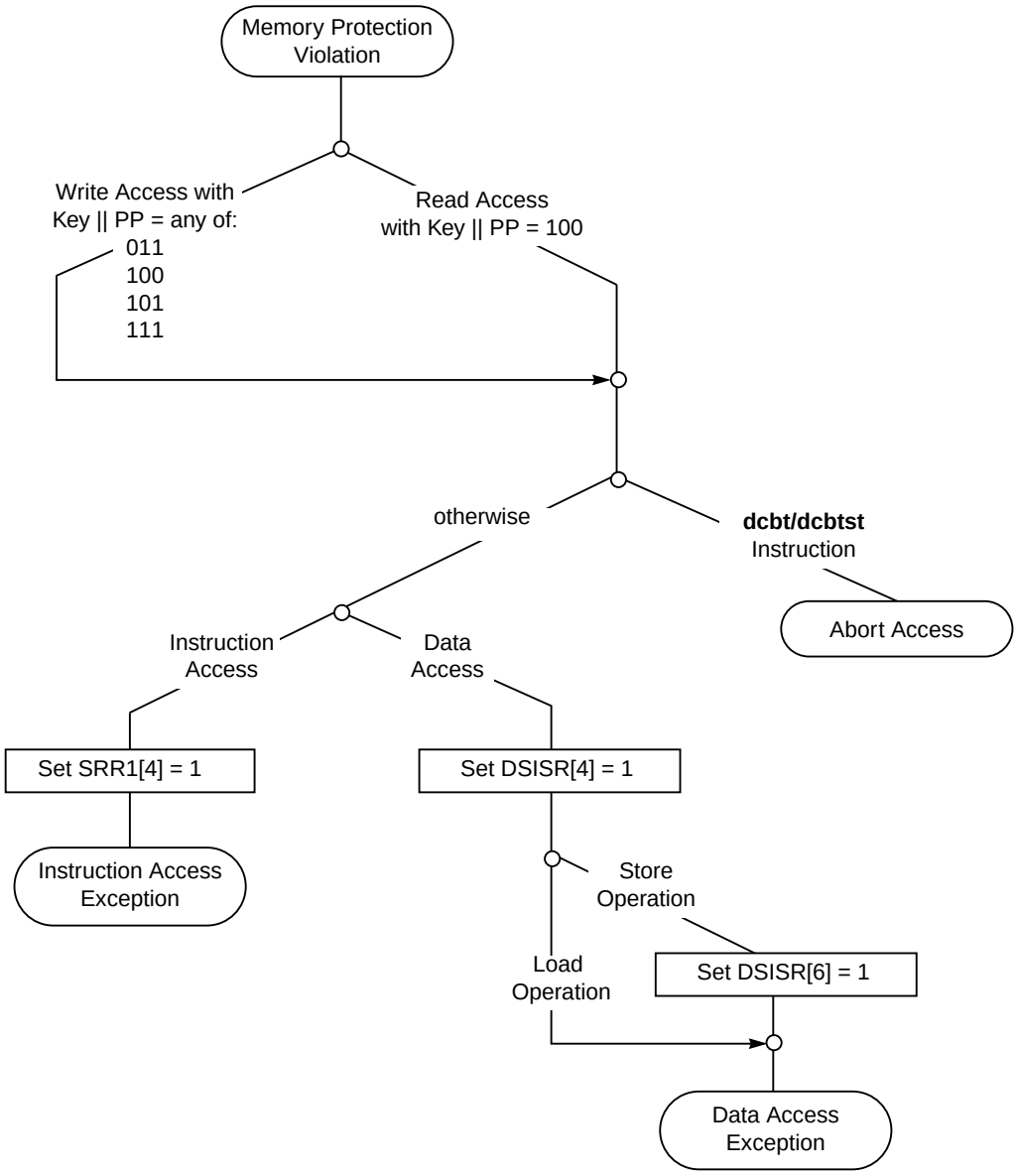


Figure 6-10. Memory Protection Violation Flow

6.8 Memory Segment Model

Memory in the 601 is divided into sixteen 256-Mbyte segments. The segmented memory model of the 601 provides a way to map 4-Kbyte pages of logical addresses to 4-Kbyte pages in physical memory (page address translation), while providing the programming flexibility afforded by a large virtual address (52 bits).

The page address translation mechanism may be superseded by the block address translation (BAT) mechanism described in Section 6.7, “Block Address Translation.” If not, the translation proceeds in two steps: from logical address to the 52-bit virtual address (which never exists as a specific entity but can be considered to be the concatenation of the virtual page number and the byte offset within a page), and from virtual address to physical address.

The implementation of the page address translation mechanism in the 601 is described followed by a summary of page address translation with a detailed flow diagram.

6.8.1 Page Address Translation Resources

The page address translation performed by the 601 is facilitated by the 16 segment registers, which provide virtual address and protection information, and by the UTLB, which maintains 256 recently-used page table entries (PTEs). The segment registers are programmed by the operating system to provide the virtual ID for a segment. In addition, the operating system also creates the page tables in memory that provide the logical to physical address mappings (in the form of PTEs) for the pages in memory.

As shown in Figure 6-11, when an access occurs, one of the 16 segment registers is selected with LA0–LA3. For page address translation, the virtual ID field in the segment register is then compared with the corresponding field of the two entries in the UTLB selected by LA13–LA19 (one entry corresponding to set 0 and the other to set 1). In the case of a hit, the result of this comparison is then used to select which physical page number (PPN) (from set 0 or 1) to use for the access.

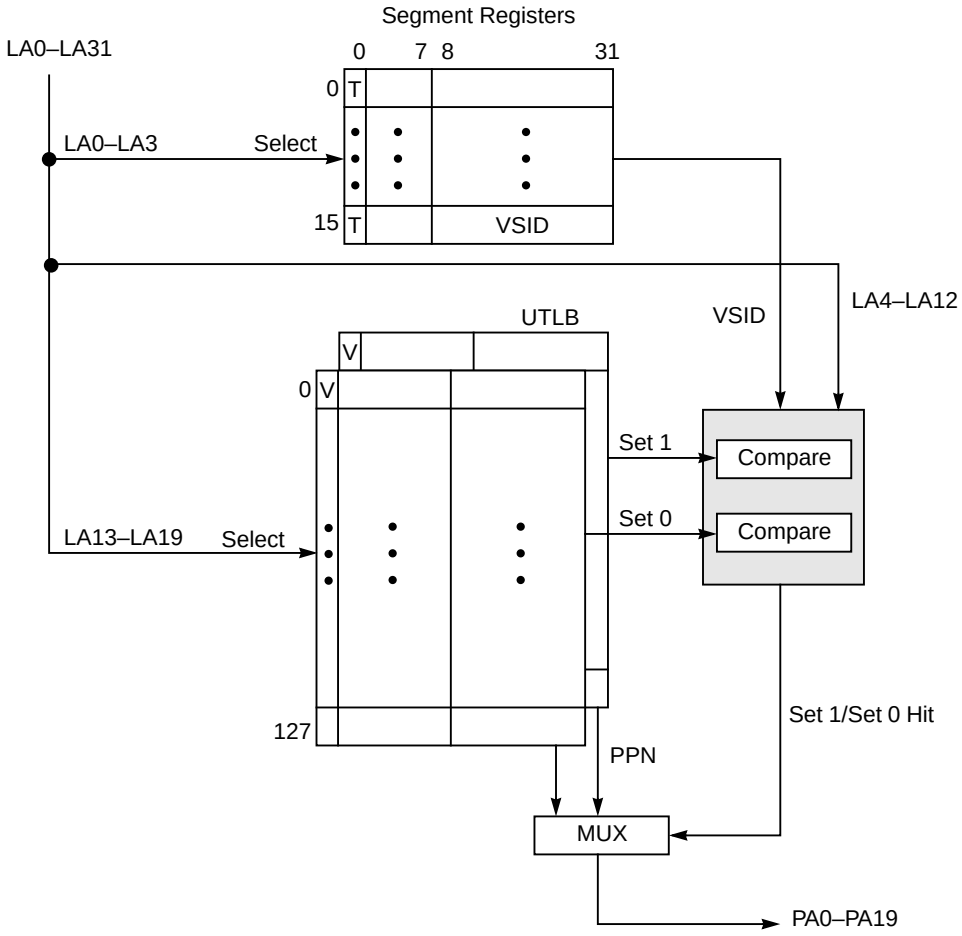


Figure 6-11. Segment Register and UTLB Organization

In the case of a UTLB miss, the table search hardware in the MMU automatically searches for the required PTE in the page tables in memory. The MMU then automatically loads the UTLB with the PTE and the address translation is performed. Note that for an instruction access, the required PTE is also loaded into the ITLB for future use.

If the table search operations fail to locate the required PTE, then the appropriate exception (instruction access exception or data access exception) is taken. See Section 6.9.2, “Page Table Search Operation” for more information on the context for these exception conditions.

6.8.2 Recognition of Addresses in Segments

As described in Section 6.7.2, “Recognition of Addresses in BAT Array,” the block and page translation mechanisms operate in parallel such that if the logical address of an access hits in the BAT array (the address can be translated as a block address), the selected segment register is ignored, unless T = 1 in the segment register.

Segments in the 601 are defined as one of the following two types:

- Memory segment—A logical address in these segments represents a virtual address that is used to define the physical address of the page. Note that for best performance, I/O devices can be memory-mapped (SR[T] = 0).
- I/O controller interface segment—References made to I/O controller interface segments use the I/O controller interface bus protocol described in Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations,” and do not use the virtual paging mechanism of the 601. See Section 6.10, “I/O Controller Interface Address Translation,” for a complete description of the mapping of I/O controller interface segments.

The T bit in a segment register selects between memory segments and I/O controller interface segments, as shown in Table 6-13.

Table 6-13. Segment Register Types

Segment Register T Bit	Segment Type
0	Memory segment
1	I/O controller interface segment

The types of address translation used by the 601 MMU are shown in the flow diagram of Figure 6-4.

6.8.2.1 Selection of Memory Segments

All accesses generated by the 601 index into the array of segment registers and select one of the 16 with LA0–LA3. If MSR[IT] = 0 or MSR[DT] = 0 for an instruction or data access, respectively, then direct address translation is performed as described in Section 6.6, “Direct Address Translation.” Otherwise, if T = 0 for the selected segment register, the access maps to memory space and page address translation is performed.

After a memory segment is selected, the 601 creates the 52-bit virtual address for the segment and searches for the PTE (first in the UTLB, then in the page tables in memory) that dictates the physical page number to be used for the access. Note that I/O devices can easily be mapped into memory space and used as memory-mapped I/O.

6.8.2.2 Selection of I/O Controller Interface Segments

All data accesses generated by the 601 index into the array of segment registers and select one of the 16 with LA0–LA3. If T = 1 for the selected segment register, the access maps to the I/O controller interface and the access proceeds as described in Section 6.10, “I/O Controller Interface Address Translation.” This is true, even if data address translation is disabled (MSR[DT] = 0).

For the case of instruction accesses, however, the 601 checks the state of the MSR[IT] bit before checking the T bit in the segment register. If MSR[IT] = 0, direct address translation

is performed as described in Section 6.6, “Direct Address Translation.” If MSR[IT] = 1 and the T bit of the selected segment register is set, then the MMU further checks the state of the BUID field of the segment register. If BUID has the encoding x'07F', the segment is designated as a memory-forced I/O controller interface segment and the instruction fetch occurs as described in Section 6.10.4, “Memory-Forced I/O Controller Interface Accesses.” Otherwise, an instruction access exception occurs.

6.8.3 Page Address Translation

The first step in page address translation is the conversion of the 32-bit logical address of an access into the 52-bit virtual address. The virtual address is then used to locate the PTE either in the UTLB or in the page tables in memory. The physical page number is then extracted from the PTE and used in the formation of the physical address of the access.

Figure 6-12 shows the translation of a logical address to a physical address as follows:

- Bits 0–3 of the logical address comprise the segment register number used to select a segment register, from which the virtual segment ID (VSID) is extracted.
- Bits 4–19 of the logical address correspond to the page number within the segment; these are concatenated with the VSID from the segment register to form the virtual page number (VPN). The VPN is used to search for the PTE in either the UTLB or the page table. The PTE then provides the physical page number (PPN).
- Bits 20–31 of the logical address are the byte offset within the page; these are concatenated with the PPN field of a PTE to form the physical address used to access memory.

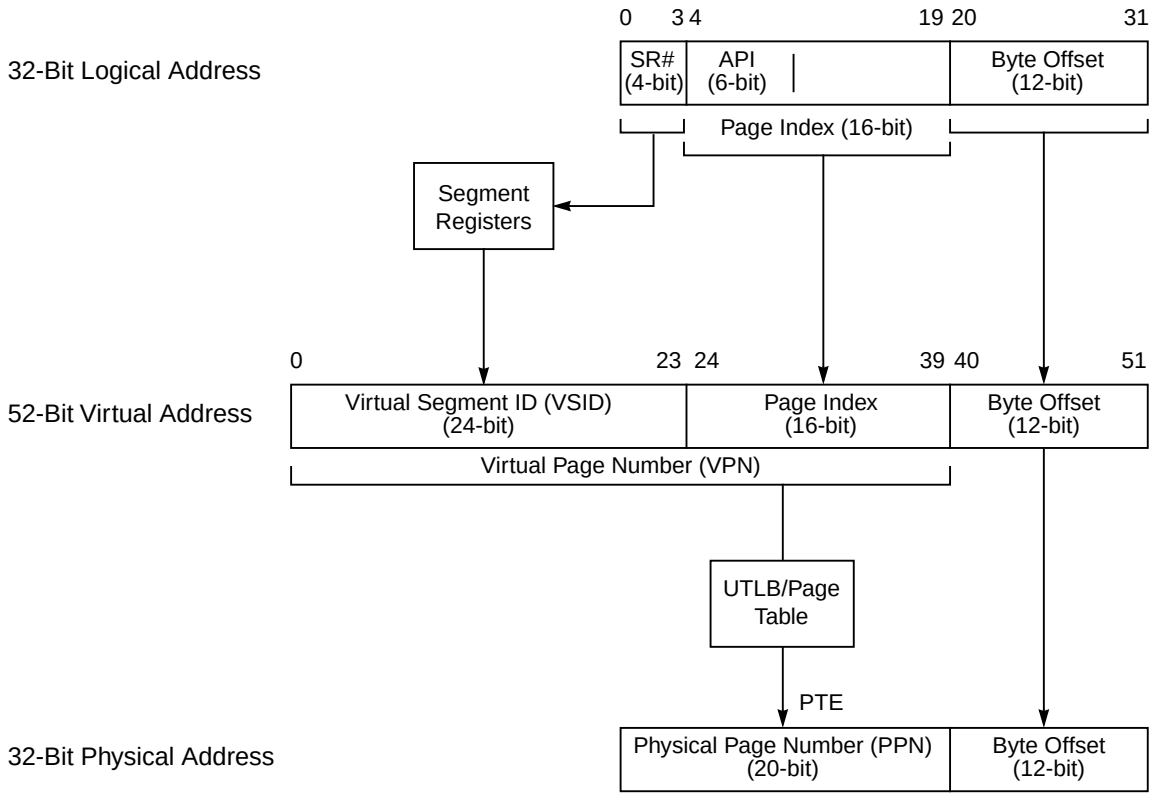


Figure 6-12. Page Address Translation Overview

6.8.3.1 Segment Register Definition

The fields in the 16 segment registers are interpreted differently depending on the value of bit 0 (the T bit). When T = 1, the segment register defines an I/O controller interface segment, and the format is described in Section 6.10.1, “Segment Register Format for I/O Controller Interface.” Figure 6-13 shows the format of a segment register used in page address translation (T = 0).

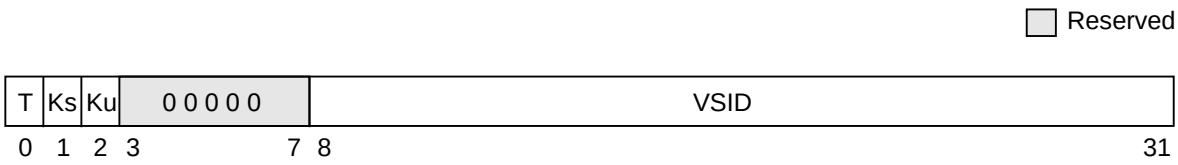


Figure 6-13. Segment Register Format for Page Address Translation

Table 6-14 provides the definitions of the segment register bits for page address translation.

Table 6-14. Segment Register Bit Definition for Page Address Translation

Bit	Name	Description
0	T	T = 0 selects this format
1	Ks	Supervisor-state protection key
2	Ku	User-state protection key
3–7	—	Reserved
8–31	VSID	Virtual segment ID

The Ks and Ku bits partially define the access protection for the pages within the segment. The page protection provided in the 601 is described in Section 6.8.5, “Page Memory Protection.” The virtual segment ID field is used as the high-order bits of the virtual page number (VPN) as shown in Figure 6-12.

The segment registers are programmed with 601-specific instructions that implicitly reference the segment registers. The 601 segment register instructions are summarized in Table 6-15. These instructions are privileged in that they are executable only while operating in supervisor mode. See Section 2.3.3.1, “Synchronization for Supervisor-Level SPRs and Segment Registers” for information about the synchronization requirements when modifying the segment registers. See Chapter 10, “Instruction Set,” for more detail on the encodings of these instructions.

Table 6-15. Segment Register Instructions

Instruction	Description
mtsr SR#,**r**S	Move to Segment Register SR[SR#]← **r**S
mtsrin rS,**r**B	Move to Segment Register Indirect SR[**r**B[0–3]]←**r**S
mfsr rD,SR#	Move from Segment Register **r**D←SR[SR#]
mfsrin rD,**r**B	Move from Segment Register Indirect **r**D←SR[**r**B[0–3]]

These instructions are specific to the 601 and not guaranteed on other PowerPC processors.

6.8.3.2 Page Table Entry (PTE) Format

Page table entries (PTEs) are generated and placed in page tables in memory by the operating system using the hashing algorithm described in Section 6.9.1.3, “Hashing Functions.” Each PTE is a 64-bit entity (two words) that maps one virtual page number (VPN) to one physical page number (PPN). Information in the PTE controls the table search process and provides input to the memory protection mechanism. Figure 6-14 shows the format of both words that comprise a PTE.

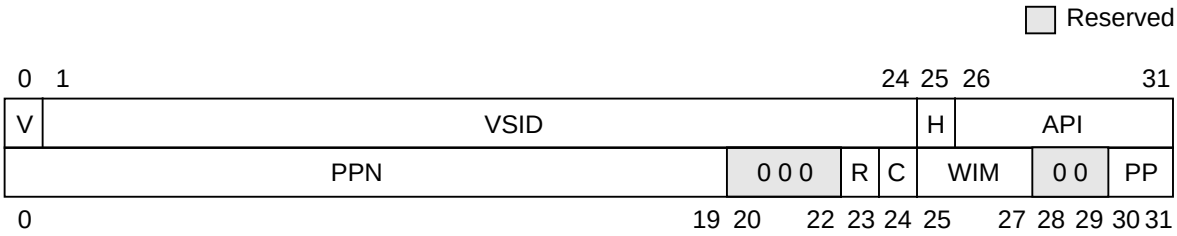


Figure 6-14. Page Table Entry Format

Table 6-16 lists the bit definitions for each word in a PTE.

Table 6-16. PTE Bit Definitions

Word	Bit	Name	Description
0	0	V	Entry valid (V = 1) or invalid (V = 0)
	1–24	VSID	Virtual segment ID
	25	H	Hash function identifier
	26–31	API	Abbreviated page index
1	0–19	PPN	Physical page number
	20–22	—	Reserved
	23	R	Reference bit
	24	C	Change bit
	25–27	WIM	Memory/cache control bits
	28–29	—	Reserved
	30–31	PP	Page protection bits

All other fields are reserved.

The PTE contains an abbreviated page index rather than the complete page index field because at least ten of the low-order bits of the page index are used in the hash function to select a PTE group (PTEG) address (PTEG addresses define the location of a PTE). These bits are not repeated in the PTEs of that PTEG. However, when a PTE is loaded into the UTLB, the entire page index (PI) field must be loaded into the UTLB entry. The PI field is then compared with incoming logical address bits LA4–LA12 (LA13–LA16 select the UTLB entries to be compared) to determine if there is a hit.

The virtual segment ID field corresponds to the high-order bits of the virtual page number (VPN), and, along with the H bit, it is used to locate the PTE. The R and C bits maintain history information for the page as described in Section 6.8.4, “Page History Recording.” The WIM bits define the memory/cache control mode for accesses to the page. Finally, the PP bits define the remaining access protection constraints for the page. The page protection provided in the 601 is described in Section 6.8.5, “Page Memory Protection.”

Conceptually, the page table is searched by the address translation hardware to translate the address of every reference. For performance reasons, the UTLB maintains recently-used PTEs so that the table search time is eliminated for most accesses. The UTLB is searched for the address translation first. If the PTE is found, then no page table search is performed. As a result, software that changes the page tables in any way must perform the appropriate TLB invalidate operations to keep the UTLB (and ITLB) coherent with respect to the page tables.

6.8.4 Page History Recording

Reference (R) and change (C) bits are automatically maintained by the 601 in the PTE for each physical page (for accesses made with page table address translation) to keep history information about the page. This information can then be used by the operating system to determine which areas of memory to write back to disk when new pages must be allocated in main memory. Reference and change recording is not performed for translations made with the BAT or for accesses that correspond to I/O controller interface (T = 1) segments. Furthermore, R and C bits are maintained only for accesses made while address translation is enabled (MSR[IT] = 1 or MSR[DT] = 1).

The reference and change bits are automatically updated by the 601 under the following circumstances:

- For UTLB hits, if the C bit requires updating (as shown in Table 6-16).
- For UTLB misses, when a table search is in progress to locate a PTE. The R and C bits are updated (set, if required) to reflect the status of the page based on this access.

Table 6-17. Table Search Operations to Update History Bits—UTLB Hit Case

R and C bits in UTLB entry	PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Action
00	Combination doesn’t occur
01	Combination doesn’t occur
10	Read: No special action Write: Table search operation to update C
11	No special action for read or write

Note that the processor updates the C bit based only on the status of the C bit in the UTLB entry in the case of a UTLB hit (the R bit is assumed to be set in the page tables if there is a UTLB hit). Therefore, when software clears the R and C bits in the page tables in memory, it must invalidate the UTLB entries associated with the pages whose reference and change bits were cleared. See Section 6.9.3, “Page Table Updates,” for all of the constraints imposed on the software when updating the reference and change bits in the page tables.

The R bit or the C bit for a page is not set by the execution of the Data Cache Block Touch instructions (**dcbt**, or **dcbtst**).

6.8.4.1 Reference Bit

The reference bit of a page is located both in the PTE in the page table and in the copy of the PTE loaded into the UTLB. Every time a page is referenced (with a read or write access) the reference bit is set in the page table by the 601. Because the reference to a page is what causes a PTE to be loaded into the UTLB, the reference bit in all UTLB entries is always set. The processor never automatically clears the reference bit.

The reference bit is only a hint to the operating system about the activity of a page. At times, the reference bit may be set although the access was not logically required by the program or even if the access was prevented by memory protection. Examples of this include the following:

- Fetching of instructions not subsequently executed
- Accesses that cause exceptions and are not completed

6.8.4.2 Change Bit

The change bit of a page is also located both in the PTE in the page table and in the copy of the PTE loaded into the UTLB. Whenever a data store instruction is executed successfully, if the UTLB search (for page address translation) results in a hit, the change bit in the matching UTLB entry is checked. If it is already set, the processor does not change the C bit. If the UTLB change bit is 0, it is set and a table search operation is performed to set the C bit also in the corresponding PTE in the page table.

The change bit (in both the UTLB and the PTE in the page tables) is set only when a store operation is allowed by the page memory protection mechanism.

The automatic update of the reference and change bits in the 601 is performed with single-beat read and write transactions on the bus (not with atomic read/modify/write operations).

During a table search operation, PTEs are fetched as global, nonexclusive read transactions (not as read-with-intent-to-modify transactions). This reduces cache thrashing in other processors (in a multiprocessor system) caused by UTLB load operations because other processors do not have to invalidate their resident copies of the PTEs. The response on the bus to a PTE load transaction should then be exclusive ($\overline{\text{SHD}}$ signal not asserted) if no other processor has a copy. Because PTEs are considered as cacheable, the MESI protocol of the cache then ensures that coherency is maintained among multiple processors for C bit updates to the page tables.

6.8.5 Page Memory Protection

Similar to the block memory protection mechanism, the page memory protection of the 601 provides selective access to each page in memory. If a logical address is determined to be within a page defined by the segment registers and an entry in the UTLB, the access is next validated by the page protection mechanism. If this protection mechanism prohibits the access, a page protection violation (data access exception or instruction access exception) is generated.

When the page protection mechanism prohibits a reference, one of the following occurs, depending on the type of access that was attempted.

- For data accesses, a data access exception is generated and bit 4 of DSISR is set. If the access was a store, bit 6 of DSISR is additionally set.
- For instruction accesses, an instruction access exception is generated and bit 4 of SRR1 is set.

See Chapter 5, “Exceptions,” for more information on these types of exceptions

A store operation that is not permitted because of the page protection mechanism does not cause the change (C) bit to be set in the PTE (in either the UTLB or in the page tables in memory); however, a prohibited store access may cause a PTE to be loaded into the UTLB and consequently cause the reference bit to be set in a PTE (both in the UTLB and in the page table in memory).

6.8.6 Page Address Translation Summary

Figure 6-15 provides the detailed flow for the page address translation mechanism. The figure is an expansion of the “UTLB Hit” branch of Figure 6-3. The detailed flow for the “UTLB Miss” branch of Figure 6-3 is described in Section 6.9.2, “Page Table Search Operation." Note that as in the case of block address translation, if the **dcbz** instruction is attempted to be executed with either W = 1 or I = 1, the alignment exception is generated. Also note that the memory protection violation flow for page address translation is identical to that of the block memory protection violation and is provided in Figure 6-10.

6.9 Hashed Page Tables

When an access that is to be translated by the page address translation mechanism results in a miss in the UTLB (a PTE corresponding to the VSID of the segment register is not resident in either of the UTLB entries indexed by LA13–LA19), the 601 automatically searches the page tables set up by the operating system in main memory.

The algorithm used by the processor in searching the page tables includes a hashing function on some of the virtual address bits. Thus, the addresses for PTEs are allocated more evenly within the page tables and the hit rate of the page tables is maximized. This algorithm must be synthesized by the operating system for it to correctly place the page table entries in main memory.

This section describes the format of the page tables and the algorithm used to access them. In addition, the constraints imposed on the software in updating the page tables (and other MMU resources) are described.

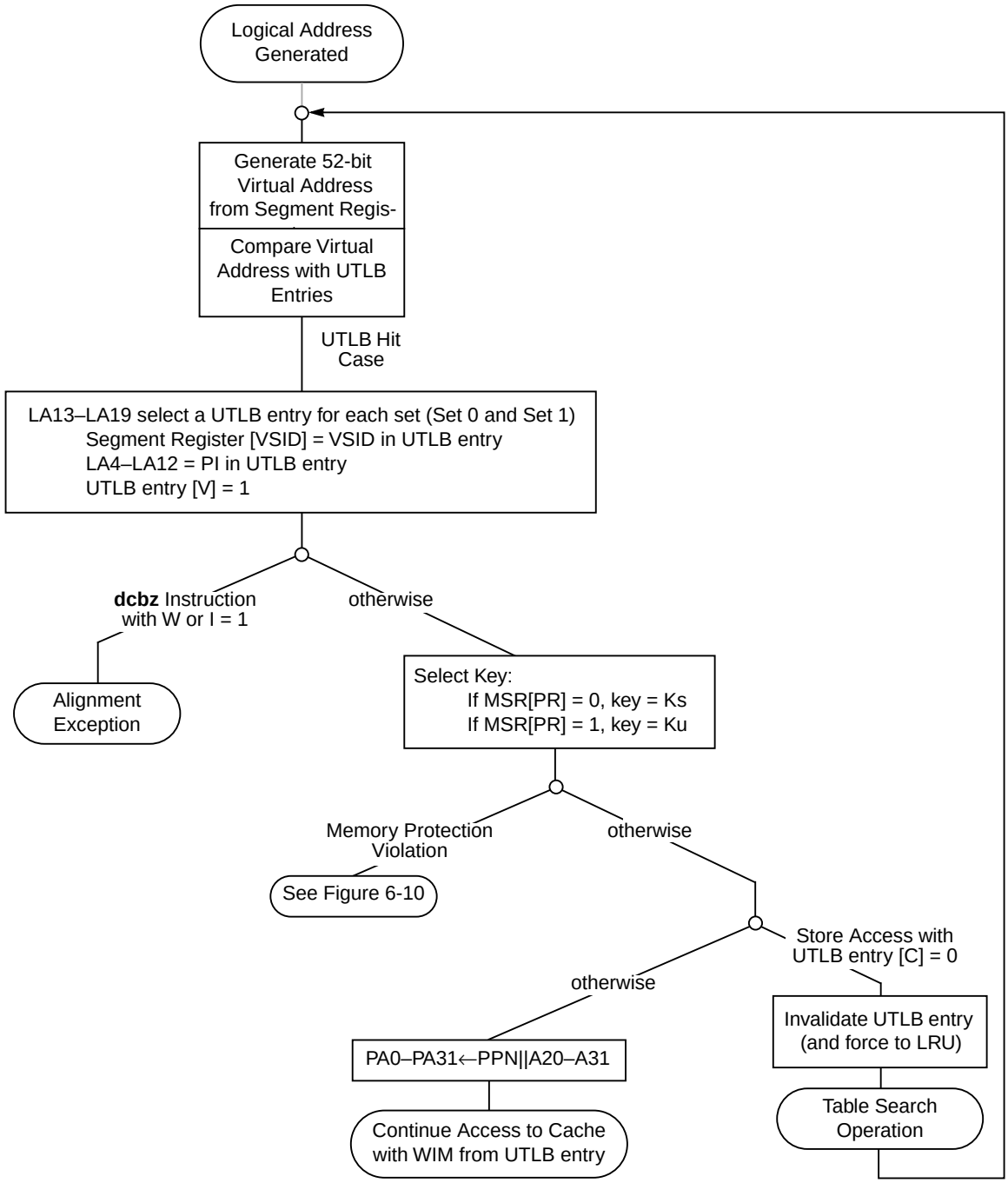


Figure 6-15. Page Address Translation Flow—UTLB Hit

6.9.1 Page Table Definition

The hashed page table is a variable-sized data structure that defines the mapping between virtual page numbers and physical page numbers. The page table size is a power of 2, and its starting address is a multiple of its size.

The page table contains a number of page table entry groups (PTEGs). A PTEG contains eight page table entries (PTEs) of eight bytes each; therefore, each PTEG is 64 bytes long. PTEG addresses are entry points for table search operations. Figure 6-16 shows two PTEG addresses (PTEGaddr1 and PTEGaddr2) where a given PTE may reside.

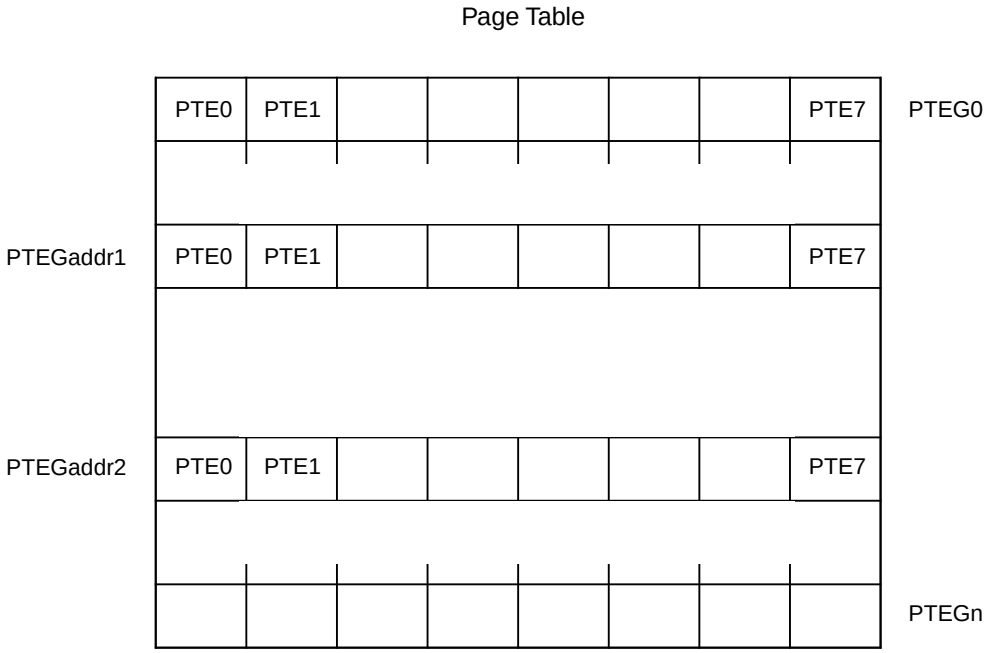


Figure 6-16. Page Table Definitions

A given PTE can reside in one of two possible PTEGS. For each PTEG address, there is a complementary PTEG address—one is the primary PTEG and the other is the secondary PTEG. Additionally, a given PTE can reside in any of the PTE locations within an addressed PTEG. Thus, a given PTE may reside in one of 16 possible locations within the page table. If a given PTE is not resident within either the primary or secondary PTEG, a page table miss occurs, corresponding to a page fault condition.

A table search operation is defined as the search of a PTE within a primary and secondary PTEG. When a table search operation commences, a primary hashing function is performed on the virtual address. The output of the hashing function is then concatenated with bits (some of them masked) programmed into the SDR1 register by the operating system to create the physical address of the primary PTEG. The PTEs in the PTEG are then checked, one by one, to see if there is a hit within the PTEG. In case the PTE is not located during this PTEG, a secondary hashing function is performed, a new physical address is generated

for the PTEG, and the PTE is searched for again, this time using the secondary PTEG address.

Note, however, that although a given PTE may reside in one of 16 possible locations, an address that is a primary PTEG address for some accesses also functions as a secondary PTEG address for a second set of accesses (as defined by the secondary hashing function). Therefore, these 16 possible locations are really shared by two different sets of logical addresses. Section 6.9.1.5.1, “Page Table Structure Example” illustrates how PTEs map into the 16 possible locations as primary and secondary PTEs.

6.9.1.1 Table Search Description Register (SDR1)

The SDR1 register contains the control information for the table structure in that it defines the highest order bits for the physical base address of the page table and it defines the size of the table. The format of the SDR1 register is shown in Figure 6-17 and the bit settings are described in Table 6-18.

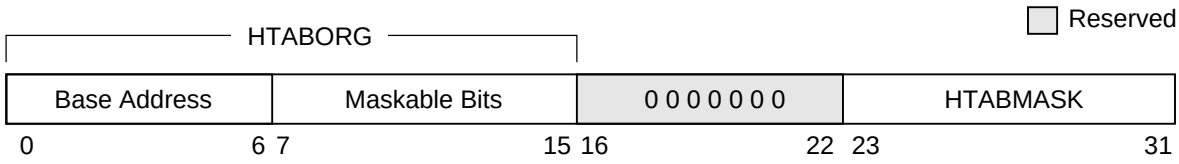


Figure 6-17. SDR1 Register Format

Table 6-18. SDR1 Register Bit Settings

Bits	Name	Description
0–15	HTABORG	Physical base address of page table (Base Address bits plus Maskable bits)
16–22	—	Reserved
23–31	HTABMASK	Mask for page table address

The HTABORG field in SDR1 contains the high-order 7–16 bits of the 32-bit physical address of the page table. Therefore, the beginning of the page table lies on a 2^{16} byte (64 Kbyte) boundary at a minimum.

A page table can be any size 2^n where $16 \le n \le 25$. The HTABMASK field in SDR1 contains a mask value that determines how many bits from the output of the hashing function are used as the page table index. This mask must be of the form b'00...011...1' (a string of 0 bits followed by a string of 1 bits). As the table size increases, more bits are used from the output of the hashing function to index into the table. The 1 bits in HTABMASK determine how many additional bits (beyond the minimum of 10) from the hash are used as the index; the HTABORG field must have the same number of lower-order bits equal to 0 as the HTABMASK field has lower-order bits equal to 1.

6.9.1.2 Page Table Size

The number of entries in the page table directly affects performance because it influences the hit ratio in the page table and thus the rate of page fault exception conditions. If the table is too small, not all virtual pages that have physical page frames assigned may be mapped via the page table. This can happen if there are more than 16 entries that map to the same primary/secondary pair of PTEGs; in this case, many hash collisions may occur.

The minimum allowable size for a page table is 64 Kbytes (2^{10} PTEGs of 64 bytes each). However, it is recommended that the total number of PTEGs (primary plus secondary) in the page table be greater than half the number of physical page frames to be mapped. While avoidance of hash collisions cannot be guaranteed for any size page table, making the page table larger than the recommended minimum size reduces the frequency of such collisions, by making the primary PTEGs more sparsely populated, and further reducing the need to use the secondary PTEGs.

Table 6-18 shows some example sizes for total main memory. The recommended minimum page table size for these example memory sizes are then outlined, along with their corresponding HTABORG and HTABMASK settings. Note that systems with less than eight Mbytes of main memory may be designed with the 601, but the minimum amount of memory that can be used for the page tables is 64 Kbytes.

Table 6-19. Recommended Page Table Sizes (Minimum)

Total Main Memory	Recommended Minimum			Settings for Recommended Minimum	
	Memory for Page Tables	Number of Mapped Pages (PTEs)	Number of PTEGs	HTABORG (Maskable bits 7-15)	HTABMASK
8 Mbytes (2^{23})	64 Kbytes (2^{16})	2^{13}	2^{10}	x xxxx xxxx	0 0000 0000
16 Mbytes (2^{24})	128 Kbytes (2^{17})	2^{14}	2^{11}	x xxxx xxx0	0 0000 0001
32 Mbytes (2^{25})	256 Kbytes (2^{18})	2^{15}	2^{12}	x xxxx xx00	0 0000 0011
64 Mbytes (2^{26})	512 Kbytes (2^{19})	2^{16}	2^{13}	x xxxx x000	0 0000 0111
128 Mbytes (2^{27})	1 Mbytes (2^{20})	2^{17}	2^{14}	x xxxx 0000	0 0000 1111
256 Mbytes (2^{28})	2 Mbytes (2^{21})	2^{18}	2^{15}	x xxx0 0000	0 0001 1111
512 Mbytes (2^{29})	4 Mbytes (2^{22})	2^{19}	2^{16}	x xx00 0000	0 0011 1111
1 Gbytes (2^{30})	8 Mbytes (2^{23})	2^{20}	2^{17}	x x000 0000	0 0111 1111
2 Gbytes (2^{31})	16 Mbytes (2^{24})	2^{21}	2^{18}	x 0000 0000	0 1111 1111
4 Gbytes (2^{32})	32 Mbytes (2^{25})	2^{22}	2^{19}	0 0000 0000	1 1111 1111

As an example, if the physical memory size is 2^{29} bytes (512 Mbyte), then there are 2^{29}–2^{12} (4 Kbyte page size) = 2^{17} (128 Kbyte) total page frames. If this number of page frames

is divided by 2, the resultant minimum recommended page table size is 2^{16} PTEGs, or 2^{22} bytes (4 Mbytes) of memory for the page tables.

6.9.1.3 Hashing Functions

The processor uses two different hashing functions, a primary and a secondary, in the creation of the physical addresses used in a page table search operation. These hashing functions efficiently distribute the PTEs within the page table, in that there are two possible PTEGs where a given PTE can reside. Additionally, there are eight possible PTE locations within a PTEG where a given PTE can reside. If a PTE is not found using the primary hashing function, the secondary hashing function is performed, and the secondary PTEG is searched. Note that these two functions must also be used by the operating system to appropriately set up the page tables in memory.

The use of the two hashing functions provides a high probability that a required PTE is resident in the page tables, without requiring the definition of all possible PTEs in main memory. However, if a PTE is not found in the secondary PTEG, then a page fault occurs and an exception is taken. Thus, the required PTE can then be placed into either the primary or secondary PTEG by the system software, and on the next UTLB miss to this page, the PTE will be found.

The address of a page table is derived from the HTABORG field of the SDR1 register, and the output of the corresponding hashing function (primary hashing function for primary PTEG and secondary hashing function for a secondary PTEG). The value in HTABMASK determines how many of the higher-order hash value bits are masked and how many are used in the generation of the physical address of the page table.

Figure 6-18 depicts the hashing functions used by the 601. The inputs to the primary hashing function are the lower-order 19 bits of the VSID field of the selected segment register (bits 5–23 of the 52-bit virtual address), and the page index field of the logical address (bits 24–39 of the virtual address) concatenated with three zero higher-order bits. The XOR of these two values generates the output of the primary hashing function (hash value 1).

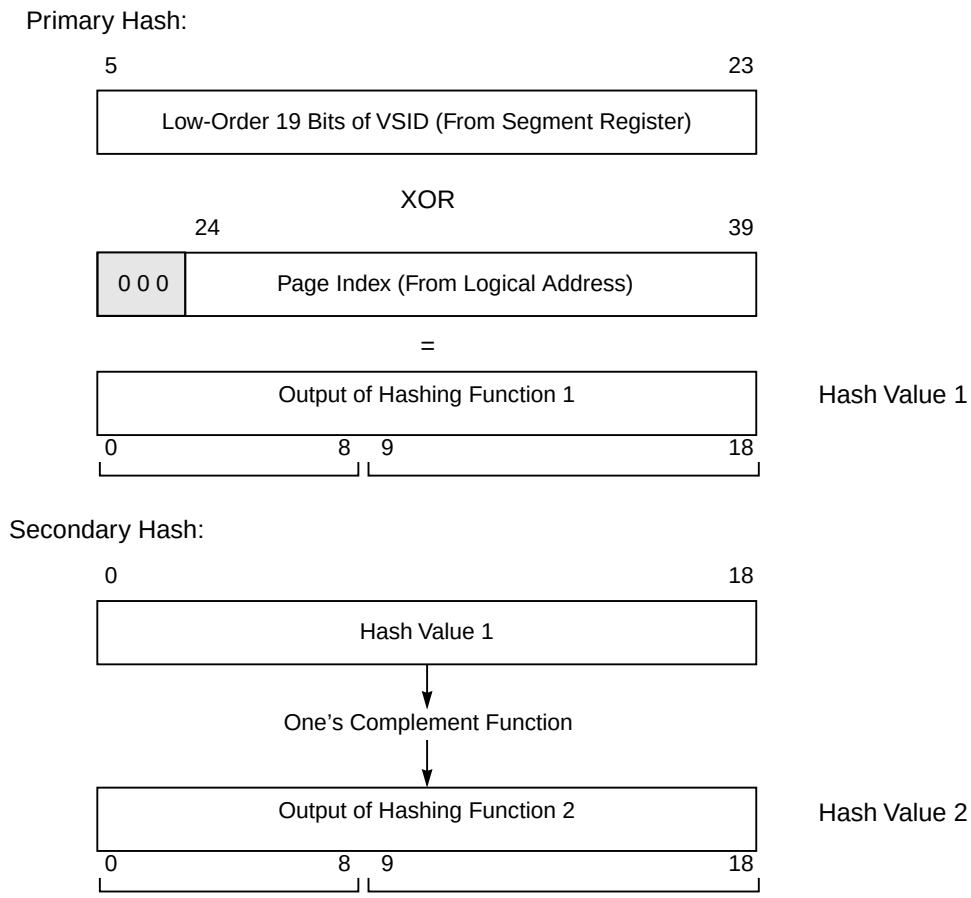


Figure 6-18. Hashing Functions

When the secondary hashing function is required, the output of the primary hashing function is complemented with one’s complement arithmetic, to provide hash value 2.

6.9.1.4 Page Table Addresses

Figure 6-19 illustrates the generation of the addresses used for accessing the hashed page tables defined for the 601. As stated earlier, the operating system must synthesize the table search algorithm for setting up the tables.

As shown in Figure 6-19, two of the elements that define the 52-bit virtual address (the segment register VSID field and the page index field of the logical address) are used as inputs into a hashing function. Depending on whether the primary or secondary PTEG is to be accessed, the processor uses either the primary or secondary hashing function.

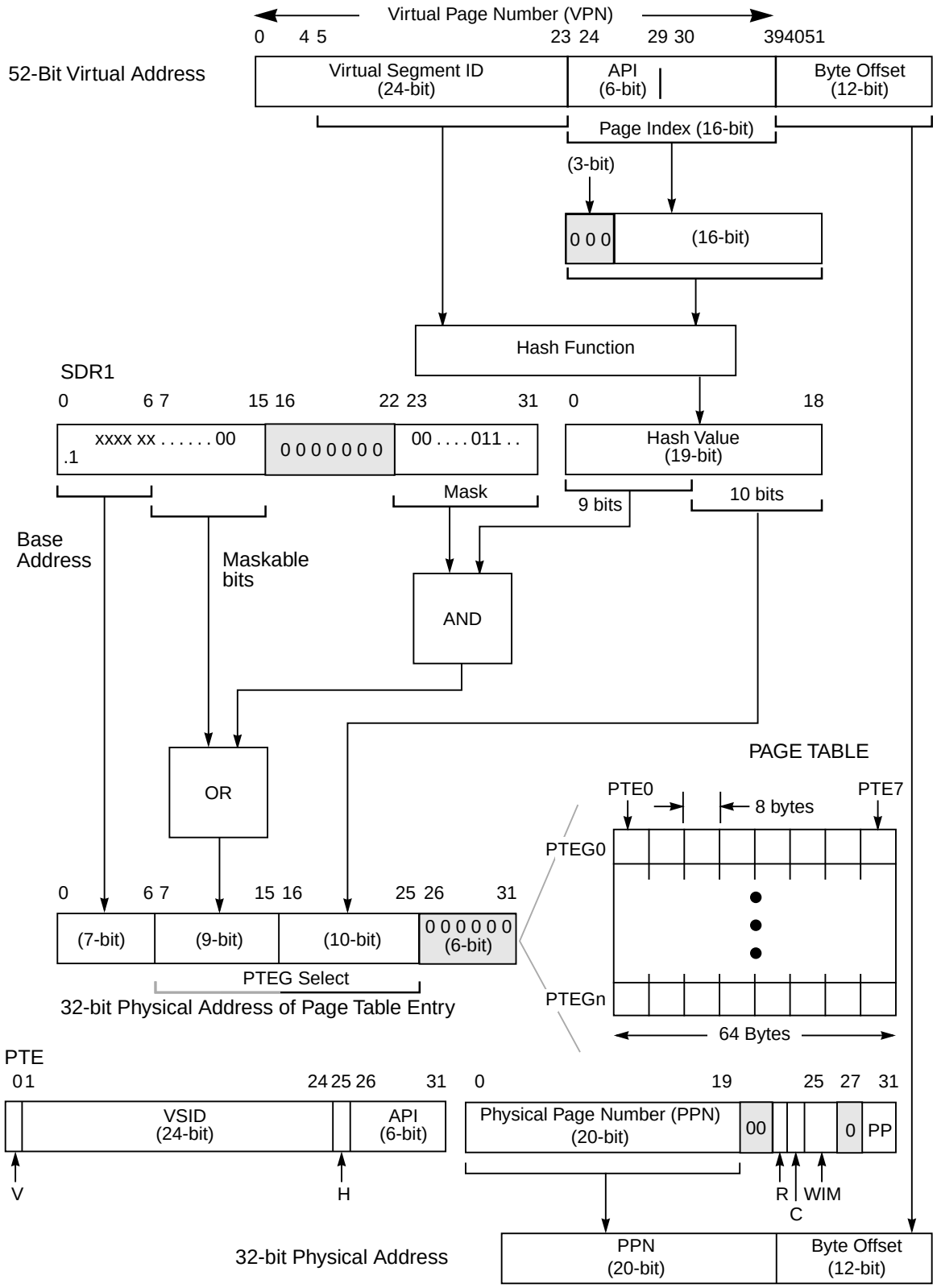


Figure 6-19. Generation of Addresses for Page Tables

The base address of the page table is defined by the higher order bits of SDR1[HTABORG]. Bits 7–15 of the PTEG address are derived from the masking of the higher-order bits of the hash value (as defined by SDR1[HTABMASK]) concatenated with (implemented as an OR function) the remaining bits of SDR1[HTABORG]. Bits 16-25 of the PTEG address are the 10 lower order bits of the hash value, and bits 26-31 of the PTEG address are zero. In the process of searching for a PTE, the processor first checks PTE0 (at the PTEG base address).

6.9.1.5 Page Table Structure

In the process of searching for a PTE, the processor interprets the values read from memory as described in Section 6.8.3.2, “Page Table Entry (PTE) Format.” The VSID and the abbreviated page index (API) fields of the 52-bit virtual address of the access are compared to those same fields of the PTEs in memory. In addition, the valid (V) bit and the hashing function (H) bit are also checked. For a hit to occur, the V bit of the PTE in memory must be set. If the fields match and the entry is valid, the PTE is considered a hit if the H bit is set as follows:

- If this is the primary PTEG, H = 0
- If this is the secondary PTEG, H = 1

The physical address of the PTEs to be checked is derived as shown in Figure 6-19, and is the address of a group of eight PTEs (a PTEG). During a table search operation, the processor first compares the PTE0 location defined by the primary hashing function. If the VSID and API fields do not match (or if V or H are not set appropriately), the processor increments the lower order address bits by eight bytes and checks the PTE1 location and so on, until all eight PTEs in the PTEG have been checked.

If no match is found, the secondary hashing function is performed, and the secondary PTEG address is derived. The eight PTEs within the secondary PTEG are then similarly checked. If the required PTE is not found in any of the 16 possible locations (the eight PTEs within the primary PTEG and the eight PTEs within the secondary PTEG), then a page fault occurs and an exception is taken. Thus, if a valid PTE is located in the page tables, the page is considered resident; if no matching (and valid) PTE is found for an access, the page is interpreted as non-resident (page fault) and the operating system must load the PTE (and possibly the page) into main memory.

Note that for performance reasons, PTEs should be allocated by the operating system first beginning with the PTE0 locations within the primary PTEG, then PTE1, and so on. If more than eight PTEs are required within the address space that defines a PTEG address, the secondary PTEG can be used. Nonetheless, it may be desirable to place the PTEs that will require most frequent access at the beginning of a PTEG and reserve the PTEs in the secondary PTEG for the least frequently accessed PTEs.

6.9.1.5.1 Page Table Structure Example

Figure 6-20 shows the structure of an example page table. The base address of this page table is defined by bits 0–13 in SDR1[HTABORG]; note that bits 14 and 15 of HTABORG must be zero because the lower order two bits of HTABMASK are ones. The addresses for individual PTEGs within this page table are then defined by bits 14–25 as an offset from bits 0–13 of this base address. Thus the size of the page table is defined as 4096 PTEGs.

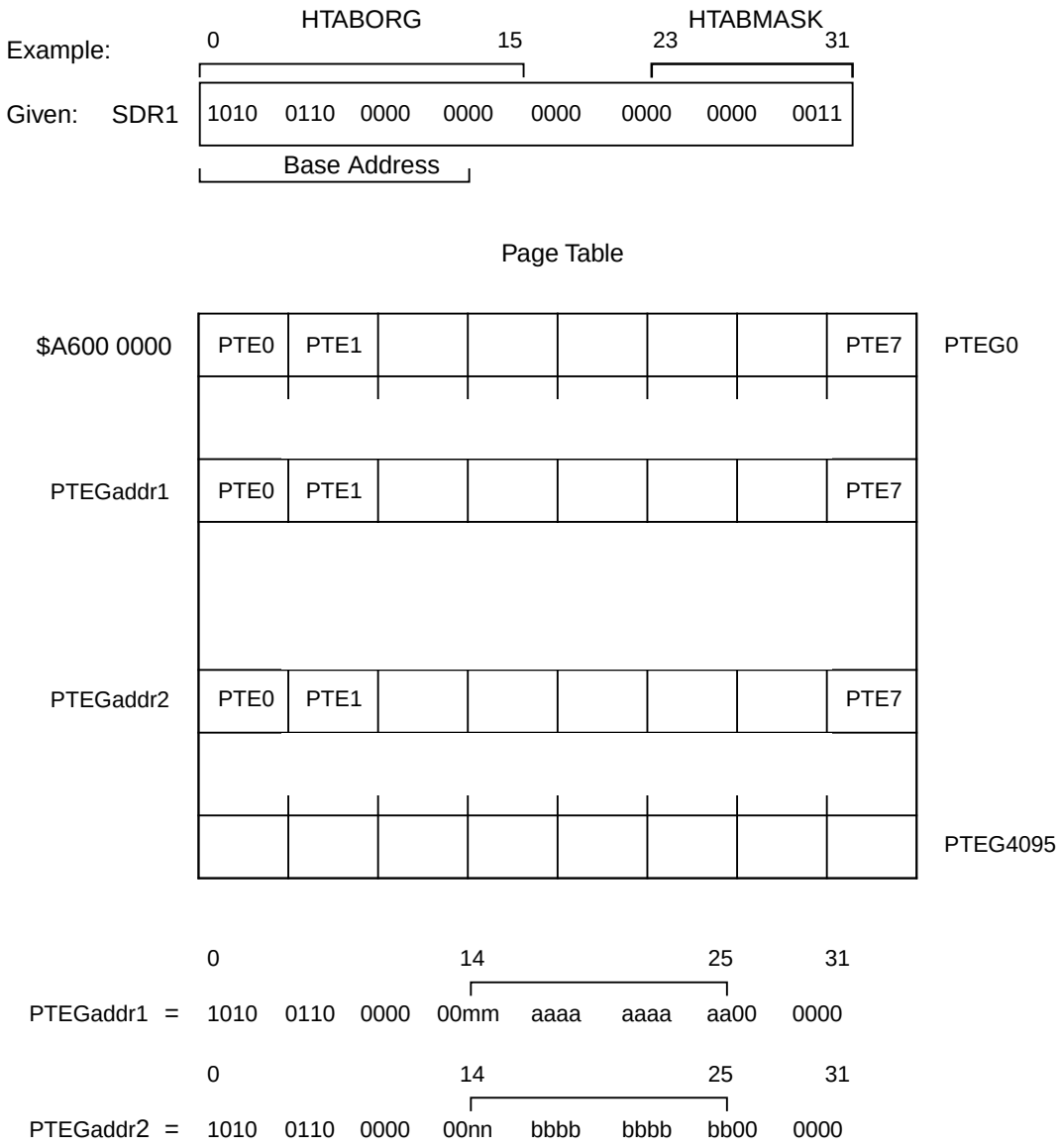


Figure 6-20. Example Page Table Structure

Two example PTEG addresses are shown in the figure as PTEGaddr1 and PTEGaddr2. Bits 14–25 of each PTEG address in this example page table are derived from the output of the hashing function (bits 26–31 are zero to start with PTE0 of the PTEG). In this example, the 'b' bits in PTEGaddr2 are the one’s complement of the 'a' bits in PTEGaddr1. The 'm' bits

are also the one’s complement of the 'n' bits, but these two bits are generated from bits 7–8 of the output of the hashing function, logically ORed with bits 14–15 of the HTABORG field (which are zero in this example). If bits 14–25 of PTEGaddr1 were derived by using the primary hashing function, then PTEGaddr2 corresponds to the secondary PTEG.

Note, however, that bits 14–25 in PTEGaddr2 can also be derived from a combination of logical address bits, segment register bits, and the primary hashing function. In this case, then PTEGaddr1 corresponds to the secondary PTEG. Thus, while a PTEG may be considered a primary PTEG for some logical addresses (and segment register bits), it may also correspond to the secondary PTEG for a different logical address (and segment register value).

It is the value of the H bit in each of the individual PTEs that identifies a particular PTE as either primary or secondary (there may be PTEs that correspond to a primary PTEG and PTEs that correspond to a secondary PTEG, all within the same physical PTEG address space). Thus, only the PTEs that have H = 0 are checked for a hit during a primary PTEG search. Likewise, only PTEs with H = 1 are checked in the case of a secondary PTEG search.

6.9.1.5.2 PTEG Address Mapping Example

Figure 6-21 shows an example of a logical address and how its address translation (the PTE) maps into the primary PTEG in physical memory. The example illustrates how the processor generates PTEG addresses for a table search operation; this is also the algorithm that must be used by the operating system in creating the page tables.

In the example, the value in SDR1 defines a page table at address x'0F98 0000' that contains 8192 PTEGs. The example logical address selects segment register 0 (SR0) with the highest order four bits. The contents of SR0 are then used along with bits 4–19 of the logical address to create the 52-bit virtual address.

To generate the address of the primary PTEG, bits 5–23, and bits 24–39 of the virtual address are then used as inputs into the primary hashing function (XOR) to generate hash value 1. The lower order 13 bits of hash value 1 are then concatenated with the higher order 13 bits of HTABORG, defining the address of the primary PTEG (x'0F9F F980').

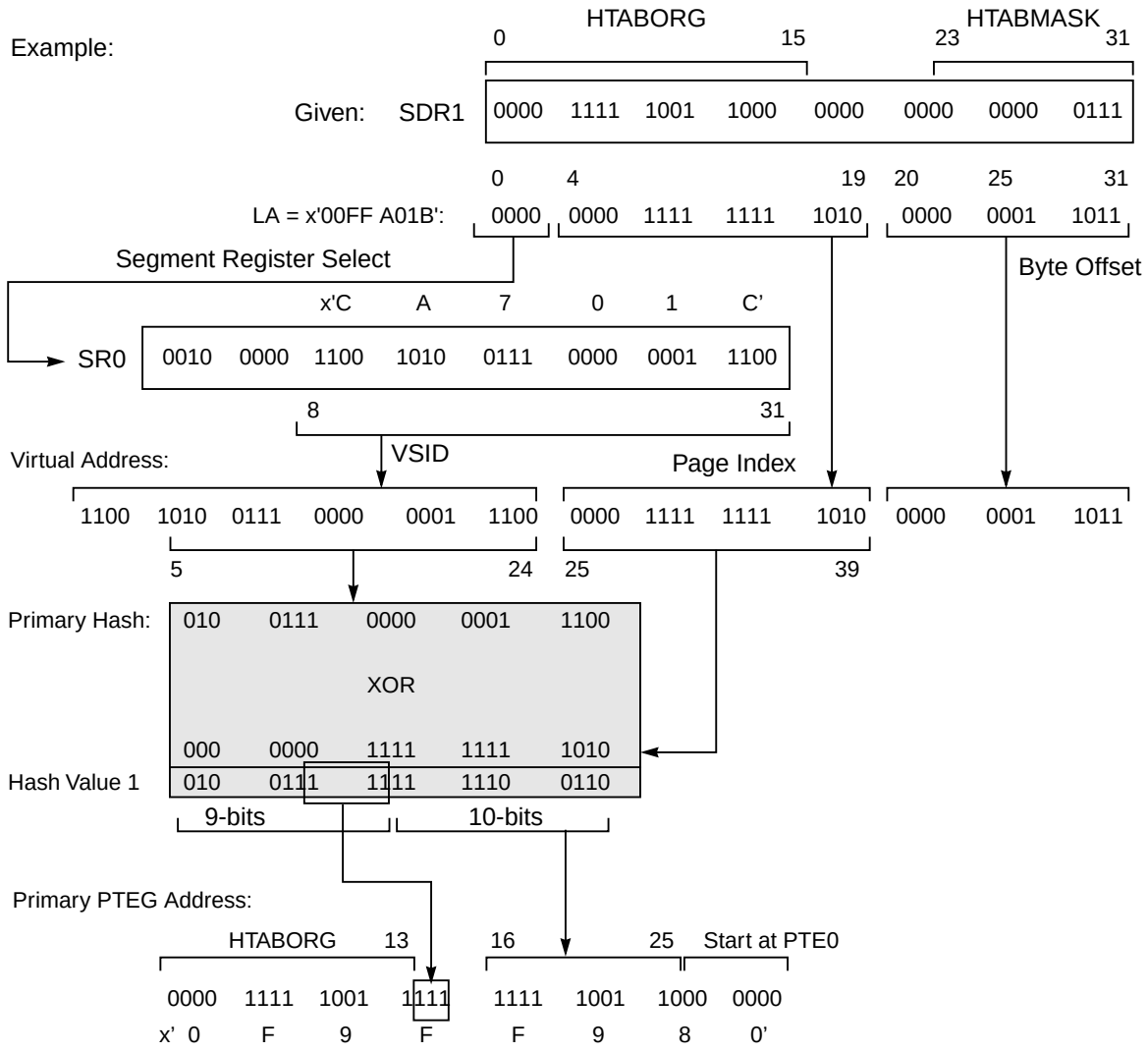


Figure 6-21. Example Primary PTEG Address Generation

Figure 6-22 shows the generation of the secondary PTEG address for this example. If the secondary PTEG is required, the secondary hash function is performed and the lower order 13 bits of hash value 2 are then concatenated with the higher order 13 bits of HTABORG, defining the address of the secondary PTEG (x'0F98 0640').

As described in Figure 6-19, the 10 lower-order bits of the page index field are always used in the generation of a PTEG address (through the hashing function). This is why only the abbreviated page index (API) is defined for a PTE (the entire page index field does not need to be checked). For a given logical address, the lower order 10 bits of the page index (at least) contribute to the PTEG address (both primary and secondary) where the corresponding PTE may reside in memory. Therefore, if the higher order 6 bits (the API field) of the page index match with the API field of a PTE within the specified PTEG, the PTE mapping is guaranteed to be the unique PTE required.

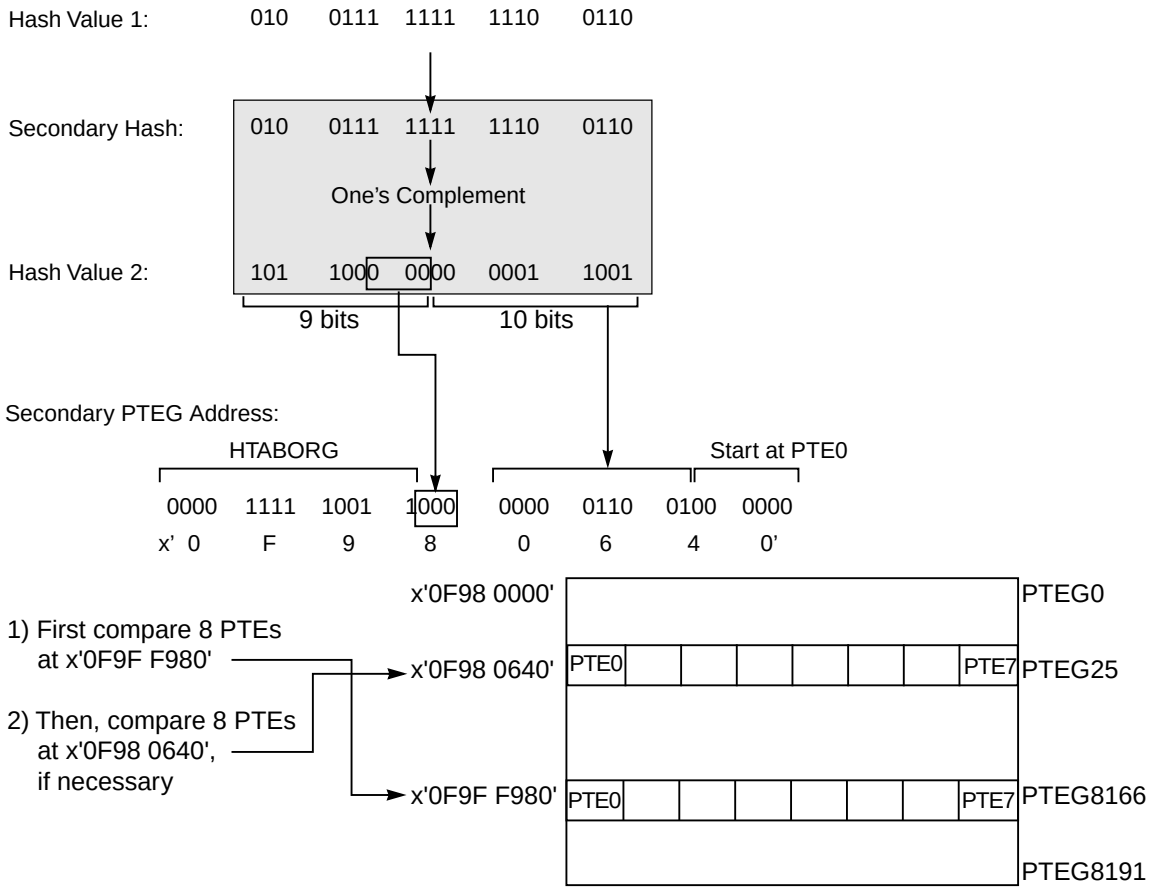


Figure 6-22. Example Secondary PTEG Address Generation

Note that a given PTEG address does not map back to a unique logical address. Not only can a given PTEG be considered both a primary and a secondary PTEG (as described in Section 6.9.1.5.1, “Page Table Structure Example”), but in this example, bits 24–26 of the page index field of the virtual address are not used to generate the PTEG address. Therefore, any of the eight combinations of these bits will map to the same primary PTEG address. (However, these bits are part of the API and are therefore compared for each PTE within the PTEG to determine if there is a hit.) Furthermore, a logical address can select a different segment register with a different value such that the output of the primary (or secondary) hashing function happens to equal the hash values shown in the example. Thus these logical addresses would also map to the same PTEG addresses shown.

6.9.2 Page Table Search Operation

An outline of the table search process performed by the 601 in the search of a PTE is as follows:

1. The 32-bit physical address of the primary PTEG is generated as described in Section 6.9.1.4, “Page Table Addresses”.
2. The first PTE (PTE0) in the primary PTEG is read from memory. PTE reads occur with an implied WIM memory/cache mode control bit setting of b'001'. Therefore, they are considered cacheable and burst in from memory and placed in the cache.
3. The PTE in the selected PTEG is tested for a match with the virtual page number (VPN) of the access. The VPN is the VSID concatenated with the page index fields of the virtual address. For a match to occur, the following must be true:
   — PTE[H] = 0
   — PTE[V] = 1
   — PTE[VSID] = VA[0–23]
   — PTE[API] = VA[24–29]
4. If a match is not found, step 3 is repeated for each of the other seven PTEs in the primary PTEG. If a match is found, the table search process continues as described in step 8. If a match is not found within the 8 PTEs of the primary PTEG, the address of the secondary PTEG is generated.
5. The first PTE (PTE0) in the secondary PTEG is read from memory. Again, because PTE reads have an implied WIM bit combination of b'001', an entire cache line is burst into the on-chip cache.
6. The PTE in the selected secondary PTEG is tested for a match with the virtual page number (VPN) of the access. For a match to occur, the following must be true:
   — PTE[H] = 1
   — PTE[V] = 1
   — PTE[VSID] = VA[0–23]
   — PTE[API] = VA[24–29]
7. If a match is not found, step 6 is repeated for each of the other seven PTEs in the secondary PTEG.
8. If a match is found, the PTE is written into the UTLB and the R bit is updated in the PTE in memory (if necessary). If there is no memory protection violation, the C bit is also updated in memory and the table search is complete.
9. If a match is not found within the 8 PTEs of the secondary PTEG, the search fails, and a page fault exception condition occurs (either an instruction access exception or a data access exception).

Reads from memory for table search operations are performed as global (but not exclusive), cacheable operations, and are loaded into the on-chip cache of the 601.

Figure 6-23 and Figure 6-24 provide detailed flow diagrams of the table search operations performed by the 601. Figure 6-23 shows the case of a **dcbz** instruction executed with W = 1 or I = 1, and that the R bit is updated in memory (if required) before the alignment exception occurs. The R bit is also updated (if required) in the case of a memory protection violation except for the case of a **dcbt** or a **dcbtst** instruction. If either of these instructions is executed and a protection violation occurs, the translation is simply aborted, the R bit is not set in memory and the instruction execution becomes a no-op (not shown in the figure).

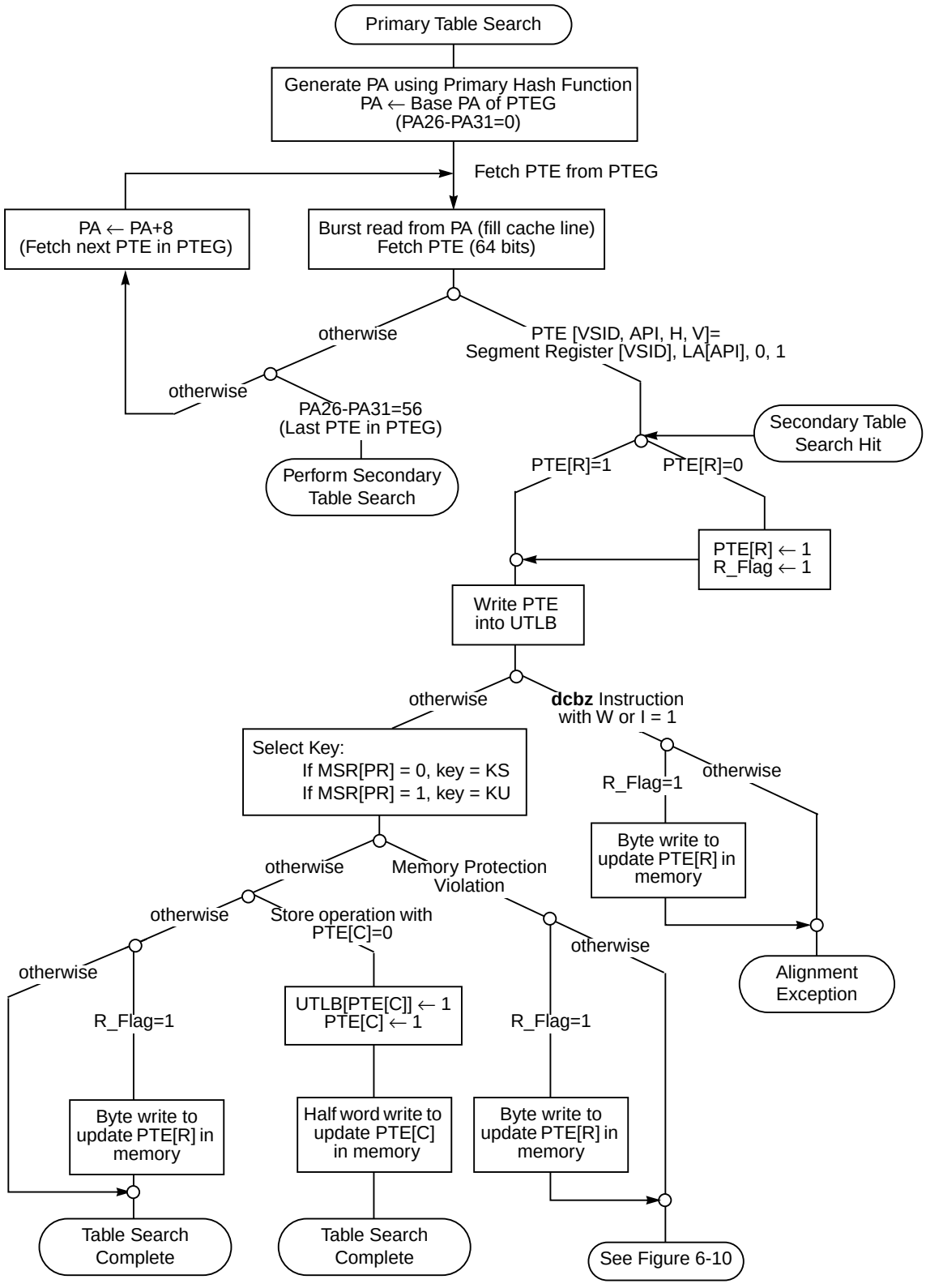


Figure 6-23. Primary Table Search Flow

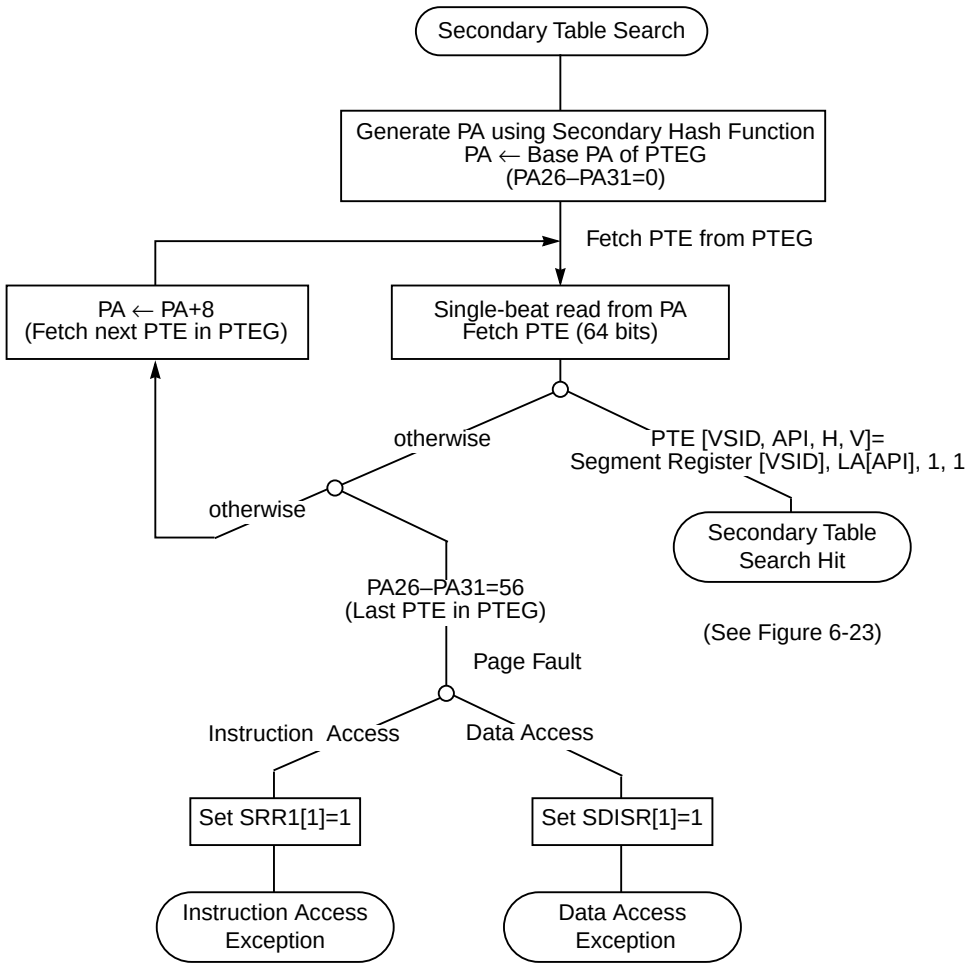


Figure 6-24. Secondary Table Search Flow

6.9.3 Page Table Updates

This section describes the requirements on the software when updating page tables in memory via some pseudo-code examples. In a multiprocessor system the rules described in this section must be followed so that all processors operate with a consistent set of page tables. Even in a single processor system, certain rules must be followed, regarding reference and change bit updates, because software changes must be synchronized with automatic updates made by the hardware. Updates to the tables include the following operations:

- Adding a PTE
- Modifying a PTE, including modifying the R and C bits of a PTE
- Deleting a PTE

PTEs must be ‘locked’ on multiprocessor systems. Access to PTEs must be appropriately synchronized by software locking of (i.e., guaranteeing exclusive access to) PTEs or PTEGs if more than one processor can modify the table at that time. In the examples below,

“lock()” and “unlock()” refer to software locks that must be performed to provide exclusive status for the PTE being updated. See Appendix G, “Synchronization Programming Examples,” for more information about the use of the **lwarx** and **stwcx.** instructions to perform software interlocks.

On single processor systems, PTEs need not be locked. To adapt the examples given below for the single processor case, simply delete the “lock()” and “unlock()” lines from the examples. The **sync** instructions shown are required even for single processor systems.

The UTLB (and ITLB) are non-coherent caches of the page tables. UTLB entries must be flushed explicitly with the TLB invalidate entry instruction (**tlbie**) whenever the corresponding PTE is modified. In a multiprocessor system, the **tlbie** instruction must be controlled by software locking, so that the **tlbie** is issued on only one processor at a time. The **sync** instruction causes the processor to wait until the TLB invalidate operation in progress by this processor is complete.

The PowerPC architecture defines the **tlbsync** instruction (an illegal instruction in the 601) that ensures that TLB invalidate operations executed by this processor have caused all appropriate actions in other processors on the system bus. In a system that contains both 601 processors and other PowerPC processors, the **tlbsync** functionality must be emulated for the 601 in order to ensure proper synchronization with the other PowerPC processors.

Any processor, including the processor modifying the page table, may access the page table at any time in an attempt to reload a UTLB entry. An inconsistent page table entry must never accidentally become visible; thus there must be synchronization between modifications to the valid bit and any other modifications. This requires as many as two **sync** operations for each PTE update.

The 601 writes reference and change bits with unsynchronized, atomic byte store operations. Note that the V, R, and C bits each resides in a distinct byte of a PTE. Therefore, extreme care must be taken to ensure that no store operation inadvertently overwrites one of these bytes.

6.9.3.1 Adding a Page Table Entry

Adding a page table entry requires only a lock on the PTE in a multiprocessor system. The bytes in the PTE are then written, except for the valid bit. A **sync** instruction then ensures that the updates have been made to memory, and lastly, the valid bit is set.

lock(PTE)
PTE[VSID,H,API] ← new values
PTE[PPN,R,C,WIM,PP] ← new values
sync
PTE[V] ← 1
unlock(PTE)

6.9.3.2 Modifying a Page Table Entry

This section describes several scenarios for modifying a PTE.

6.9.3.2.1 General Case

In the general case, a currently-valid PTE must be changed. To do this, the PTE must be locked, marked invalid, flushed from the TLB, updated, marked valid again, and unlocked. The **sync** instruction must be used at appropriate times to wait for modifications to complete.

Note that the **tlbsync** and the **sync** instruction that follow are only required if compatibility is must be maintained with other PowerPC processors that implement the **tlbsync** instruction. The **tlbsync** instruction is not implemented in the 601 but can be emulated in the illegal instruction exception handler.

lock(PTE)
PTE[V] ← 0
sync
tlbie(PTE)
sync
tlbsync
sync
PTE[VSID,H,API] ← new values
PTE[PPN,R,C,WIM,PP] ← new values
sync
PTE[V] ← 1
unlock(PTE)

6.9.3.2.2 Clearing the Reference (R) Bit

When the PTE is modified only to clear the R bit to 0, a much simpler algorithm suffices because the R bit need not be maintained exactly.

lock(PTE)
oldR ← PTE[R]
PTE[R] ← 0
if oldR = 1, then **tlbie**(PTE)
unlock(PTE)

Since only the R and C bits are modified by the processor, and since they reside in different bytes, the R bit can be cleared by reading the current contents of the byte in the PTE containing R (bits 16–23 of the second word), ANDing the value with x'FE', and storing the byte back into the PTE.

6.9.3.2.3 Modifying the Virtual Address

If the virtual address is being changed to a different address within the same hash class (primary or secondary), the following flow suffices:

lock(PTE)
val ← PTE[VSID,API,H,V]
val ← new VSID
PTE[VSID,API,H,V] ← val
sync
tlbie(PTE)
sync
tlbsync
sync
unlock(PTE)

In this pseudo-code flow, note that the store into the first word of the PTE is performed atomically. Also, the **tlbsync** and the **sync** instruction that follow are only required if compatibility is must be maintained with other PowerPC processors that implement the **tlbsync** instruction. The **tlbsync** instruction is not implemented in the 601 but can be emulated in the illegal instruction exception handler.

6.9.3.3 Deleting a Page Table Entry

In this example, the entry is locked, marked invalid, invalidated in the TLBs, and unlocked.

Again, note that the **tlbsync** and the **sync** instruction that follow are only required if compatibility is must be maintained with other PowerPC processors that implement the **tlbsync** instruction. The **tlbsync** instruction is not implemented in the 601 but can be emulated in the illegal instruction exception handler.

lock(PTE)
PTE[V] ← 0
sync
tlbie(PTE)
sync
tlbsync
sync
unlock(PTE)

6.9.4 Segment Register Updates

There are certain synchronization requirements for using the move to segment register instructions. These are described in Section 2.3.3.1, “Synchronization for Supervisor-Level SPRs and Segment Registers.”

6.10 I/O Controller Interface Address Translation

An I/O controller interface segment is a mapping of logical addresses to the I/O controller interface bus protocol. I/O controller interface segments are provided for POWER compatibility. Applications that require low-latency load/store access to external address space should use memory-mapped I/O, rather than the I/O controller interface.

A logical address within the I/O controller interface space corresponds to a segment register which has T = 1. For more details about memory references to I/O controller interface segments, refer to Chapter 9, “System Interface Operation.”

As a subset of I/O controller interface address translation, the 601 also provides a way to force I/O controller interface accesses to be made to memory. This memory-forced I/O controller interface capability allows a 256-Mbyte segment of memory to be mapped with only one segment register and no page translation overhead. Note that this functionality may not be provided in other PowerPC processors.

6.10.1 Segment Register Format for I/O Controller Interface

Figure 6-25 shows the register format for the segment registers when the T bit is set.

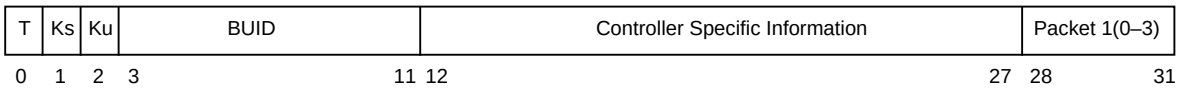


Figure 6-25. Segment Register Format for I/O Controller Interface

Table 6-20 shows the bit definitions for the segment registers when the T bit is set.

Table 6-20. Segment Register Bit Definitions for I/O Controller Interface

Bit	Name	Description
0	T	T = 1 selects this format
1	Ks	Supervisor mode memory key
2	Ku	User mode memory key
3–11	BUID	Bus unit ID
12–27	—	Device specific data for I/O controller
28–31	Packet 1(0–3)	This field contains address bits 0–3 of the packet 1 cycle (address-only).

6.10.2 I/O Controller Interface Accesses

When the address translation process determines that the segment has T = 1, I/O controller interface address translation is selected and any match due to block address translation (see Section 6.7, “Block Address Translation”) is ignored. Additionally, no reference is made to the page tables. The following data is sent to the memory controller in the protocol (two packets consisting of address-only cycles) described in Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations”:

- Packet 0
  - — One of the K*x* bits (Ks or Ku) is selected to be the key as follows:
    - – For supervisor accesses (MSR[PR] = 0), the Ks bit is used and Ku is ignored
    - – For user accesses (MSR[PR] = 1), the Ku bit is used and Ks is ignored
  - — The contents of bits 3–31 of the segment register, which is the BUID field concatenated with the “controller-specific” field.
- Packet 1—SR[28–31] concatenated with the 28 lower-order bits of the logical address, LA4–LA31.

The WIM bits for I/O controller interface accesses are forced to b'010'. Some instructions cause multiple address/data transactions to occur on the bus. The address for each transaction is handled individually with respect to the MMU.

6.10.3 I/O Controller Interface Segment Protection

Page-level protection as described in Section 6.8.5, “Page Memory Protection,” is not provided by the 601 for I/O controller interface segments. The appropriate key bit (Ks or Ku) from the segment register is sent to the memory controller, and the memory controller implements any protection required. Frequently, no such mechanism is provided; the fact that a I/O controller interface segment is mapped into the address space of a process may be regarded as sufficient authority to access the segment.

6.10.4 Memory-Forced I/O Controller Interface Accesses

The 601 performs memory-forced I/O controller interface accesses when the T bit in the selected segment register is set and the BUID field in the segment register is x'07F'. In this case, the processor bypasses all protection mechanisms and generates a memory access with the physical address specified by the lowest-order four bits in the segment register (SR[28–31]) concatenated with LA4–LA31. In this case, the processor assumes the WIM bits to be '011', denoting the access as cache-inhibited and global. An example of address generation for a memory-forced I/O controller interface access is shown in Figure 6-26.

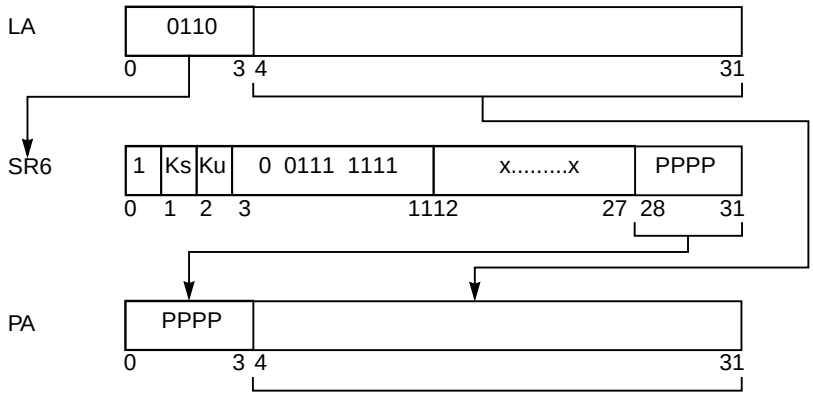


Figure 6-26. Memory-Forced I/O Controller Interface Access Example

6.10.5 Instructions Not Supported in I/O Controller Interface Segments

The following instructions are not supported when issued with a logical address that selects a segment register that has T = 1:

- **lwarx**
- **stwcx.**
- **lscbx**

If one of the above instructions is executed with a logical address corresponding to a segment with T = 1, a data access exception occurs and DSISR[5] is set.

The following instructions are not supported at all and cause boundedly undefined results when issued with a logical address that selects a segment register that has T = 1(or when MSR[DT] = 0):

- **eciwx**
- **ecowx**

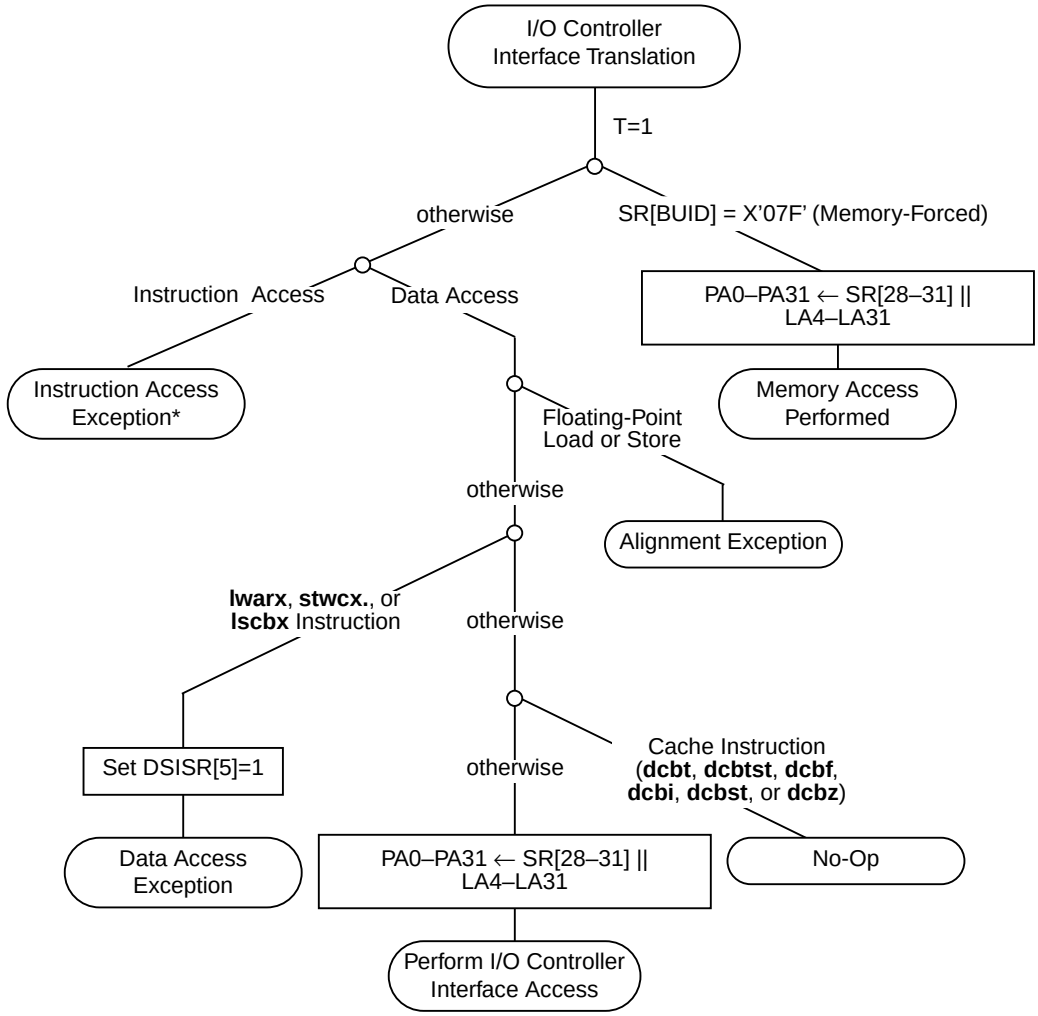
6.10.6 Instructions with No Effect in I/O Controller Interface Segments

The following instructions are executed as no-ops when issued with a logical address that selects a segment where T = 1:

- **dcbt**
- **dcbtst**
- **dcbf**
- **dcbi**
- **dcbst**
- **dcbz**

6.10.7 I/O Controller Interface Summary Flow

Figure 6-27 shows the flow used by the MMU when I/O controller interface address translation is selected. This figure expands the I/O Controller Interface Translation stub found in Figure 6-4 for both instruction and data accesses.



* No SRR1 bits are set for this case; this differs from the PowerPC architecture, which specifies that SRR1[3] is set for this condition.

Figure 6-27. I/O Controller Interface Translation Flow

Chapter 7
Instruction Timing

This chapter describes how instructions flow through the PowerPC 601 microprocessor. A logical model of the 601 pipeline is presented as a framework for understanding the functionality and performance of the hardware. While this pipeline model is an abstraction of the hardware implementation, it can yield accurate instruction timing information.

7.1 Terminology and Conventions

This section describes terminology and conventions used in this chapter and in Appendix I, "Instruction Timings."

7.1.1 Definition of Terms

This section defines terms used in this chapter.

- Stage—An element in the pipeline at which certain actions are performed, such as decoding the instruction, performing an arithmetic operation, and writing back the results. A stage typically takes a cycle to perform its operation, however, some stages are repeated (a double-precision floating-point multiply, for example). When this occurs, an instruction immediately following it in the pipeline is forced to stall in its cycle.

  An instruction may also occupy more than one stage simultaneously; for example, the IQ0 position in the dispatch stage (DS) is usually identical to the integer decode (ID) stage, or an instruction in the integer store buffer stage (ISB) remains in that stage until it completes the cache access stage (CACC).

  After an instruction is fetched, it can always be defined as being in a stage.
- Boundary—A boundary is the infinitely small period of time between stages.
- Pipeline—In the context of instruction timing, the term pipeline refers to the interconnection of the stages. The events necessary to process an instruction are broken into several cycle-length tasks to allow work to be performed on several instructions simultaneously—analogous to an assembly line. As an instruction is processed, it passes from one stage to the next. When it does, the completed stage is now available for the next instruction.

  Although it may take many cycles to complete the processing of an individual instruction (the number of cycles is called the instruction latency), pipelining makes

it possible to overlap the processing so that the throughput (number of instructions completed per cycle) is greater than if pipelining were not implemented.

Note that with respect to the 601, each of the three executions units (floating-point unit, or FPU; branch processing unit, or BPU; and the integer unit, or IU) has its own pipeline. This implementation of parallel pipelines is called superscalar architecture.

- Branch folding—The elimination of a branch instruction from the pipeline after the direction has been determined. The next sequential instruction is allowed to take its place in the pipeline.
- Branch prediction—The process of guessing whether a branch will be taken. Such predictions can be correct or incorrect; the term predicted as it is used here does not imply that the prediction is correct (successful).
- Branch resolution—The determination of whether a branch is taken or not taken. A branch is said to be resolved when it can exactly be determined which path it will take. If branch is resolved as predicted, speculatively executed instructions can complete execution. If the branch is not resolved as predicted, instructions are purged from the instruction pipeline and are replaced with the instructions from the nonpredicted path.
- Instruction stream collapsing—The elimination of empty queue positions between instructions in the instruction queue (functionally part of the IU pipeline) when branch and floating-point instructions are dispatched out of order. The remaining integer instructions comprise the reference pipeline and are assigned tags that permit all instructions to complete writeback in program order. This is shown in Section 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model.”
- Program order—The original order in which program instructions are provided to the instruction queue from the cache.
- Bubble—A bubble is caused by a lost opportunity to execute an instruction resulting from conditions such as pipeline stalls and by dynamics of the IQ and dispatch mechanism. A bubble reduces the throughput (number of instructions completed/number of cycles required) by increasing the size of the denominator.

  Note that unless the bubble is a tagged bubble, it can be eliminated if the preceding instruction causes a stall.
- Tagged bubble—A bubble in the integer pipeline that exists solely to allow branch and floating-point instructions dispatched out of order to be reordered correctly at the writeback stage. Sometimes it is necessary to create a tagged bubble in order to maintain the precise exception model.
- Stall—An occurrence when an instruction cannot proceed to the next stage because that stage is occupied by the previous instruction.
- Latency—The number of cycles required to complete the processing of a particular instruction.

- Throughput—A measure of the number of instructions that are processed per cycle. For example, a series of integer **add** instructions can execute at a throughput of one instruction per clock cycle.
- Commitment (of an instruction)—Execution has completed, data dependencies have been resolved, and the process of recording the results has begun and must complete. Once an instruction is committed, an exception cannot prevent the instruction from writing back its results.
- Feed-forwarding—The action of passing the results of one instruction directly to a subsequent, data dependent instruction. For example, there is a feed-forwarding mechanism in the 601 IU pipeline that allows the results of the execute (IE) stage to be available to the subsequent instruction that is in the integer decode (ID) stage.

Note that most of the discussions in this chapter and in the examples in Appendix I, "Instruction Timing Examples," assume that the floating-point precise mode is disabled (that is MSR[FE0] and MSR[FE1] are not both set).

7.1.2 Timing Tables

This section describes how to use the tables in this chapter that illustrate the timings of instructions through their respective pipeline. An example showing the flow of rotate, mask, and shift instructions through the IU pipeline is given in Table 7-1.

Table 7-1. Rotate, Mask, and Shift Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively[a]		**r**A, **r**B, **r**S, CA, MQ	
Resources required exclusively[a.]		**r**A, MQ, CR0	

a. Table 7-23 summarizes the resources required by individual instructions.

The first row in the timing tables indicates the number of cycles an instruction spends in each pipeline stage. The second row shows the pipeline stages. For integer instructions, the stages are—integer decode (ID), integer execute (IE), integer completion (IC), integer writeback for ALU operations (IWA), integer writeback for load operations (IWL), and cache access (CACC). Sub rows are included with a different pipeline stage in each sub-row. Some instructions simultaneously occupy multiple stages, while some instructions spend several cycles in the same stage. The classic RISC instruction flow is shown in Table 7-1—the instruction moves from ID to IE to IWA spending one cycle in each stage. The third row in the tables shows which resources are required nonexclusively. Typically these resources are registers that are read by the instruction. The fourth row shows

resources that are required exclusively; such resources are typically registers that are being written by the instruction.

The columns indicate a cycle progression. The leftmost column being the first cycle.

7.2 Pipeline Description

The 601 is a pipelined superscalar processor. A pipelined processor is one in which the processing of an instruction is broken down into discrete stages, such as decode, execute, and writeback. Because the tasks required to process an instruction are broken into a series of tasks, an instruction does not require the entire resources of an execution unit. For example, after an instruction completes the decode stage, it can pass on to the next stage, while the subsequent instruction can advance into the decode stage. This improves the throughput of the instruction flow. For example, it may take three cycles for an integer instruction to complete, but if there are no stalls in the integer pipeline, a series of integer instructions can have a throughput of one instruction per cycle.

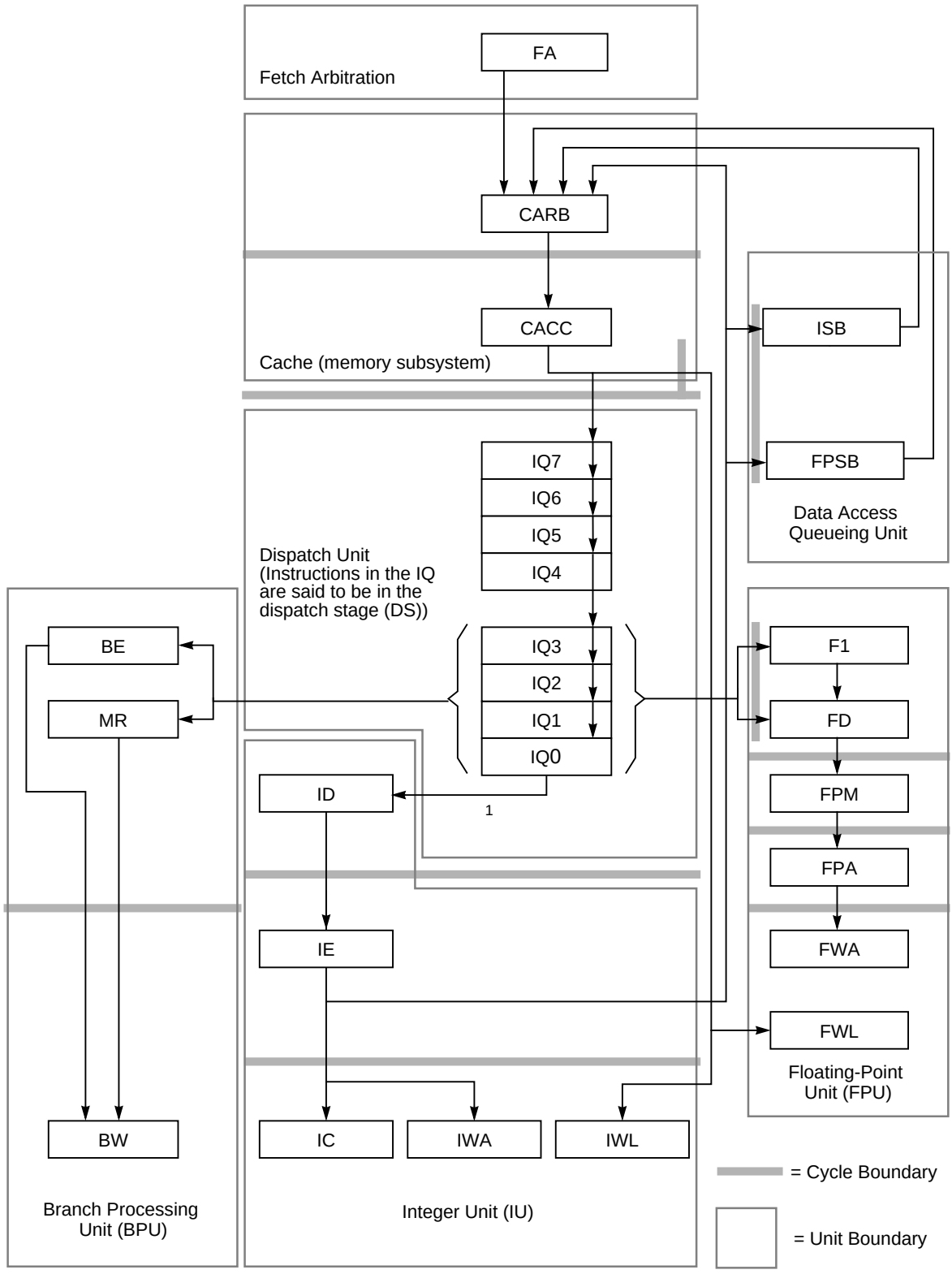
A superscalar processor is one in which multiple pipelines are provided to allow instructions to execute in parallel. The 601 has three execution units, one each for integer instructions, floating-point instructions, and branch instructions. The IU and the FPU each have dedicated register files for maintaining operands (GPRs and FPRs, respectively), allowing integer calculations and floating-point calculations to occur simultaneously without interference.

Note that in the 601, instructions are typically dispatched out of order. Branch and floating-point instructions are tagged to instructions in the integer pipeline, and any order-related dependencies are tracked and handled appropriately by completion logic in the IU (the IC stage). Note that it is not always necessary for instructions to complete in order, and the 601 allows instructions to complete in a manner that ensures the integrity of data and registers.

The 601 pipeline description can be broken into two parts, the processor core, where instruction execution takes place, and the memory subsystem, the interface between the processor core and system memory. The system memory includes a unified 32-Kbyte cache and the bus interface unit.

7.2.1 Processor Core

The 601 processor core, shown in Figure 7-1, contains 20 distinct pipeline stages.



[1] An integer instruction can be passed to the ID stage in the same cycle in which it enters IQ0.

Figure 7-1. Instruction Flow Diagram Showing the Processor Core

Note that some stages can contain multiple instructions during a given cycle, and some instructions can reside in multiple stages during a given cycle. This section gives a brief description of each stage. Later sections go into more detail about each stage and how individual instructions flow through the pipeline.

The processor core is shown in Figure 7-1.

Table 7-2 describes the common stages in the 601.

Table 7-2. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Pipeline Stages—Common Stages

Stage	Description
FA	Fetch Arbitration—During fetch arbitration, the address of the next instructions (fetch group) to be fetched is generated and sent to the memory subsystem (the cache arbitration stage). Any instructions that are going to arrive at the dispatch stage as a result of the cache access associated with the address generated during the FA stage is considered to be in the FA stage. All instructions must pass through the FA stage.
CARB	Cache Arbitration—For most operations, the CARB stage of the cache is overlapped with one or more other stages. The CARB and CACC stages may be used by the memory subsystem for cache reload operations and for some snoop operations. These relationships are shown in the multiple instruction timing diagrams in Appendix I.
CACC	Cache Access—The cache is the only interface point between the memory subsystem and the processor core; if the data being accessed by the instruction in the CACC stage is in the cache, it is passed to the processor core during that cycle (that is, a single-cycle cache access). If the data is not in the cache, no data is passed to the processor core. The 601 cache is nonblocking, that is, once an instruction misses in the cache, the CACC stage is free to service another instruction. For more information, see Section 7.2.2, “Memory Subsystem.” The CARB and CACC stages may be used by the memory subsystem for cache reload operations, and some snoop operations. During a cache reload, the data being reloaded is brought in from the memory system and is available for use in the processor core on the next cycle.
DS	Dispatch—The dispatch stage is associated with the eight-entry instruction queue (IQ0–IQ7). The 601 can dispatch as many as three instructions on every clock cycle, one to each of the processing units (the IU, the BPU, and the FPU) from the same dispatch stage. As many as eight instructions can be in the dispatch stage (instruction queue), but instructions can be dispatched only from IQ0–IQ3. Note that only three of the first four (in program order) can be dispatched on a given cycle. Note that the bottom element of the instruction queue (IQ0) can be viewed as part of the integer decode (ID) stage.

Table 7-3 describes the stages in the integer pipeline. Not all integer instructions pass through every IU stage.

Table 7-3. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Pipeline Stages—Integer Pipeline

Stage	Description
ID	Integer Decode—In the ID stage, integer instructions are decoded and the operands are fetched from the GPRs. Note that an integer instruction typically enters the decode stage when it enters IQ0; when and instruction stalls in the ID stage, a new instruction may move into IQ0; however, IQ0 and ID will be the same after the instruction is no longer stalled in the ID stage.
IE	Integer Execute—In the IE stage, integer ALU operations are executed, the EA for memory access instructions is calculated and translated, and the request is made to the memory subsystem (that is, the instruction simultaneously occupies the CARB and CACC stages). There is feed-forwarding for ALU operations in the IE stage. This means that the results calculated in the IE stage are available as sources to the instruction that enters IE stage in the next cycle. This eliminates stalls due to data dependencies between consecutive integer ALU instructions. There is also feed-forwarding from the CACC stage to the IE stage resulting in only a one-cycle stall for a dependent operation directly following a load instruction. For more information, see Section 7.3.3, “Integer Pipeline Stages.”
IC	Integer Completion—In the IC stage, results of instructions are made available for use unless synchronous exceptions are detected. Tags for branch and floating-point instructions must pass through this stage.
IWA	Integer Arithmetic Writeback—In the IWA stage, the general purpose registers (GPRs) are updated with the results from integer arithmetic operations.
IWL	Integer Load Writeback—In the IWL stage, integer load operations a write operation in the GPRs with from the cache or from memory.

The data access queueing unit provides a buffer between the IU and the memory subsystem. It contains two stages—the floating-point store buffer stage (FPSB), and the integer store buffer stage (ISB). The stages in this unit are described in Table 7-4. The data access queueing unit is described with the IU in Section 7.3.3, “Integer Pipeline Stages.”

Table 7-4. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Pipeline Stages—Data Access Queueing Unit

Stage	Description
FPSB	Floating-Point Store Buffer— The FPSB stage is used for floating-point store instructions that have been committed (or are being committed) but for which the floating-point data is not yet available. All floating-point store instructions must pass through this stage. This stage allows the instruction to free up the IE stage. An instruction remains in this stage until it completes the CACC stage. The data in this stage is kept memory-coherent by the processor.
ISB	Integer Store Buffer—The ISB stage is used to buffer data accesses that were not arbitrated into the cache due to a higher priority access (such as a cache reload). This stage allows the instruction to free up the IE stage. An instruction remains in this stage until it completes the CACC stage.The buffer used in this stage is kept memory-coherent by the processor.

The floating-point pipeline contains six stages below the DS stage. These stages are described in Table 7-5. Note that all floating-point arithmetic instructions must pass through each of these stages (with the exception of F1); details of how each type of instruction makes use of each floating-point stage is provided in Section 7.3.4, “Floating-Point Pipeline Stages.”

Table 7-5. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Pipeline Stages—Floating-Point Pipeline

Stage	Description
F1	Floating-Point Instruction Queue—The F1 stage is a one-entry queue that buffers floating-point instructions that have been dispatched but cannot be decoded because an instruction is stalled in the FD stage.
FD	Floating-Point Decode—In the FD stage, instructions are decoded and operands are fetched from the FPRs.
FPM	Floating-Point Multiply—In the FPM stage, operands are fed through a multiplier that performs the first part of a multiply operation. The multiplier performs a single-precision multiply with a throughput of one per cycle or a double-precision multiply with a throughput of one per two cycles.
FPA	Floating-Point Add—In the FPA stage, an addition is performed for add instructions or to complete multiply or accumulate instructions.
FWA	Floating-Point Arithmetic Writeback—In the FWA stage, normalization and rounding occur, FPRs are updated, store data is sent to the memory subsystem, and bits are set in the FPSCR. Data written to the FPRs during the FWA stage is available to the FD stage in the following cycle.
FWL	Float Load Writeback—During the FWL stage, load data is written into the FPRs. Load data that is being written to the FPRs is also available to the FD stage in the same cycle.

The BPU pipeline contains three stages below the DS stage—the branch execute stage (BE), the mispredict recovery stage (MR), and the branch writeback stage (BW). These are described in Table 7-6.

Table 7-6. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Pipeline Stages—Branch Pipeline

Stage	Description
BE	Branch Execute—In the BE stage, the target address of a branch is calculated and the branch direction is either determined or predicted depending on the state of the condition register (CR) and the type of branch instruction. Note that the BE stage is parallel with the FA stage of the target instructions of a taken branch.
MR	Mispredict Recovery—Conditional branches also go into the MR stage (in parallel with entering the BE stage) and stay there until the branch is resolved (the CR is coherent). If a branch was predicted incorrectly, the MR stage logic allows the fetcher to recover and start executing the correct path.
BW	Branch Writeback—In the BW stage, branch instructions that update the link register (LR) or count register (CTR) do so. Note that many branches can be in the BW stage at any given cycle, but that no more than two can write back in one cycle. An infinite stream of taken branches that hit in the cache has a throughput of one branch every two cycles.

Some integer and floating-point instructions must repeat stages in their respective pipelines, which causes subsequent instructions in the pipeline to stall. In addition to the multicycle operations, data dependencies can cause stalls as described in Section 7.3.3, “Integer Pipeline Stages,” and Section 7.3.4, “Floating-Point Pipeline Stages.”

Synchronization is handled relative to the integer pipeline. To ensure that LR and CR are updated in order, neither the BPU nor the FPU can perform their write-back operations until their tags complete the IC stage in the integer pipeline. Instructions in the IU cannot get ahead of instructions in the BPU, but may get ahead of instructions in the FPU by as many

as three instructions if floating-point exceptions are disabled (that is, the processor logs the exception but does not trap to an exception vector). However, when floating-point exceptions are enabled, (controlled by MSR[FE0] and MSR [FE1]) the IU cannot get ahead of the FPU. This is described in Section 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model.”

Performance is affected whenever the IU is required to synchronize with the FPU, as described in Section 7.3.4, “Floating-Point Pipeline Stages.”

When a floating-point or branch instruction is dispatched, it is tagged to the previous integer instruction (in program order). This tag is used to ensure that execution appears to be in program order. There are certain restrictions, such as the fact that only one floating-point instruction can be tagged to an integer instruction, that may cause an instruction to be tagged to a bubble (nonexecuting placeholder) in the IU pipeline, thus reducing throughput. These restrictions are described in Section 7.3.1.4, “Common Stages—Dispatch (DS) Stage,” and Section 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model.”

7.2.1.1 Dispatch Stage Logic

The DS stage, which contains instruction queue (IQ), resides between the memory subsystem and the execution units and accounts for the time required to fetch the instruction and to dispatch it to one of the execution units. The instruction queue can hold as many as eight instructions, so an entire cache sector can be fetched into the DS stage in one cycle.

The following characteristics and restrictions regarding instruction dispatch should be noted:

- Floating-point, branch, and integer instructions can be dispatched out-of-order.
- Floating-point and branch instructions are tagged to a previous integer instruction in program order or to a bubble in the IU pipeline. Typically, a floating-point or branch instruction is dispatched before the integer instruction or bubble to which it is tagged. Tagging is described in Section 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model. “
- Floating-point and integer instructions flow through their respective pipelines in program order. Under certain conditions, branch instructions can be dispatched out of order, as described in Section 7.2.1.4, “Branch Processing Unit (BPU).”
- Integer and load/store instructions are dispatched in order relative to all instructions (that is, an integer instruction cannot be dispatched until all instructions before it in program order have been dispatched).
- Branch and floating-point instructions can be dispatched in program order from IQ0–IQ3. However, an integer instruction is dispatched only when it is the first instruction in the DS stage (typically IQ0) in program order. Branch and integer instructions are dispatched in zero cycles, while floating-point instructions take one cycle to dispatch.

Several situations can cause dispatch stalls—instruction synchronization requirements of the precise exception model, resource dependencies and data dependencies. These stalls are described in Section 7.3.1.4, “Common Stages—Dispatch (DS) Stage.”

7.2.1.2 Integer Unit (IU)

The integer unit (IU) executes the following types of instructions:

- Integer arithmetic instructions
- Integer logical instructions
- All load operations and store operations (both integer and floating-point)
- CR instructions
- Memory management instructions
- Miscellaneous special purpose register instructions.

Different types of instructions use different portions of the IU pipeline.

All instructions that execute in the IU use the ID stage in the same way—the instruction is decoded, immediate constants are pulled from the instruction, and the appropriate operands are fetched from the GPRs.

All instructions that execute in the IU use the IE stage and writeback stages (IWA and IWL), but different types of instructions use these stages in different ways. These instructions can grouped by function. Within a group, the functions performed in these stages are very similar. However, the functions performed in these stages differ greatly from one group to another. Instructions that execute in the IU can be divided into the following groups:

- The single-cycle integer operations—These operations take one cycle in the IE stage, one cycle in the IWA stage, and an overlapping cycle in the IC stage (typically these instructions are in the IC stage at the same time as the IWA stage). This class of operations includes integer addition operations, rotate/shift operations, integer logical operations, CR manipulations, and some register move operations.
- The multicycle integer operations use the IE stage, the IWA stage, and the IC stage, but take multiple cycles in at least one of these stages. Included in this class are integer multiply instructions, integer divide instructions, and some register move operations.
- All single-cycle load/store instructions spend one cycle (simultaneously) in the IE and CARB stages, followed by at least one cycle in the CACC and in the IC stages. Note that additional cycles may be required in either the FPSB or the ISB stage if there is a stall, and note also that when the instruction is in the CACC stage it must also occupy either the FPSB or the ISB stage in case a cache retry condition forces the instruction to back out of the CACC stage. Finally, they may spend at least one cycle in either the IWL or the FWL stage. Single-cycle load/store operations include all integer and floating-point load/store operations except for the load/store

string/multiple operations. Logical addresses are translated to physical addresses during the IE stage. The update of **r**A for update-form load and store operations uses the IWA stage in parallel with the IC stage.

- The load/store multiple/string instructions use the same stages as the single-cycle load/store instructions but they spend multiple cycles in each stage. Note there are no floating-point load/store multiple/string instructions.

The execution of some instructions is shared between the IU and other units on the 601. For example, floating-point store operations are executed in both the IU and FPU. The IU generates the effective store address while the FPU provides the store data. Cache instructions (such as **dcbz** and **dcbi**) are decoded in the IU, and as the instruction is passed into the IE stage it is simultaneously passed to the CARB stage, and subsequently to the CACC (and ISB) stage where the appropriate actions are performed.

The flow of instructions through the integer pipeline, and dependencies and considerations associated with the IU pipeline, are described in Section 7.3.3, “Integer Pipeline Stages.”

7.2.1.3 Floating-Point Unit (FPU)

The FPU executes all floating-point arithmetic instructions and floating-point store operations, as described in Section 7.2.1.2, “Integer Unit (IU).” The FPU conforms to IEEE/ANSI standards for both single- and double-precision arithmetic. Double-precision floating-point values are stored in the thirty-two 64-bit floating-point registers (FPRs) contained within the FPU. Single-precision floating-point values are also contained in the FPRs (although only 32 single-precision values may be stored in the FPRs).

With the exception of the F1 stage, which acts as a buffer between the DS and FD stages when the FD stage stalls or is busy, all floating-point instructions must complete each stage in the floating-point pipeline. Special case numbers, such as denormalized numbers, NaNs, and infinity, are fully handled in hardware and may be required to repeat the path through the floating-point pipeline.

In the FD stage, instructions are decoded and operands are fetched from the FPRs. The number of cycles required to decode a floating-point instruction depends on the type of instruction:

- Single-precision multiply and add instructions, double-precision add instructions, register move instructions, conversion instructions, and store instructions each spend one cycle in the FD stage.
- Double-precision multiply instructions spend two cycles in the FD stage. The 601 employs a single-precision multiply-add array spread across the FPM and FPA stages. Double-precision multiply operations are split into two operations, each of which uses the FD, FPM, and FPA stages twice. The results are added in the second cycle in the FPA stage. Note that this operation is fully pipelined—the second cycle in FD overlaps the first cycle of FPM; and the second cycle of FPM overlaps the first

cycle of FPA. This results in a throughput of one double-precision multiply per two cycles. This process is described in Section 7.3.4.5.2, “Double-Precision Instruction Timing.”

- Divide instructions continue to occupy the FD stage until it enters its final FWL cycle—either about 18 (single-precision) or about 30 (double-precision).
- Some special case numbers cause stalls in the FD stage.

Floating-point arithmetic instructions write back in the FWA stage and do not use the FWL stage, while floating-point load instructions write back in the FWL stage, and do not use the FWA stage.

7.2.1.4 Branch Processing Unit (BPU)

The BPU handles branch prediction and resolution in addition to branch target calculation. The BPU generates two addresses that feed the FA stage—the branch target address (for taken branches), and the mispredict recovery address (the recovery address for mispredicted branches).

Branch instructions can be divided into four groups, depending upon whether they require the MR and BW stages. These are shown in Table 7-7. Note that branch instructions that do not require MR or BW can always be folded, and they never require tags in the IU pipeline.

Table 7-7. Branch Instruction Folding

Branch Instruction Type	MR Stage	BW Stage	Folded
Nonconditional/nonupdating	No	No	Always*
Nonconditional/updating	No	Yes (synchronous with IU WB)	Usually*
Conditional/nonupdating	Yes	No	Sometimes*
Conditional/updating	Yes	Yes (synchronous with IU WB)	Usually*

* Conditions that can prevent branch folding are described in Section 7.3.1.4.5, “Dispatch Considerations Related to IU/FPU Synchronization.”

All branch instructions use the BE stage, during which, the target address for the branch is calculated and if the branch is either resolved to be or predicted to be taken, the address for the branch is passed to the FA stage (in zero cycles).

Branches that are conditional on the CR are predicted in the BE stage (unless they can already be resolved). The address of the nonpredicted path is stored in the MR stage (see below) in case the prediction is incorrect. The 601 uses a static prediction scheme.

Branches that are conditional on the CR also enter the MR stage in parallel with BE stage. The branch stays in the MR stage until it is resolved. If the prediction is incorrect, the mispredict address (stored in the MR stage) is sent to the FA stage. The MR stage can hold only one mispredicted branch address, so the 601 can only handle one unresolved

conditional branch at a time—any other conditional branch stalls at DS, although branches that do not depend on the CR can still be dispatched and executed.

The BPU contains two link shadow registers to store link addresses when branch-and-link instructions are executed out of order. When a branch-and-link instruction is dispatched, a tag is generated in the integer pipeline. This tag is used to synchronize completion of instructions. Branch-and-link instruction can execute and clear the BE stage, but the LR is updated only when the tag completes the IC stage. Similarly, branch-and-decrement instructions do not immediately update the CTR when they execute; instead, they generate a tag used to decrement the CTR when it clears the IC stage. This is described in Section 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model.”

Branch instructions that update LR or CTR must go through the BW stage. The branch instruction enters the BW stage on the cycle immediately following the BE stage and stalls there waiting for its tag to complete (tags complete by passing through the IC stage). As many as nine branches can reside in the BW stage simultaneously, which eliminates stalls due to the BW stage filling up; however, only two branches can write back on a given cycle (one to the LR and one to the CTR).

7.2.1.5 Memory Subsystem Pipeline Stages

The CARB and CACC stages are part of the memory subsystem. These stages represent the only path between the processor core and main system memory. Memory accesses must pass through both the CARB and the CACC stages. The CARB stage is responsible for arbitration between different memory access requests generated by the processor core and the memory subsystem. The different types of requests are prioritized as follows:

1. Cache maintenance accesses (generated by the memory subsystem). These include the following in order of priority:
   a) The reload access for reloading a cache line on a cache miss
   b) The cast-out access for casting-out a modified adjacent sector
   c) The snoop push required by a snoop operation
2. Data load requests (generated by the processor core). Note that loads precede stores with respect to the memory queues; however cache accesses occur in program order (assuming cache hits). The memory queues are described in Section 7.2.2.2, “Bus Interface Unit.”
3. Data store requests (generated by the processor core). Note that loads precede stores with respect to the memory queues; however cache accesses occur in program order (assuming cache hits).
4. Instruction fetch requests (generated by the processor core)

Only one request is granted in a given cycle, and that request is forwarded to the CACC stage in the next cycle. If a cache miss occurs, no data is returned from the CACC stage. There are conditions where a stall may occur in the CARB or CACC stages associated with cache retry, as described in Chapter 4, “Cache and Memory Unit Operation.” The data is

available during the CACC stage of the cache reload, as described in Section 7.2.2.3.3, “Cache Miss Timing”; thus in this case, a request can be satisfied even if it is not arbitrated into the cache (the CARB stage).

Throughout much of this document, cache hits are assumed on all requests generated by the processor core; requests generated by the memory subsystem are ignored. Timing information including memory subsystem activity and cache misses can be determined by applying the timing of the memory substage to the CARB and CACC stage timing, as described in the following section, Section 7.2.2, “Memory Subsystem.”

7.2.2 Memory Subsystem

The memory subsystem of the 601 consists of a unified cache and a bus interface that employs extensive queueing to increase performance. The cache supports the four-state MESI protocol and the bus interface implements snooping protocol to maintain cache coherency for symmetric multiprocessor implementations.

This section describes the components of the memory subsystem—the cache unit, described in Section 7.2.2.3, “Cache Unit,” and the system interface, described in Section 7.2.2.2, “Bus Interface Unit.” This section also describes how memory accesses affect instruction timing.

7.2.2.1 Memory Management Unit (MMU)

The 601 MMU supports both the standard page table translation mechanism and the block address translation (BAT) mechanism. There is a unified 256-entry, two-way set associative translation lookaside buffer (TLB) in the MMU. The TLB is maintained in hardware, including a hardware reload on a TLB miss. The BAT registers are maintained by software as specified by the PowerPC architecture. One MMU is used for both instruction and data translation with data accesses given priority over instruction accesses. Translation occurs during execute stage for load operations and store operations. For more detailed information about translation mechanism, see Chapter 6, “Memory Management Unit.”

7.2.2.2 Bus Interface Unit

The bus interface unit of the 601, shown in Figure 7-2, consists of a memory queue and bus control logic. The memory queue contains two read queues and three write queues (one of which is reserved for snoop pushes).

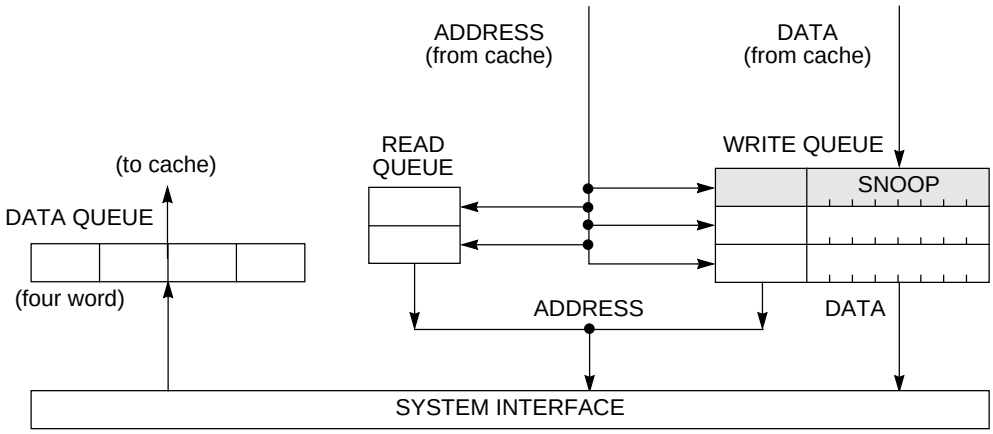


Figure 7-2. Bus Interface Unit

The read queues may hold any combination of the following three cache misses—one fetch, one load, and one cacheable write-back store operation.

For better overall processor performance, the queueing allows high priority operations (such as read misses) to bypass low priority operations (such as cache write-back operations). This prioritizing is discussed in Section 7.2.2.2.3, “Bus Interface Arbitration.” The bus interface features include pipelining of up to two operations, data forwarding (after two data beats have been received), bus parking, and optional loading of the adjacent sector in a cache line to decrease the latency of memory accesses. This is described in detail in Chapter 9, “System Interface Operation.”

The bus interface allows zero wait state data to stream into or out of the chip, providing a maximum data bus bandwidth of 320 Mbytes/second (at 50 MHz). This high bandwidth is achieved by using the 601’s zero wait state capability and the ability to burst data, to pipeline two addresses onto the bus and overlap slave access time for the second tenure with that of the first.

7.2.2.2.1 Write Queue

For each position in the write queue, there is space for the physical address and for the associated data (each capable of holding a sector). One position, marked snoop in Figure 7-2, is provided for high-priority bus operations when a snoop hits a modified sector. This is described in Section 9.10, “Using DBWO (Data Bus Write Only).”

Burst writes are always sector aligned.

7.2.2.2.2 Read Queue

For burst read operations, the address is modified to be the quadword address of the requested data. By requesting the quadword, the hardware can forward data to the internal target after only two beats of the data have been received. On the other hand, the memory system need only be able to provide two orderings of data coming back (first quadword of a sector then second or second quadword then first).

Data that is read from memory is sent to a buffer that accepts a quadword of data before accessing the cache to write the data (and forward it to the processor if required).

The read queues also allow an optional reload of the adjacent sector of a cache line if it is not already valid in the cache, a read request is queued for that sector if no other read misses are present. How these operations are prioritized is shown in Section 7.2.2.2.3, “Bus Interface Arbitration.”

For code and data with good locality of reference, this can lead to significant performance increases by reducing the number of cache misses. This optional reload can be disabled for instruction fetches by setting HID0[26] and for load/store misses by setting HID0[27]. For more information about the HID0 register, see Section 2.3.3.13.1, “Checkstop Sources and Enables Register—HID0.”

7.2.2.2.3 Bus Interface Arbitration

The 601 arbitrates all queue positions for bus access using the following priority scheme (which is optimized for minimal processor stall):

1. High-priority cache push-out operations (using the $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ signal)
2. Normal snoop push-out operations
3. I/O controller interface segment accesses that incur no additional delays (that is, they have not been retried because of I/O latency). When these accesses have been retried, these operations are given lowest priority.
4. Cache instruction operations
5. Read requests, such as load operations, RWITMs, and instruction fetches
6. Single-beat write operations
7. **sync** instructions
8. Optional cache-line fill operations
9. Cache sector cast-out operations
10. I/O controller interface segment accesses that incur additional delays (that is, they have been retried because of I/O latency). This is described in Chapter 4, “Cache and Memory Unit Operation.”

Because write operations do not stall the processor, they are performed after read operations. If, however, a read misses and a write to the same block is in the queue, that write is prioritized ahead of any other read operations. This allows the read miss to be queued so the cache can be accessed for some other request.

I/O controller interface operations are typically ARTRYed multiple times. To allow other operations to finish in the interim, these I/O controller interface operations are given lowest priority (until the 601 begins another bus operation).

A read miss can be arbitrated directly from the cache access point to the bus if no other reads are queued. This eliminates having to queue the operation before arbitrating for the bus.

7.2.2.2.4 Bus Parking

Bus parking is associated with the address portion of the bus interface unit. It is a part of the bus protocol that eliminates as many as two cycles of bus arbitration overhead by having the bus pregranted to a particular master. If the master is given a bus grant ($\overline{BG}$) on the cycle that it needs to request the bus, it begins a tenure by asserting the $\overline{TS}$ signal. Bus parking saves the cycle where bus request would have been asserted and the cycle of the grant, as shown in Figure 7-3. In some systems, these two cycles may be the same cycle. The transfer start occurs up to two cycles earlier when the bus is parked compared to when the bus is not parked.

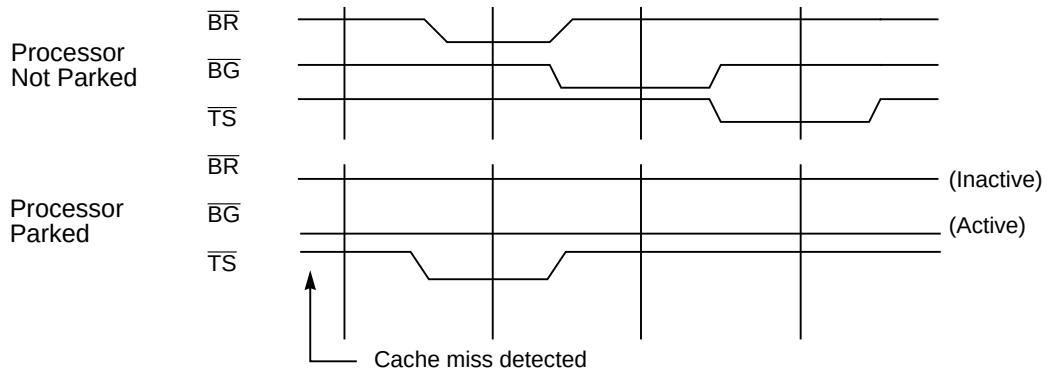


Figure 7-3. Bus Timing for Parked and Nonparked Bus Masters

For more information about bus parking refer to Section 9.3.1, “Address Bus Arbitration.”

7.2.2.3 Cache Unit

The 601 has a unified 32-Kbyte, eight-way set associative cache. The cache access time is one processor cycle and it is nonblocking on misses. The cache tag directory is dual ported with one port dedicated for bus snooping. The cache array is not accessed by snoops unless a snoop push is required (that is, a snoop results in a data access action). The 601 uses a single cache for both data and instruction accesses. The cache uses a least-recently-used (LRU) algorithm for replacing cache lines.

7.2.2.3.1 Cache Arbiter

Because the cache is single-ported and unified, all cache accesses must be prioritized. Cache arbitration is prioritized as shown in 7.2.1.5, “Memory Subsystem Pipeline Stages.”

Note that instruction fetch accesses have the lowest priority access to the cache.

7.2.2.3.2 Cache Hit Timing

To determine if the appropriate data resides in the cache, the cache data array and the cache tag directory are accessed in parallel. As shown in Figure 7-4, for a cache hit, data is

available at the output of the cache one cycle after the read address is arbitrated. If necessary, the tag directory is updated in the same cycle that the cache data is available (cycle 1). The processor can forward the data to the IE stage in cycle 1. This feed-forwarding mechanism is described further in Section 7.3.3, “Integer Pipeline Stages.”

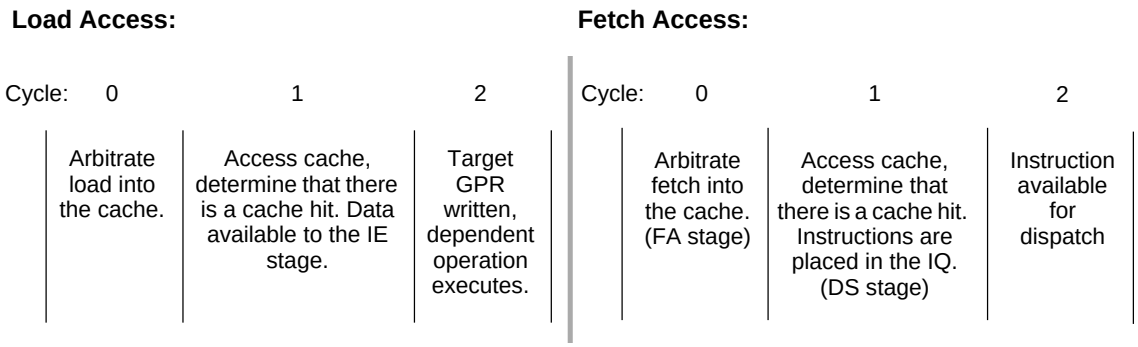


Figure 7-4. Cache Hit Timing for a Load Access and a Fetch Access

If a cache hit is detected when a write access is arbitrated into the cache, the cache is accessed and written in the same cycle. If necessary, the tag directory is also updated in the same cycle (cycle 1) in Figure 7-4. Store operations have the same arbitration priority as load operations. As long as they hit in the cache, a read access can immediately follow a write access and a write access can immediately follow a read access unless there are data dependencies. Data dependencies are shown in the examples in Appendix I, “Instruction Timing Examples.”

7.2.2.3.3 Cache Miss Timing

The cache miss timing is a function of several variables, including bus speed, memory access time and interleaving structure, and bus arbitration schemes. This section considers the fastest possible system, then provides formulas for calculating numbers for any real system. For the rest of this section, the terms processor cycle and bus cycle are used to differentiate the actual amount of time elapsing. Bus cycles are integer multiples of processor cycles, and the multiple is system-dependent.

7.2.2.3.4 Timings When the Processor Clock Frequency Equals the Bus Clock Frequency

The following discussion assumes a 1:1 bus clock to processor clock frequency ratio. For information about 601 clock operation, refer to Section 8.2.11, “Clock Signals.” Figure 7-5 shows the best-case timing for a cache miss with the processor and bus operating at the same frequency. This example assumes a one bus cycle access time to main memory, bus running at full speed, no delay between the data beats (that is the transfer acknowledge, $\overline{\text{TA}}$, signal is asserted without delay for each beat), no address retry ($\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$) on the address tenure, and the processor is parked on the bus.

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Arbitrate load into the cache (CARB).	Cache miss. Receive bus grant ($\overline{BG}$).	Load in memory queue, assert $\overline{TS}$, receive data bus grant ($\overline{DBG}$)	1st data beat returned	2nd data beat returned	3rd data beat returned; arbitrate reload dump into cache.	4th data beat, first two beats of data written to cache and forwarded to IE stage, and IQ.	dependent operation executes, arbitrate reload dump 2 into cache.	Reload dump 2, cache tags validated for sector.	New sector usable in cache.

Figure 7-5. Cache Miss Timing When the Processor Clock Equals the Bus Clock (Best-Case Timing)

When a cache miss is detected it is immediately arbitrated onto the bus if nothing of higher priority is queued (Clock 0). The bus grant signal ($\overline{BG}$, is asserted in the next clock cycle (Clock 1) if there is no higher priority transaction on the bus. However, if the processor is parked on the bus ($\overline{BG}$ is already asserted), a transfer begins on the next bus cycle. In this example, the transfer begins in Clock 2. The operation is also placed in the read queue (shown in Figure 7-2), so the data can be pipelined back to the processor and the cache. Sometime after the transfer has begun (perhaps as soon as the next bus cycle as shown here in Clock 3), data begins to come into the processor. Data arrives in four double-word beats (for a cache sector of data). After the second beat of data arrives (Clock 4), the bus interface unit makes a request (Clock 5) to write the four words into the cache (a “reload dump”). The first four words contain the critical word.

During the next processor cycle (Clock 6), data is written to the cache and forwarded to the processor core if required (either to the register or to the IQ, depending on whether the action was a load or a code fetch). After the last two beats of data arrive, a second request to write to the cache is made (Clock 7). During Clock 8, the cache receives the remaining four words of data (bursts three and four) and the cache tag is validated. In Clock 9, if an access to this sector is arbitrated into the cache, the cache tags signal a cache hit, as shown in Figure 7-5.

Figure 7-6 shows a formula for calculating the number of processor cycles from cache miss (that is, cycle 1 in Figure 7-5) to dependent operation execution (cycle 7 in Figure 7-5) assuming a 1:1 processor-to-bus-clock ratio.

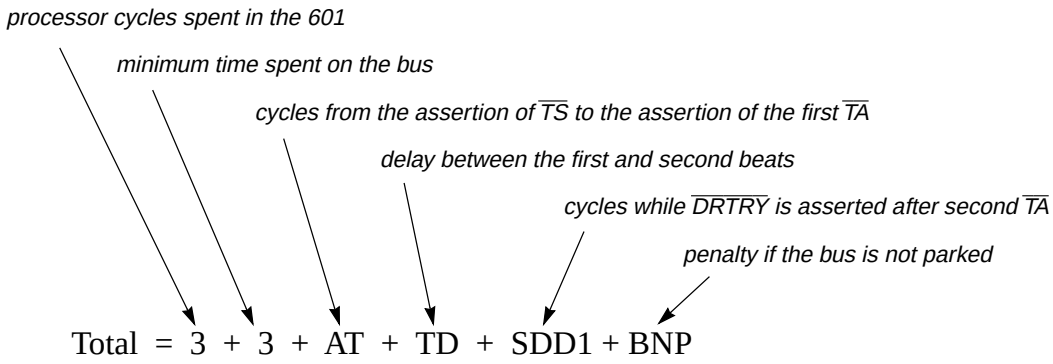


Figure 7-6. Formula for Calculating Total Time from Cache Miss to Execution of Dependent Operation

Bus parking is described in Section 7.2.2.2.4, “Bus Parking.”

Figure 7-7 provides a formula for calculating the total number of processor cycles from cache miss to data available for next cache hit assuming the processor clock frequency equals bus clock frequency.

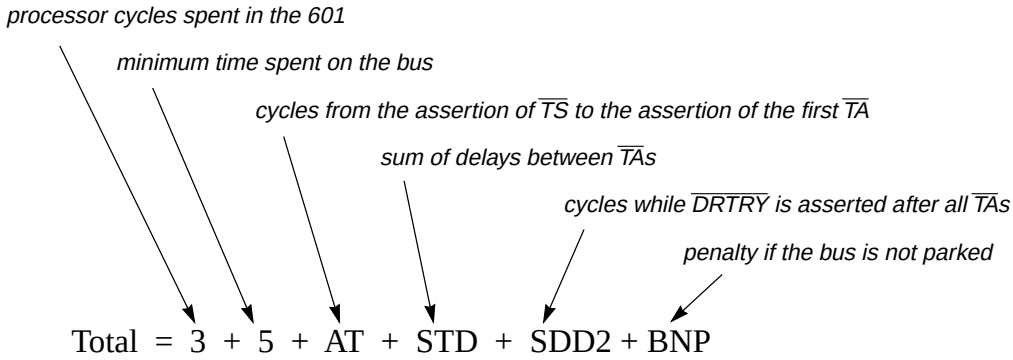


Figure 7-7. Formula for Calculating Total Time from Cache Miss to Data Available for the Next Cache Hit

7.2.2.3.5 Timings When the Processor Clock Frequency Does Not Equal the Bus Clock Frequency

This section describes timings when the bus clock frequency does not equal the processor clock. Information regarding configuring the clock signals is given in Section 8.2.11, “Clock Signals.” Figure 7-8 shows the timing for a cache miss when the processor clock is twice as fast as the bus clock.

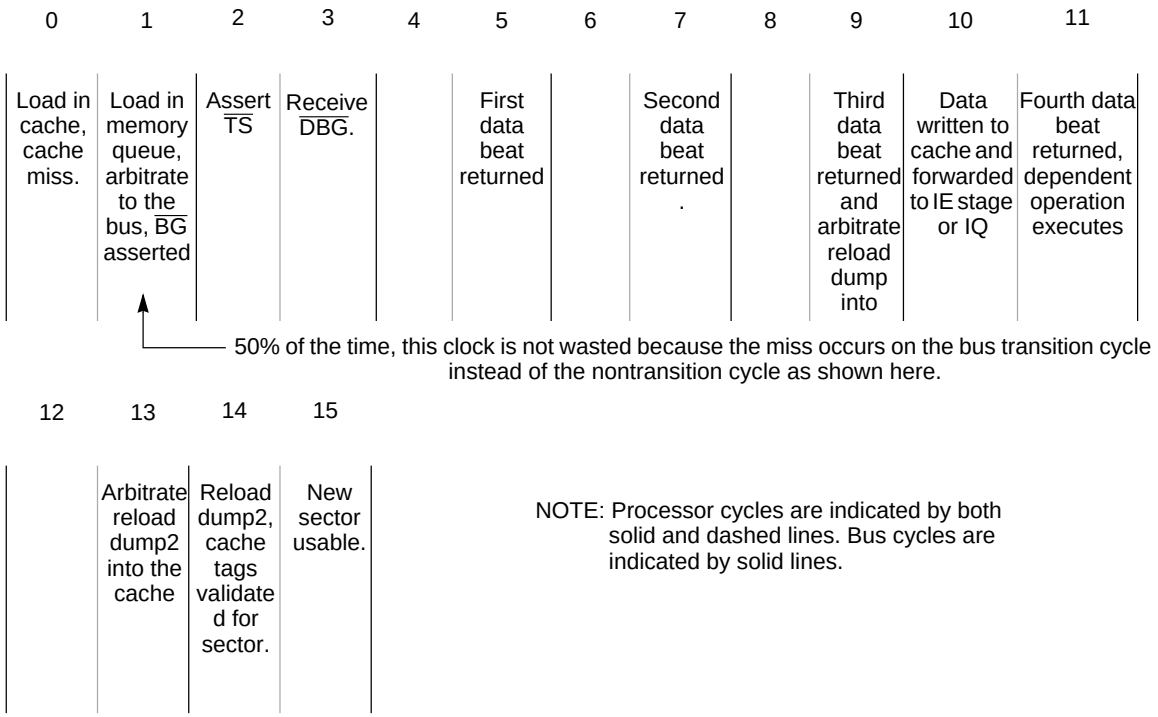


Figure 7-8. Cache Miss Timing when the Processor Clock Frequency is Twice the Bus Clock Frequency (Best-Case)

Processor cycles are indicated by both dashed and solid lines, while bus cycles are indicated by the solid lines only.

Note that typically there is a one-half processor cycle penalty for synchronizing to the bus clock when the processor clock frequency is twice the bus clock frequency (half the time the cache miss occurs one processor clock before a bus transition processor clock, half the time it occurs in a bus transition processor clock). This penalty is larger for larger processor clock to bus clock ratios, as the average number of processor cycles of delay increases. Also, all bus related parameters now have to be multiplied by the processor clock to bus clock ratio.

Figure 7-9 shows these factors in calculating total processor cycles for cache-miss-to-dependent-operation execution when the bus clock frequency does not equal the processor clock frequency.

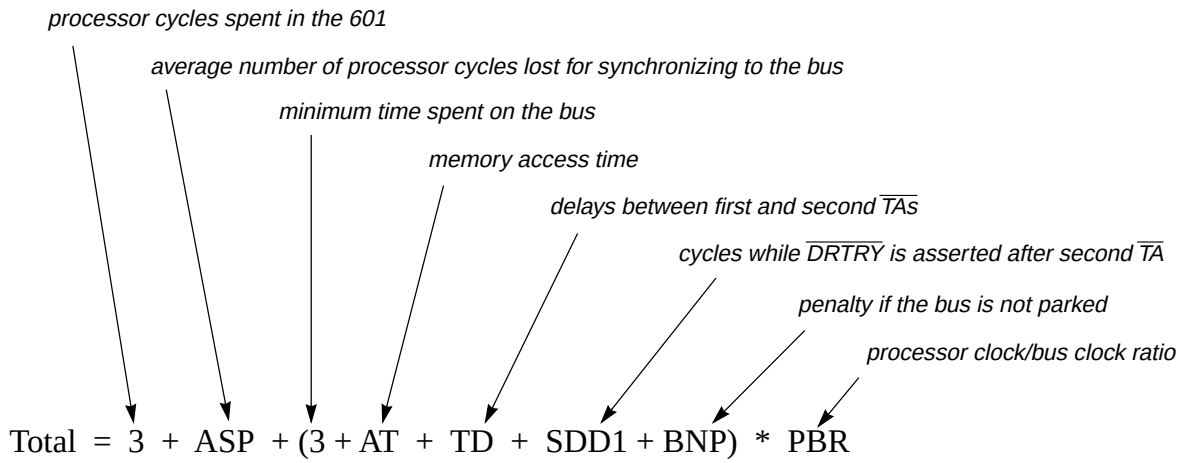


Figure 7-9. Formula for Calculating Total Time from Cache Miss to Dependent Operation Execution (Processor Clock/Bus Clock ≠ 1:1)

Figure 7-10 shows a formula for calculating the total number of processor cycles from cache miss to data available for next cache hit on a bus that is not running at the same frequency as the processor.

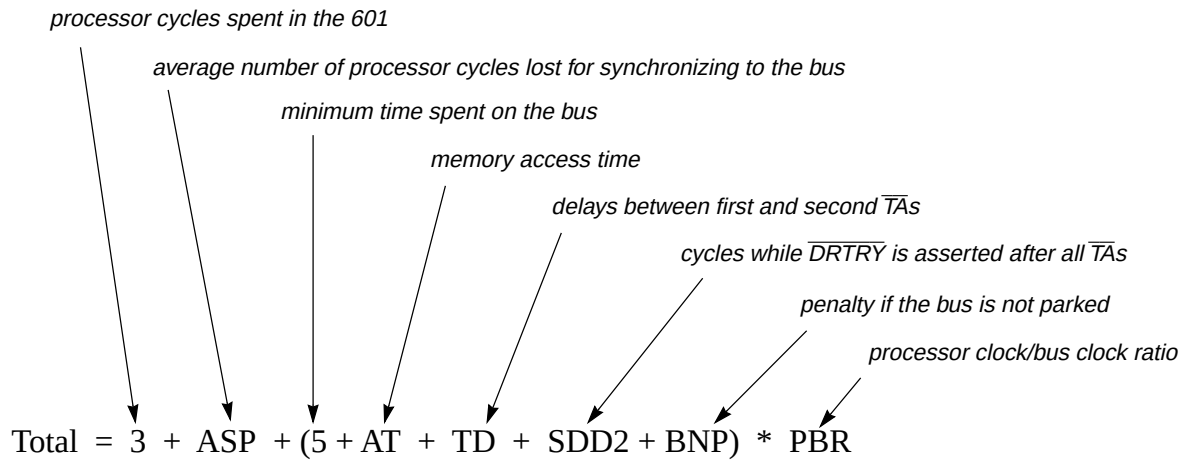


Figure 7-10. Formula for Calculating Total Time from Cache Miss to Data Available for Next Cache Hit (Processor Clock ≠ Bus Clock)

7.3 Pipeline Timing

This section, describes the exact timing of the pipeline stages, including specific information for every instruction and descriptions of data dependencies that may affect throughput. It is organized into three main parts. The first part discusses timing for stages common to all instructions and the closely related branch pipeline. Subsequent sections discuss timing for stages specific to the IU and FPU pipelines.

7.3.1 Common Stages/BPU Pipeline Stages

This section describes timing of the pipeline stages that are common to every instruction and the closely related branch pipeline.

The common stages are as follows:

- Fetch arbitration stage (FA)—In this stage, the fetch address is sent to the memory subsystem. The FA stage is described in Section 7.3.1.1, “Common Stages—Fetch Arbitration (FA) Stage.”
- Cache arbitration (CARB) and cache access (CACC) stages—In these stages instructions are read from the memory subsystem (from the address sent to the memory subsystem in the FA stage) and loaded into the instruction queue (DS stage). The CARB stage is described in Section 7.3.1.1, “Common Stages—Fetch Arbitration (FA) Stage and Section 7.3.1.3, “Common Stages—Cache Access (CACC) Stage.”
- Dispatch stage (DS)—The common stages end when instructions are dispatched to the appropriate execution unit(s) in the dispatch stage (DS). The dispatch stage has different timing for different instructions.

The BPU pipeline is included in this discussion because it is tightly coupled to the common stages in that the results of a branch instruction determine which instructions enter the FA stage. The BPU generates the branch target address and the mispredict address that can go to the memory subsystem in the FA stage.

7.3.1.1 Common Stages—Fetch Arbitration (FA) Stage

During the FA stage, the address for the next instruction needed by the processor core is sent to the memory subsystem. The possible sources of stalls can be grouped into the two following categories:

- External events—Anything that occurs outside the BPU that stops the fetch address from accessing the memory subsystem. For more information see Section 7.2.2.3.1, “Cache Arbiter.”
- Inability to generate a correct address—These conditions are primarily related to an inability to translate the fetch address. For more information see Section 7.2.2.1, “Memory Management Unit (MMU).”

Note that because the fetch bandwidth (up to eight instructions per cycle) is greater than the dispatch bandwidth (up to three instructions per cycle), stalls in the FA stage do not necessarily cause bubbles in the dispatch stage or in execution unit pipeline stages.

The address that the fetcher sends to the memory subsystem comes from one of three sources (in order of decreasing priority): the mispredict recovery address, the branch target address, or, the next sequential address.

The sequential fetcher is used to generate the next sequential address. This address is used when there is not a taken branch or a mispredicted branch recovery, and is calculated by

taking the current fetch address and adding to it the number of instructions loaded into the DS stage this cycle (times four—because each instruction is four bytes long).

When a branch is dispatched to the BPU, its target EA is calculated and then sent to the MMU for translation. For conditional branches that depend on the CR, while the target EA is being calculated, the CR is also being checked for coherency (on a four-bit field granularity).

If the CR is coherent (that is, no instructions remaining in the pipeline below the branch are going to update the CR field to which the branch refers), the branch direction is resolved. If the CR is not coherent, the branch is predicted. The recovery address (the nonpredicted address) is saved in the MR stage. Based on the direction of the branch prediction, the translated target address (from the MMU) or the translated next-sequential address (from the MMU) is sent to the memory subsystem. If a previous branch prediction is determined to have failed, the translated address is not sent to the memory system, and the current branch instruction is removed as part of the mispredict recovery.

After a branch is predicted, the CR is checked for coherency in each subsequent cycle. When the CR becomes coherent, the branch is resolved. If the branch is predicted correctly, the MR stage is cleared and fetching continues from the current fetch address (the current address could be either a sequential fetch address or a target address from a subsequent branch that does not depend on the CR). If the branch was predicted incorrectly, any instructions fetched from the predicted path are purged and the translated mispredict recovery address is sent to the memory subsystem as discussed in Section 7.3.2.1, “Speculative Execution and Mispredict Recovery Mechanism.”

7.3.1.2 Common Stages—Cache Arbitration (CARB) Stage

The commons stages include cache arbitration and cache access stages. During the CARB stage, the instruction fetching mechanism arbitrates for access to the cache. For most operations, the CARB stage of the cache is overlapped with one or more other stages (such as fetch arbitration and cache arbitration occur in one cycle). Note that the CARB and CACC stages may be used by the memory subsystem for cache reload operations and for some snoop operations. For more details about the CARB stage, including cache access priorities, see Section 7.2.1.5, “Memory Subsystem Pipeline Stages.”

7.3.1.3 Common Stages—Cache Access (CACC) Stage

During the CACC stage, instructions are read from the cache and loaded into the instruction queue (DS stage). At most, eight instructions are loaded into the IQ during the CACC stage; the number of instructions fetched depends on the following:

- The type of access—A cache hit (eight instructions maximum), a cache reload (four instructions maximum if the fetch occurs between the second and the fourth data beat, otherwise eight instructions) or a noncacheable fetch (two instructions maximum)

- The alignment of the fetch address
- How full the IQ is—Any instructions that do not fit into the IQ are refetched later. Any instructions being dispatched from the DS stage during this cycle may be replaced with incoming instructions.

7.3.1.4 Common Stages—Dispatch (DS) Stage

During the DS stage, instructions are dispatched to the appropriate execution units. Different instructions take different numbers of cycles for the dispatch stage—this is the first stage where different types of instructions are distinguished. In general, branch and integer instructions are dispatched in zero cycles, while floating-point instructions are dispatched in one cycle.

Instructions in the IQ are considered to be in the dispatch stage, and in some contexts, such as instruction timing diagrams, it is useful to refer to the different elements of the instruction queue (IQ0–IQ7) as stages.

7.3.1.4.1 Branch Dispatch

Branches take zero cycles to dispatch—the branch being dispatched is in the BE stage in the same cycle in which it is in the DS stage. The following is a list of reasons for a branch to be stalled at the DS stage:

1. There is a dependency on the LR caused by an **mtlr** instruction preceding the branch instruction in program order. For more information, see Table 7-9.
2. There is a dependency on the CTR caused by an **mtctr** instruction preceding the branch instruction in program order. For more information see Table 7-10.
3. The link shadow registers are both full and the branch instruction that needs to be dispatched next has the link bit set. For more information, see Section 7.2.1.4, “Branch Processing Unit (BPU).”
4. The branch that is to be dispatched next depends on if the CR and the MR stage is occupied. For more information, see Section 7.3.2.1, “Speculative Execution and Mispredict Recovery Mechanism.
5. The branch is on a nonpurged path. For more information, see Section 7.3.2.1, “Speculative Execution and Mispredict Recovery Mechanism.”

Notice that the BPU is the only unit for which dependency checking is done in the dispatch stage.

7.3.1.4.2 Integer Dispatch

As noted in Section 7.2.1.1, “Dispatch Stage Logic,” the integer pipeline is used to ensure that completion of instruction appears to be in program order. An integer instruction is dispatched only after all instructions in front of it have been dispatched. To enforce this requirement, an integer instruction is only dispatched when it is the first instruction in the IQ stage (IQ0). Unless there are stalls in the IU pipeline, dispatch takes zero cycles. Although instructions can stall in the dispatch stage, there are no conditions inherent to the dispatch stage that can cause an integer instruction to stall.

7.3.1.4.3 Floating-Point Dispatch

Floating-point instructions take a full cycle to dispatch. Floating-point instructions are dispatched from the DS stage into either the FD stage or the F1 stage, depending on whether FD is stalled on the dispatch cycle. If the F1 stage is full, floating-point instructions cannot be dispatched (even if the F1 stage is being emptied during this cycle). This is the only dispatch stall for floating-point instructions.

7.3.1.4.4 Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model

The 601 supports a precise exceptions model for integer and branch instructions, while precise floating-point exceptions mode can be enabled or disabled through MSR[FE0] and MSR[FE1]. This section describes timing considerations when floating-point exceptions are disabled (MSR[FE0] = MSR[FE1] = 0). Floating-point exceptions enabled mode is discussed in Section 7.3.1.4.5, “Dispatch Considerations Related to IU/FPU Synchronization.”

Regardless of whether floating-point precise exceptions are enabled, branch instructions that update the CTR or LR and all floating-point instructions generate tags when they are dispatched. These tags follow integer instructions (or bubbles in the IU pipeline when no integer instruction is available) through the IU pipeline to keep the program order information that is used to synchronize the three pipelines. When either a floating-point or a branch instruction is dispatched, the remaining instructions are collapsed into the space left by the dispatched instructions, as shown in Figure 7-11.

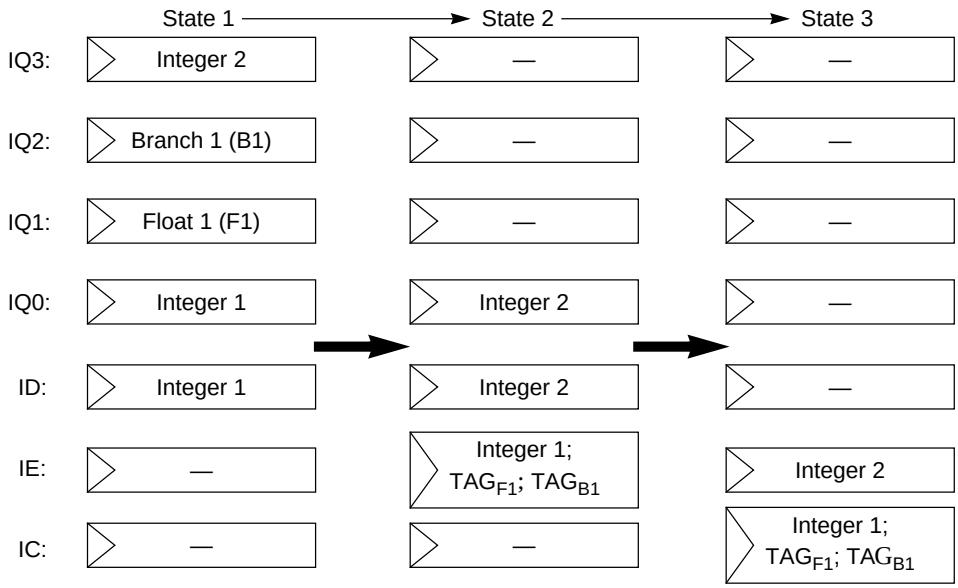


Figure 7-11. Collapsing of Instruction Stream after Out-of-Order Dispatch

All floating-point and branch instructions except unconditional branch instructions that do not update the LR generate a tag that ensures that instructions will write back in an orderly fashion. The three types of synchronization tags are as follows:

- Floating-point tags
- LR tags
- CTR tags
- There is a fourth tag that is used for mispredicted branch recovery called a predicted branch tag; this tag is discussed in Section 7.3.2.1, “Speculative Execution and Mispredict Recovery Mechanism.”

Generally, the synchronization tag is placed with the closest integer instruction preceding it in program order. However, in some situations an instruction is tagged to a bubble in the IU pipeline. For example, this occurs when a tag is already taken—when there are two floating-point instructions with no intervening integer instruction, the first floating-point instruction can use the floating-point tag of the previous integer instruction, but since that tag has been used, the second floating-point instruction must tag to a bubble in the integer pipeline. A tagged bubble must also be created when a floating-point instruction updates the CR as described in Section 7.3.1.4.5, “Dispatch Considerations Related to IU/FPU Synchronization.” This also occurs when floating-point precise mode is enabled.

Multiple instructions can be tagged to a bubble in the same way that multiple instructions can be tagged to an integer instruction. This is shown in Figure 7-12.

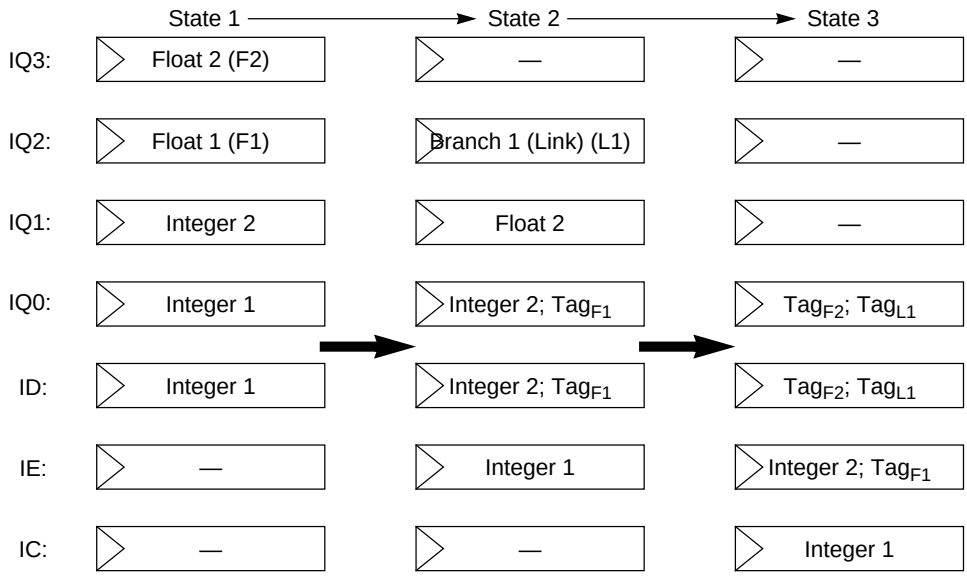


Figure 7-12. Instruction Tagging in the IU Pipeline

The actual synchronization between units is performed relative to the integer completion stage (IC). As an integer instruction completes the IC stage, the completion logic checks for any tags.When tags are detected, any dependencies are checked, and writeback is withheld until any dependencies related to the tags are resolved. Note that instructions are not forced to complete in strict program order; the IC stage logic ensures that dependencies (such as the CR) implied by program order are handled properly.

Figure 7-12 illustrates the necessity of creating a bubble in the IU pipeline to provide a tag when there are two consecutive floating-point instructions. Note that Float 2 cannot be folded because Integer 2 already has a floating-point tag on it. As a result, the tag for Float 2 occupies integer decode (ID) in state 3.

If a floating-point instruction is in the floating-point writeback stage (FW), it is allowed to complete; otherwise, the completion logic remembers that a floating-point instruction can complete when it arrives in the FW stage. The completion logic can keep track of as many as three floating-point tags for which no floating-point instruction has written back. In other words, the IU can complete instructions past three incomplete floating-point instructions without stalling. It stalls when the fourth floating-point tag is in the IC stage. Again, this assumes the processor is in floating-point instruction exceptions disabled mode, as described in Section 7.3.1.4.5, "Dispatch Considerations Related to IU/FPU Synchronization." Link and count tags cause the LR and CTR to be updated in the BPU as the integer instruction clears the IC stage. The BPU is always ready to write back instructions by the time their tags reach the IC stage, so it can always update these registers synchronously with the IC stage.

Branch and floating-point instructions are considered to complete when their tags leave the IC stage (floating-point instructions may write back later, and branch instructions may get resolved later). Thus the 601 supports in-order completion, but permits out-of-order writeback.

7.3.1.4.5 Dispatch Considerations Related to IU/FPU Synchronization

There are some additional dispatch considerations regarding synchronization between the FPU and the IU:

- Floating-point store operations are dispatched to both the FPU (for data fetch) and the IU (for EA calculation). Floating-point store operations may be dispatched to the FPU before they are dispatched to the IU; they can be dispatched to the FPU as soon as the standard floating-point dispatch criteria are met. For more information, see Section 7.3.1.4.3, "Floating-Point Dispatch."

  When a floating-point store is dispatched to the FPU, a float tag is generated and placed on the floating-point store that needs to be dispatched to the IU. From here on, the floating-point store behaves like a standard integer instruction tagged with a floating-point tag. When a floating-point store clears the IC stage, if the FPU is behind, (that is, the store has not arrived at the FW stage), then the store address (physical address—**r**A) is put into a floating-point store buffer to wait for the floating-point data—the FPSB stage. Only one instruction can reside in the FPSB stage at a time, so if another floating-point store arrives in the IC stage before the first store clears the FW stage, the second one remains in the IC stage until the FPSB stage is available. This is shown in Appendix I, "Instruction Timing Examples."

- Floating-point instructions that update the CR, complete synchronously with the IC stage. Additionally, they are never dispatched out of order and are always tagged to a bubble in the integer pipeline rather than to an integer instruction. Thus a floating-

point instruction that updates the CR never shares the position in the IU pipeline with an integer instruction. The bubble in the IU pipeline stalls at the IC stage until the instruction reaches the FW stage.

- When precise floating-point exceptions mode is enabled, a floating-point instruction may cause an exception at the FW stage, preventing its completion. Therefore, its tag cannot leave the IC stage until the instruction is in the FW stage. In this mode, floating-point instructions are forced to be dispatched in order and must be tagged to bubbles in the IU pipeline to facilitate this synchronization requirement. Thus in floating-point exceptions enabled mode, floating-point and integer instructions are dispatched strictly in order (although branch instructions can be tagged to the integer instruction or to the bubble in the IU pipeline required by the floating-point instruction).

7.3.2 BPU Pipeline Stages

The BPU has three unique pipeline stages:

- Branch execute (BE)—During the BE stage, the branch target address is calculated and the branch direction is either determined (for nonconditional branches or conditional branches for which the CR is coherent), or predicted (for conditional branches for which the CR is not coherent). The BE stage is one cycle for all branches.
- Mispredict recovery (MR)—During the MR stage, the conditional branches stay until they are resolved. They enter the MR stage and the BE stage at the same time. A resolved conditional branch can leave the MR stage in one cycle, but an unresolved conditional branch stays in the MR stage until it is resolved. A (conditional) branch in the MR stage does not prevent another (unconditional) branch from entering the BE stage.
- Branch writeback (BW)—The BW stage can contain as many as nine branch instructions waiting to write back. They can leave after they complete (their tags leave the IC stage). Only branches that update the LR or the CTR must pass through the BW stage.

7.3.2.1 Speculative Execution and Mispredict Recovery Mechanism

The 601 uses a static branch prediction algorithm for predicting unresolved conditional branches. The prediction algorithm is shown in Table 7-8. Notice that if the information is available, the branch instruction should be coded such that the prediction is correct most of the time.

Table 7-8. Branch Prediction

Instruction	BO[y]	
	0	1
bc (forward)	Not-taken	Taken
bc (backward)	Taken	Not-taken
bclr	Not-taken	Taken
bcctr	Not-taken	Taken

When a branch is predicted, (recall that the CR is not coherent on the cycle in which the branch is in BE), the address of the nonpredicted path is held in the MR stage along with the information required to determine whether the prediction is correct. If the branch is resolved as correctly predicted, the MR stage is cleared and no recovery is performed.

If the branch is not resolved as predicted, the mispredict recovery address at MR is used as the fetch address and any instructions from the nonpredicted path are purged from the IQ. Note that the MR and BW stages are different and that a branch does not necessarily leave the MR stage before it leaves the BW stage. Also note that only branches that are conditional on the CR need to pass through the MR stage; unconditional branches and branch-and-decrement branches that do not need the CR need not pass through the MR stage and can execute even when the MR stage is busy.

When a branch is resolved as predicted, there are generally instructions behind it in program order already in the DS stage. Because the processor could not determine whether those instructions are needed before the branch is resolved, it waits until the target instructions are loaded into the IQ before writing the instructions from the predicted path over those from the nonpredicted path. This is referred to as a delayed purge. If the branch is not resolved as predicted and resolution occurs before the target instructions are written into the IQ, the sequential path is kept and the target instructions are not loaded into the IQ. While the nonpredicted path is in the IQ, it is referred to as the nonpurged path. Examples showing how these instructions are handled are provided in Appendix I, “Instruction Timing Examples.”

The speculative instructions in the pipeline are marked with the predicted branch tag, which marks the position of the predicted branch in program order in the integer pipeline. No instructions can be dispatched onto a predicted branch tag (although a predicted branch tag can be placed on top of other tags). Also, instructions cannot be dispatched onto conditional branch instructions that are going to generate a predicted branch tag (that is, any branches that are conditional on the CR). Speculative execution is supported for the FPU and the BPU in the 601. The predicted branch tag is different from other tags in that it is not allowed to progress beyond the IE stage; thus speculative integer instructions are not allowed past the ID stage (they cannot go past the predicted branch tag in the IE stage).

The predicted branch tag is used for mispredict recovery to determine which instructions to purge. Any instructions behind the predicted branch tag in program order are speculative and therefore purged. This tag is also used to mark the division between nonspeculative instructions and the nonpurged path when a delayed purge occurs. When a branch is resolved as predicted, the predicted branch tag is deleted. Note that there can only be one outstanding predicted branch and therefore only one predicted branch tag at a time. This is shown in Appendix I, Section I.1.1.6, “Conditional Branch Timing.”

7.3.2.2 Branch Pipeline Timing

Table 7-9 through Table 7-12 show the timings of the four different types of branch instructions executed by the BPU. These tables describe the ideal pipeline timing and the processor resources used. Resources are used either exclusively, (that is, no other instruction can access the resource at the same time—a write lock), or nonexclusively, (that is, other instructions can access the resource at the same time—a read lock).

Note that for these tables, all memory accesses are assumed to hit in the cache. The number of cycles for a memory access is larger for a cache miss. For more information, see Section 7.2.2.3.3, “Cache Miss Timing.” Timing examples for multiple instruction sequences involving branches are given in Appendix I, Section I.1, “Branch Instruction Timing Examples.”

Table 7-9 shows the timing for the **b**, **ba**, **bl**, and **bla** instructions. Note that branch writeback is delayed until the branch’s tag completes the IU pipeline. For branches with the link bit set (LK = 1), the new link value is stored in a link shadow register and is written to the architected LR in the BW stage. The branch-and-link instruction use one of the two link shadow registers from the cycle it is dispatched until the cycle after the LR is updated (BW).

Table 7-9. Branch Instruction Timing—b, ba, bl, bla

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	n[a]
Pipeline stages	FA		FA[b]	
	CARB		CARB	
		CACC		
			DS	
			BE	
				BW
Resources required nonexclusively				
Resources required exclusively			Link shadow register[c]	Link shadow register[c.]; LR[c.]

a. Branch writeback is delayed *n* cycles until the branch's tag completes. Note that only branches with LK=1 need to pass through the BW stage.

b. This is the FA stage for the instructions on the taken path for taken branches.

c. For branches with the link bit set (LK = 1), the new link value is stored in a link shadow register and is written to the architected LR in the BW stage. The branch-and-link instruction use one of the two link shadow registers from the cycle it is dispatched until the cycle after the LR is updated (BW).

Table 7-10 shows the instruction timing for the **bc**, **bcl**, **bca**, and **bcla** instructions. For branches that are resolved *k* cycles after they are executed, *k* may be 0, in which case the CR is accessed in the DS/BE/MR cycle—this corresponds to the case when the condition upon which the branch depends is already resolved.

Branch writeback is delayed until the branch tag completes (*n* cycles). Note that only branches that update either the CTR or LR need to pass through the BW stage. If n is less than k, the branch remains in the MR stage but leaves the BW stage.

Table 7-10. Branch Instruction Timing—bc, bcl, bca, bcla

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	k[a]	n-k[b]
Pipeline stages	FA		FA[c]		
	CARB		CARB		
		CACC			
			DS		
			BE		
			MR	MR	
				BW	BW
Resources required nonexclusively			CTR[d]	CR[e]	
Resources required exclusively			Link shadow register[f]	Link shadow register[f.]	LR[f.], CTR[d.]

a. For branches that are resolved *k* cycles after they are executed. *k* may be 0 in which case the architected CR is accessed in the DS/BE/MR cycle—this corresponds to the case when the condition upon which the branch depends is already resolved.

b. Branch writeback is delayed until the branch tag completes (*n* cycles). Note that only branches that update either the CTR or the LR need to pass through the BW stage. If n < k, the branch remains in the MR stage but leaves the BW stage.

c. This is the FA stage for the target instructions of the branch (only for taken branches).

d. For branches with BO field specifying ‘decrement count and branch.’

e. Conditional branches access the architected CR on the last cycle of the MR stage; this access is what ends the MR stage.

f. For branches with the link bit set (LK=1), the new link value is stored in a link shadow register and is written to the architected LR in the BW stage. The branch-and-link instruction will use one of the two link shadow registers from the cycle it is dispatched until the cycle after the LR is updated (BW).

Table 7-11 shows the instruction timing for the **bclr** and **bclrl** instructions.

Table 7-11. Branch Instruction Timing—bclr, bclrl

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	k[a]	n-k[b]
Pipeline stages	FA		FA[c]		
	CARB		CARB		
		CACC			
			D		
			BE		
			MR	MR	
				BW	BW
Resources required nonexclusively			CTR[d], LR[e]	CR[f]	
Resources required exclusively			Link shadow register[g]	Link shadow register[g.]	LR[g.], CTR[d.]

a. For branches that are resolved *k* cycles after they are executed. *k* may be 0 in which case the CR is accessed in the DS/BE/MR cycle—this corresponds to the case when the condition upon which the branch depends is already resolved.

b. Branch writeback is delayed *n* cycles—until the branch tag completes. Note that only branches that update either the CTR or the LR need to pass through the BW stage. If n < k, then the branch remains in the MR stage but leaves the BW stage.

c. This is the FA stage for the target instructions of the branch (*only* for taken branches).

d. For branches with BO field specifying ‘decrement count and branch.’

e. The **bclr** instruction needs the most recent LR (look-ahead state) and can access the link shadow registers.

f. Conditional branches access the architected CR on the last cycle of the MR stage; this access is what ends the MR stage.

g. For branches with the link bit set (LK = 1), the new link value is stored in a link shadow register and is written to the architected LR in the BW stage. The branch-and-link instruction will use one of the two link shadow registers from the cycle it is dispatched until the cycle after the LR is updated (BW).

Table 7-12 shows the instruction timing for the **bcctr** and **bcctrl** instructions.

Table 7-12. Branch Instruction Timing—bcctr, bcctrl

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	k[a]	n-k[b]
Pipeline stages	FA		FA[c]		
	CARB		CARB		
		CACC			
			D		
			BE		
			MR	MR	
				BW	BW
Resources required nonexclusively			CTR[d]	CR	
Resources required exclusively			Link shadow register[e]	Link shadow register[e.]	LR[e.]

a. For branches that are resolved *k* cycles after they are executed. *k* may be 0 in which case the architected CR is accessed in the DS/BE/MR cycle—this corresponds to the case when the condition upon which the branch depends is already resolved.

b. Branch writeback is delayed *n* cycles—until the branch tag completes. Note that only branches that update either the CTR or the LR need to pass through the BW stage. If n < k, then the branch remains in the MR stage but leaves the BW stage.

c. This is the FA stage for the target instructions of the branch (*only* for taken branches).

d. The **bcctr** instruction needs the most recent CTR (look-ahead state) and can access the results of previous ‘decrement count branches’ before they writeback (leave BW).

e. For branches with the link bit set (LK = 1), the new link value is stored in a link shadow register and is written to the architected LR in the BW stage. The branch-and-link instruction will use one of the two link shadow registers from the cycle it is dispatched until the cycle after the LR is updated (BW).

7.3.3 Integer Pipeline Stages

This section discusses the IU pipeline. The objective is to explain how each instruction flows through the IU pipeline. A block diagram of the IU pipeline is shown in Figure 7-13.

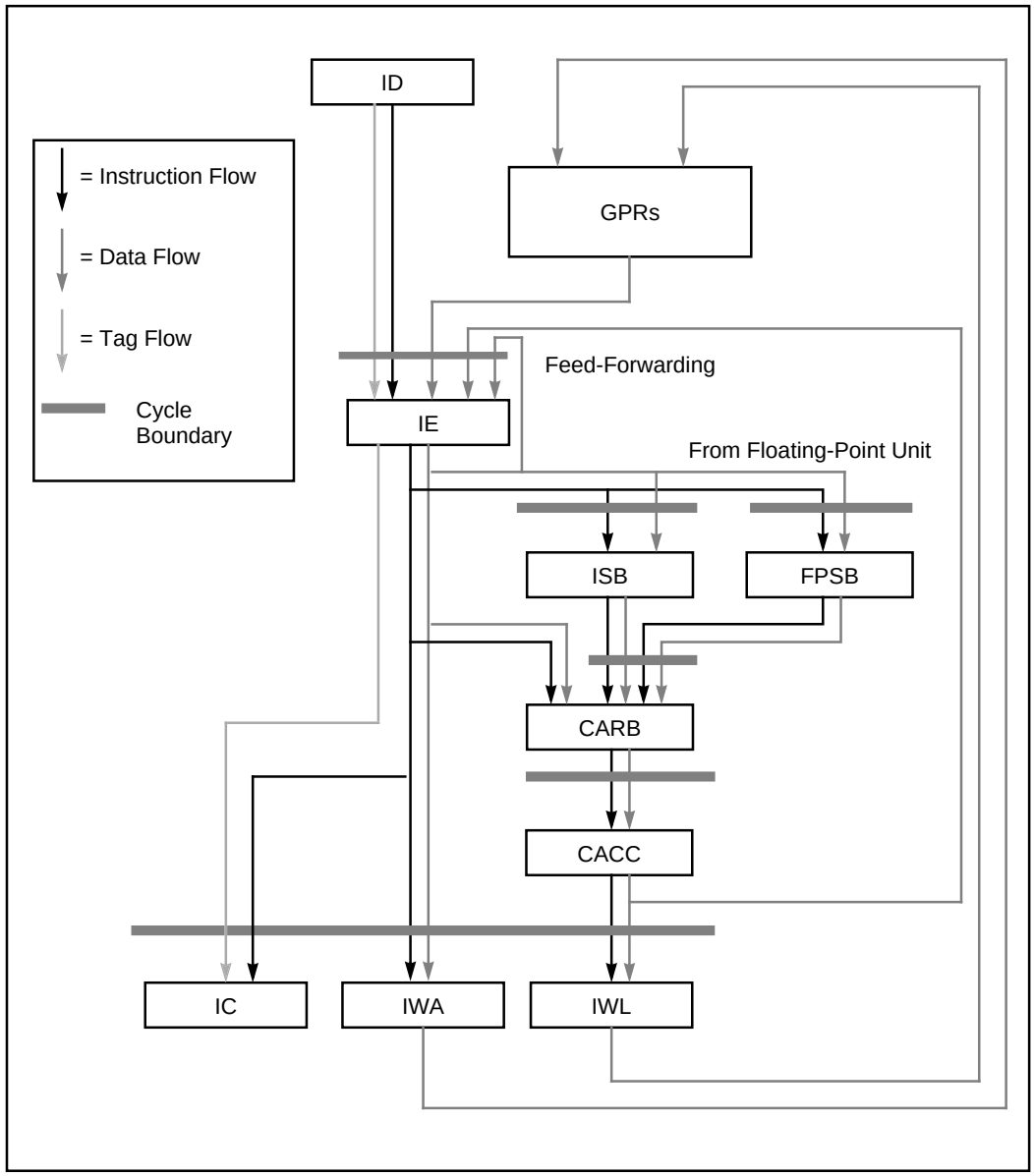


Figure 7-13. IU Pipeline Showing Data, Instruction, and Tag Flow

Each block in the diagram represents a different stage (except for the box labeled “GPRs”, which represents the IU general purpose registers). There are three different flows shown in the diagram—the instruction flow; the tag flow, and the data flow.

In most cases, it takes one cycle to go from one stage to another, as shown by the marked cycle boundaries in the diagram. However, an instruction that wishes to access the cache (load or store) resides in the CARB stage (cache arbitration) on the same cycle it is in IE (integer execute). Also, instructions that are in writeback can provide data to the ID/IE boundary through the GPRs in the same cycle. Each instruction uses a subset of the stages

identified, although the subset varies from instruction to instruction. Likewise, the operations performed in each stage may vary from one instruction to another.

All instructions executed by the IU are dispatched to integer decode (ID), which is identical to IQ0 unless there is a stall in the IU pipeline, in which case the next integer instruction may fall into IQ0 without entering ID. ID is the first IU stage for all IU instructions.

From ID all instructions go to integer execute (IE) where, for most instructions, most of the instruction's function is carried out (e.g. add instructions add two numbers together, etc...). All IU instructions spend one or more cycles in this stage. Instructions that use the cache or bus interface unit (BIU) arbitrate for cache access while the instruction is in IE. The block marked CARB is the cache arbitration block.

Where an instruction goes from IE depends on the instruction type. Arithmetic and logical instructions go to integer writeback for ALU operations (IWA). Integer instructions that access the cache simultaneously enter the CARB and IE stages and then go to the integer store buffer (ISB) and cache access (CACC) stages. Note that while the instruction is in the CACC stage, it must also remain in the ISB stage simultaneously in case the instruction in CACC is unable to successfully access the cache because of a cache retry. If that is the case, ISB holds the original request so that it can participate in the arbitration process on subsequent cycles, and eventually the instruction accesses the cache successfully.

Floating-point store operations are unique in that the store address is provided by the IU and the store data is provided by the FPU. The FPSB holds the store request and address while the data is being generated in the FPU. When the data is available, the instruction in the FPSB participates in the arbitration. Link integer instructions, floating-point store instructions in the CACC stage also reside in the FPSB stage in case of a cache retry.

The IC stage is entered the first cycle after an instruction leaves IE in parallel with the instruction moving into some other stage (CACC for load/stores; IWA for arithmetic operations). When an instruction moves into IC, it indicates that the instruction is committed, even though that instruction's results may not have been written back to the appropriate register (or cache) yet. Tags flowing through IC represent instruction completion for instructions that are executed in the BPU or the FPU.

Load operations have one more stage to enter beyond CACC. Integer load operations move to integer writeback for load operations (IWL) the cycle after a successful cache access, and floating-point load operations move to floating-point writeback for load operations (FWL) on the cycle after a successful cache access. From these stages the registers are written with data read from the cache/memory subsystem.

7.3.3.1 Integer Pipeline—Integer Decode (ID) Stage

The Integer Unit (IU) pipeline receives instructions from the fetcher/dispatch unit into the ID stage. The instructions are decoded and data is read from the register file. All IU instructions take one cycle in the IU decode stage. Instructions may be held in the decode stage by the 601 control logic for two reasons.

- There is an instruction in the IU execute stage (IE) and it is being held there for some reason, such as when additional cycles are required to perform a calculation or gain access to a resource.
- The instruction in decode is trying to read the CR or XER that is being written by the instruction in execute.

Note that instructions are not held in decode for most register hazards. There is a forward path, shown in Figure 7-13, that brings ALU results to decode (bypassing the GPR file when the instruction in decode wants to use the results of the instruction in execute).

7.3.3.2 Integer Pipeline—Integer Execute (IE) Stage

The IU execute stage receives the instruction and its associated register data from decode. The following is a list of the major functions performed in the IU execute (IE) stage.

- The IE stage is where data manipulation occurs for all of the ALU instructions—arithmetic, logical, CR logical, shifts, and rotates.
- Many of the SPRs are written and read during the IE stage.
- Instructions that require translation are translated by the MMU when they are in the IE stage.
- Instructions that need to access the cache send a request from IE to the cache arbiter. That is, such an instruction enters the CARB stage simultaneously with the last cycle of the IE stage.
- There are several reasons an instruction may be held (stall) in IE. These reasons include:
  - The instruction needs to access the cache and the cache is busy.
  - The instruction in IWA is being held (stalled)—perhaps for pipeline synchronization—so the instruction in IE cannot proceed.
  - The IE instruction may have a GPR dependency with an outstanding load.
  - Floating-point load operations may have an outstanding floating-point ALU instruction.

When an instruction is stalled in IE, instructions in ID also stall.

7.3.3.2.1 IE Stage—ALU Instruction Operation

Most ALU instructions spend one cycle in IE. Data is taken from latches that separate ID from IE and is manipulated as required by the instruction. As shown in Figure 7-13, the results are made available both to the IWA stage and to the latch between the ID and IE stages for use by the next instruction for use in the next cycle.

Multiply and divide instructions take more than one cycle in IE, which reduces the throughput accordingly. For example, the **mulli** instruction always takes five cycles in IE, as shown in Table 7-16, and each of the divide instructions always take 36 cycles in IE. The number of cycles in IE taken by **mul**, **mullw**, **mulhw**, and **mulhwu** depends on the data specified in **r**B, as shown in Table 7-15. If bits 0–16 of the **r**B operand are sign bits

(positive: **r**B < (2^{15} – 1 or negative: **r**B ≤ $–2^{15}$), the instruction spends five cycles in IE. Otherwise, the instructions spends nine cycles in IE. For the **mulhwu** instruction only, if the most significant bit of **r**B is a 1, the instruction takes 10 cycles in IE.

Many IU instructions have certain side effects defined as part of their operation. These side effects include the update of the CR field 0, XER[CA], XER[SO], and XER[OV], which occurs on the last cycle that the instruction is in IE.

7.3.3.2.2 IE Stage—Basic Load and Store Instruction Operation

Load operations and store operations perform different logic functions in IE than ALU operations. The EA of the load or store is generated in IE and EA is passed to the MMU for translation. The translated address and a set of control bits are passed to the cache arbiter to request cache access. The control bits include information that identifies the operation as a load, store, or cache operation; it indicates the size of the operand; and identifies the target register for load operations.

Accesses to the memory subsystem are described in Section 7.3.3.3, “Integer Operations that Access the Memory Subsystem.”

Load operations and store operations that are aligned on an addressing boundary at least as large as the size of the operand can do all of this work in one IE cycle. For example, an **lw** instruction with an EA of x'00004C34' is properly aligned and completes in one IE cycle. On the 601, improperly aligned load operations and store operations can be handled in one cycle only if the operand does not cross a double-word addressing boundary; otherwise an additional cycle is required for the additional access.

The IU performs the EA generation, translates the address, and makes cache requests on behalf of the FPU for floating-point load operations and store operations. Floating-point load operations are only dispatched to the IU. Floating-point store operations are simultaneously dispatched to both the FPU and the IU. The FPU provides the store data; however, it may not be available until after the cache request is made by the IU. Therefore, there is a floating-point store buffer (FPSB) that holds the address and request information until the floating-point store data is available. This buffer allows the IU pipeline to continue executing instructions after a floating-point store.

7.3.3.3 Integer Operations that Access the Memory Subsystem

Some operations in the integer pipeline require access to the memory subsystem. As shown in Figure 7-13, such operations enter the CARB stage during the same cycle that they are in the IE stage. The instruction continues to occupy the IE stage until it can either enter the CACC stage or one of the store buffer stages (ISB or FPSB).

7.3.3.3.1 Integer Pipeline—CARB Stage

If the instruction in IE wins the arbitration, the cache access occurs on the next cycle; otherwise, the request is saved in a set of retry latches inside the data access queueing unit, shown as the integer store buffer (ISB) and floating-point store buffer (FPSB) in Figure 7-13. Examples of when the store buffers are required are shown in the multiple

instruction timing examples in Appendix I, “Instruction Timing Examples.” A request in the store buffers is arbitrated as soon as it is the highest priority request. The requesting instruction is allowed to move out of IE because the request is either granted access or queued by the arbiter. However, each store buffer is only one element deep. Therefore, if there is an IU request in the ISB stage, the instruction in IE cannot arbitrate for cache access. In other words, the instruction is held (stalled) in execute until the ISB stage is empty.

7.3.3.3.2 Integer and Floating-Point Store Buffer Stages (ISB and FPSB)

When an integer instruction enters the CACC stage after the IE stage is completed, it also occupies the appropriate store buffer. This provides a place for the instruction if a cache retry is necessary. The instruction remains in the buffer until the CACC stage is complete.

7.3.3.3.3 Address Translation

A TLB miss occurs if the translation for an instruction is not in the BAT registers or the translation lookaside buffer (TLB). A TLB miss causes the cache request to be aborted and starts a state machine that performs a table search operation. A page fault occurs if the page table in memory does not contain the page requested. If the TLB reload is successful, the request goes through arbitration for the cache (the CARB stage). It then proceeds like a normal load/store operation to the CACC and IWL stages.

7.3.3.3.4 Unaligned Load/Store Operations

Unaligned load operations and store operations and load/store string/multiple instructions may spend more than one cycle in IE. Load operations and store operations with unaligned operands may access two different aligned double words of data in cache or memory. However, the 601 can only handle data contained within one double word when servicing a load or store. Therefore, the IU splits load operations and store operations that cross a double word addressing boundary into two pieces. The first piece (called a splice 1 request) accesses data in the first double word. The second piece (called a splice 2 request) accesses data within the second double word. Logic in the IE stage detects these double-word boundary crossings and splits the request into two pieces: the splice 1 and the splice 2. To do this the instruction is held in IE one extra cycle—for a total of two cycles in IE. For load operations, the data from the two requests are spliced together before the data is written into the register file. For store operations the two requests are serviced by the memory subsystem completely independently of each other. For both load operations and store operations, unaligned support requires two cache access (CACC) cycles (one each for the splice 1 and the splice 2 requests). If the load operations/store operations are to a cache inhibited or write-through page, the splice 1 and splice 2 each require a separate bus arbitration and data transfer.

As a result, load/store accesses that cross a double-word addressing boundary provide half the throughput of aligned access. Load/store accesses that cross a 4-Kbyte page boundary or 256-Mbyte segment boundary may take an alignment exception. For more details on the alignment exceptions see Chapter 5, “Exceptions.”

7.3.3.3.5 Load/Store String/Multiple Operations

Load/store string/multiple instructions typically transfer several words of data. On the 601, these instructions split the transfer up into word-length pieces of data. Each word of data corresponds to a register to be read from (store operations) or written to (load operations). These instructions make one cache request for every cycle that they are in IE until enough requests are made to transfer all of the data specified by the instruction. For example, **lmw** 28,0(**r**1) transfers four words from memory addressed by **r**1 to register **r**28, **r**29, **r**30, and **r**31. A request is made for a word of data for **r**28 during the first cycle in IE; for **r**29 during the second cycle in IE; for **r**30 during the third cycle in IE; and for **r**31 during the fourth cycle in IE. The cache accesses occur in consecutive cycles (one cycle delayed from the requests made from IE) as long as the load hits in the cache and there are no higher priority requests made to the cache arbiter.

Note that in future implementations these instructions are likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual load or store instructions.

Since string operations specify the transfer size in bytes, the last request generated by a string is for one, two, three, or four bytes of data.

Load/store string/multiple operations are subject to the same behavior for unaligned data as normal load operations and store operations. As previously discussed, cache requests are made for word size pieces of data (one for each register source/target register specified by the instruction). If the word-length pieces of data cross a double-word addressing boundary, the access for that word is broken into two pieces (splice 1 and splice 2). In the limit, a load/store string/multiple operation that is not aligned on a word boundary takes 50% longer than the same instruction aligned on a word boundary (ignoring alignment exceptions at 4-Kbyte page crossings).

7.3.3.3.6 Integer Pipeline—Cache Access (CACC) Stage

For load, store, and cache operations, there is a cache access stage immediately following the IE stage. That is, store data is written into the cache and load data is read from the cache on this cycle. If it is a cache miss, the request is sent to the bus interface unit. On a cache hit, load data from the cache is forwarded to the latches above the execute (IE) stage. All of the load data modification necessary before writing the GPRs is done on this cycle before the data is latched up. (Load data modifications include: sign extension, zero extension, and byte reversal.) On the next cycle, the data is available for the instruction in the IE stage to begin execution, and the data is written into the GPRs in the IWL stage.

A sequence of load operations and store operations may be processed by the cache, one on each consecutive cycle if they all hit in the cache. There are other system activities that may require the cache on a given cycle; in which case, the load or store from IU would stall if the ISB stage is already full. These activities would include cast out operations resulting from a bus snoop hit in the cache or reload activity due to a previous cache miss.

7.3.3.4 Integer Pipeline—Integer Writeback Stages (IWA and IWL)

The IU writeback stage is different for ALU operations than for load operations. Store operations (except for store with update operations) do not have a writeback stage. ALU operations have a writeback stage (IWA) on the cycle immediately following IE stage. The ALU writeback stage has a dedicated write port into the GPR register file. Load operations have a writeback stage (IWL) on the cycle that follows the cache access. The IWL also has a dedicated write port into the register file. These two writeback stages are independent of each other and may have different instructions on the same cycle. Both write ports can be used simultaneously—with the exception that they cannot both write the same register on the same cycle.

Update-form load operations and store operations write the EA into the addressing register (**r**A) during the ALU writeback stage (IWA) in parallel with the cache access.

Some instructions are executed with assistance from the sequencer. These instructions typically spend two cycles in execute and N cycles in writeback. (N varies from 1 to 20 cycles depending on the instruction.)

All integer instructions pass through the IWA stage, even though some of these instructions (such as **cmp** and store instructions) write to the GPRs.

7.3.3.5 Integer Pipeline Instruction Timings

This section describes the flow of an integer instruction through the integer pipeline ignoring any interaction with other instructions. In the real world there are data dependencies and pipeline synchronization issues that must be considered. Such situations are shown in Appendix I, “Instruction Timing Examples.”

7.3.3.5.1 Arithmetic Instructions

The timing of the add and subtract instructions is described in Table 7-13. This timing is appropriate for the following instructions: **addi**, **addis**, **add**, **addic**, **addic.**, **subfic, subf**, **addc, subfc**, **adde**, **subfe**, **addme**, **subfme**, **addze**, **subfze, neg**, **abs**, **nabs**, **doz**, and **dozi**.

Table 7-13. Integer Addition Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, CA	
Resources required exclusively		CA, SO, OV, CR0, **r**D	

The instruction spends one cycle in IE. The status bits (XER[CA], XER[OV SO], and CR0) are all written from IE. Resource usage of the various types of instructions is summarized in Table 7-14.

Table 7-14. Resource Usage for Integer Addition Instructions

Instruction	Nonexclusive Resource Usage			Exclusive Resource Usage		
	Read CA	**Read r**A	**Read r**B	**Update CA**	**Update CR0**	**Update SO, OV**
add	No	If !(**r**A = 0)	Yes	No	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
addc	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
adde	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
addi	No	If !(**r**A = 0)	No	No	No	No
addic	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
addic.	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No
addis	No	If !(**r**A = 0)	No	No	No	No
addme	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
addze	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
neg	No	Yes	No	No	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
subf	No	Yes	Yes	No	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
subfc	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
subfe	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
subfic	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
subfme	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)
subfze	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	If (RC = 1)	If (OE = 1)

The multiply instructions are shown in Table 7-15 (**mul**, **mullw**, **mulhw**, **mulhwu**) and Table 7-16 (**mulli**). These instructions take 5, 9, or 10 cycles in IE as described in Section 7.3.3.2.1, “IE Stage—ALU Instruction Operation.” All of the multiply instructions in the 601 use the MQ register, which is undefined after an **mulhw** or **mulhwu** instruction.

Table 7-15 shows the timing for the **mul**, **mullw**, **mulhw**, and **mulhwu** instructions.

Table 7-15. Multiply Instruction Timing (mul, mullw, mulhw, mulhwu)

Number of Cycles	1	5/9/10[a]	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D, MQ, CR0, SO,OV[b]	

a. Number of cycles is data dependent.

b. Update CR0 if (RC=1), updates SO and OV if (OE=1).

As shown in Table 7-16, the **mulli** instruction takes only five cycles in IE.

Table 7-16. Multiply Instruction Timing (mulli)

Number of Cycles	1	5	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D, MQ	

Table 7-17 shows the timing for divide instructions (**div**, **divs**, **divw**, and **divwu**). Each divide instructions takes 36 cycles in the IE stage. They all use the MQ register. PowerPC divide instructions do not return the remainder and the contents of the MQ after the instruction completes is undefined. The 601 handles the MQ for POWER divide instructions as defined in the POWER architecture. These instructions are described in Chapter 10, “Instruction Set.”

Table 7-17. Divide Instruction Timings (div, divs, divw, divwu)

Number of Cycles	1	36	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, MQ,	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D, MQ, CR0, SO OV	

Compare instructions spend one cycle in ID and one cycle in IE, but essentially have no IWA stage. The compare results are written to the CR and forwarded to the BPU (for conditional branch evaluation) in the middle of the IE cycle. The timing for the compare instructions is shown in Table 7-18.

Table 7-18. Integer Compare Instruction Timing (cmp, cmpi, cmpl, cmpli)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B[a]	
Resources required exclusively		CR[BF][b]	

a. **r**B is used only by the **cmp** and **cmpl** instructions.

b. Compare results are forwarded to the BPU for branch resolution.

The flow of the trap instructions (**tw** and **twi**) depends on whether they cause a program exception. If they do not cause a program exception, one cycle is required in IWA. If they cause a program exception, 22 cycles are required in the IWA stage. It is important to note that this performance penalty occurs only when the trap condition is met. Typically, this is a rare condition and performance is not critical.

Table 7-19. Trap Instruction Timing (tw, twi)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1 or 22[a]
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B[b]	
Resources required exclusively			

a. One cycle is required if the trap is not taken; 22 cycles are required if it is taken.

b. Only the **tw** instruction uses **r**B.

7.3.3.5.2 Boolean Logic Instruction Timings

Boolean logic instructions include the standard Boolean logic functions, sign extension of a byte within a register, sign extension of a halfword within the register, and a count leading zeros in a register instruction. These instructions include the following: **andi.**, **andis.**, **ori**, **oris**, **xori**, **xoris, and**, **andc**, **eqv**, **nand**, **nor**, **or**, **orc**, **xor**, **extsb**, **extsh**, and **cntlzw**. These instructions flow through the integer pipeline in the same manner, spending a single cycle in IE and completing in IWA. Timing for Boolean instructions is shown in Table 7-20.

Table 7-20. Boolean Logic Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**S, **r**B	
Resources required exclusively		**r**A, CR0[a]	

a. Table 7-21 summarizes resources used by individual instructions.

Table 7-21 lists the resources required by the Boolean logic instructions.

Table 7-21. Resource Usage for Boolean Logic Instructions

Instruction	Nonexclusive Resource Usage		Exclusive Resource Usage
	Read rA	**Read r**B	**Update CR0**
andi., **andis.**	Yes	No	Yes
ori, **oris**, **xori**, **xoris**	Yes	No	No
and, **andc**, **eqv**, **nand**, **nor**, **or**, **orc**, **xor**	Yes	Yes	If (RC=1)
extsb, **extsh**, **cntlzw**	Yes	No	If (RC=1)

7.3.3.5.3 Rotate, Shift, and Mask Instruction Timings

The 601 supports rotate, shift and mask instructions of both the POWER and PowerPC architectures. These instructions each spend one cycle in each of the ID, IE, and IWA stages. However, there is a wide variation in the resources that these instructions read to and write from.

Table 7-22 shows the timing for rotate, mask, and shift instructions, which include the following: **rlimi**, **rlmi**, **rlinm**, **rlnm**, **rrib**, **sl**, **sr**, **slq**, **srq**, **sliq**, **sriq**, **slliq**, **srliq**, **sllq**, **srlq**, **sle**, **sre**, **sleq**, **sreq**, **srai**, **sra**, **sraiq**, **sraq**, **srea**, **maskg**, and **maskir**.

Table 7-22. Rotate, Mask, and Shift Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively[a]		**r**A, **r**B, **r**S, CA, MQ	
Resources required exclusively[a.]		**r**A, MQ, CR0	

a. Table 7-23 summarizes the resources required by individual instructions.

Table 7-23 summarizes resources required by each instruction and indicates which are used exclusively (writes) and which are used nonexclusively (reads).

Table 7-23. Resource Usage for Rotate, Shift, and Mask Instructions

Instruction	Nonexclusive Resource Usage		Exclusive Resource Usage		
	Read rB	Read MQ	Update CA	Update MQ	Update CR0
maskg	Yes	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
maskir	Yes	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
rlimi	No	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
rlmi	Yes	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
rlinm	No	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
rlnm	Yes	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
rrib	Yes	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
sl	Yes	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
sr	Yes	No	No	No	If (RC=1)
slq	Yes	No	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
srq	Yes	No	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
sliq	No	No	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
sriq	No	No	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
slliq	No	Yes	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
srliq	No	Yes	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
sllq	Yes	Yes	No	No	If (RC=1)
srlq	Yes	Yes	No	No	If (RC=1)
sle	Yes	No	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
sre	Yes	No	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
sleq	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
sreq	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	If (RC=1)
srai	No	No	Yes	No	If (RC=1)
sra	Yes	No	Yes	No	If (RC=1)
sraiq	No	No	Yes	Yes	If (RC=1)
sraq	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	If (RC=1)
srea	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	If (RC=1)

7.3.3.5.4 Condition Register (CR) Instruction Timings

Although the CR can be modified in many different ways, it is most often altered when the RC bit on an instruction encoding is set. Setting RC does not increase the instruction execution time for integer instructions; however, for floating-point instructions, setting the RC bit requires that the IU and FPU pipelines be synchronized. This section shows timing diagrams for IU instructions that read or write the CR.

Integer ALU instructions that have the RC bit set write the CR from IE and there is no additional latency. See Table 7-13.

As shown in Table 7-24, each of the eight CR logical instructions (**crand**, **cror**, **crxor**, **crnand**, **crnor**, **crandc**, **creqv**, and **crorc**) flow through the IU pipeline in the same way.

Table 7-24. CR Logical Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		CR[BA], CR[BB]	
Resources required exclusively		CR[BT]	

The **mtcrf** instruction, shown in Table 7-25, copies the contents of a GPR into the CR on a field-by-field basis. Although the PowerPC architecture allows performance to degrade if more than one field is being written, the 601 has the same optimal performance regardless of the field mask specified in the instruction. The CR is written during the IE stage**.**

Table 7-25. mtcrf Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A	
Resources required exclusively		CR0–CR7[a]	

a. Any combination of fields can be written as specified by the mask field in the instruction.

The **mfcr** instruction, shown in Table 7-26, reads the CR from IE and copies that value into the specified GPR during IWA.

Table 7-26. mfcr Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		CR	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	

The **mcrf** instruction, shown in Table 7-27, copies the contents of one specified field of the CR into another. This instruction is unusual in that it reads the CR from the decode stage. The timing for this instruction is the same regardless of which fields are specified.

Table 7-27. mcrf Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively	CR[BFA]		
Resources required exclusively		CR[BF]	

The **mcrxr** instruction, shown in Table 7-28, copies bits 0–3 from the XER to the specified field in the CR. This instruction reads the XER in the ID stage and writes to the CR in the IE stage. The performance is the same regardless of which bit field is specified.

Table 7-28. mcrxr Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively	XER[0–3]		
Resources required exclusively		CR[BF]	

7.3.3.5.5 Move to SPR (mtspr) Instruction Timings

The **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions flow differently through the IU pipeline depending on which SPR is accessed. Timing of the **mtspr** instruction through the IU pipeline depends on the SPR being accessed.

- SPR accesses that require one cycle per stage—MQ, XER, PIR, DABR, EAR, RTCL, DEC, LR, and CTR (shown in Table 7-29) are both read from and written in the IE cycle.

Table 7-29. mtspr Instruction Timing (One Cycle per Stage)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**S	
Resources required exclusively		SPR	

The SDR1 register requires one cycle per stage, but is written from IE and can be read from the IWA stage (see Table 7-29).

Table 7-30. mtspr Instruction Timing (SDR1)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**S	
Resources required exclusively		SPR	

- SPR accesses that require two cycles in the IE stage and one cycle in each of the other stages—This group includes accesses to SPRG*n*, DSISR, DAR, RTCU, SRR0, SRR1. These accesses require two cycles in IE and one cycle in IWA. Note that if the next instruction is another of these instructions, it requires two additional cycles in IE.

Timing for this access is shown in Table 7-31.

Table 7-31. mtspr Instruction Timing (Two Cycles in the IE Stage and One Cycle in the Writeback Stage)

Number of Cycles	1	2	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**S	
Resources required exclusively		SPR	SPR

- Three of the 601's hardware implementation-dependent registers (HID0, HID1, and HID2)—These SPRs take 11, 12, and 17 cycles in writeback respectively. Timing for these instruction is shown in Table 7-32. Writes to these SPRs are context-synchronizing, which causes the instructions in the IQ to be purged and restarts fetching under the new context. This causes a minimum three-cycle penalty before the next instruction can be executed (in IE).

Table 7-32. mtspr Instruction Timing (Two Cycles in the IE Stage and Multiple Cycles in the Writeback Stage)—(HID0, HID1, and HID2)

Number of Cycles	1	2	n
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**S	
Resources required exclusively		SPR	SPR

7.3.3.5.6 Move to MSR (mtmsr) Instruction

The **mtmsr** instruction flows through the IU pipeline similarly to the **mtspr** for HID0, HID1, and HID2 (shown in Table 7-31), except that it is context-synchronizing. It spends two cycles in execute and either 17 or 20 cycles in IWA. The instruction may cause an immediate exception if an exception condition is present and the enable is turned from off to on. If it does not cause an exception, it takes 17 cycles in IWA if the FPSCR[FEX] bit is cleared; otherwise it takes 20 cycles in IWA.

Because **mtmsr** instruction is context-synchronizing, it is held in ID until IE and IWA are empty, and instructions in the IQ are purged. After the **mtmsr** instruction completes, subsequent instructions are refetched, which causes at least a three-cycle stall before the

subsequent instructions can enter the ID stage. Therefore, it is the only instruction in the machine at the time. Timing for this instruction is shown in Table 7-33.

In Table 7-33, *n* is 17 cycles if the FPSCR[FEX] bit is clear, and is 20 if the FPSCR[FEX] bit is set.

Table 7-33. mtmsr Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	*n*[a]	2	*n*
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required[b]		**r**S, SPR	SPR

a. The **mtmsr** instruction remains in the decode stage (ID) until all previous instructions in program order have completed processing. This latency is variable for this reason.

b. Because the **mtspr** instruction is context-synchronizing, there are no other instructions in the pipeline, so all resources are not considered to be required exclusively or nonexclusively in the conventional sense.

7.3.3.5.7 Move to Segment Register Instructions

The **mtsr** and **mtsrin** instructions spend one cycle in the IE stage and write the register from the IWA stage. An **mtsr** instruction in the IWA stage writes the register during the first half of the cycle. Timing for these instruction are shown in Table 7-34.

Table 7-34. mtsr and mtsrin Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**S	
Resources required exclusively		SR	

7.3.3.5.8 Move from Special Purpose Register (mfspr)

The timing of the **mfspr** instruction depends on the SPR being accessed, which are as follows:

- Some SPRs take one cycle in IE and one cycle in IWA. These include the following registers—MQ, XER, PIR, DABR, EAR, RTCL, DEC, LR, AND CTR. The SPR is read from IE and the GPR is written during IWA. Timing for these accesses is shown in Table 7-35.

Table 7-35. mfspr Instructions—One Cycle in IE and One Cycle in IWA

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		SPR	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	

- Some SPR accesses spend two cycles in IE and multiple cycles in IWA. Accesses to the SPRGn, DSISR, DAR, HID0, HID1, HID2, RTCU, SRR0, and SRR1 registers require four cycles in IWA; accesses to the PVR register take seven cycles. These accesses take longer than **mtspr** accesses to the same registers. Timing for these accesses is shown in Table 7-36.

Table 7-36. mfspr Instructions—Two Cycles in IE and Multiple Cycles in IWA

Number of Cycles	1	2	4 or 7 [a]
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		SPR	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D

a. PVR is the only SPR that takes seven cycles in the IWA stage. The rest of the SPR's listed in this table take four cycles in IWA.

- As with the **mtspr** instruction, accesses to the SDR1 register with the **mfspr** instruction have a unique timing. These accesses take one cycle in IE where the SDR1 is read, and it spends one cycle in IWA where the GPR is written. Data cannot be forwarded for this register; therefore, a dependent operation that follows immediately after **mfspr** stalls for one cycle in IE. Timing for this instruction is shown in Table 7-37.

Table 7-37. mfspr Instruction Timing (SDR1)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		SPR	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D

7.3.3.5.9 Move from Machine State Register (mfmsr) Instruction Timing

The timing of the **mfmsr** instruction is similar to the **mfspr** instruction shown in Table 7-36—two cycles are spent in IE and two cycles are spent in the IWA stage. The register can be read during the IWA stage. Timing for this instruction is shown in Table 7-38.

Table 7-38. mfmsr Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	2	2
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		MSR	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D

7.3.3.5.10 Move from Segment Register Instruction Timing

The **mfsr** and **mfsrin** instructions have the same timing. The segment registers are read during the IE stage and written to the GPR during the IWA stage. The timings for these instructions are shown in Table 7-39. Because data written into the GPR cannot not be forwarded to the instruction that immediately follows, a one-cycle stall occurs if the next instruction depends on data in this GPR.

Table 7-39. mfsr and mfsrin Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		SR	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D

7.3.3.5.11 System Call (sc) and Return from Interrupt (rfi) Instruction Timings

Both the **sc** and **rfi** instructions are context synchronizing; they establish a new context and then branch to that target. All prefetched instructions are discarded and fetching begins again at the new address under the new machine state. This causes at least a three-cycle stall before the next instruction can enter the IE stage. These instructions are held in the ID stage until all preceding instructions have completed. The **sc** instruction takes 16 cycles in IWA, and the **rfi** instruction takes 13 cycles in IWA. Timing for these instructions is shown in Table 7-40.

Table 7-40. rfi and sc Instruction Timings

Number of Cycles	1	2	13 or 16[a]
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		MSR	
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D

a. The **sc** instruction takes 16 cycles in IWA; the **rfi** instruction takes 13 cycles in IWA. Both instructions are context-synchronizing, which causes at least a three-cycle stall before the next instruction can enter the IE stage.

7.3.3.5.12 Cache Instruction Timings

Table 7-41 and Table 7-42 provide best-case examples for cache instructions. Timings for cache instructions depend upon the MESI state of the cache block. Timing for cache instructions that require bus activity, shown in Table 7-41, also depend upon bus speed, timing of the $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ signal, whether the processor is parked on the bus, and bus synchronization. The timing for the CACC stage may be longer for a given system implementation.

Timings here assume that the WIM bits are set to b'001'—that is, write-back, caching enabled, and memory coherency enforced.

There are three cycles of processor activity and at least three cycles of bus activity for a total of at least six cycles in the CACC (cache access) stage. The following formula can be used to calculate the delay for a specific system implementation:

CACC latency = 3 + ASP + (2 + AD + BNP) * BPR

In this formula, ASP is a synchronization parameter. AD is the number of bus cycles delay for the $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ signal, BNP is 0 if the bus is parked and 1 otherwise. BPR is the bus-to-processor clock frequency ratio (1 for a full-speed bus, 2 for a half-speed bus, 3 for a third-speed bus, etc...).

Table 7-41 shows the timing for the **tlbi**, **sync**, **dcbf**(E,S,I), **dcbst**(E,S,I), **dcbi**, **dcbz**(S,I), and **store**(S) instructions.

Table 7-41. Cache Instruction Timings—tlbi, sync, dcbf(E,S,I), dcbst(E,S,I), dcbi, dcbz(S,I), store(S)

Number of Cycles	1	1	6[a]
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
		CARB	
			CACC
			IC
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B	
Resources required exclusively			

a. Note that this is the best-case timing. The time in this stage may be longer for a given system implementation. Actual timing is dependent on bus speed, timing of the $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ signal, whether the processor is parked on the bus, and bus synchronization.

Table 7-42 shows best-case timings for the **dcbf**(M), **dcbst**(M), and **dcbz**(M,E) instructions. Note that the CACC stage requires only one cycle because these instructions do not require access to the system interface.

Table 7-42. Cache Instruction Timings—dcbf(M), dcbst(M), dcbz(M,E)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
		CARB	
			CACC
			IC
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B	
Resources required exclusively			

7.3.3.5.13 Load Instruction Timing

All load operations (except string and multiple load operations) spend one cycle in IE if the operand does not cross a double-word boundary. Table 7-43 shows the timing for these instructions, which include the **lbz**, **lbzx**, **lhz**, **lhzx**, **lha**, **lhax**, **lwz**, **lwzx**, **lwarx**, **lfs**, **lfsx**, lfd, and **lfdx** instructions.For more information, see Section 7.3.3.2.2, “IE Stage—Basic Load and Store Instruction Operation.” Note that for floating-point loads, the target register is an FPR.

Table 7-43. Single-Cycle Load Instruction Timing—Operand Does Not Cross a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID			
		IE		
		CARB		
			CACC	
			IC	
				IWL or FWL
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B		
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D	

As shown in Table 7-44, the same load instructions (**lbz**, **lbzx**, **lhz**, **lhzx**, **lha**, **lhax**, **lwz**, **lwzx**, **lwarx**, **lfs**, **lfsx**, **lfd**, **lfdx**) take two cycles in IE and CACC stages if the operand crosses a double-word addressing boundary; this is because the data from doublewords requires separate cache accesses (splice 1 and 2). Note that in the third cycle the first access in the cache (splice 1) overlaps with the second arbitration for the cache (splice 2). It then takes one extra cycle for the register data to become available. For more information, see Section 7.3.3.3.4, “Unaligned Load/Store Operations.”

Note that for floating-point loads, the target register is an FPR.

Table 7-44. Single-Cycle Load Instruction Timing—Operand Crosses Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID				
		IE	IE		
		CARB	CARB		
			CACC	CACC	
			IC		
					IWL or FWL
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B			
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D	**r**D	

7.3.3.5.14 Load with Update Instruction Timing

Load operations that use the update option also write the addressing register **r**A with the EA in addition to loading the target register. These operations are similar to conventional load operations except that **r**A is required exclusively when the instruction is in IE. Timing for these instructions (**lbzu**, **lbzux**, **lhzu, lhzux**, **lhau**, **lhaux**, **lwzu**, **lwzux**, **lfsu**, **lfsux**, **lfdu** and **lfdux**) is shown in Table 7-45.

Note that for floating-point loads, the target register is an FPR.

Table 7-45. Update Form Load Instruction Timing—Operand Does Not Cross Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID			
		IE		
		CARB		
			CACC	
			IC	
			IWA	
				IWL or FWL
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B		
Resources required exclusively		**r**A, **r**D	**r**D	

Like load operations that do not update, when these instructions (**lbzu**, **lbzux**, **lhzu**, **lhzux**, **lhau**, **lhaux**, **lwzu**, **lwzux**, **lfsu**, **lfsux**, **lfdu**, and **lfdux**) have operands that cross a double-

word addressing boundary, they must spend an extra cycle in IE and CACC. Timing for these operations is shown in Table 7-46.

Note that for floating-point loads, the target register is an FPR.

Table 7-46. Update Form Load Instruction Timing—Operand Crosses Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID				
		IE	IE		
		CARB	CARB		
			CACC	CACC	
			IC		
			IWA		
					IWL or FWL
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B			
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D	**r**D	

7.3.3.5.15 Load Multiple Word (lmw) and Load String Word Immediate (lswi)

Load multiple word (**lmw**) and load string word immediate (**lswi**) instructions spend one cycle in IE for each register of data to be transferred (shown as the variable *n)*. Timing for these operations is shown in Table 7-47.

Table 7-47. Load Multiple Word (lmw) and Load String Word Immediate (lwsi)—Operand is Word-Aligned

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	n^a-2	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID					
		IE	IE	IE		
		CARB	CARB	CARB		
			CACC	CACC	CACC	
			IC			
				IWL[**r**D+i][b]	IWL[**r**D+n-2]	IWL[**r**D+n-1]
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A				
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D, **r**D+1	**r**D+i+1, **r**D+i+2[b.]	**r**D+n-1	

a. where *n* is the number of registers to be loaded.

b. where **i** ranges from 0 to *n*-3 (incrementing each cycle).

The instruction flow becomes more complex when the initial address is not on a word-length addressing boundary, causing every other register to receive data that spans a double-word addressing boundary. Requests for data for those registers is split into two pieces (splice 1 and splice 2). Such load operations take 50% longer when the word is aligned. The timing for this operation is shown in Table 7-48.

Table 7-48. Load Multiple Word (lmw) and Load String Word Immediate (lswi) Timing —Not Word-Aligned

Number of Cycles	**1**	**1**	**1**	**(n^a-2)/2 (3 cycle iteration)**			**1**	**1**
Pipeline stages	ID							
		IE	IE	IE	IE	IE		
		CARB	CARB	CARB	CARB	CARB		
			CACC	CACC	CACC	CACC	CACC	
			IC					
					IWL[**r**D+i][b]	IWL[**r**D+n-2]	IWL[**r**D+n-2]	IWL[**r**D+n-1]
Resources required non exclusively		**r**A						
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D	**r**D+i, **r**D+i+1[b.]	**r**D+i+1, **r**D+i+2[b.]	**r**D+i+2[b.]	**r**D+n-1	

a. where *n* is the number of registers to be loaded.

b. where **i** ranges from 0 to *n*-3 (incrementing by 2 each iteration (every three cycles).

7.3.3.5.16 Load String Word Indexed (lswx) and Load String and Compare Byte Indexed (lscbx) Instruction Timing

Timing for the **lswx** and **lscbx** instructions differs from the **lswi** and **lmw** instructions in that both **r**B and the XER are read in ID. Also the **lscbx** instruction reads the XER throughout the execution of the instruction and may write the XER if a byte-compare match is found. Since the determination of when the XER is written is data-dependent, the XER must be accessed exclusively throughout the execution of the instruction. Timing for these instructions is shown in Table 7-49.

Table 7-49. lswx and lscbx Instruction Timing—Word-Aligned

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	n[a]-2	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID					
		IE	IE	IE		
		CARB	CARB	CARB		
			CACC	CACC	CACC	
			IC			
				IWL[**r**D+i][b]	IWL[**r**D+n-2]	IWL[**r**D+n-1]
Resources required nonexclusively	XER	**r**A, **r**B				
Resources required exclusively		**r**D, XER[c]	**r**D, **r**D+1, XER	**r**D+i+1, **r**D+i+2[b.], XER	**r**D+n-1, XER	

a. where *n* is the number of registers to be loaded.

b. where **i** ranges from 0 to *n*-3 (incrementing each cycle).

c. The **lscbx** instruction reads the XER continuously and writes the XER when a byte compare match occurs. The lswx never writes the XER and only reads the XER from ID.

When the operand is not on a word boundary, these two instructions take an extra cycle for every other register of data (that is, each time the word boundary is crossed). For more information, see Section 7.3.3.5.15, “Load Multiple Word (lmw) and Load String Word Immediate (lswi).” Timing is shown in Table 7-50.

Table 7-50. lswx and lscbx Instruction Timings—Operand Not on a Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	n[a]-2/2 (3 cycle iteration)			1	1
Pipeline stages	ID							
		IE	IE	IE	IE	IE		
		CARB	CARB	CARB	CARB	CARB		
			CACC	CACC	CACC	CACC	CACC	
			IC					
					IWL[**r**D+i][b]	IWL[**r**D+n-2]	IWL[**r**D+n-2]	IWL[**r**D+n-1]
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A						
Resources required exclusively		**r**D	**r**D	**r**D+i, **r**D+i+1[b.]	**r**D+i+1, **r**D+i+2[b.]	**r**D+i+2[b.]	**r**D+n-1	

a. where *n* is the number of registers to be loaded.

b. where **i** ranges from 0 to *n*-3 (incrementing by 2 each iteration (every three cycles).

7.3.3.5.17 Integer Store Instruction Timings

This section describes integer store operations, except for the string/multiple instructions (**stmw**, **stswx**, and **stswi**) and store instructions that specify the update option. Timings for store operations differ from load operations primarily in that they do not write back to registers. Store operations calculate the EA in the IE stage and arbitrate (CARB) for cache access in parallel with the IE stage. Store operations have the same alignment properties/requirements as load operations.

Timings for scalar store operations are shown in Table 7-51.

Table 7-51. Integer Store Instruction Timings—Operand Does Not Cross a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
		CARB	
			CACC
			IC
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **r**S	
Resources required exclusively			

If the operand specified by the store crosses a double-word boundary, the access is split into two pieces (See Section 7.3.3.3.4, “Unaligned Load/Store Operations”); therefore, the store spends two cycles in IE (as do load operations). The timings for store instructions (**stb**, **stbx**, **sth**, **sthx**, **stw**, **stwx**, **sthbrx**, and **stwbrx**) whose operands cross a double-word boundary are shown in Table 7-52.

Table 7-52. Integer Store Instruction Timings—Operand Crosses a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID			
		IE	IE	
		CARB	CARB	
			CACC	CACC
			IC	
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **r**S		
Resources required exclusively				

7.3.3.5.18 Store with Update Instruction Timing

Store operations that update register write the **r**A addressing register with the EA calculated by the store, requiring the IWA stage. The timings for these store operations (**stbu**, **stbux**, **sthu**, **sthux**, **stwu**, **stwux**) that have operands that do not cross a double-word boundary are shown in Table 7-53.

Table 7-53. Update Form Store Instruction Timings—Operand Does Not Cross a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	
		CARB	
			CACC
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **r**S	
Resources required exclusively			

The timings for misaligned store operations with update (**stbu**, **stbux**, **sthu**, **sthux**, **stwu**, and **stwux**) with operands crossing a double-word boundary are shown in Table 7-54.

Table 7-54. Update Form Store Instruction Timings—Operand Crosses a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID			
		IE	IE	
		CARB	CARB	
			CACC	CACC
			IC	
			IWA	
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **r**S		
Resources required exclusively				

7.3.3.5.19 Floating-Point Store Instruction Timing

Floating-point store operations are dispatched to the IU, which generates the address and provides access to the MMU cache interface, and to the FPU, which provides the data properly formatted. Note that the tag does not have to be dispatched in the IU pipeline at the same time that the floating-point instruction is dispatched to the FPU pipeline. Therefore the timing for floating-point store operations is very different from other

instructions. The instruction may complete in the IC stage and wait in the FPSB stage for the data to be available before it can arbitrate for the cache.

Table 7-55 shows the timing for the **stfs**, **stfsx**, **stfd**, and **stfdx** instructions when no operand crosses a double-word boundary.

Table 7-55. Floating-Point Store Instruction Timings—Operand Does Not Cross a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID					
		IE				
			FPSB	FPSB	FPSB	
					CARB	
						CACC
			IC			
		FD				
			FPM			
				FPA		
					FW	
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **fr**S				
Resources required exclusively						

Store accesses that cross a double-word boundary must be broken into two pieces, each of which requires a cache access. However, because the FPSB stage is only one-element deep, it stays full with the first request until the data is made available from the FPU, delaying arbitration for the second cache access for three cycles. As shown in Table 7-56, this takes five cycles in IE for **stfs**, **stfsx**, **stfd**, **stfdx** instructions instead of one for an aligned floating-point store.

Table 7-56. Floating-Point Store Instruction Timings—Operand Crosses a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID							
		IE	IE	IE	IE	IE		
			FPSB	FPSB	FPSB	FPSB	FPSB	FPSB
					CARB	CARB		
						CACC		CACC
			IC					
		FD						
			FPM					
				FPA				
					FW			
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **fr**S						
Resources required exclusively								

7.3.3.5.20 Update-Form Floating-Point Store Instruction Timings

The timings for floating-point store operations that update differ from the nonupdate forms in that they update **r**A from the IWA stage. Table 7-57 shows timings for the **stfsu**, **stfsux**, **stfdu**, and **stfdux** instructions when operands do not cross a double-word boundary.

Table 7-57. Floating-Point Store Instruction Timings—Operand Does Not Cross a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID					
		IE				
			FPSB	FPSB	FPSB	
					CARB	
						CACC
			IC			
			IWA			
		FD				
			FPM			
				FPA		
					FW	
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **fr**S				
Resources required exclusively						

Table 7-58 shows timings for the **stfsu**, **stfsx**, **stfdu**, and **stfdux** instructions when the operand crosses a double-word boundary.

Table 7-58. Floating-Point Store Instruction Timings—Operand Crosses a Double-Word Boundary

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID							
		IE	IE	IE	IE	IE		
			FPSB	FPSB	FPSB	FPSB	FPSB	FPSB
					CARB	CARB		
						CACC		CACC
			IC					
			IWA					
		FD						
			FPM					
				FPA				
					FW			
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **fr**S						
Resources required exclusively								

7.3.3.5.21 Store Multiple Word (stmw) and Store String Word Immediate (stswi)

The **stmw** and **stswi** instructions spend a cycle in each of the IE, CARB, and CACC stages for each register of data to be transferred. The timings for these instructions are shown in Table 7-59. The number of registers to be transferred in this example is 3 (9–12 bytes of data for the **stswi** instruction, 12 bytes of data for the **stmw** instruction). If four registers of data were specified, there would be four IE, CARB, and CACC cycles—all overlapping as shown.

Table 7-59. stmw and stswi Instruction Timing (Word-Aligned)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID				
		IE	IE	IE	
		CARB	CARB	CARB	
			CACC	CACC	CACC
			IC		
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**S	**r**S	**r**S + 2	
Resources required exclusively		**r**S	**r**S+1	**r**S +2	

Because the accesses are made one word at a time, if the EA specified is not on a word boundary, every other access crosses a double-word boundary. Accesses that cross a double-word boundary are split into two pieces just as for scalar store operations. Timing for **stmw** and **stswi** when operands are not on a word boundary is shown in Table 7-60.

Table 7-60. stmw and stswi Instruction Timing (Not Word-Aligned)

Number of Cycles	1	1	(n^a-1)/2 (3 cycle iteration)			1
Pipeline stages	ID					
		IE	IE	IE	IE	
		CARB	CARB	CARB	CARB	
			CACC	CACC	CACC	CACC
Resource required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**S[b]	**r**S + 1[c]	**r**S + 1	**r**S + 2[d]	
Resources required exclusively						

a. where *n* is the number of registers to be loaded.

b. **r**S is only accessed on one cycle because the four memory locations associated with these four bytes of data are within the same double-word address.

c. **r**S + 1 is accessed twice in the IE stage because the four memory locations associated with these four bytes of data are not within the same double-word address.

d. **r**S + 2 is only accessed on one cycle because the four memory locations associated with these four bytes of data are within the same double-word address.

7.3.3.5.22 Store String Word Indexed (stswx) Instruction Timings

Timing for the **stswx** instruction differs from the timing for the **stswi** instruction in that it reads the XER (byte count) from ID and it reads the **r**B. The timing for this instruction

when the operand is on a word boundary is shown in Table 7-61. The number of registers to be transferred in this example is 3 (9 to 12 bytes of data). If four registers of data are specified, then there would be four IE, CARB, and CACC cycles—all overlapping as shown.

Table 7-61. stswx Instruction Timing (Word-Aligned)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID				
		IE	IE	IE	
		CARB	CARB	CARB	
			CACC	CACC	CACC
			IC		
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**S	**r**S	**r**S + 2	
Resources required exclusively		**r**S	**r**S+1	**r**S +2	

When the operand is not on a word boundary, every other access takes two cycles in the IE, the CARB, and the CACC stages. The timing for the **stswx** instruction when the operands are not word-aligned is shown in Table 7-62.

Table 7-62. stswx Instruction Timing (Not Word-Aligned)

Number of Cycles	1	1	(n^a-1)/2 (3 cycle iteration)			1
Pipeline stages	ID					
		IE	IE	IE	IE	
		CARB	CARB	CARB	CARB	
			CACC	CACC	CACC	CACC
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**S[b]	**r**S + 1[c]	**r**S + 1	**r**S + 2[d]	
Resources required exclusively						

a. The variable *n* represents the number of registers to be loaded.

b. **r**S is only accessed on one cycle because the four memory locations associated with these four bytes of data are within the same double-word address.

c. **r**S + 1 is accessed twice in the IE stage because the four memory locations associated with these four bytes of data are not within the same double-word address.

d. **r**S + 2 is only accessed on one cycle because the four memory locations associated with these four bytes of data are within the same double-word address.

7.3.3.5.23 Store Conditional Word Indexed Instruction

The **stwcx.** instruction differs from that of other store operations in that it must set the CR after it determines whether it can successfully complete the store operations. The architecture does not support this instruction with an operand address that is not on a word boundary (results of a misaligned **stwcx.** on the 601 are boundedly undefined). The timing for the **stwcx.** instruction is shown in Table 7-63.

Table 7-63. stwcx. Instruction Timing—Reservation Set

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID			
		IE	XXX[a]	XXX
		CARB		
			CACC	
			IC	
			IWA	IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A, **r**B, **r**S		
Resources required exclusively				

a. The XXX's indicate that an instruction cannot be executing in IE while a **stwcx.** is in IWA. An instruction may be present in IE, but if there is one, it will be held (stall).

Because the reservation bit may not be set by the time the **stwcx.** instruction is executed, only one cycle is spent in IWA. The flow with the reservation bit cleared is shown in Table 7-64.

Table 7-64. stwcx. Instruction Timing—Reservation Cleared

Number of Cycles	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	ID		
		IE	XXX[a]
		CARB	
			CACC
			IC
			IWA
Resources required nonexclusively		**r**A,**r**B, **r**S	
Resources required exclusively			

a. The XXX's indicate that an instruction cannot be executing in the IE stage while a **stwcx.** is in the IWA stage. An instruction may be present in IE, but if there is one, it will be held (stall).

7.3.4 Floating-Point Pipeline Stages

As shown in Figure 7-1, the FPU has a four-stage pipeline with a one-entry queue (F1) above it that holds an instruction if the previous instruction stalls in FD. All instructions occupy each of the remaining FPU stages for at least one cycle. The FPU pipeline stages are shown in Figure 7-14.

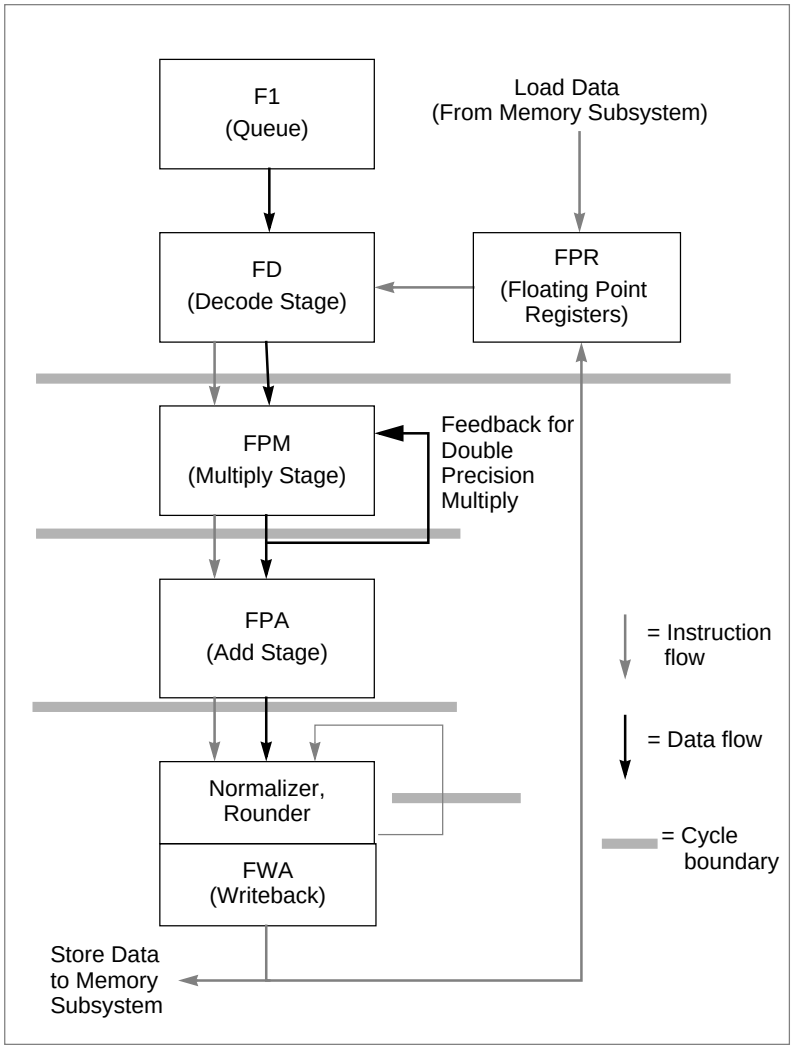


Figure 7-14. Floating-Point Data and Instruction Flow

Some instructions require more than one cycle in a stage, and some of those instructions may occupy multiple stages simultaneously. This process is described in Section 7.3.1.4.3, “Floating-Point Dispatch.”

The FPU uses the multiply/add (**fmadd**) instruction (D = AC + B) as the base for other floating-point operations. Other instructions are implemented using this instruction and setting one or more of the operands with a constant (in the FD stage). These are shown as follows:

- **Accumulate instructions** (AC + B)—This is the base instruction in the FPU. There are both single- and double-precision versions of these instructions.
- **Add instructions** (A + B)— These are treated as accumulate instructions with C=1. This group of instructions includes add, subtract, round-to-single, and floating-point compare instructions. There are both single- and double-precision versions of these instructions.
- **Multiply instructions** (AC)—These are treated as accumulate instructions with B=0. There are both single- and double-precision versions of these instructions.
- **Divide instructions** —This instruction is handled with repeated iterations of the accumulate instructions. There are both single- and double-precision versions of these instructions.
- **Move instructions** —These instructions are treated as accumulate instructions with A = 0.
- **Load instructions** —These are handled entirely in the IU. Because the FPRs have a dedicated port for load data being written back, loads never interfere with arithmetic instructions writing back their data. There are both single- and double-precision versions of these instructions.
- **Store instructions** —These behave like move instructions, except that they do not write back to the FPRs. There are both single- and double-precision versions of these instructions.
- **Special instructions** —Depending on the instruction, these instructions are handled in control logic or similarly to the move instructions.
- **Convert-to-integer instructions** —These instructions work on both single- and double-precision data. There is a convert-to-integer instruction with a round-to-zero mode.

PowerPC floating-point arithmetic is IEEE-compliant, and the following sections assume a familiarity with the PowerPC implementation of IEEE floating-point numbers and arithmetic, which is described in Section 2.5, “Floating-Point Execution Models.”

7.3.4.1 Floating-Point Decode Stage (FD)

In the FD stage, floating-point instructions are decoded, their operands are fetched, and any required constants in the base instruction (D = AC + B) are set. Stalls can occur in the FD stage for the following reasons:

- Data dependencies—Instructions stall in FD because of true data dependencies (read-after-write, or RAW, dependencies) between the source operands of the instruction in the FD stage and the target registers required by instructions in the FPM, FPA, or FWA stages, or between the source operands of the instructions in the FD stage and the target register of an outstanding load instruction. All dependency checking is performed at FD regardless of the stage at which the operand is first required. In other words, a floating-point move instruction may stall in the FD stage

because of a dependency on an instruction in FPA even though the register move instruction does not need its operand until the FW stage. For more information, see Appendix I, Section I.3.1, “Floating-Point Data Dependency Stalls.”

However, floating-point store instructions stall in FD stage not because of a dependency on an instruction in the FPM stage, but rather because of a dependency on an instruction in FPA or FPW.

- Multicycle floating-point operations—Two types of multicycle operations in the 601 can appear in the FPU pipeline—divide and double-precision accumulate/multiply operations. The divide instructions are implemented with a 2-bit, nonrestoring division algorithm that iterates using accumulate instructions and requires the entire floating-point pipeline for many cycles.

  Double-precision multiply/accumulate instructions must repeat both the FPM and FPA stages twice (pipelined) because the 53- by 53-bit multiplication is split into two 27- by 53-bit multiplications. This is described in Section 7.2.1.3, “Floating-Point Unit (FPU).” Timing for these instructions is shown in Section 7.3.4.5.2, “Double-Precision Instruction Timing.”

- Special-case numbers (such as denormalized numbers)—Two conditions related to special-case numbers cause stalls in the FD stage. The first case is when one or more of the operands of the instruction in the FD stage require prenormalization. To perform the prenormalization function, the operands must be cycled through the entire pipeline and make use of the normalizer in the FW stage, as described in Section 7.3.4.4, “Floating-Point Write-Back Stage (FWA).” Denormalized operands for multiply and divide instructions require prenormalization in the 601.

  Stalls also occur in the FD stage when the FPU predicts that the result of the operation produces a denormalized number (that is, an underflow condition), in which case, output must be cycled through the entire pipeline again in order to denormalize the answer before it is written back. This is described in Section 7.3.4.5.6, “Floating-Point Special-Case Number-Handling Stalls.”

7.3.4.2 Floating-Point Multiply Stage (FPM)

The FPM stage performs 27- by 53-bit multiplication (which is the first half of a 53- by 53-bit multiplication for double-precision operations). Although instructions that must repeat this stage may cause stalls in FD (as described in Section 7.3.4.1, “Floating-Point Decode Stage (FD)”) there are no stalls inherent to this stage; instructions can stall here only because of an instruction in a subsequent stage. Operands used by this stage are set up in the FD stage—that is, constants are put in the appropriate places and double-precision multiply instructions are split into two pieces.

7.3.4.3 Floating-Point Add Stage (FPA)

The FPA stage is similar to the FPM stage; however, the FPA stage must shift the results of the two halves of the double-precision multiply/accumulate instructions appropriately to correctly calculate the double-precision sum. Although instructions that must repeat this

stage may cause stalls in FD (as described in Section 7.3.4.1, “Floating-Point Decode Stage (FD)”) there are no stalls inherent to this stage.

7.3.4.4 Floating-Point Write-Back Stage (FWA)

Normalization, rounding, and writeback occur in the FWA stage. Stalls can occur in the FWA stage for the following reasons:

- Normalization—The normalizer in the FWA stage can shift by as many as 16 bits in a cycle. Additionally, a shift of as many as 48 bits can occur at the bottom of the FPA stage. Thus if the intermediate result of an operation contains more than 64 zeros, there is at least a one-cycle stall in the FWA stage. The intermediate result in the FPU contains 161 bits, so the worst case normalization time (corresponding to a one in the 161st position with 160 leading zeros), is seven cycles (48 bits are shifted out in the FPA stage, then 16 additional bits are shifted out in each of the next seven cycles in the FWA stage).
- Synchronization—The stalls associated with synchronization relate back to the precise exception model. A floating-point instruction cannot complete before an instruction ahead of it in program order that may still cause a synchronous exception. See Section 7.3.1.4.4, “Synchronization Tags for the Precise Exception Model.”

The FPRs contain two write ports, one dedicated to load data and one dedicated to arithmetic instruction results; thus there is never interference between these two types of instructions at the FWA stage and the FWL stage. One load and one arithmetic instruction can write back in one cycle.

7.3.4.5 Floating-Point Pipeline Timing

In the following sections, we give timing examples of the floating-point instructions.

7.3.4.5.1 Single-Precision Instructions

This section contains timing diagrams for the single-precision arithmetic instructions that are implemented in the FPU. Table 7-65 shows the timing for a single-precision add instruction with no special-case data.

Table 7-65. Single-Precision Add (fadds, fsubs) Instruction Timing—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages				
	FD			
		FPM		
			FPA	
				FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**B			
Resources required exclusively				**fr**D
Cache access				

Table 7-66 shows the timing for a single-precision multiple instruction with no special-case data.

Table 7-66. Single-Precision Multiply Instruction (fmuls)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages				
	FD			
		FPM		
			FPA	
				FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**C			
Resources required exclusively				**fr**D
Cache access				

Table 7-67 shows the timing for a single-precision divide instruction with no special-case data.

Table 7-67. Single-Precision Divide Instruction (fdivs)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	14	1
Pipeline stages					
	FD	FD	FD	FD	
		FPM	FPM	FPM	
			FPA	FPA	
				FWA	FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**B				
Resources required exclusively					**fr**D
Cache access					

Table 7-68 shows the timing for single-precision accumulate instructions with no special-case data.

Table 7-68. Single-Precision Accumulate Instructions (fmadds, fmsubs, fnmadds, fnmsubs)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages				
	FD			
		FPM		
			FPA	
				FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**B, **fr**C			
Resources required exclusively				**fr**D
Cache access				

7.3.4.5.2 Double-Precision Instruction Timing

This section contains timing diagrams for the double-precision arithmetic instructions implemented in the FPU.

Table 7-69 shows the timing for a double-precision add instruction with no special-case data. Note that the **fcmpu** and **fcmpo** instructions write to CR[BF] instead of **fr**D

Table 7-69. Double-Precision Add Instructions (fadd, fsub, frsp, fcmpu, fcmpo)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages				
	FD			
		FPM		
			FPA	
				FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**B			
Resources required exclusively				**fr**D[a]
Cache access				

a. The **fcmpu** and **fcmpo** instructions write to CR[BF] instead of **fr**D.

Table 7-70 shows the timing for a double-precision multiply instruction with no special-case data. Note that in this example, the instruction requires two cycles in the FD, FPM, and FPM stages; however, because the instruction is self-pipelining, there is only a one-cycle delay before the next instruction can enter the decode stage.

Table 7-70. Double-Precision Multiply Instructions (fmul)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages					
	FD	FD			
		FPM	FPM		
			FPA	FPA	
					FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**C	**fr**A, **fr**C			
Resources required exclusively					**fr**D
Cache access					

Table 7-71 shows the timing for a double-precision divide instruction with no special-case data. Note that the instruction occupies the decode stage and subsequent stage until the instruction enters the last cycle of the writeback stage.

Table 7-71. Double-Precision Divide Instructions (fdiv)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	28	1
Pipeline stages					
	FD	FD	FD	FD	
		FPM	FPM	FPM	
			FPA	FPA	
				FWA	FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**B				
Resources required exclusively					**fr**D
Cache access					

Table 7-72 shows the timing for a double-precision accumulate instruction with no special-case data. Note that the timing for this instruction is similar to that of the **fmul** instruction, in that it requires two cycles in the FD, FPM, and FPA stages. However, because the instruction is self-pipelining, its can begin the first cycle of the FPM stage while it enters the second cycle of the FD stage. This allows the next instruction to enter the decode stage on the third clock cycle.

Table 7-72. Double-Precision Accumulate Instructions (fmadd, fmsub, fnmadd, fnmsub)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	FD	FD			
		FPM	FPM		
			FPA	FPA	
					FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**B, **fr**C	**fr**A, **fr**B, **fr**C			
Resources required exclusively					**fr**D
Cache access					

7.3.4.5.3 Floating-Point Move/Store Instruction Timing

Table 7-73 illustrates the timing of floating-point move instructions.

Table 7-73. Floating Point Move/Store Instructions (fmr, fabs, fneg, fnabs, stfs, stfsu, stfsx, stfsux, stfd, stfdu, stfdx, stfdux)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	FD			
		FPM		
			FPA	
				FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**B			
Resources required exclusively				**fr**D
Cache access				

7.3.4.5.4 Convert-to-Integer Instruction Timing

This section contains timing information for the convert to integer instructions.

Table 7-74 shows the timing for floating-point convert to integer instructions with no special-case data.

Table 7-74. Floating-Point Convert to Integer Instructions (fctiw, fctiwz)—No Special-Case Data

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages	FD			
		FPM		
			FPA	
				FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**B			
Resources required exclusively				**fr**D
Cache access				

7.3.4.5.5 Special Instructions Implemented in the FPU

This section contains timing information for the special instructions (**mtfsfi**, **mtfsf**, **mtfsb0**, and **mtfsb1**; see Table 7-75) implemented in the FPU—these instructions fit none of the previous categories. Note that in this example **fr**B is used only by the **mtfsf** instruction.

Table 7-75. Move to FPSCR Instruction Timing (mtfsfi, mtfsf, mtfsb0, mtfsb1)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages				
	FD	FD	FD	FD
		FPM	FPM	FPM
			FPA	FPA
				FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**B[a]			
Resources required exclusively				FPSCR
Cache access				

a. Note that **fr**B is used only by the **mtfsf** instruction.

Table 7-76 shows the timing for the Move From FPSCR instructions, which are implemented in the FPU. Note that in this example, **fr**D is the target only of the **mffs** instruction and CR[BF] is the target of the **mcrfs** instruction.

Table 7-76. Move from FPSCR Instruction Timing (mffs, mcrfs)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages				
	FD			
		FPM		
			FPA	
				FWA
Resources required nonexclusively	FPSCR			
Resources required exclusively				**fr**D[a], CR[BF][b]
Cache Access				

a. **fr**D is the target of the **mffs** instruction.

b. CR[BF] is the target of the **mcrfs** instruction.

7.3.4.5.6 Floating-Point Special-Case Number-Handling Stalls

Special-case numbers can generate stalls and require the instruction to go through a portion of the pipeline twice in order to prenormalize or denormalize an operand.

Table 7-77 shows the timing for a single-precision instruction when the result causes an overflow. Single-precision accumulate instructions are shown in this example, but the timing can be generalized for single-precision instructions in general. Note that to denormalize the result of this instruction, it must pass through the FPU pipeline. Note that

a stall occurs if an underflow condition is predicted, even though the condition may not occur. In either case, the instruction occupies the decode stage for four cycles. Note that while the latency of the instruction may differ in these two cases, the throughput is the same.

Table 7-77. Single-Precision Accumulate Instruction Timing (fmadds, fmsubs, fnmadds, fnmsubs)—Result Underflow

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages							
	FD	FD	FD	FD			
		FPM			FPM		
			FPA			FPA	
				FW			FW
Resources required nonexclusively							
Resources required exclusively							
Cache access							

Table 7-78 shows the timing for single-precision accumulate instructions (**fmadds**, **fmsubs**, **fnmadds**, and **fnmsubs**). In this example, one operand requires prenormalization. This operand travels through the pipeline before execution can begin.

Table 7-78. Single-Precision Accumulate Instruction Timing

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
Pipeline stages								
	FD[a]	FD	FD	FD	FD[b]			
		FPM				FPM		
			FPA				FPA	
				FW				FW
Resources required nonexclusively								
Resources required exclusively								
Cache access								

a. The operand that needs prenormalization traverses the pipeline before the execution of the instruction starts.

b. The operands are now ready and the instruction can actually start execution.

Table 7-79 shows the timing when two operands of a single-precision accumulate instruction require prenormalization.

Table 7-79. Single-Precision Accumulate Instructions (fmadds, fmsubs, fnmadds, fnmsubs)—Two Operands Require Prenormalization

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pipeline stages									
	FD[a]	FD[b]	FD	FD	FD	FD[c]			
		FPM	FPM				FPM		
			FPA	FPA				FPA	
				FW	FPW				FW
Resources required nonexclusively									
Resources required exclusively									

a. The first operand that needs prenormalization traverses the pipeline before the execution of the instruction starts.

b. The second operand that needs prenormalization traverses the pipeline (immediately behind the first operand) before the execution of the instruction starts.

c. The operands are now ready and the instruction can actually start execution.

7.3.4.5.7 Floating-Point Normalization Stalls

Table 7-80 shows the worst-case timing for when an operand of a double-precision accumulate instruction requires normalization.

Table 7-80. Double-Precision Accumulate Instruction Timing (Worst-Case Normalization)

Number of Cycles	1	1	1	1	6	1
Pipeline stages						
	FD	FD				
		FPM	FPM			
			FPA	FPA		
					FW	FW
Resources required nonexclusively	**fr**A, **fr**B, **fr**C			Shift by 48 bits	Shift by 16 bits per cycle	Shift by 16 bits per cycle
Resources required exclusively						**fr**D

7.4 Execute Stage Delay Summary

Table 7-81 shows potential delays that may be caused by instructions implemented in the 601. The pipeline column indicates which execution unit is used to process the instruction (for example, floating-point loads and stores are processed in the integer pipeline). The table shows the number of cycles each instruction spends in the execute stage, assuming normal operations. The table also shows the delay that a subsequent instruction may encounter if there is a data dependency. Note that this total time ignores the instruction decode and fetch times for integer instructions but not for floating-point instructions.

As previously stated, the FPU has no feed-forwarding capabilities. In other words, as a floating-point operation completes, another floating-point instruction that may be waiting for those results must wait for the data to be written into the register file before decode can begin. This extra time is accounted for in Table 7-81.

Note that Table 7-1 contains no 64-bit architected instructions. These instructions trap to an illegal instruction exception handler when encountered.

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
abs	Absolute	IU	1	0
add[o][.]	Add	IU	1	0
addc[o][.]	Add Carrying	IU	1	0
adde[o][.]	Add Extended	IU	1	0
addi.	Add Immediate	IU	1	0
addic	Add Immediate Carrying	IU	1	0
addic.	Add Immediate Carrying and Record	IU	1	0
addis	Add Immediate Shifted	IU	1	0
addme[o][.]	Add to Minus One Extended	IU	1	0
addze[o][.]	Add to Zero Extended	IU	1	0
and[.]	AND	IU	1	0
andc[.]	AND with Complement	IU	1	0
andi.	AND Immediate	IU	1	0
andis.	AND Immediate Shifted	IU	1	0
b[l][a]	Branch	BPU	1	—
bc[l][a]	Branch Conditional	BPU	1	—
bcctr[l]	Branch Conditional to CTR	BPU	1	—
bclr[l]	Branch Conditional to LR	BPU	1	—

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
cmp	Compare	IU	1	0
cmpi	Compare Immediate	IU	1	0
cmpl	Compare Logical	IU	1	0
cmpli	Compare Logical Immediate	IU	1	0
cntlzw[.]	Count Leading Zeros Word	IU	1	0
crand	CR AND	IU	1	0
crandc	CR AND with Complement	IU	1	0
creqv	CR Equivalent	IU	1	0
crnand	CR NAND	IU	1	0
crnor	CR NOR	IU	1	0
cror	CR OR	IU	1	0
crorc	CR OR with Complement	IU	1	0
crxor	CR XOR	IU	1	0
dcbf	Data Cache Block Flush	IU	1[1]	0[2]
dcbi	Data Cache Block Invalidate	IU	1[1]	0[2]
dcbst	Data Cache Block Store	IU	1[1]	0[2]
dcbt	Data Cache Block Touch	IU	1[1]	0[2]
dcbtst	Data Cache Block Touch for Store	IU	1[1]	0[2]
dcbz	Data Cache Block Set to Zero	IU	1[1]	0[2]
div[o][.]	Divide	IU	36	0
divs[o][.]	Divide Short	IU	36	0
divw[o][.]	Divide Word	IU	36	0
divwu[o][.]	Divide Word Unsigned	IU	36	0
doz[o][.]	Difference or Zero	IU	1	0
dozi	Difference or Zero Immediate	IU	1	0
eciwx	External Control Input Word Indexed	IU	1[1]	Bus dependent
ecowx	External Control Output Word Indexed	IU	1[1]	0
eieio	Enforce In-Order Execution of I/O	IU	1[1]	0 [2]
eqv[.]	Equivalent	IU	1	0
extsb[.]	Extend Sign Byte	IU	1	0
extsh[.]	Extend Sign Half Word	IU	1	0

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
fabs[.]	Floating-Point Absolute Value	FPU	1	3
fadd[.]	Floating-Point Add	FPU	1	3
fadds[.]	Floating-Point Add Single-Precision	FPU	1	3
fcmpo	Floating-Point Compare Ordered	FPU	1	1
fcmpu	Floating-Point Compare Unordered	FPU	1	1
fctiw[.]	Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word	FPU	1	3
fctiwz[.]	Floating-Point Convert to Integer Word with Round toward Zero	FPU	1	3
fdiv[.]	Floating-Point Divide	FPU	31	0
fdivs[.]	Floating-Point Divide Single-Precision	FPU	17	0
fmadd[.]	Floating-Point Multiply-Add	FPU	2	3
fmadds[.]	Floating-Point Multiply-Add Single-Precision	FPU	1	3
fmr[.]	Floating-Point Move Register	FPU	1	3
fmsub[.]	Floating-Point Multiply-Subtract	FPU	2	3
fmsubs[.]	Floating-Point Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision	FPU	1	3
fmul[.]	Floating-Point Multiply	FPU	2	3
fmuls[.]	Floating-Point Multiply Single-Precision	FPU	1	3
fnabs[.]	Floating-Point Negative Absolute Value	FPU	1	3
fneg[.]	Floating-Point Negate	FPU	1	3
fnmadd[.]	Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Add	FPU	2	3
fnmadds[.]	Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Add Single-Precision	FPU	1	3
fnmsub[.]	Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract	FPU	2	3
fnmsubs[.]	Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision	FPU	1	3
fres[.]	Floating-Point Reciprocal Estimate Single-Precision	—	Not implemented (trap)	—
frsp[.]	Floating-Point Round to Single-Precision	FPU	1	3
frsqrte[.]	Floating-Point Reciprocal Square Root Estimate	—	Not implemented (trap)	—

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
fsel[.]	Floating-Point Select	—	Not implemented (trap)	—
fsqrt[.]	Floating-Point Square Root	—	Not implemented (trap)	—
fsqrts[.]	Floating-Point Square Root Single-Precision	—	Not implemented (trap)	—
fsub[.]	Floating-Point Subtract	FPU	1	3
fsubs[.]	Floating-Point Subtract Single-Precision	FPU	1	3
icbi	Instruction Cache Block Invalidate (no-op in the 601)	IU	1	0
isync	Instruction Synchronize	IU	Serialize	Serialize
lbz	Load Byte and Zero	IU	1	1
lbzu	Load Byte and Zero with Update	IU	1	1
lbzux	Load Byte and Zero with Update Indexed	IU	1	1
lbzx	Load Byte and Zero Indexed	IU	1	1
lfd	Load Floating-Point Double-Precision	IU	1	2
lfdu	Load Floating-Point Double-Precision with Update	IU	1	2
lfdux	Load Floating-Point Double-Precision with Update Indexed	IU	1	2
lfdx	Load Floating-Point Double-Precision Indexed	IU	1	2
lfs	Load Floating-Point Single-Precision	IU	1	2
lfsu	Load Floating-Point Single-Precision with Update	IU	1	2
lfsux	Load Floating-Point Single-Precision with Update Indexed	IU	1	2
lfsx	Load Floating-Point Single-Precision Indexed	IU	1	2
lha	Load Half Word Algebraic	IU	1	1
lhau	Load Half Word Algebraic with Update	IU	1	1
lhaux	Load Half Word Algebraic with Update Indexed	IU	1	1
lhax	Load Half Word Algebraic Indexed	IU	1	1

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
lhbrx	Load Half Word Byte-Reverse Indexed	IU	1	1
lhz	Load Half Word and Zero	IU	1	1
lhzu	Load Half Word and Zero with Update	IU	1	1
lhzux	Load Half Word and Zero with Update Indexed	IU	1	1
lhzx	Load Half Word and Zero Indexed	IU	1	1
lmw	Load Multiple Word	IU	Number of registers transferred	1
lscbx	Load String and Compare Byte Indexed	IU	Number of registers transferred	1
lswi	Load String Word Immediate	IU	Number of registers transferred	1
lswx	Load String Word Indexed	IU	Number of registers transferred	1
lwarx	Load Word and Reserve Indexed	IU	1	1
lwbrx	Load Word Byte-Reverse Indexed	IU	1	1
lwz	Load Word and Zero	IU	1	1
lwzu	Load Word and Zero with Update	IU	1	1
lwzux	Load Word and Zero with Update Indexed	IU	1	1
lwzx	Load Word and Zero Indexed	IU	1	1
maskg[.]	Mask Generate	IU	1	0
maskir[.]	Mask Insert from Register	IU	1	0
mcrf	Move CR Field	IU	1	0
mcrfs	Move to CR from FPSCR	IU	1	1
mcrxr	Move to CR from XER	IU	1	0
mfcr	Move from CR	IU	1	0
mffs[.]	Move from FPSCR	FPU	1	3
mfmsr	Move from Machine State Register	IU	2	1
mfspr	Move from Special Purpose Register	IU	Variable	1
mfsr	Move from Segment Register	IU	1	1

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
mfsrin	Move from Segment Register Indirect	IU	1	1
mftb	Move from Time Base	—	Not implemented (trap)	—
mtcrf	Move to CR Fields	IU	1	0
mtfsb0[.]	Move to FPSCR Bit 0	IU	1	3
mtfsb1[.]	Move to FPSCR Bit 1	IU	1	3
mtfsf[.]	Move to FPSCR Fields	IU	1	3
mtfsfi[.]	Move to FPSCR Field Immediate	IU	1	3
mtmsr	Move to Machine State Register	IU	Serialize	Serialize
mtspr	Move to Special Purpose Register	IU	Variable	0
mtsr	Move to Segment Register	IU	1	0
mtsrin	Move to Segment Register Indirect	IU	1	0
mul[o][.]	Multiply	IU	5/9[3]	0
mulhw[.]	Multiply High Word	IU	5/9[3]	0
mulhwu[.]	Multiply High Word Unsigned	IU	5/9/10[4]	0
mulli	Multiply Low Immediate	IU	5	0
mulw[o][.]	Multiply Low Word	IU	5/9[3]	0
nabs	Negative Absolute	IU	1	0
nand[.]	NAND	IU	1	0
neg[o][.]	Negate	IU	1	0
nor[.]	NOR	IU	1	0
or[.]	OR	IU	1	0
orc[.]	OR with Complement	IU	1	0
ori	OR Immediate	IU	1	0
oris	OR Immediate Shifted	IU	1	0
rfi	Return from Interrupt	IU	Serialize	Serialize
rlmi[.]	Rotate Left then Mask Insert	IU	1	0
rlwimi[.]	Rotate Left Word Immediate then Mask Insert	IU	1	0
rlwinm[.]	Rotate Left Word Immediate then AND with Mask	IU	1	0

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
rlwnm[.]	Rotate Left Word then AND with Mask	IU	1	0
rrib[.]	Rotate Right and Insert Bit	IU	1	0
sc	System Call	IU	Serialize	Serialize
sle[.]	Shift Left Extended	IU	1	0
sleq[.]	Shift Left Extended with MQ	IU	1	0
sliq[.]	Shift Left Immediate with MQ	IU	1	0
slliq[.]	Shift Left Long Immediate with MQ	IU	1	0
sllq[.]	Shift Left Long with MQ	IU	1	0
slq[.]	Shift Left with MQ	IU	1	0
slw[.]	Shift Left Word	IU	1	0
sraq[.]	Shift Right Algebraic with MQ	IU	1	0
sraiq[.]	Shift Right Algebraic Immediate with MQ	IU	1	0
sraw[.]	Shift Right Algebraic Word	IU	1	0
srawi[.]	Shift Right Algebraic Word Immediate	IU	1	0
sre[.]	Shift Right Extended	IU	1	0
srea[.]	Shift Right Extended Algebraic	IU	1	0
sreq[.]	Shift Right Extended with MQ	IU	1	0
sriq[.]	Shift Right Immediate with MQ	IU	1	0
srliq[.]	Shift Right Long Immediate with MQ	IU	1	0
srlq[.]	Shift Right Long with MQ	IU	1	0
srq[.]	Shift Right with MQ	IU	1	0
srw[.]	Shift Right Word	IU	1	0
stb	Store Byte	IU	1	0
stbu	Store Byte with Update	IU	1	0
stbux	Store Byte with Update Indexed	IU	1	0
stbx	Store Byte Indexed	IU	1	0
stfd	Store Floating-Point Double-Precision	IU	1	0
stfdu	Store Floating-Point Double-Precision with Update	IU	1	0
stfdux	Store Floating-Point Double-Precision with Update Indexed	IU	1	0

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
stfdx	Store Floating-Point Double-Precision Indexed	IU	1	0
stfiwx	Store Floating-Point as integer Word Indexed	IU	1	0
stfs	Store Floating-Point Single-Precision	IU	1	0
stfsu	Store Floating-Point Single-Precision with Update	IU	1	0
stfsux	Store Floating-Point Single-Precision with Update Indexed	IU	1	0
stfsx	Store Floating-Point Single-Precision Indexed	IU	1	0
sth	Store Half Word	IU	1	0
sthbrx	Store Half Word Byte-Reverse Indexed	IU	1	0
sthu	Store Half Word with Update	IU	1	0
sthux	Store Half Word with Update Indexed	IU	1	0
sthx	Store Half Word Indexed	IU	1	0
stmw	Store Multiple Word	IU	Number of registers transferred	0
stswi	Store String Word Immediate	IU	Number of registers transferred	0
stswx	Store String Word Indexed	IU	Number of registers transferred	0
stw	Store Word	IU	1	0
stwbrx	Store Word Byte-Reverse Indexed	IU	1	0
stwcx.	Store Word Conditional Indexed	IU	2	0
stwu	Store Word with Update	IU	1	0
stwux	Store Word with Update Indexed	IU	1	0
stwx	Store Word Indexed	IU	1	0
subf[o][.]	Subtract from	IU	1	0
subfc[o][.]	Subtract from Carrying	IU	1	0
subfe[o][.]	Subtract from Extended	IU	1	0
subfic	Subtract from Immediate Carrying	IU	1	0

Table 7-81. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Instruction Latencies (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Pipeline	Number of Cycles in Execute Stage	Execute Stage Delay if Next Instruction is Dependent
subfme[o][.]	Subtract from Minus One Extended	IU	1	0
subfze[o][.]	Subtract from Zero Extended	IU	1	0
sync	Synchronize	IU	Serialize bus operations	Serialize bus operations
tlbia	Translation Lookaside Buffer Invalidate All	—	Not implemented (trap)	—
tlbie	Translation Lookaside Buffer Invalidate Entry	IU	Serialize	Serialize
tw	Trap Word	IU	1[5]	0
twi	Trap Word Immediate	IU	1[5]	0
xor[.]	XOR	IU	1	0
xori	XOR Immediate	IU	1	0
xoris	XOR Immediate Shifted	IU	1	0

[1]These instructions access the system bus, thus the latency may vary depending on the exact state of the machine

[2] A delay may be incurred if the subsequent instruction requires access to the cache; for example a store instruction.

[3]The longer latency may occur if the contents of **r**B is larger than 16 bits (not including sign-extending bits.

[4]Shortest latency occurs if **r**B ≤ 16 bits. Longer latency occurs if **r**B > 16 bits, but most significant bit is still 0. Longest latency occurs if most significant bit is 1.

[5]These instructions serialize the processor if the trap is taken.

Chapter 8
Signal Descriptions

This chapter describes the PowerPC 601 microprocessor's external signals. It contains a concise description of individual signals, showing behavior when the signal is asserted and negated and when the signal is an input and an output.

NOTE

A bar over a signal name indicates that the signal is active low—for example, $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ (address retry) and $\overline{\text{TS}}$ (transfer start). Active-low signals are referred to as asserted (active) when they are low and negated when they are high. Signals that are not active-low, such as AP0–AP3 (address bus parity signals) and TT0–TT4 (transfer type signals) are referred to as asserted when they are high and negated when they are low.

The 601 signals are grouped as follows:

- Address arbitration signals—The 601 uses these signals to arbitrate for address bus mastership.
- Address transfer start signals—These signals indicate that a bus master has begun a transaction on the address bus.
- Address transfer signals—These signals, which consist of the address bus, address parity, and address parity error signals, are used to transfer the address and to ensure the integrity of the transfer.
- Transfer attribute signals—These signals provide information about the type of transfer, such as the transfer size and whether the transaction is bursted, write-through, or cache-inhibited.
- Address transfer termination signals—These signals are used to acknowledge the end of the address phase of the transaction. They also indicate whether a condition exists that requires the address phase to be repeated.
- Data arbitration signals—The 601 uses these signals to arbitrate for data bus mastership.
- Data transfer signals—These signals, which consist of the data bus, data parity, and data parity error signals, are used to transfer the data and to ensure the integrity of the transfer.

- Data transfer termination signals—Data termination signals are required after each data beat in a data transfer. In a single-beat transaction, the data termination signals also indicate the end of the tenure, while in burst accesses, the data termination signals apply to individual beats and indicate the end of the tenure only after the final data beat. They also indicate whether a condition exists that requires the data phase to be repeated.
- System status signals—These signals include the external interrupt signal, checkstop signals, and both soft- and hard-reset signals. These signals are used to interrupt and, under various conditions, to reset the processor.
- COP/scan interface signals—The common on-chip processor (COP) unit and scan (IEEE 1149.1) interface provides a serial interface to the system for performing monitoring and boundary tests.
- Test signals—These signals are used for internal testing.
- Clock signals—These signals determine the system clock frequency. These signals can also be used to synchronize multiprocessor systems.

8.1 Signal Configuration

Figure 8-1 illustrates the 601 microprocessor's pin configuration, showing how the signals are grouped.

NOTE

A pinout showing actual pin numbers is included in the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications*.

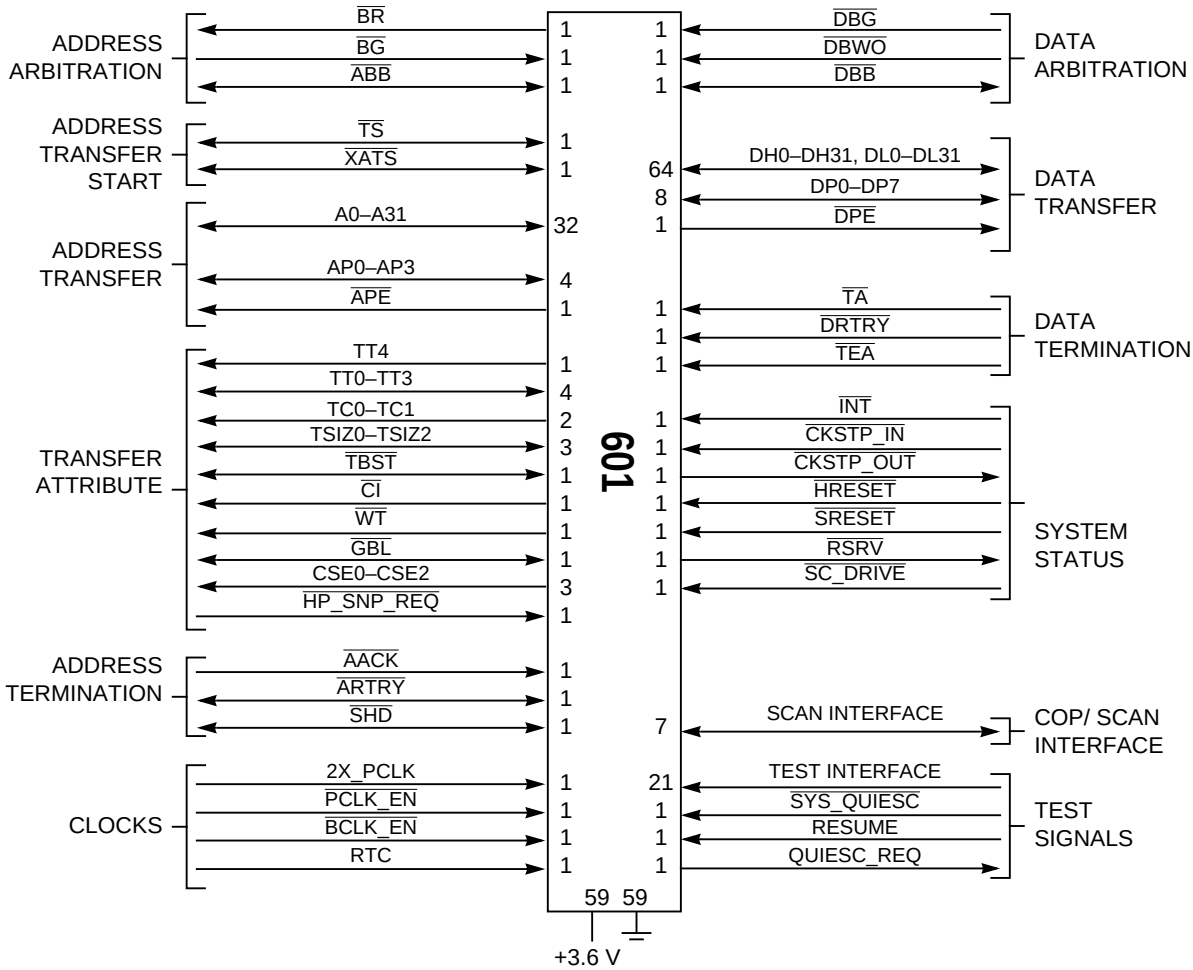


Figure 8-1. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Signal Groups

8.2 Signal Descriptions

This section describes individual 601 signals, grouped according to Figure 8-1. Note that the following sections are intended to provide a quick summary of signal functions. Chapter 9, “System Interface Operation,” describes many of these signals in greater detail, both with respect to how individual signals function and how groups of signals interact.

8.2.1 Address Bus Arbitration Signals

The address arbitration signals are a collection of input and output signals the 601 uses to request the address bus, recognize when the request is granted, and indicate to other devices when mastership is granted. For a detailed description of how these signals interact, see Section 9.3.1, “Address Bus Arbitration.”

8.2.1.1 Bus Request ($\overline{BR}$)—Output

The bus request ($\overline{BR}$) signal is an output signal on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{BR}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 is requesting mastership of the address bus. See Section 9.3.1, “Address Bus Arbitration.”

Negated—Indicates that the 601 is not requesting the address bus. The 601 may have no bus operation pending, it may be parked, or the $\overline{ARTRY}$ input was asserted on the previous bus clock cycle.

Timing Comments Assertion—Occurs when the 601 is not parked and a bus transaction is needed. This may occur even if the two possible pipeline accesses have occurred.

Negation—Occurs for at least one bus clock cycle after an accepted, qualified bus grant (see $\overline{BG}$ and $\overline{ABB}$), even if another transaction is pending. It is also negated for at least one bus clock cycle when the assertion of $\overline{ARTRY}$ is detected on the bus.

8.2.1.2 Bus Grant ($\overline{BG}$)—Input

The bus grant ($\overline{BG}$) signal is an input signal on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{BG}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 may, with the proper qualification, assume mastership of the address bus. A qualified bus grant occurs when $\overline{BG}$ is asserted and $\overline{ABB}$ and $\overline{ARTRY}$ are not asserted. The $\overline{ABB}$ signal is driven by the 601 or another bus master, and $\overline{ARTRY}$ is driven by other bus masters. If the 601 is parked, $\overline{BR}$ need not be asserted for the qualified bus grant. See Section 9.3.1, “Address Bus Arbitration.”

Negated— Indicates that the 601 is not the next potential address bus master.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur at any time to indicate the 601 is free to use the address bus. After the 601 assumes bus mastership, it does not check for a qualified bus grant again until the cycle during which the address bus tenure is completed (assuming it has another transaction to run). The 601 does not accept a $\overline{BG}$ in the cycles between the assertion of any $\overline{TS}$ or $\overline{XATS}$ and $\overline{AACK}$.

Negation—May occur at any time to indicate the 601 cannot use the bus. The 601 may still assume bus mastership on the bus clock cycle of the negation of $\overline{BG}$ because during the previous cycle $\overline{BG}$ indicated to the 601 that it was free to take mastership (if qualified).

8.2.1.3 Address Bus Busy ($\overline{\text{ABB}}$)

The address bus busy ($\overline{\text{ABB}}$) signal is both an input and an output signal.

8.2.1.3.1 Address Bus Busy ($\overline{\text{ABB}}$)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ output signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 is the address bus master. See Section 9.3.1, “Address Bus Arbitration.”

Negated— Indicates that the 601 is not using the address bus. If $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ is negated during the bus clock cycle following a qualified bus grant, the 601 did not accept mastership, even if $\overline{\text{BR}}$ was asserted. This can occur if a potential transaction is aborted internally before the transaction is started.

Timing Comments Assertion—Occurs on the bus clock cycle following a qualified $\overline{\text{BG}}$ that is accepted by the processor (see Negated).

Negation—Occurs on the bus clock cycle following the assertion of $\overline{\text{AACK}}$. If $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ is negated during the bus clock cycle following a qualified bus grant, the 601 did not accept mastership, even if $\overline{\text{BR}}$ was asserted.

High Impedance—Occurs one-half processor clock cycle after $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ is negated.

8.2.1.3.2 Address Bus Busy ($\overline{\text{ABB}}$)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ input signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the address bus is in use. This condition effectively blocks the 601 from assuming address bus ownership, regardless of the $\overline{\text{BG}}$ input. (See Section 9.3.1, “Address Bus Arbitration.”).

Negated—Indicates that the address bus is not owned by another bus master and that it is available to the 601 when accompanied by a qualified bus grant.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur when the 601 must be prevented from using the address bus (and the processor is not currently asserting $\overline{\text{ABB}}$).

Negation—May occur whenever the 601 can use the address bus.

Note that this signal is logically ORed with an internally generated address bus busy signal. For more information, see Section 9.3.1, “Address Bus Arbitration.”

8.2.2 Address Transfer Start Signals

Address transfer start signals are input and output signals that indicate that an address bus transfer has begun. The transfer start ($\overline{TS}$) signal identifies the operation as a memory transaction; extended address transfer start ($\overline{XATS}$) identifies the transaction as an I/O controller interface operation.

For detailed information about how $\overline{TS}$ and $\overline{XATS}$ interact with other signals, refer to Section 9.3.2, “Address Transfer,” and Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations,” respectively.

8.2.2.1 Transfer Start ($\overline{TS}$)

The $\overline{TS}$ signal is both an input and an output signal on the 601.

8.2.2.1.1 Transfer Start ($\overline{TS}$)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{TS}$ output signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 has begun a memory bus transaction and that the address-bus and transfer-attribute signals are valid. It is also an implied data bus request for a memory transaction (unless it is an address-only operation.)

Negated—Is negated during an I/O controller interface operation.

Timing Comments Assertion—Coincides with the assertion of $\overline{ABB}$.
Negation—Occurs one bus clock cycle after $\overline{TS}$ is asserted.
High Impedance—Coincides with the negation of $\overline{ABB}$.

8.2.2.1.2 Transfer Start ($\overline{TS}$)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{TS}$ input signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that another master has begun a bus transaction and that the address bus and transfer attribute signals are valid for snooping (see $\overline{GBL}$).

Negated—Indicates that no bus transaction is occurring.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur during the assertion of $\overline{ABB}$.
Negation—Must occur one bus clock cycle after $\overline{TS}$ is asserted.

8.2.2.2 Extended Address Transfer Start ($\overline{XATS}$)

The $\overline{XATS}$ signal is both an input and an output signal on the 601.

8.2.2.2.1 Extended Address Transfer Start ($\overline{\text{XATS}}$)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ output signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 has begun an I/O controller interface operation and that the first address cycle is valid. It is also an implied data bus request for certain I/O controller interface operation (unless it is an address-only operation.)

Negated—Is negated during an entire memory transaction.

Timing Comments Assertion—Coincides with the assertion of $\overline{\text{ABB}}$.
Negation—Occurs one bus clock cycle after the assertion of $\overline{\text{XATS}}$.

High Impedance—Coincides with the negation of $\overline{\text{ABB}}$.

8.2.2.2.2 Extended Address Transfer Start ($\overline{\text{XATS}}$)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ input signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 must check for an I/O controller interface operation reply with a receiver tag that matches bits 28–31 of the 601 PID register.

Negated—Indicates that there is no need to check for an I/O controller interface operation reply.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur while $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ is asserted.
Negation—Must occur one bus clock cycle after $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ is asserted.

8.2.3 Address Transfer Signals

The address transfer signals are used to transmit the address and to generate and monitor parity for the address transfer. For a detailed description of how these signals interact, refer to Section 9.3.2, “Address Transfer.”

8.2.3.1 Address Bus (A0–A31)

The address bus (A0–A31) consists of 32 signals that are both input and output signals.

8.2.3.1.1 Address Bus (A0–A31)—Output (Memory Operations)

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the A0–A31 output signals.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents the physical address of the data to be transferred. On burst transfers, the address bus presents the quad-word–aligned address containing the critical code/data that missed the cache. See Section 9.3.2, “Address Transfer.”

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—Occurs on the bus clock cycle after a qualified bus grant (coincides with assertion of $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ and $\overline{\text{TS}}$.)

High Impedance—Occurs one bus clock cycle after $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ is asserted.

8.2.3.1.2 Address Bus (A0–A31)—Input (Memory Operations)

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the A0–A31 input signals.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents the physical address of a snoop operation.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—Must occur on the same bus clock cycle as the assertion of $\overline{\text{TS}}$.

8.2.3.1.3 Address Bus (A0–A31)—Output (I/O Controller Interface Operations)

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the address bus signals (A0 to A31) for output I/O controller interface operations on the 601.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—For I/O controller interface operations where the 601 is the master, the address tenure consists of two packets (each requiring a bus cycle). For packet 0, these signals convey control and tag information. For packet 1, these signals represent the physical address of the data to be transferred.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—Address tenure consists of two beats. The first beat occurs on the bus clock cycle after a qualified bus grant, coinciding with $\overline{\text{XATS}}$. The address bus transitions to the second beat on the next bus clock cycle.

High Impedance—Occurs on the bus clock cycle after $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ is asserted.

8.2.3.1.4 Address Bus (A0–A31)—Input (I/O Controller Interface Operations)

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for input I/O controller interface operations on the 601.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—When the 601 is not the master, it snoops (and checks address parity) on the first address beat only of all I/O controller interface operations for an I/O reply operation with a receiver tag that matches its PID tag. See Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations.”

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The 601 looks for only the first beat of the I/O transfer address tenure, which coincides with $\overline{\text{XATS}}$. The second address bus beat is *not* required by the 601.

8.2.3.2 Address Bus Parity (AP0–AP3)

The address bus parity (AP0–AP3) signals are both input and output signals reflecting one bit of odd-byte parity for each of the four bytes of address when a valid address is on the bus.

8.2.3.2.1 Address Bus Parity (AP0–AP3)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the AP0–AP3 output signal on the 601.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents odd parity for each of four bytes of the physical address for a transaction. Odd parity means that an odd number of bits, including the parity bit, are driven high. The signal assignments correspond to the following:

AP0 A0–A7
AP1 A8–A15
AP2 A16–A23
AP3 A24–A31

For more information, see Section 9.3.2.1, “Address Bus Parity.”

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.
High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.3.2.2 Address Bus Parity (AP0–AP3)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the AP0–AP3 input signal on the 601.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents odd parity for each of four bytes of the physical address for snooping and I/O controller interface operations. Detected even parity causes the processor to enter the checkstop state if address parity checking is enabled in the HID0 register (see Section 2.3.3.13.1, “Checkstop Sources and Enables Register—HID0”). (See also the $\overline{\text{APE}}$ signal description below.)

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.3.3 Address Parity Error ($\overline{\text{APE}}$)—Output

The address parity error ($\overline{\text{APE}}$) signal is an output signal on the 601. Note that the ($\overline{\text{APE}}$) signal is an open-drain type output, and requires an external pull-up resistor (for example, 10 KΩ to Vdd) to assure proper de-assertion of the ($\overline{\text{APE}}$) signal. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{APE}}$ signal on the 601. For more information, see Section 9.3.2.1, “Address Bus Parity.”

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates incorrect address bus parity has been detected by the 601 on a snoop ($\overline{\text{GBL}}$ asserted). This includes the first address beat of an I/O controller interface operation.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 has not detected a parity error (even parity) on the address bus.

Timing Comments Assertion—Occurs on the second bus clock cycle after $\overline{\text{TS}}$ or $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ is asserted.
High Impedance—Occurs on the third bus clock cycle after $\overline{\text{TS}}$ or $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ is asserted.

8.2.4 Address Transfer Attribute Signals

The transfer attribute signals are a set of signals that further characterize the transfer—such as the size of the transfer, whether it is a read or write operation, and whether it is a burst or single-beat transfer. For a detailed description of how these signals interact, see Section 9.3.2, “Address Transfer.”

Note that some signal functions vary depending on whether the transaction is a memory access or an I/O access. For a description of how these signals function for I/O controller interface operations, see Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations.”

8.2.4.1 Transfer Type (TT0–TT4)

The transfer type (TT0–TT4) signals consist of four input/output signals and one output-only signal on the 601. For a complete description of TT0–TT4 signals, see Table 8-1 and for transfer type encodings, see Table 8-2.

8.2.4.1.1 Transfer Type (TT0–TT4)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the TT0–TT4 output signals on the 601.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Indicates the type of transfer in progress. These bits roughly correspond to the following decoded operations:

- Atomic
- Read/write
- Invalidate
- Memory cycle

For I/O controller interface operations these signals are part of the extended address transfer code (XATC) along with TSIZ and $\overline{\text{TBST}}$:

$$XATC(0–7)=TT(0–3)||\overline{TBST}||TSIZ(0–2).$$

TT4 is driven negated as an output on the 601 and is defined for future expansion.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation/High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.1.2 Transfer Type (TT0–TT3)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the TT0–TT3 input signals on the 601.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Indicates the type of transfer in progress (see Table 8-2). For I/O controller interface operations these signals form part of the XATC and are snooped by the 601 if $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ is asserted.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.

Table 8-1 provides the signal descriptions for TT0–TT4.

Table 8-1. TT0–TT4 Signal Description

Signal	Description
TT0	Special operations: This signal is asserted whenever a bus transaction is run in response to a **lwarx/stwcx.** instruction pair, a TLBI (translation lookaside buffer invalidate) operation, or either an **eciwx** or **ecowx** instruction.
TT1	Read (or write) operations: This signal indicates whether the transaction is a read (TT1 high) or a write (TT1 low). This assumes that the transaction is not address-only.
TT2	Invalidate operations: When asserted with $\overline{\text{GBL}}$, the TT2 output signal indicates that all other caches in the system should invalidate the cache entry on a snoop hit. If the snoop hit is to a modified entry, the sector should be copied back before being invalidated.
TT3	Address-only operations: This signal, when asserted, indicates that the data transfer is to/from memory. External logic can synthesize a data bus request from the combined assertions of $\overline{\text{TS}}$ (or $\overline{\text{XATS}}$) and TT3. If TT3 is not asserted with the address, the associated bus transaction is considered to be a broadcast operation that all potential bus masters must honor (or a reserved operation), except for the external control functions (**eciwx** and **ecowx**) which require both address and data tenures.
TT4	Reserved. Always negated (low state). (For expandability)

Table 8-2 describes the encodings for TT0–TT3.

Table 8-2. Transfer Type Encodings

TT0	TT1	TT2	TT3	Operation	Bus Transaction [1]	Comment
0	0	0	0	Clean sector	Address only	Due to cache control operation[2]
0	0	0	1	Write with flush	Single-beat write	—
0	0	1	0	Flush sector	Address only	Due to cache control operation [2]
0	0	1	1	Write with kill	Burst	Cache sector writes (replacement sector copy backs and snoop push operations)
0	1	0	0	**sync**	Address only	Due to cache control operation [2]
0	1	0	1	Read	Single-beat read or burst	—
0	1	1	0	Kill sector	Address only	Store hit on shared sector or cache control operation [2]
0	1	1	1	Read with intent to modify	Burst	Store cache miss
1	0	0	0	—	—	Reserved
1	0	0	1	Write with flush atomic	Single-beat write	Caused by **stwcx.**
1	0	1	0	External control out	Single-beat write	Caused by **ecowx** [3]
1	0	1	1	—	—	Reserved

Table 8-2. Transfer Type Encodings (Continued)

TT0	TT1	TT2	TT3	Operation	Bus Transaction [1]	Comment
1	1	0	0	TLB invalidate	Address only	—
1	1	0	1	Read atomic	Single-beat read or burst	Caused by **lwarx** instruction
1	1	1	0	External control in	Single-beat read	Caused by **eciwx** [3]
1	1	1	1	Read with intent to modify atomic	Burst	Caused by **stwcx.** instruction

1. These are the transactions the 601 produces for the given encodings, and may not be the same transactions produced by other bus masters with the same encoding. For example the encoding b'0001' is a single-beat write coming from the 601, but another master may use this encoding or another type of write transaction. Bus participants should use the TT pins in conjunction with the other transfer attribute pins to determine the type of transaction.
2. Cache control operations resulting from explicit cache control instructions (for example, **dclf**, **sync**, **dclz**, **dcli**).
3. The signal encodings for these operations do not use the TT0 and TT3 signals in the manner described in Table 8-1. Note that TT4 is reserved.

8.2.4.2 Transfer Size (TSIZ0–TSIZ2)

The transfer size (TSIZ0–TSIZ2) signals consist of three input/output signals on the 601.

8.2.4.2.1 Transfer Size (TSIZ0–TSIZ2)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the TSIZ0–TSIZ2 output signals on the 601.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—For memory accesses, these signals along with $\overline{\text{TBST}}$, indicate the data transfer size for the current bus operation, as shown in Table 8-3. Table 9-2 shows how the TSIZ signals are used with the address signals for aligned transfers. Table 9-3 shows how the TSIZ signals are used with the address signals for misaligned transfers. For I/O transfer protocol, these signals form part of the I/O transfer code (see the description in Section 8.2.4.1, “Transfer Type (TT0–TT4)”).

For external control instructions (**eciwx** and **ecowx**), TSIZ0–TSIZ2 are used to output bits 29–31 of the external access register (EAR), which are used to form the resource ID ($\overline{\text{TBST}}$||TSIZ0–TSIZ2).

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.
High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

Table 8-3. Data Transfer Size

$\overline{\text{TBST}}$	TSIZ0–TSIZ2	Transfer Size
Asserted	010	Burst (32 bytes)
Negated	000	8 bytes
Negated	001	1 byte
Negated	010	2 bytes
Negated	011	3 bytes
Negated	100	4 bytes
Negated	101	5 bytes
Negated	110	6 bytes
Negated	111	7 bytes

8.2.4.2.2 Transfer Size (TSIZ0–TSIZ2)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the TSIZ0–TSIZ2 input signals on the 601.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents the size of the current transfer, as shown in Table 8-3. For the I/O controller interface protocol, these signals form part of the I/O transfer code (see Section 8.2.4.1, “Transfer Type (TT0–TT4)”).

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.3 Transfer Burst ($\overline{\text{TBST}}$)

The transfer burst ($\overline{\text{TBST}}$) signal is an input/output signal on the 601.

8.2.4.3.1 Transfer Burst ($\overline{\text{TBST}}$)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{TBST}}$ output signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that a burst transfer is in progress.

Negated—Indicates that a burst transfer is not in progress. Also, part of I/O transfer code (see Section 8.2.4.1, “Transfer Type (TT0–TT4)”).

For external control instructions (**eciwx** and **ecowx**), $\overline{\text{TBST}}$ is used to output bit 28 of the EAR, which is used to form the resource ID ($\overline{\text{TBST}}$||TSIZ0–TSIZ2).

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.
High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.3.2 Transfer Burst ($\overline{\text{TBST}}$)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{TBST}}$ input signal.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Indicates that a burst transfer is in progress when asserted and TSIZ0–TSIZ2 are set to 010. For the I/O transfer protocol, this signal forms part of the I/O transfer code (see Section 8.2.4.1, “Transfer Type (TT0–TT4)”).

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.4 Transfer Code (TC0–TC1)—Output

The transfer code (TC0–TC1) consists of two output signals on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the TC0–TC1 signals.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents a special encoding for the transfer in progress (see Table 8-4).

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.
High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

Table 8-4. Encodings for TC0–TC1

Signal	Description
TC0	Depends on whether the current transaction is a read or write operation; therefore, TC0 should be used with TT1. On a read operation, TC0 asserted indicates the transaction is an instruction fetch operation; otherwise, the read operation is a data operation. Asserting TC0 for write operations indicates the cache sector associated with a write is being invalidated; TC0 negated indicates the cache sector associated with a write is *not* being invalidated.
TC1	TC1, when asserted, indicates that an operation to reload the other sector is queued; therefore, the next bus transaction will likely be to the same page of memory. After the addressed sector in a cache line is loaded from memory, the 601 attempts to load the other sector in the cache line. This is a low-priority bus operation and may not be the next transaction. The assertion of TC1 suggests that the next access may be to the same page; the hint may be wrong depending on the bus traffic/code execution dynamics.

8.2.4.5 Cache Inhibit ($\overline{\text{CI}}$)—Output

The cache inhibit ($\overline{\text{CI}}$) signal is an output signal on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{CI}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that a single-beat transfer will not change the cache, reflecting the setting of the I bit for the block or page that contains the address of the current transaction.

Negated—Indicates that a burst transfer will allocate a sector in the 601 data cache.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.
High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.6 Write-Through ($\overline{WT}$)—Output

The write-through ($\overline{WT}$) signal is an output signal on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{WT}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that a single-beat transaction is write-through, reflecting the value of the W bit for the block or page that contains the address of the current transaction. For burst writes, this indicates that the write is the result of a **dcbf** and **dcbst** instruction.

Negated—Indicates that a transaction is not write-through. For bursts it is negated for cast-outs and snoop pushes.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.
High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.7 Global ($\overline{GBL}$)

The global ($\overline{GBL}$) signal is an input/output signal on the 601.

8.2.4.7.1 Global ($\overline{GBL}$)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{GBL}$ output signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that a transaction is global, reflecting the setting of the M bit for the block or page that contains the address of the current transaction (except in the case of copy-back operations, which are non-global.)

Negated—Indicates that a transaction is not global.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.
High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.7.2 Global ($\overline{GBL}$)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{GBL}$ input signal.

State Meaning Asserted— Indicates that a transaction must be snooped by the 601.

Negated—Indicates that a transaction is not snooped by the 601 (even if TT0–TT4 indicate an invalidation transaction).

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.8 Cache Set Element (CSE0–CSE2)—Output

The cache set element (CSE0–CSE2) signals consist of three output signals on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the CSE signals.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents the cache replacement set element for the current transaction reloading into or writing out of the cache. Can be used with the address bus and the transfer attribute signals to externally track the state of each cache sector in the 601's cache. See Section 4.7.4, "MESI Hardware Considerations."

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as A0–A31.
High Impedance—The same as A0–A31.

8.2.4.9 High-Priority Snoop Request ($\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$)

The high-priority snoop request ($\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$) signal is an input signal (input-only) on the 601. This pin must be enabled by setting HID0[31] if it is to be used. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$ signal

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 may add an additional reserved queue position to the list of available queue positions for push transactions that are a result of a snoop hit.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 will not make available the reserved queue for a snoop hit push resulting from a transaction. This is the "normal" mode.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—Must be valid through the entire address tenure.

Note: This pin is a feature of the 601 only and will not be available in any other PowerPC processors.

8.2.5 Address Transfer Termination Signals

The address transfer termination signals are used to indicate either that the address phase of the transaction has completed successfully or must be repeated, and when it should be terminated. These signals are also used to maintain MESI protocol. For detailed information about how these signals interact, see Section 9.3.3, "Address Transfer Termination."

8.2.5.1 Address Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{AACK}}$)—Input

The address acknowledge ($\overline{\text{AACK}}$) signal is an input signal (input-only) on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the address phase of a transaction is complete. The address bus will go to a high impedance state on the next bus clock cycle. The 601 samples $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ on the bus clock cycle following the assertion of $\overline{\text{AACK}}$.

Negated—(During $\overline{\text{ABB}}$) indicates that the address bus and the transfer attributes must remain driven.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur as early as the bus clock cycle after $\overline{TS}$ or $\overline{XATS}$ is asserted; assertion can be delayed to allow adequate address access time for slow devices. For example, if an implementation supports slow snooping devices, an external arbiter can postpone the assertion of $\overline{AACK}$.

Negation—Must occur one bus clock cycle after the assertion of $\overline{AACK}$.

8.2.5.2 Address Retry ($\overline{ARTRY}$)

The address retry ($\overline{ARTRY}$) signal is both an input and output signal on the 601.

8.2.5.2.1 Address Retry ($\overline{ARTRY}$)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{ARTRY}$ output signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 detects a condition in which a snooped address tenure must be retried (see Table 8-5 for encoding). If the 601 needs to update memory as a result of the snoop that caused the retry, the 601 asserts $\overline{BR}$ (unless it is parked).

High Impedance—Indicates that the 601 does not need the snooped address tenure to be retried.

Timing Comments Assertion—Occurs two bus cycles immediately following the assertion of $\overline{TS}$ if a retry is required.

Negation—Occurs the second bus cycle after the assertion of $\overline{AACK}$. Since this signal may be simultaneously driven by multiple devices, it negates in a unique fashion. First the buffer goes to high impedance for one bus cycle, then it is driven high for one 2XPCLK cycle before returning to high impedance.

This special method of negation may be disabled by setting HID0[29].

Table 8-5 shows the relationship between the $\overline{SHD}$ and $\overline{ARTRY}$ signals.

Table 8-5. $\overline{SHD}$ and $\overline{ARTRY}$ Signals

$\overline{SHD}$	$\overline{ARTRY}$	Description
Z	Z	No snoop hit, no busy pipeline
Z	A	Pipeline busy
A	Z	Snoop hit shared
A	A	Snoop hit modified

8.2.5.2.2 Address Retry ($\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ input signal.

State Meaning Asserted—If the 601 is the address bus master, $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ indicates that the 601 must retry the preceding address tenure and immediately negate $\overline{\text{BR}}$ (if asserted). If the 601 is not the address bus master, this input indicates that the 601 should immediately negate $\overline{\text{BR}}$ for one bus clock cycle following the assertion of $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$. Note that the subsequent address retried may not be the same one associated with the assertion of the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ signal.

Negated/High Impedance—Indicates that the 601 does not need to retry the last address tenure.

Timing Comments Assertion—Must occur by the bus clock cycle immediately following the assertion of $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ if a retry is required.

Negation—Must occur during the second cycle after the assertion of $\overline{\text{AACK}}$. Note that this signal is sampled only following the assertion of $\overline{\text{AACK}}$.

8.2.5.3 Shared ($\overline{\text{SHD}}$)

The shared ($\overline{\text{SHD}}$) signal is both an input and output signal on the 601.

8.2.5.3.1 Shared ($\overline{\text{SHD}}$)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ output signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 either needs the data to be marked shared (in response to a snoop hit for transaction not requiring invalidation) or with $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ indicates the 601 has a hit on a cache sector marked as modified.

Negated/High Impedance—Indicates that the 601 did not have a cache hit on the snooped address.

Timing Comments Assertion—The same as $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$.
Negation—The same as $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$.
High Impedance—The same as $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$.

See Table 8-5 for information about $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ signals.

8.2.5.3.2 Shared ($\overline{\text{SHD}}$)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ input signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that for a self-generated transaction, the 601 must allocate the incoming sector as shared (unmodified). If $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is asserted, the transaction must be retried after the other master updates memory.

Negated—Indicates that the address for the current transaction is not in any other cache.

Timing Comments Assertion—The same as $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$.
Negation—The same as $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$.

8.2.6 Data Bus Arbitration Signals

Like the address bus arbitration signals, data bus arbitration signals maintain an orderly process for determining data bus mastership. Note that there is no data bus arbitration signal equivalent to the address bus arbitration signal $\overline{\text{BR}}$ (bus request), because, except for address-only transactions, $\overline{\text{TS}}$ and $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ imply data bus requests. For a detailed description on how these signals interact, see Section 9.4.1, “Data Bus Arbitration.”

One special signal, $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$, allows the 601 to be configured dynamically to write data out of order with respect to read data. For detailed information about using $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$, see Section 9.10, “Using DBWO (Data Bus Write Only).”

8.2.6.1 Data Bus Grant ($\overline{\text{DBG}}$)—Input

The data bus grant ($\overline{\text{DBG}}$) signal is an input signal (input-only) on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 may, with the proper qualification, assume mastership of the data bus. The 601 derives a qualified data bus grant when $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ is asserted and $\overline{\text{DBB}}$, $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$, and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ are negated; that is, the data bus is not busy ($\overline{\text{DBB}}$ is negated), there is no outstanding attempt to retry the current data tenure ($\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is negated), and there is no outstanding attempt to perform an $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ of the associated address tenure.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 must hold off its data tenures.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur any time to indicate the 601 is free to take data bus mastership. It is not sampled until $\overline{\text{TS}}$ or $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ is asserted.

Negation—May occur at any time to indicate the 601 cannot assume data bus mastership.

8.2.6.2 Data Bus Write Only ($\overline{\text{DBWO}}$)—Input

The data bus write only ($\overline{\text{DBWO}}$) signal is an input signal (input-only) on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 may run the data bus tenure for an outstanding write address even if a read address is pipelined before the write address. If $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ is asserted, the 601 only assumes data bus ownership for a pending data bus write operation (that is, the 601 does not take the data bus for a pending read operation if this input is asserted along with $\overline{\text{DBG}}$). Refer to Section 9.10, "Using DBWO (Data Bus Write Only)," for detailed instructions for using $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 must run the data bus tenures in the same order as the address tenures.

Timing Comments Assertion—Must occur no later than a qualified $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ for a previous write tenure. Do not assert if no pending data bus write tenures are pending from previous address tenures.

Negation—May occur any time after a qualified $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ and before the next assertion of $\overline{\text{DBG}}$.

8.2.6.3 Data Bus Busy ($\overline{\text{DBB}}$)

The data bus busy ($\overline{\text{DBB}}$) signal is both an input and output signal on the 601.

8.2.6.3.1 Data Bus Busy ($\overline{\text{DBB}}$)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ output signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 is the data bus master. The 601 always assumes data bus mastership if it needs the data bus and is given a *qualified* data bus grant (see $\overline{\text{DBG}}$).

Negated—Indicates that the 601 is not using the data bus.

Timing Comments Assertion—Occurs during the bus clock cycle following a qualified $\overline{\text{DBG}}$.

Negation—Occurs during the bus clock cycle following the assertion of the final $\overline{\text{TA}}$.

High Impedance—Occurs one-half processor clock cycle after $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ is negated.

8.2.6.3.2 Data Bus Busy ($\overline{\text{DBB}}$)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ input signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that another device is bus master.
Negated—Indicates that the data bus is free (with proper qualification, see $\overline{\text{DBG}}$) for use by the 601.

Timing Comments Assertion—Must occur when the 601 must be prevented from using the data bus.

Negation—May occur whenever the data bus is available.

8.2.7 Data Transfer Signals

Like the address transfer signals, the data transfer signals are used to transmit data and to generate and monitor parity for the data transfer. For a detailed description of how the data transfer signals interact, see Section 9.4.2, “Data Transfer.”

8.2.7.1 Data Bus (DH0–DH31, DL0–DL31)

The data bus (DH0–DH31 and DL0–DL31) consists of 64 signals that are both input and output on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the DH and DL signals.

State Meaning The data bus has two halves—data bus high (DH) and data bus low (DL). See Table 8-6 for the data bus lane assignments. I/O controller interface operations use DH exclusively (that is, there are no 64-bit, I/O transfers).

Timing Comments The data bus is driven once for non-cached transactions and four times for cache transactions (bursts).

Table 8-6. Data Bus Lane Assignments

Data Bus Signals	Byte Lane
DH0–DH7	0
DH8–DH15	1
DH16–DH23	2
DH24–DH31	3
DL0–DL7	4
DL8–DL15	5
DL16–DL23	6
DL24–DL31	7

8.2.7.1.1 Data Bus (DH0–DH31, DL0–DL31)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the DH and DL output signals.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents the state of data during a data write. Unused byte lanes are driven to deterministic values.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—Initial beat coincides with $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ and, for bursts, transitions on the bus clock cycle following each assertion of $\overline{\text{TA}}$.
High Impedance—Occurs on the bus clock cycle after the final assertion of $\overline{\text{TA}}$.

8.2.7.1.2 Data Bus (DH0–DH31, DL0–DL31)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the DH and DL input signals.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents the state of data during a data read transaction.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—Data must be valid on the same bus clock cycle that $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is asserted; however, if $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is asserted, valid data must coincide with the assertion of the final $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ for a given data beat.

8.2.7.2 Data Bus Parity (DP0–DP7)

The eight data bus parity (DP0–DP7) signals on the 601 are both output and input signals.

8.2.7.2.1 Data Bus Parity (DP0–DP7)—Output

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the DP output signals.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents odd parity for each of eight bytes of data write transactions. Odd parity means that an odd number of bits, *including* the parity bit, are driven high. The signal assignments are listed in Table 8-7.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as DL0–DL31.
High Impedance—The same as DL0–DL31.

Table 8-7. DP0–DP7 Signal Assignments

Signal Name	Signal Assignments
DP0	DH0–DH7
DP1	DH8–DH15
DP2	DH16–DH23
DP3	DH24–DH31
DP4	DL0–DL7
DP5	DL8–DL15
DP6	DL16–DL23
DP7	DL24–DL31

8.2.7.2.2 Data Bus Parity (DP0–DP7)—Input

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the DP input signals.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents odd parity for each byte of read data. Parity is checked on all data byte lanes, regardless of the size of the transfer. Detected even parity causes a checkstop if data parity errors are enabled in the HID register. (See $\overline{\text{DPE}}$.)

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—The same as DL0–DL31.

8.2.7.3 Data Parity Error ($\overline{\text{DPE}}$)—Output

The data parity error ($\overline{\text{DPE}}$) signal is an output signal (output-only) on the 601. Note that the ($\overline{\text{DPE}}$) signal is an open-drain type output, and requires an external pull-up resistor (for example, 10 KΩ to Vdd) to assure proper de-assertion of the ($\overline{\text{DPE}}$) signal. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{DPE}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates incorrect data bus parity.
Negated—Indicates correct data bus parity.

Timing Comments Assertion—Occurs on the second bus clock cycle after $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is asserted to the 601.

High Impedance—Occurs on the third bus clock cycle after $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is asserted to the 601.

8.2.8 Data Transfer Termination Signals

Data termination signals are required after each data beat in a data transfer. Note that in a single-beat transaction, the data termination signals also indicate the end of the tenure, while in burst accesses, the data termination signals apply to individual beats and indicate the end of the tenure only after the final data beat.

For a detailed description of how these signals interact, see Section 9.4.3, “Data Transfer Termination.”

8.2.8.1 Transfer Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{TA}}$)—Input

The transfer acknowledge ($\overline{\text{TA}}$) signal is an input signal (input-only) on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{TA}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted— Indicates that a single-beat data transfer completed successfully or that a data beat in a burst transfer completed successfully (unless $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is asserted on the next bus clock cycle). Note that $\overline{\text{TA}}$ must be asserted for each data beat in a burst transaction. For more information refer to Section 9.4.3, “Data Transfer Termination.”

Negated—(During $\overline{\text{DBB}}$) indicates that, until $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is asserted, the 601 must continue to drive the data for the current write or must wait to sample the data for reads.

Timing Comments Assertion—Must not occur before $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ for the current transaction (if the address retry mechanism is to be used; otherwise, assertion may occur at any time during the assertion of $\overline{\text{DBB}}$). The system can withhold assertion of $\overline{\text{TA}}$ to indicate that the 601 should insert wait states to extend the duration of the data beat.

Negation—Must occur after the bus clock cycle of the final (or only) data beat of the transfer. For a burst transfer, the system can assert $\overline{\text{TA}}$ for one bus clock cycle and then negate it to advance the burst transfer to the next beat and insert wait states during the next beat.

8.2.8.2 Data Retry ($\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$)—Input

The data retry ($\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$) signal is input only on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 must invalidate the data from the previous read operation.

Negated—Indicates that data presented with $\overline{\text{TA}}$ on the previous read operation is valid. This is essentially a late $\overline{\text{TA}}$ to allow speculative forwarding of data (with $\overline{\text{TA}}$) during reads. Note that $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is ignored for write transactions

Timing Comments Assertion—Must occur during the bus clock cycle immediately after $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is asserted if a retry is required. The $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ signal may be held asserted for multiple bus clock cycles. When $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is negated, data must be valid.

Negation—Must occur during the bus clock cycle after a valid data

beat. This may occur several cycles after $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ is negated, effectively extending the data bus tenure.

8.2.8.3 Transfer Error Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{TEA}}$)—Input

The transfer error acknowledge ($\overline{\text{TEA}}$) signal is input only on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that a bus error occurred. Causes a machine check exception (and possibly causes the processor to enter checkstop state if machine check enable bit is cleared (MSR[ME] = 0)). For more information see Section 5.4.2.2, "Checkstop State (MSR[ME] = 0)." Assertion terminates the current transaction; that is, assertion of $\overline{\text{TA}}$ and $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ are ignored. The assertion of $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ causes the negation/high impedance of $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ in the next clock cycle. However, data entering the GPR or the cache are not invalidated.

Negated—Indicates that no bus error was detected.

Timing Comments Assertion—May be asserted while $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ and/or $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is asserted.

Negation— $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ must be negated no later than the negation of $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ or the last $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$.

8.2.9 System Status Signals

Most system status signals are input signals that indicate when exceptions are received, when checkstop conditions have occurred, and when the 601 must be reset. The 601 generates the output signal, $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$, when it detects a checkstop condition. For a detailed description of these signals, see Section 9.7, "Interrupt, Checkstop, and Reset Signals."

8.2.9.1 Interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$)—Input

The interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) signal is input only. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—The 601 latches the interrupt condition if MSR[EE] is set; otherwise, the 601 ignores the interrupt condition. To guarantee that the 601 will take the external interrupt, the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin must be held active until the 601 takes the interrupt; otherwise, whether the 601 takes an external interrupt, depends on whether the MSR[EE] bit was set while the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ signal was held active.

Negated—Indicates that normal operation should proceed. See Section 9.7.1, "External Interrupt."

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur at any time.
Negation—May occur any time after the minimum pulse width has been met. (Minimum pulse width is three processor clock cycles.) After the minimum pulse width has been met, an interrupt exception occurs.

8.2.9.2 Checkstop Input ($\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$)—Input

The checkstop input ($\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$) signal is input only on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 must terminate operation by internally gating off all clocks. Once $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$ has been asserted it must remain asserted until the system has been reset.

Negated—Indicates that normal operation should proceed. See Section 9.7.2, “Checkstops.”

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur at any time and may be asserted asynchronously to the input clocks. $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$ must be asserted for a minimum of three $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ clock cycles. Or, it may be asserted synchronously meeting setup and hold times (specified in the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications*) and must be asserted for at least two $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ clock cycles.

Negation—May occur any time after the $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$ output signal has been asserted.

8.2.9.3 Checkstop Output ($\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$)—Output

The checkstop output ($\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$) signal is output only on the 601. Note that the ($\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$) signal is an open-drain type output, and requires an external pull-up resistor (for example, 10 KΩ to Vdd) to assure proper de-assertion of the ($\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$) signal. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 has detected a checkstop condition and has ceased operation.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 is operating normally.
See Section 9.7.2, “Checkstops.”

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur at any time and may be asserted asynchronously to the 601 input clocks.

Negation—Requires $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$ assertion.

8.2.9.4 Reset Signals

There are two reset signals on the 601—hard reset ($\overline{\text{HRESET}}$) and soft reset ($\overline{\text{SRESET}}$). Descriptions of the reset signals are as follows.

8.2.9.4.1 Hard Reset ($\overline{\text{HRESET}}$)—Input

The hard reset ($\overline{\text{HRESET}}$) signal is input only and must be used at power-on to properly reset the processor. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Initiates a complete hard reset operation when this input transitions from asserted to negated. Causes a reset exception as described in Section 5.4.1.2, “Hard Reset.” Output drivers are released to high impedance within three clocks after the assertion of $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$.

Negated—Indicates that normal operation should proceed. See Section 9.7.3, “Reset Inputs.”

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur at any time and may be asserted asynchronously to the 601 input clocks.

Negation—May occur any time after the minimum reset pulse width has been met. (Minimum pulse width is 300 processor clock cycles.)

This input has additional functionality in certain test modes.

8.2.9.4.2 Soft Reset ($\overline{\text{SRESET}}$)—Input

The soft reset ($\overline{\text{SRESET}}$) signal is input only. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted— Initiates processing for a reset exception as described in Section 5.4.1.1, “Soft Reset.”

Negated—Indicates that normal operation should proceed. See Section 9.7.3, “Reset Inputs.”

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur at any time.

Negation—May occur any time after the minimum soft-reset pulse width has been met. (Minimum pulse width is 10 processor clock cycles.)

This input has additional functionality in certain test modes.

8.2.9.5 System Quiesced ($\overline{\text{SYS\_QUIESC}}$)

The system quiesced ($\overline{\text{SYS\_QUIESC}}$) signal is input only. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{SYS\_QUIESC}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Enables soft stop in the 601. For more information about soft stop state, see Section 9.7.4, “Soft Stop Control Signals.”

Negated—Indicates that soft stop is not enabled in the 601processor.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—Must meet setup and hold times as described in the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications*.

Note that systems that do not use this signal should tie it low.

8.2.9.6 Resume (RESUME)

The resume (RESUME) signal is input only. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the RESUME signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Restarts the 601 after a soft stop.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 is not allowed to resume normal operation if a soft stop has occurred.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur at any time and may be asserted asynchronously to the 601 input clocks. RESUME must be asserted for a minimum of three $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ clock cycles. Or, it may be asserted synchronously meeting setup and hold times (specified in the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications*) and must be asserted for at least two $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ clock cycles.

Negation—May occur any time after the minimum pulse width has been met.

Note that systems that do not use this signal should tie it low.

8.2.9.7 Quiesce Request (QUIESC_REQ)

The quiesce request (QUIESC_REQ) signal is output only. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the QUIESC_REQ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 is requesting a soft stop for the system.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 is operating normally.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur at any time to indicate that the 601 is requesting a soft stop.

Negation—May occur at any time to indicate that the 601 is not requesting a soft stop.

8.2.9.8 Reservation ($\overline{\text{RSRV}}$)—Output

The reservation ($\overline{\text{RSRV}}$) signal is output only on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{RSRV}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted/Negated—Represents the state of the reservation coherency bit in the reservation address register that is used by the **lwarx** and **stwcx.** instructions. See Section 9.8.1, “Support for the lwarx/stwcx. Instruction Pair.”

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—Occurs synchronously with respect to bus clock cycles. The execution of an **lwarx** instruction sets the internal reservation condition. When the next bus transition occurs, $\overline{\text{RSRV}}$ is asserted.

8.2.9.9 Driver Mode (SC_DRIVE)

The driver mode (SC_DRIVE) signal is input only on the 601. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the SC_DRIVE signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the drive current for the following output buffers is increased; $\overline{\text{ABB}}$, $\overline{\text{DBB}}$, $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$, $\overline{\text{SHD}}$, $\overline{\text{TS}}$, $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ (approximately 2x).

Negated—The drive current for the six signals above will be the same as all other signals for the 601.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—This is not a dynamic signal; it must not change after $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$ is negated.

8.2.10 COP/Scan Interface

The 601 has extensive on-chip test capability including the following:

- Built-in self test (BIST)
- Debug control/observation (COP)
- Boundary scan (IEEE 1149.1 compatible interface)

The BIST hardware is exercised as part of the POR sequence. The COP and boundary scan logic are not used under typical operating conditions.

Detailed discussion of the 601 test functions is beyond the scope of this document; however, sufficient information has been provided to allow the system designer to disable the test functions that would impede normal operation.

The interface is shown in Figure 8-2. For more information, refer to Section 9.9, “IEEE 1149.1-Compatible Interface.”

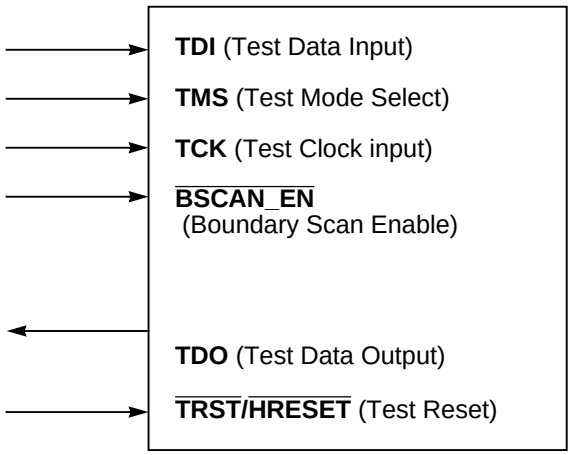


Figure 8-2. IEEE 1149.1-Compatible Boundary Scan Interface

See Table 8-8 for the COP/scan interface signals.

Table 8-8. COP/Scan Interface

SIgnal Name	I/O	Timing Comments
SCAN_CTL	I	This input signal should be driven high for normal operation.
SCAN_CLK	I	This input signal should be driven high for normal operation.
SCAN_SIN	I	This input signal should be driven low for normal operation.
ESP_EN	I	This input signal should be driven high for normal operation.
BSCAN_E N	I	This input signal should be driven high for normal operation.
RUN_NSTOP	O	This output signal is a no connect (NC) for normal operation.
SCAN_OUT	O	This output signal is a no connect (NC) for normal operation.

8.2.11 Clock Signals

The clock signal inputs of the 601 determine the system clock frequency and provide a flexible clocking scheme that allows the processor to operate at an integer multiple of the system clock frequency.

Refer to the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications* for exact timing relationships of the clock signals.

8.2.11.1 Double-Speed Processor Clock (2X_PCLK)—Input

The double-speed processor clock (2X_PCLK) signal is input only on the 601. This signal is the highest frequency input to the 601; it switches at twice the frequency of the internal P_CLOCK provided that the PCLK_EN signal is half the frequency of the 2X_PLCLK as shown in Figure 8-3. This input clocks the latch that samples the PCLK_EN input, providing duty-cycle control for the internal P_CLOCK (see Figure 8-3).

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the 2X_PCLK signal.

State Meaning Rising edge—Is the clocking edge for a synchronizing latch used to generate the internal processor clock (see $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$).

Timing Comments Duty cycle—Refer to the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications*.

8.2.11.2 Clock Phase ($\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$)—Input

The clock phase ($\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$) signal is input only on the 601. The $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ signal switches at the same frequency as the internal CPU clock (P_CLOCK in Figure 8-3). The $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ signal determines the phase of the internal P_CLOCK (timing and duty cycle are derived from the 2X_PCLK input); therefore, this input can be used to synchronize multiple 601s.

Figure 8-3 shows how the internal P_CLOCK is always identical to the $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ signal except it is inverted and delayed by one full 2X_PCLK cycle.

The 601 can tolerate dynamic P_CLOCK cycle stretching. This can be accomplished by altering the duty cycle of the $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ input. For example, the system can extend a given CPU clock cycle by negating $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ for more than one 2X_PCLK cycle. This effectively delays the bus clock input sampling points and output drive points in half of a processor cycle increments and further delays execution of instructions accordingly.

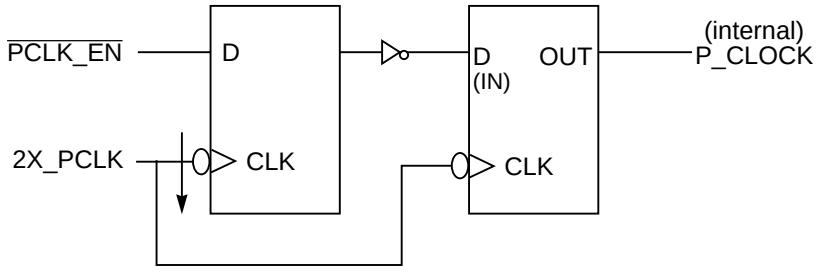


Figure 8-3. Internal P_CLOCK Generation

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted—Indicates that the 601 should generate the high phase of the internal processor clock synchronized to 2X_PCLK.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 should generate the low phase of the internal processor clock synchronized to 2X_PCLK.

Timing Comments Assertion—May occur one 2X_PCLK cycle after the negation of $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ with appropriate setup to the falling edge of 2X_PCLK.

Negation—Must occur one 2X_PCLK cycle after the assertion of $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ with appropriate setup to the falling edge of 2X_PCLK.

8.2.11.3 Bus Phase ($\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$)—Input

The bus phase ($\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$) signal is input only on the 601. This input determines, in conjunction with $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ and 2X_PCLK, the transition timing for the 601 bus interface. While all timing is derived from the rising edge of the 2X_PCLK input, the two phase inputs qualify the edge on which the processor and bus interface sequential logic can proceed. Inputs are sampled and outputs are driven with the qualified rising edge of the 2X_PCLK input (see Figure 8-4).

Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the $\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$ signal.

State Meaning Asserted— Indicates that the 601 must use the rising edge of the internal processor clock to sample and drive the bus interface.

Negated—Indicates that the 601 outputs must not change state, and the inputs will not be sampled. This signal can be treated as a synchronous enable for the bus clock cycle clock.

Timing Comments Assertion/Negation—With appropriate setup and hold time to the 2X_PCLK provided the rising edge of the internal processor clock coincides with the 2X_PCLK.

Figure 8-4 through Figure 8-8 illustrate how the 601 clocking signals can be used to generate a logical bus clock. Note that the resulting logical bus clock is represented as an arrow coincident with the rising edge of the resulting signal. It should not be inferred that the duty cycle of the bus clock signal is 50 percent.

Figure 8-4 shows how the clock inputs can be used to control the 601. Note that the signal IN is the output of the inverter shown in Figure 8-3.

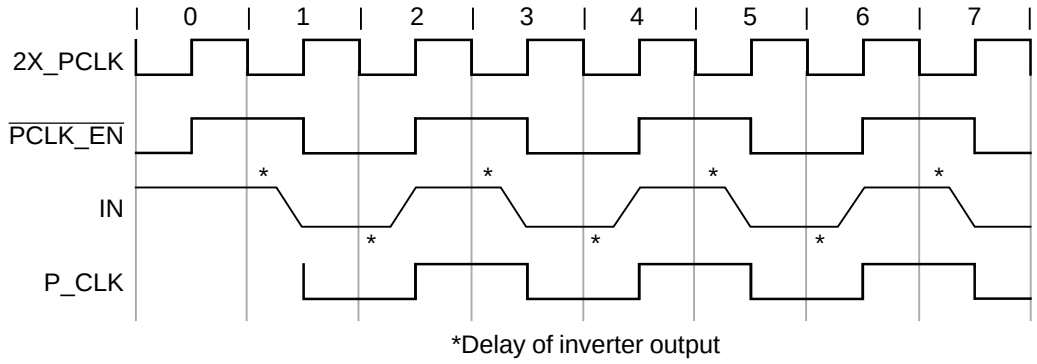


Figure 8-4. Generation of Internal Clock (P_CLK)

Figure 8-5 shows a simple 601 clock implementation with the frequency of the logical bus clock equal to that of the P_CLK.

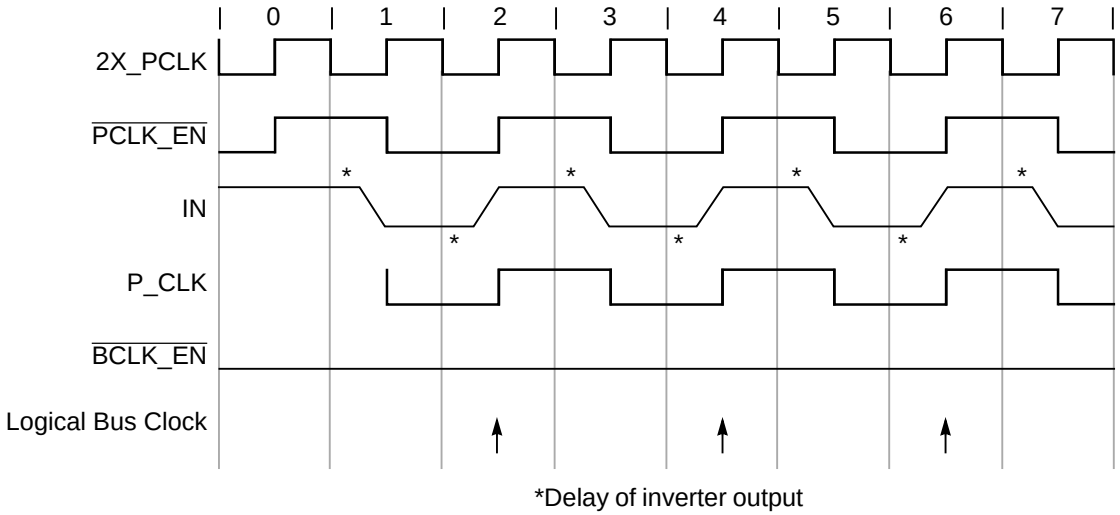


Figure 8-5. Generation of Bus Transitions—Logical Bus Clock = P_CLK

Figure 8-6 shows the generation of the logical bus clock at one-half the frequency of the P_CLK.

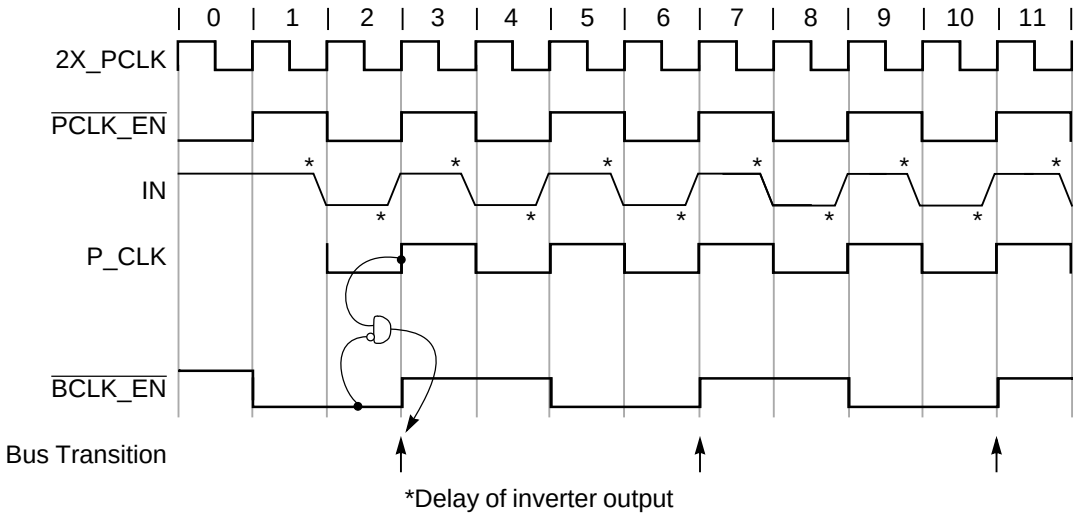


Figure 8-6. Generation of Bus Transitions—Logical Bus Clock = 1/2 P_CLK

Figure 8-7 shows the generation of the logical bus clock at one-third the frequency of the P_CLK.

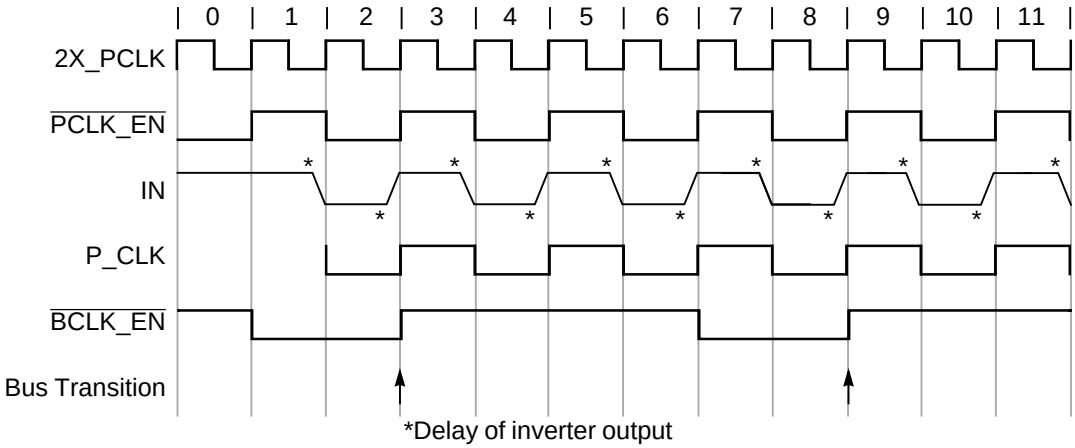


Figure 8-7. Generation of Bus Transitions—Logical Bus Clock=1/3 P_CLK

Figure 8-8 shows how the PCLK_EN signal can be manipulated to perform cycle stretching on the 601.

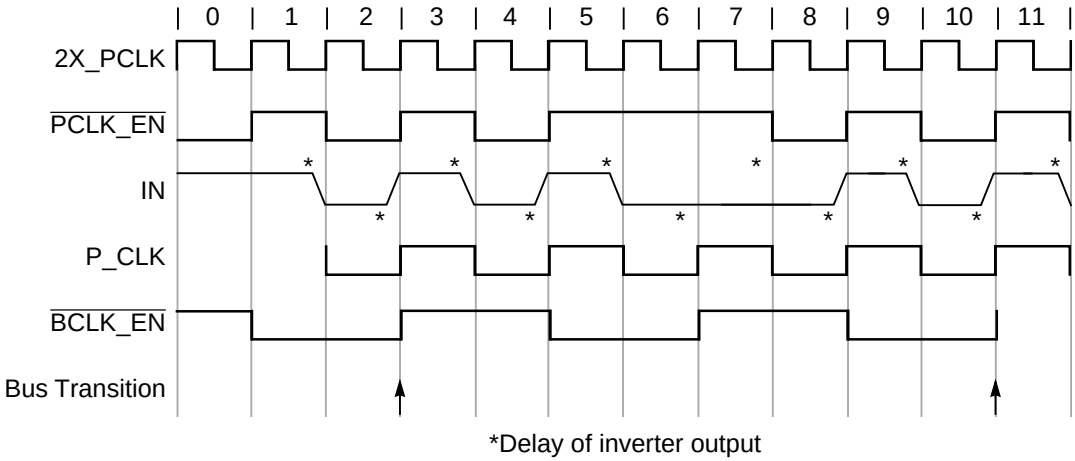


Figure 8-8. Generation of Bus Transitions—Cycle Stretching

In this document, processor clock refers to the internal P_CLOCK signal; bus clock refers to the clock that causes the bus transitions.

Figure 8-5 and Figure 8-6 show two examples of the generation of bus transitions. In the first example, $\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$ is grounded (always asserted) and the bus clock period is equivalent to the P_CLOCK cycle period. In the second example, the $\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$ input is driven by a clock switching at $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$/2 frequency. This allows the 601 bus interface to run at half the frequency of the CPU P_CLOCK, easing system design constraints. Note that the $\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$ input can be divided further (with respect to $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$), allowing an even greater ratio between the clock- and bus-cycle frequencies.

To operate the bus interface slower than P_CLOCK/2, $\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$ must be asserted only for the intended P_CLOCK window (for example, the duty cycle can be skewed such that the bus logic increments only once during each assertion of $\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$).

8.2.11.4 Real-Time Clock (RTC)—Input

The real-time clock (RTC) signal is input only on the 601, and should be driven by a 7.8125 MHz oscillator. Following are the state meaning and timing comments for the RTC signal.

State Meaning Rising edge—Increments the real-time clock in the 601.

Timing Comments Duty cycle—See the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications*.

8.3 Clocking in a Multiprocessor System

Clocking in a multiprocessor system adds a level of complexity. The 601 defines the AC timing specifications for the chip inputs and outputs to allow for a reasonable amount of system-level skew and still allow the chip to meet its timing goals. These timing specifications can be found in the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications*.

Chapter 9
System Interface Operation

This section describes the PowerPC 601 microprocessor bus interface and its operation. It shows how the 601 signals, defined in Chapter 8, “Signal Descriptions,” interact to perform address and data transfers.

9.1 PowerPC 601 Microprocessor System Interface Overview

The system interface performs external accesses for loading and storing data and fetching instructions.

Instructions are automatically fetched from the memory system into the instruction unit where they are dispatched to the execution units at a maximum rate of three instructions per clock. Conversely, load and store instructions explicitly specify the movement of operands to and from the integer and floating-point register files and the memory system.

When the 601 encounters an instruction or data access, it calculates the logical address (effective address) and uses the low-order address bits to check for a hit in the on-chip, 32-Kbyte cache. Operation of the cache is described in Section 9.1.1, “Operation of the On-Chip Cache.” During the cache lookup, the memory management unit (MMU) uses the upper-order address bits to calculate the virtual address, from which it calculates the physical address. The physical address bits are then compared with the corresponding cache tag bits to determine if a cache hit occurred. If the access misses in the cache, the physical address is used to access system memory.

In addition to the loads, stores, and instruction fetches, the 601 performs other read and write operations for table searches, cache cast-out operations when least-recently used sectors are written to memory after a cache miss, and cache-sector snoop push-out operations when a modified sector experiences a snoop hit from another bus master.

All read and write operations are handled by the memory unit, which consists of a two-element read queue that holds addresses for read operations, and a three-element write queue that contains addresses and data for write operations. To maintain coherency, the queues are included in snooping. The interface allows one level of pipelining; that is, with certain restrictions discussed later, there can be two outstanding transactions at any given

time. Accesses are prioritized. The operation of the memory unit is described in Section 9.1.2, “Operation of the Memory Unit for Loads and Stores.”

Figure 9-1 shows the address path from the execution units and instruction fetcher, through the translation logic to the cache and system interface logic.

The 601 uses separate address and data buses and a variety of control and status signals for performing reads and writes. The address bus is 32 bits wide and the data bus is 64 bits wide. The interface is synchronous—all timing is derived from the start of the bus cycle. All 601 inputs are sampled at and all outputs are driven from this edge. The bus can run at the full processor-clock frequency or at an integer division of the processor-clock speed. The 601 provides a TTL-compatible interface.

9.1.1 Operation of the On-Chip Cache

The 601’s cache is a combined instruction and data (or unified) cache. It is a physically-addressed, virtually-indexed, 32-Kbyte cache with eight-way set associativity. The cache consists of eight sets of 128 sectors. Each 16-word cache line consists of two 8-word sectors. Both sectors share the same line address tag. Cache coherency, however, is maintained for each sector, so there are separate coherency state bits for each sector. If one sector of the line is filled from memory, the 601 attempts to load the other sector as a low-priority bus operation. There is no guarantee that the other sector will be loaded.

Because the cache on the 601 is an on-chip, write-back primary cache, the predominant type of transaction for most applications is burst-read memory operations, followed by burst-write memory operations, I/O controller interface operations, and single-beat (noncacheable or write-through) memory read and write operations. Additionally, there can be address-only operations, variants of the burst and single-beat operations (global memory operations that are snooped, and atomic memory operations, for example), and address retry activity (for example, when a snooped read access hits a modified line in the cache).

The cache tag directory has one address port dedicated to instruction fetch and load/store accesses and one dedicated to snooping transactions on the system interface. Therefore, snooping does not require additional clock cycles unless a snoop hit that requires a cache status update occurs.

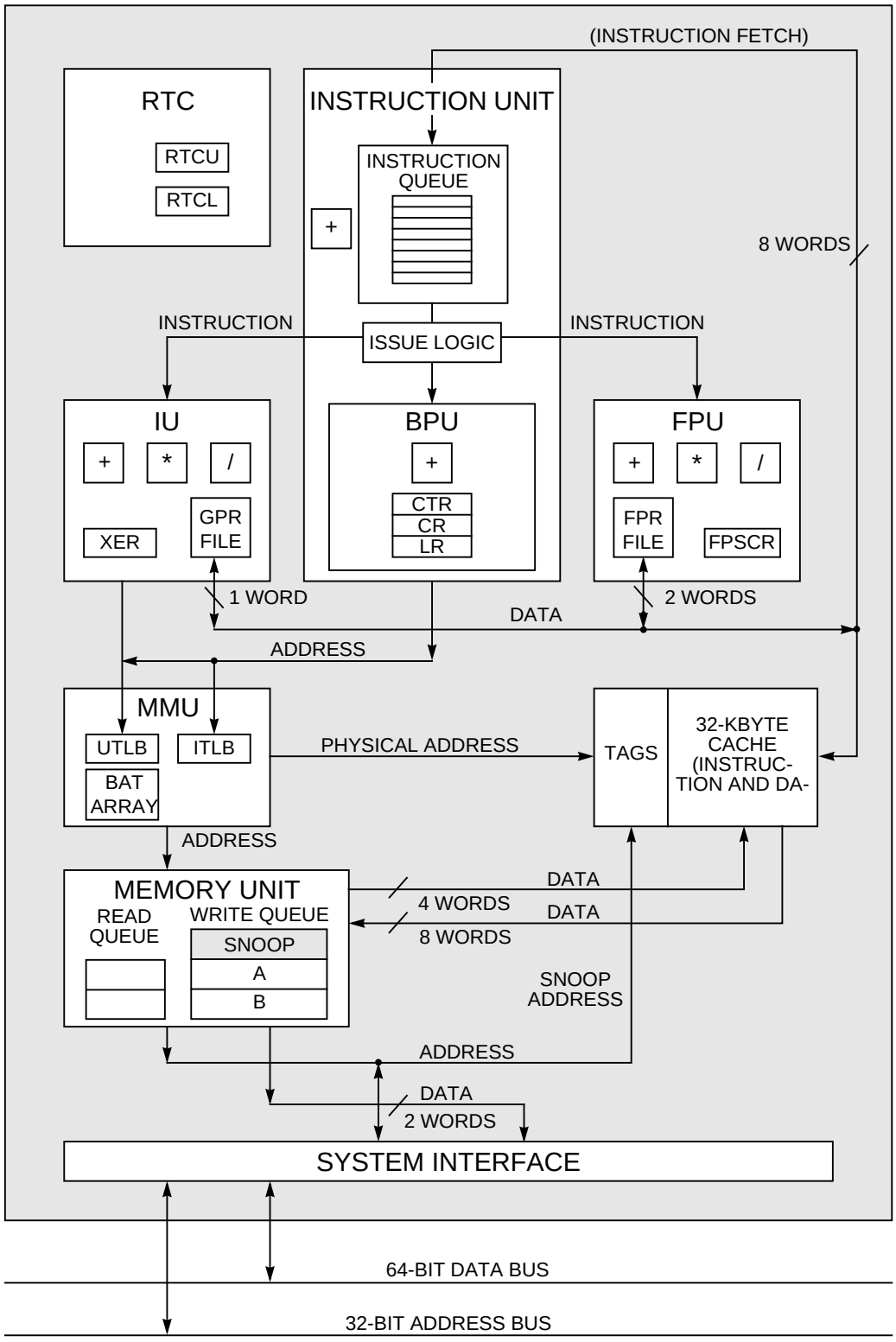


Figure 9-1. PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Block Diagram

9.1.2 Operation of the Memory Unit for Loads and Stores

As shown in Figure 9-1, the memory unit includes two read-queue elements and three write-queue elements. The read queue buffers are used for holding addresses for read operations; the write queue buffers are used for holding addresses and data for write operations and to support such features as address pipelining, snooping, and write buffering, described as follows:

- The two read-queue elements allow the system interface logic to buffer as many as two outstanding read operations. There are two restrictions that apply to filling the two read-queue elements described as follows:
  - — There cannot be two outstanding load operations.
  - — There cannot be two outstanding read-with-intent-to-modify instructions.
- Note that when a read miss causes the cache to be updated, only the sector with the required data is guaranteed to be updated. The other sector can be updated only if both read-queue elements are free. The update of the other sector can be disabled by setting bits in the HID0 register. HID0[DRF], bit 26, can be used to disable fetches and HID0[DRL], bit 27, can be used to disable loads and stores.
- Two of the three write-queue elements, marked “A” and “B” in Figure 9-1, are buffers for write operations. They buffer store operations and sectors that are written back to memory such as when a cache location is updated after a cache miss. This allows the cache to be updated before the replaced sector is written back to system memory. Write-queue elements A or B will be used for snoop push operations if high-priority copyback is not enabled.
- The third queue element, marked “snoop” in Figure 9-1, has two modes of operation. The default mode provides high-priority copy-back operations that result from snoop hits to modified data (cache-sector snoop push-out operations while a read operation is pending on the bus). Snoop hits to modified data create a high-priority store operation that allows the processor to become bus master to store the modified data to memory, where it in turn is read by the snooping device. The override mode uses the $\overline{\text{HP\_SNP\_REQ}}$ signal to determine if the snoop queue is to be used. This mode is enabled by setting HID0[31].

9.1.3 Operation of the System Interface

Memory accesses can occur in single-beat (1–8 bytes) and four-beat burst (32 bytes) data transfers. The address and data buses are independent for memory accesses to support pipelining and split transactions. The 601 can pipeline as many as two transactions and has limited support for out-of-order split-bus transactions.

Access to the system interface is granted through an external arbitration mechanism that allows devices to compete for bus mastership. This arbitration mechanism is flexible, allowing the 601 to be integrated into systems that implement various fairness and bus parking procedures to avoid arbitration overhead. Additional multiprocessor support is provided through coherency mechanisms that provide snooping, external control of the on-

chip cache and TLB, and support for a secondary cache. Multiprocessor software support is provided through the use of atomic memory operations.

Typically, memory accesses are weakly ordered—sequences of operations, including load/store string and multiple instructions, do not necessarily complete in the order they begin—maximizing the efficiency of the bus without sacrificing coherency of the data. The 601 allows read operations to precede store operations (except when a dependency exists, of course). In addition, the 601 can be configured to reorder high priority write operations ahead of lower priority store operations. Because the processor can dynamically optimize run-time ordering of load/store traffic, overall performance is improved.

Note that the Synchronize (**sync**) or Enforce In-Order Execution of I/O (**eieio**) instruction can be used to enforce strong ordering.

The following sections describe how the 601 interface operates, providing detailed timing diagrams that illustrate how the signals interact. A collection of more general timing diagrams are included as examples of typical bus operations.

Figure 9-2 is a legend of the conventions used in the timing diagrams.

This is a synchronous interface—all 601 input signals except the $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ signals are sampled relative to the start of the bus clock cycle. Outputs are driven off the start of the bus cycle (see the *PowerPC 601 RISC Microprocessor Hardware Specifications* for exact timing information).

9.1.4 I/O Controller Interface Accesses

In addition to supporting memory-mapped I/O with the high-performance memory interface, the 601 also implements the I/O controller interface protocol for compatibility with certain external devices. Memory and I/O controller interface accesses use the 601 signals differently.

The 601 defines separate memory and I/O address spaces, or segments, distinguished by the segment register T bit in the address translation logic of the 601. If the T-bit is cleared, the memory reference is a normal memory access and can use the virtual memory management hardware of the 601. If the T-bit is set, the memory reference is an I/O controller interface access.

The function and timing of some address transfer and attribute signals (such as TT0–TT3, $\overline{\text{TBST}}$, and TSIZ0–TSIZ2) are changed for I/O controller interface accesses. Additional controls are required to facilitate transfers between the 601 and intelligent I/O devices. I/O controller interface and memory transfers are distinguished from one another by their address transfer start signals—$\overline{\text{TS}}$ indicates that a memory transfer is starting and $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ indicates that an I/O controller interface transaction is starting.

Unlike memory accesses, I/O controller interface accesses cannot be pipelined and must be strongly ordered—each access occurs in strict program order and completes before another

access can begin. For this reason, I/O controller interface accesses are less efficient than memory accesses. The I/O extensions also allow for additional bus pacing and multiple transaction operations for variably-sized data transfers (1 to 128 bytes), and they support a tagged, split request/response protocol. The I/O controller interface access protocol also requires the slave device to function as a bus master.

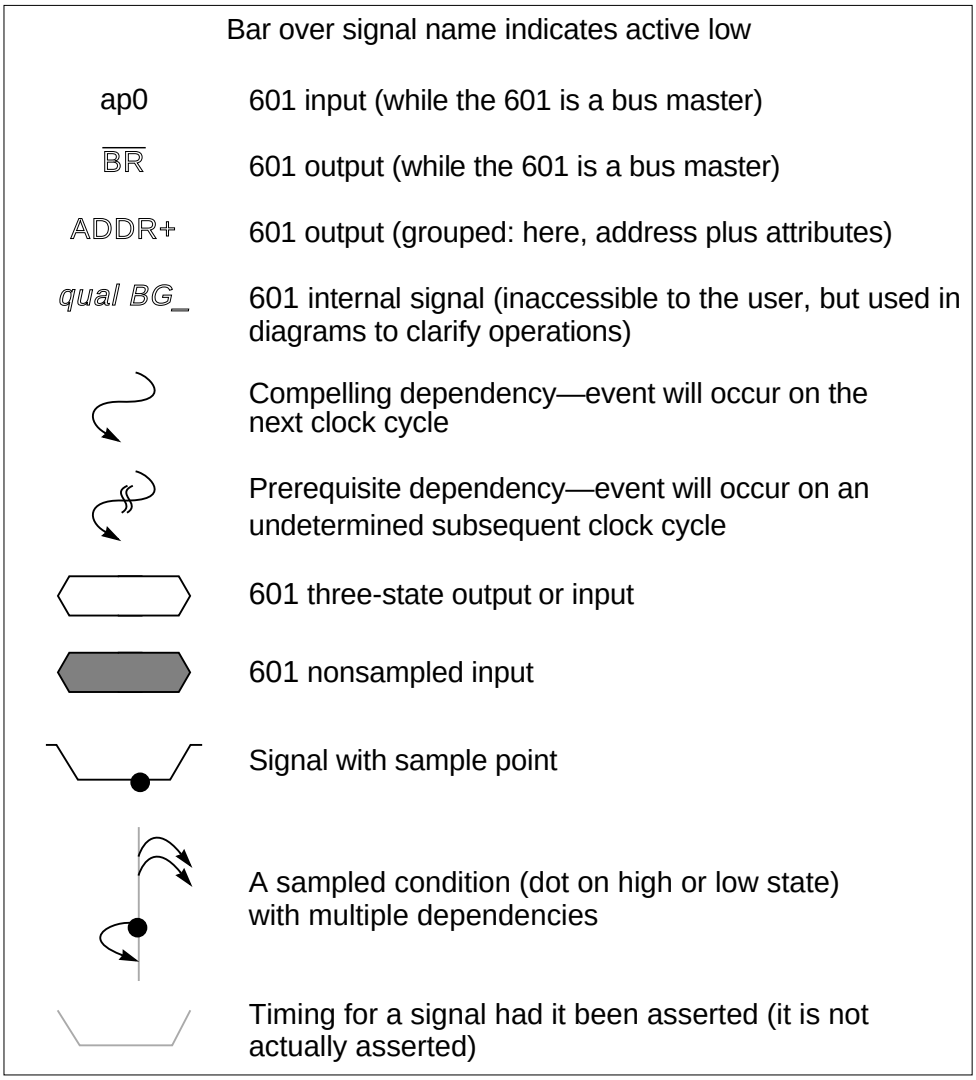


Figure 9-2. Timing Diagram Legend

9.2 Memory Access Protocol

Memory accesses are divided into address and data tenures. Each tenure has three phases—bus arbitration, transfer, and termination. The 601 also supports address-only transactions. Note that address and data tenures can overlap, as shown in Figure 9-3.

Figure 9-3 shows that the address and data tenures are distinct from one another and that both consist of three phases—arbitration, transfer, and termination. Address and data

tenures are independent (indicated in Figure 9-3 by the fact that the data tenure begins before the address tenure ends), which allows split-bus transactions to be implemented at the system level in multiprocessor systems. Figure 9-3 shows a data transfer that consists of a single-beat transfer of as many as 64 bits. Four-beat burst transfers of 32-byte cache sectors require data transfer termination signals for each beat of data.

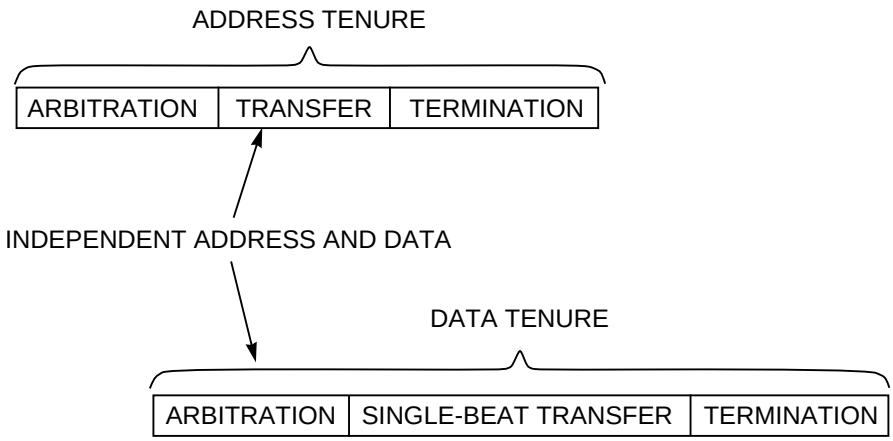


Figure 9-3. Overlapping Tenures on the PowerPC 601 Microprocessor Bus for a Single-Beat Transfer

The basic functions of the address and data tenures are as follows:

- Address tenure
  - — Arbitration: During arbitration, address bus arbitration signals are used to gain mastership of the address bus.
  - — Transfer: After the 601 is the address bus master, it transfers the address on the address bus. The address signals and the transfer attribute signals control the address transfer. The address parity and address parity error signals ensure the integrity of the address transfer.
  - — Termination: After the address transfer, the system signals that the address tenure is complete or that it must be repeated.
- Data tenure
  - — Arbitration: To begin the data tenure, the 601 arbitrates for mastership of the data bus.
  - — Transfer: After the 601 is the data bus master, it samples the data bus for read operations or drives the data bus for write operations. The data parity and data parity error signals ensure the integrity of the data transfer.
  - — Termination: Data termination signals are required after each data beat in a data transfer. Note that in a single-beat transaction, the data termination signals also indicate the end of the tenure, while in burst accesses, the data termination signals apply to individual beats and indicate the end of the tenure only after the final data beat.

The 601 bus supports address-only transfers, which use only the address bus, with no data transfer involved. This is useful in multiprocessor environments where external control of on-chip primary caches and TLB entries is desirable. Additionally, the 601's retry capability provides an efficient snooping protocol for systems with multiple memory systems (including caches) that must remain coherent.

9.2.1 Arbitration Signals

Arbitration for both address and data bus mastership in a multiprocessor system is performed by a central, external arbiter and, minimally, by the arbitration signals shown in Section 8.2.1, "Address Bus Arbitration Signals." Most arbiter implementations require additional signals to coordinate bus master/slave/snooping activities. Note that address bus busy ($\overline{\text{ABB}}$) and data bus busy ($\overline{\text{DBB}}$) are bidirectional signals. These signals are inputs unless the 601 has mastership of one or both of the respective buses; they must be connected high through pull-up resistors so that they remain negated when no devices have control of the buses.

The following list describes the address arbitration signals:

- **$\overline{\text{BR}}$ (bus request)**—Assertion indicates that the 601 is requesting mastership of the address bus.
- **$\overline{\text{BG}}$ (bus grant)**—Assertion indicates that the 601 may, with the proper qualification, assume mastership of the address bus. A qualified bus grant occurs when $\overline{\text{BG}}$ is asserted and $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ are negated.

  If the 601 is parked, $\overline{\text{BR}}$ need not be asserted for the qualified bus grant.
- **$\overline{\text{ABB}}$ (address bus busy)**— Assertion indicates that the 601 is the address bus master.

The following list describes the data arbitration signals:

- **$\overline{\text{DBG}}$ (data bus grant**)—Indicates that the 601 may, with the proper qualification, assume mastership of the data bus. A qualified data bus grant occurs when $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ is asserted while $\overline{\text{DBB}}$, $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$, and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ are negated.

  $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ signal is driven by the current bus master, $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is only driven from the bus, and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is from the bus, but only for the address bus tenure associated with the current data bus tenure (that is, not from another address tenure).
- **$\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ (data bus write only**)—Assertion indicates that the 601 may run the data bus tenure for an outstanding write address even if a read address is pipelined before the write address. If $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ is asserted, the 601 only assumes data bus mastership for a pending data bus write operation (that is, the 601 does not take the data bus for a pending read operation if this input is asserted along with $\overline{\text{DBG}}$). Care must be taken with $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ to ensure the desired write is queued (for example, a cache-sector snoop push-out operation).

- **$\overline{\text{DBB}}$ (data bus busy)**—Assertion indicates that the 601 is the data bus master. The 601 always assumes data bus mastership if it needs the data bus and is given a qualified data bus grant (see $\overline{\text{DBG}}$).

  For more detailed information on the arbitration signals, refer to Section 8.2.1, “Address Bus Arbitration Signals,” and Section 8.2.6, “Data Bus Arbitration Signals.”

9.2.2 Address Pipelining and Split-Bus Transactions

The 601 protocol provides independent address and data bus capability to support pipelined and split-bus transaction system organizations. Address pipelining allows a new bus transaction to begin before the current transaction has finished. Split-bus transaction capability allows the address bus and data bus to have different masters at the same time.

While this capability does not inherently reduce memory latency, support for address pipelining and split-bus transactions can greatly improve effective bus/memory throughput. For this reason, these techniques are most effective in shared-memory multiprocessor implementations where bus bandwidth is an important measurement of system performance.

External arbitration is required in systems in which multiple devices must compete for the system bus. The design of the external arbiter affects pipelining by regulating address bus grant ($\overline{\text{BG}}$), data bus grant ($\overline{\text{DBG}}$), and $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ signals. For example, a one-level pipeline is enabled by asserting $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ to the current address bus master and granting mastership of the address bus to the next requesting master before the current data bus tenure has completed. Two address tenures can occur before the current data bus tenure completes.

The 601 can pipeline its own transactions to a depth of one level (intraprocessor pipelining); however, the 601 bus protocol does not constrain the maximum number of levels of pipelining that can occur on the bus between multiple masters (interprocessor pipelining). The external arbiter must control the pipeline depth and synchronization between masters and slaves.

In a pipelined implementation, data bus tenures are kept in strict order with respect to address tenures. However, external hardware can further decouple the address and data buses, allowing the data tenures to occur out of order with respect to the address tenures. This requires some form of system tag to associate the out-of-order data transaction with the proper originating address transaction (not defined for the 601 interface). Individual bus requests and data bus grants from each processor can be used by the system to implement tags to support interprocessor, out-of-order transactions.

The 601 supports a limited intraprocessor out-of-order, split-transaction capability via the data bus write only ($\overline{\text{DBWO}}$) signal. For more information about using $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$, see Section 9.10, “Using $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$)—(Data Bus Write Only).”

9.3 Address Bus Tenure

This section describes the three phases of the address tenure—address bus arbitration, address transfer, and address termination.

9.3.1 Address Bus Arbitration

When the 601 needs access to the external bus and it is not parked ($\overline{BG}$ is negated), it asserts bus request ($\overline{BR}$) until it is granted mastership of the bus and the bus is available (see Figure 9-4). The external arbiter must grant master-elect status to the potential master by asserting the bus grant ($\overline{BG}$) signal. The 601 requesting the bus determines that the bus is available when the $\overline{ABB}$ input is negated. When the address bus is not busy ($\overline{ABB}$ input is negated), $\overline{BG}$ is asserted and the address retry ($\overline{ARTRY}$) input is negated. This is referred to as a qualified bus grant. The potential master assumes address bus mastership by asserting $\overline{ABB}$ when it receives a qualified bus grant.

The 601 also provides an internally generated address bus busy signal, which it logically ORs with the $\overline{ABB}$ signal received off of the bus. This internal address bus busy signal is asserted with any $\overline{TS}$ or $\overline{XATS}$ signal and is negated with a valid $\overline{AACK}$. This internally generated address bus busy signal is useful in systems that do not use $\overline{ABB}$.

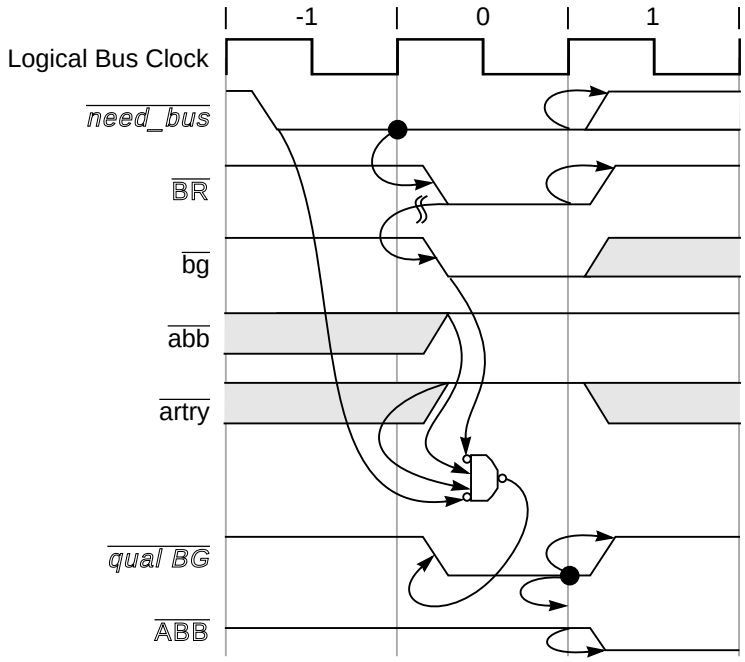


Figure 9-4. Address Bus Arbitration

External arbiters must allow only one device at a time to be address bus master. In implementations in which no other device can be a master, $\overline{BG}$ can be grounded (always asserted) to continually grant mastership of the address bus to the 601.

If the 601 asserts $\overline{BR}$ before the external arbiter asserts $\overline{BG}$, the 601 is considered to be unparked, as shown in Figure 9-4. Figure 9-5 shows the parked case, where a qualified bus grant exists on the clock edge following a need_bus condition. Notice that the bus clock cycle required for arbitration is eliminated if the 601 is parked, reducing overall memory latency for a transaction. The 601 always negates $\overline{ABB}$ for at least one bus clock cycle after $\overline{AACK}$ is asserted, even if it is parked and has another transaction pending.

Typically, bus parking is provided to the device that was the most recent bus master; however, system designers may choose other schemes, such as providing unrequested bus grants in situations where it is easy to correctly predict the next device requesting bus mastership.

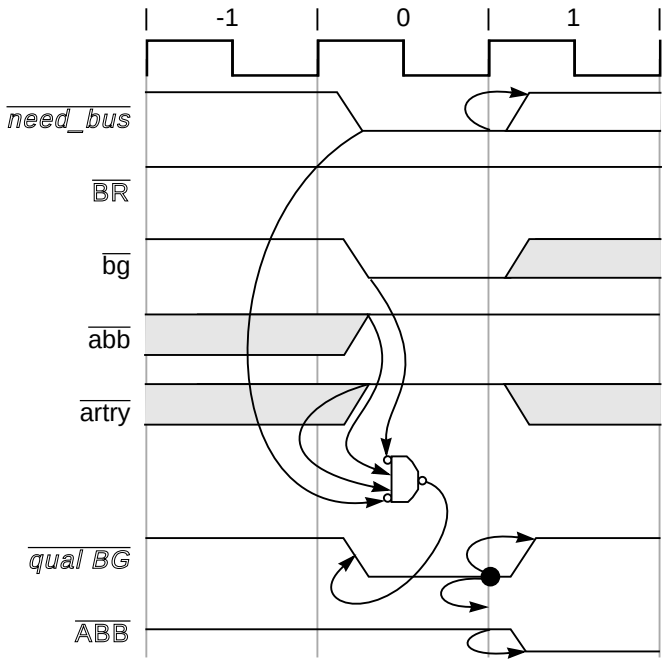


Figure 9-5. Address Bus Arbitration Showing Bus Parking

When the 601 receives a qualified bus grant, it assumes address bus mastership by asserting $\overline{ABB}$ and negating the $\overline{BR}$ output signal. Meanwhile, the 601 drives the address for the requested access onto the address bus and asserts $\overline{TS}$ to indicate the start of a new transaction.

When designing external bus arbitration logic, note that the 601 may assert $\overline{BR}$ without using the bus after it receives the qualified bus grant. For example, in a system using bus snooping, if the 601 asserts $\overline{BR}$ to perform a replacement copy-back operation, another device can invalidate that sector before the 601 is granted mastership of the bus. Once the 601 is granted the bus, it no longer needs to perform the copy-back operation; therefore, the 601 does not assert $\overline{ABB}$ and does not use the bus for the copy-back operation. Note that the 601 asserts $\overline{BR}$ for at least one clock cycle in these instances.

9.3.2 Address Transfer

During the address transfer, the physical address and all attributes of the transaction are transferred from the bus master to the slave device(s). Snooping logic may monitor the transfer to enforce cache coherency (see discussion about snooping in Section 9.3.3, “Address Transfer Termination”). The signals used in the address transfer include the following signal groups (see Figure 8-1):

- Address transfer start signal: Transfer start ($\overline{TS}$)

  Note that extended address transfer start ($\overline{XATS}$) is used for I/O controller interface operations and has no function for memory accesses. See Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations.”
- Address transfer signals: Address bus (A0–A31), address parity (AP0–AP3), and address parity error ($\overline{APE}$)
- Address transfer attribute signals: Transfer type (TT0–TT4), transfer code (TC0–TC3), transfer size (TSIZ0–TSIZ2), transfer burst ($\overline{TBST}$), cache inhibit ($\overline{CI}$), write-through ($\overline{WT}$), global ($\overline{GBL}$), and cache set element (CSE0–CSE2)

Figure 9-6 shows that the timing for all of these signals, except $\overline{TS}$ and $\overline{APE}$, is identical. All of the address transfer and address transfer attribute signals are combined into the ADDR+ grouping in Figure 9-6. The $\overline{TS}$ signal indicates that the 601 has begun an address transfer and that the address and transfer attributes are valid (within the context of a synchronous bus). The 601 always asserts $\overline{TS}$ (or $\overline{XATS}$ for I/O controller interface operations) coincident with $\overline{ABB}$. As an input, $\overline{TS}$ need not coincide with the assertion of $\overline{ABB}$ on the bus (that is, either $\overline{TS}$ or $\overline{XATS}$ can be asserted with, or on, a subsequent clock cycle after $\overline{ABB}$ is asserted; the 601 tracks this transaction correctly).

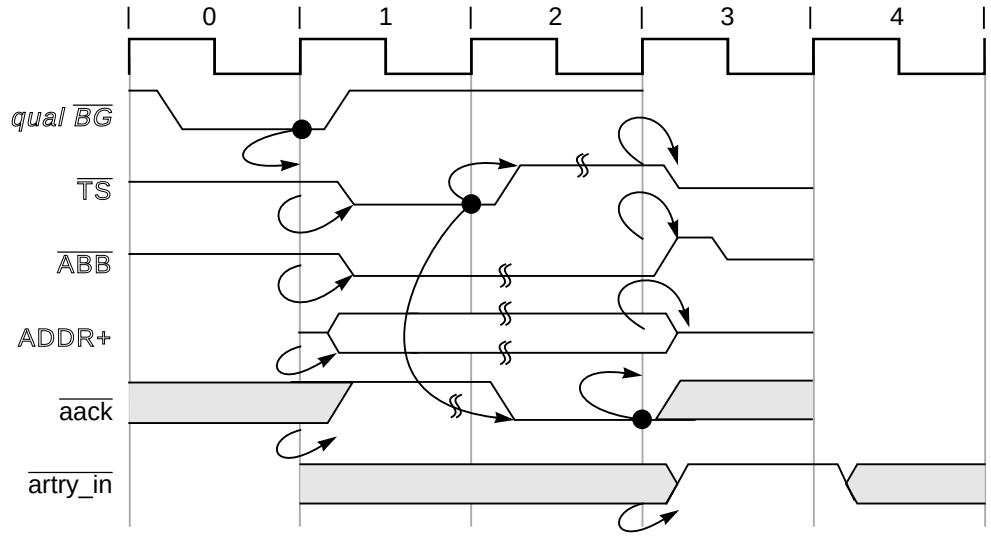


Figure 9-6. Address Bus Transfer

In Figure 9-6, the address transfer occurs during bus clock cycles 1 and 2 (arbitration occurs in bus clock cycle 0 and the address transfer is terminated in bus clock 3). In this diagram, the address bus termination input, $\overline{\text{AACK}}$, is asserted to the 601 on the bus clock following assertion of $\overline{\text{TS}}$ (as shown by the dependency line). This is the minimum duration of the address transfer for the 601; the duration can be extended by delaying the assertion of $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ for one or more bus clocks.

9.3.2.1 Address Bus Parity

The 601 always generates one bit of correct odd-byte parity for each of the four bytes of address when a valid address is on the bus. The calculated values are placed on the AP0–AP3 outputs when the 601 is the address bus master. If the 601 is not the master and $\overline{\text{TS}}$ and $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ are asserted together (qualified condition for snooping memory operations), the calculated values are compared with the AP0–AP3 inputs. If there is an error, the $\overline{\text{APE}}$ output is asserted. An address bus parity error causes a checkstop condition if the bus parity checkstop source is enabled in HID0. For more information, see Chapter 5, “Exceptions.”

9.3.2.2 Address Transfer Attribute Signals

The transfer attribute signals include several encoded signals such as the transfer type (TT0–TT4) signals, transfer burst ($\overline{\text{TBST}}$) signal, transfer size (TSIZ0–TSIZ2) signals, and transfer code (TC0–TC1) signals. Section 8.2.4, “Address Transfer Attribute Signals,” describes the encodings for the address transfer attribute signals. Note that TT0–TT4, $\overline{\text{TBST}}$, and TSIZ0–TSIZ2 have alternate functions for I/O controller interface operations (see Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations).”

9.3.2.2.1 Transfer Type (TT0–TT4) Signals

Snooping logic should fully decode the transfer type signals if the $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ signal is asserted. Slave devices can use the individual transfer type signals without fully decoding the group. The transfer type signals generally have the following individual functions:

- **TT0**—Special operations: This signal is asserted by the 601 whenever a bus transaction occurs in response to a **lwarx**/**stwcx**. (Load Word and Reserve Indexed/Store Word Conditional Indexed) instruction pair (see Chapter 3, “Addressing Modes and Instruction Set Summary”), an **eciwx** or **ecowx** instruction, or for a Translation Lookaside Buffer Invalidate Entry (**tlbie**) operation.
- **TT1**—Read (/write) operations: The TT1 signal indicates whether the transaction is a read (TT1 high) or a write (TT1 low) transaction. This is valid for transactions that are not address only.
- **TT2**—Invalidate operations: When asserted with $\overline{\text{GBL}}$, the TT2 output signal indicates that all other caches in the system should invalidate the cache entry on a snoop hit. If the snoop hit is to a modified entry, the sector should be copied back before being invalidated.
- **TT3**—Memory (/address-only) operations: Except for **eciwx** or **ecowx** instructions (TT0–TT3 encodings 1010 or 1110) the TT3 signal, when asserted, indicates that the associated data transfer is to/from memory and that use of the data bus will be

required in order for the transaction to complete. External logic can synthesize the data bus request from the combination of $\overline{TS}$ (or $\overline{XATS}$) and TT3 (DBR=TS&TT3). If TT3 is not asserted with the address, the associated bus transaction is considered to be a broadcast operation that all bus participants must honor (or a reserved operation). This is an address-only transaction; the 601 does not need and will not acquire data bus ownership, even if it receives a qualified data bus grant. Figure 9-7 shows an address-only transaction. On the start of bus cycle 2, TT3 is not asserted; therefore, the data bus will not be needed.

- **TT4**—The TT4 signal is reserved for future expansion.

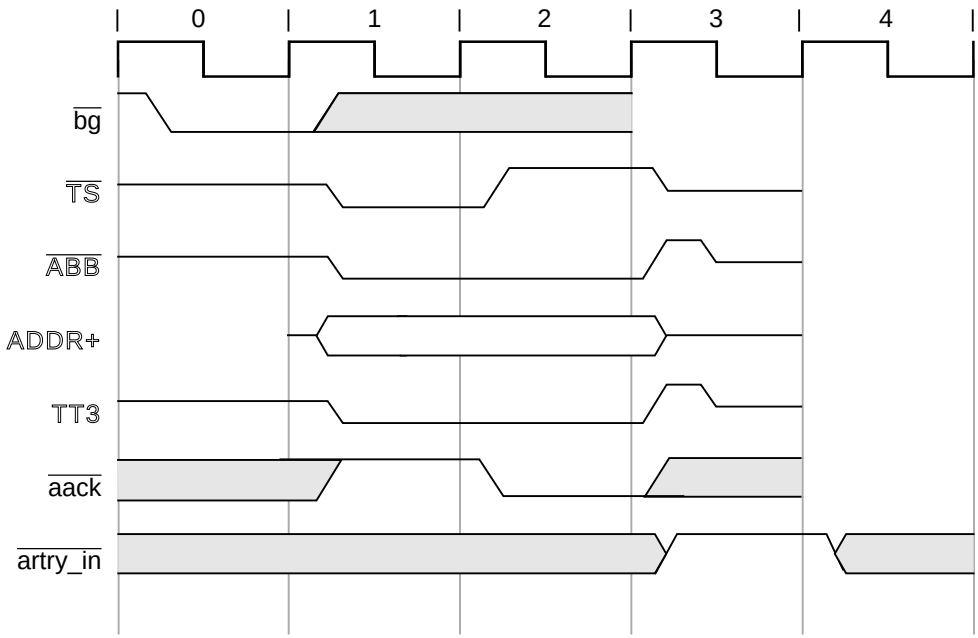


Figure 9-7. Address-Only Bus Transaction

9.3.2.2.2 Transfer Size (TSIZ0–TSIZ2) Signals

The transfer size signals (TSIZ0–TSIZ2) indicate the size of the requested data transfer as shown in Table 9-1. The TSIZ0–TSIZ2 signals may be used along with $\overline{TBST}$ and A29–A31 to determine which portion of the data bus contains valid data for a write transaction or which portion of the bus should contain valid data for a read transaction. Note that for a burst transaction (as indicated by the assertion of $\overline{TBST}$) TSIZ0–TSIZ2 are always set to b'010'. Therefore, if the $\overline{TBST}$ signal is asserted, the memory system should transfer a total of eight words (32 bytes), regardless of the TSIZ0–TSIZ2 encoding.

Table 9-1. Transfer Size Signal Encodings

$\overline{\text{TBST}}$	TSIZ0	TSIZ1	TSIZ2	Transfer Size
Asserted	0	1	0	Eight-word burst
Negated	0	0	0	Eight bytes
Negated	0	0	1	One byte
Negated	0	1	0	Two bytes
Negated	0	1	1	Three bytes
Negated	1	0	0	Four bytes
Negated	1	0	1	Five bytes
Negated	1	1	0	Six bytes
Negated	1	1	1	Seven bytes

The basic coherency size of the bus is defined to be 32 bytes (corresponding to one cache sector). Data transfers that cross an aligned, 32-byte boundary either must present a new address onto the bus at that boundary (for coherency consideration) or must operate as noncoherent data with respect to the 601.

9.3.2.3 Effect of Alignment in Data Transfers

Table 9-2 lists the aligned transfers that can occur on the 601 bus. These are transfers in which the data is aligned to an address that is an integer multiple of the size of the data. For example, Table 9-2 shows that one-byte data is always aligned; however, for a four-byte word to be aligned, it must be oriented on an address that is a multiple of four.

Table 9-2. Aligned Data Transfers

Transfer Size	TSIZ0	TSIZ1	TSIZ2	A29–A31	Data Bus Byte Lane(s)							
					0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Byte	0	0	1	000	√	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	0	0	1	001	—	√	—	—	—	—	—	—
	0	0	1	010	—	—	√	—	—	—	—	—
	0	0	1	011	—	—	—	√	—	—	—	—
	0	0	1	100	—	—	—	—	√	—	—	—
	0	0	1	101	—	—	—	—	—	√	—	—
	0	0	1	110	—	—	—	—	—	—	√	—
	0	0	1	111	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	√
Half word	0	1	0	000	√	√	—	—	—	—	—	—
	0	1	0	010	—	—	√	√	—	—	—	—
	0	1	0	100	—	—	—	—	√	√	—	—
	0	1	0	110	—	—	—	—	—	—	√	√
Word	1	0	0	000	√	√	√	√	—	—	—	—
	1	0	0	100	—	—	—	—	√	√	√	√
Double word	0	0	0	000	√	√	√	√	√	√	√	√

Notes:

√ The byte portions of the requested operand that are read or written during that bus transaction.

— These entries are not required and are ignored during read transactions and are driven with undefined data during all write transactions (except noncacheable write transfers, in which data is mirrored on both word lanes if the transfer does not exceed four bytes).

Data bus byte lane 0 corresponds to DH0-DH7, byte lane 7 corresponds to DL24-DL31.

The 601 also supports misaligned memory operations. These transfers address memory that is not aligned to the size of the data being transferred (such as, a word read of an odd byte address). Although most of these operations hit in the primary cache (or generate burst memory operations if they miss), the 601 interface supports misaligned transfers within a double-word (64-bit aligned) boundary, as shown in Table 9-3. Note that the three-byte transfer in Table 9-3 is only one example of misalignment. As long as the attempted transfer does not cross a double-word boundary, the 601 can transfer the data on the misaligned address (for example, a word read from an odd byte-aligned address, or a seven-byte read from an odd byte-aligned address).

An attempt to address data that crosses a double-word boundary requires two bus transfers to access the data. This is illustrated in the last example of a three-byte transfer in Table 9-3. The transfer requires two accesses—the first for the last two bytes of one double-word

address, the second for one byte from the next double-word address. The $\overline{\text{TBST}}$, TSIZ0–TSIZ2, and A29–A31 signals provide enough information to determine the size of the transfer and the data bus byte lanes involved in the misaligned transfer.

Although misaligned transfers are supported, they may degrade performance substantially. In addition to the double-word straddle boundary condition, the address translation logic can generate substantial exception overhead when the microcoded, sequenced, load/store multiple and load/store string instructions access misaligned data. It is strongly recommended that software attempt to align code and data where possible.

Table 9-3. Misaligned Data Transfer (Three-Byte Examples)

Transfer Size	TSIZ(0–2)	A29–A31	Data Bus Byte Lanes							
			0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Three bytes	011	000	A	A	A	—	—	—	—	—
	011	001	—	A	A	A	—	—	—	—
	011	010	—	—	A	A	A	—	—	—
	011	011	—	—	—	A	A	A	—	—
	011	100	—	—	—	—	A	A	A	—
	011	101	—	—	—	—	—	A	A	A
First transfer: two bytes	010	110	—	—	—	—	—	—	A	A
Second transfer: one byte	001	000	A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
First transfer: one byte	001	111	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	A
Second transfer: two bytes	010	000	A	A	—	—	—	—	—	

A: Byte lane used
—: Byte lane not used

9.3.2.3.1 Alignment of External Control Instructions

The size of the data transfer associated with the **eciwx** and **ecowx** instructions is always four bytes. However, if the **eciwx** or **ecowx** instruction is unaligned and crosses a double-word boundary, the 601 will generate two bus operations, each with a size of fewer than four bytes. For the first bus operation, bits A29–A31 will equal bits 29–31 of the effective address of the instruction, which will be b'101', b'110', or b'111'. The size associated with the first bus operation will be 3, 2, or 1 bytes, respectively. For the second bus operation, bits A29–A31 will equal b'000', and the size associated with the operation will be 1, 2, or 3 bytes, respectively. For both operations, TSIZ0–TSIZ2 equal bits 29–31 of the EAR, not the size. The size of the second bus operation cannot be deduced from the operation itself;

the system must determine how many bytes were transferred on the first bus operation to determine the size of the second operation.

Furthermore, the two bus operations associated with such an unaligned external control instruction are not atomic. That is, the 601 may initiate other types of memory operations between the two transfers. Also, the two bus operations associated with an unaligned **ecowx** may be interrupted by an **eciwx** bus operation, and vice versa. The 601 does guarantee that the two operations associated with an unaligned **ecowx** will not be interrupted by another **ecowx** operation; and likewise for **eciwx**.

Because an unaligned external control address is considered a programming error, the system may choose to assert $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ or otherwise cause an exception when an unaligned external control bus operation occurs.

9.3.2.4 Transfer Code (TC0–TC1) Signals

The TC0 and TC1 signals provide supplemental information about the corresponding address. Note that the TC*x* signals can be used with the TT0–TT4 and $\overline{\text{TBST}}$ signals to further define the current transaction. These encodings may be useful for debugging.

The meaning of TC0 depends on whether the current transaction is a read or write operation. On a read operation, TC0 asserted indicates that the transaction is an instruction fetch operation; otherwise, the read operation is a data operation. On a 601 write operation, TC0 asserted indicates that the associated sector is invalidated for a copy-back replacement, a Data Cache Block Flush instruction (**dcbf**), or snoop that causes invalidation (for example a flush or kill). TC0 negated indicates the write is not invalidating any cache sector (for example, write-through or cache-inhibited write operations.)

The TC1 signal is asserted on read and RWITM operations to indicate that a low-priority operation to load the sector adjacent to one that was previously loaded due to a cache miss is queued; therefore, the next bus transaction will likely access the same page of memory. This operation may not be the next transaction if, for instance, a copy-back operation that resulted from a snoop hit is required. Note that TC1 asserted indicates to the memory system the likelihood that the next access is on the same page, but it does not guarantee this will occur because of transfer priorities and the bus traffic/code execution dynamics. TC1 is negated for all write operations on the bus.

Table 9-4 shows the encodings of the TC0 and TC1 signals.

Table 9-4. Transfer Code Signal Encodings

Signal	State	Definition
TC0	Asserted	Bus operation is an instruction fetch Write: Operation is invalidating the cache line in the 601. Kill (address only): Operation is invalidating the cache line in the 601.
	Negated	Bus operation is a data read Write: Operation is not invalidating the cache line in the 601. Kill (address only): Operation is not invalidating the cache line.
TC1	Asserted	The next access is likely to be on same page. A sector has been loaded, and a low-priority load of the adjacent sector is queued.
	Negated	The next access is not likely to be on the next page; an optional low-priority load of an adjacent sector is not queued.

9.3.3 Address Transfer Termination

The 601 does not terminate the address transfer until the $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ (address acknowledge) input is asserted; therefore, the system can extend the address transfer phase by delaying the assertion of $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ to the 601. Although $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ can be asserted as early as the bus clock cycle following $\overline{\text{TS}}$ (see Figure 9-8), to support snooping, address transfers require at least three bus clock cycles to negate and tristate the shared $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ signals with no contention between devices. As shown in Figure 9-8, these signals are asserted for one bus clock cycle, tristated for the next bus clock cycle, driven high for the next 2X_PCLK cycle time, and finally tristated. Note that $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ is asserted for only one bus clock cycle.

Note that precharging of the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ signals during the negation period can be disabled by enabling HID0[29]. After $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ are asserted, they will be three-stated for two bus cycles and the system is responsible for precharging both $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ signals. This allows masters in a system that uses both 3.6-V and 5-V levels to use the same system bus.

The address transfer can be terminated with the requirement to retry if $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is asserted during the bus clock cycle following $\overline{\text{AACK}}$. If $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is asserted in this window, the 601 negates $\overline{\text{BR}}$ in the following bus clock cycle; after that, it attempts to retry the address transfer. By delaying the bus request by one bus clock cycle, the protocol provides an opportunity for the snooping device that asserted the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ to access the bus next, and therefore retry determinacy is possible. In order for the retry determinacy to be guaranteed, however, the external bus arbitration logic must ensure that the snooping device is granted the bus next.

The only valid window for the ARTRY input is the one bus clock cycle following the assertion of AACK. Snooping devices must monitor the assertion of AACK to know when to deassert/tristate ARTRY, as shown in Figure 9-8. The assertion of ARTRY/SHD can be derived in one of the following ways:

- ARTRY/SHD can be asserted on the second clock after TS is asserted.
- ARTRY/SHD can be asserted before AACK is asserted, but is not qualified by the master 601 until the clock after AACK is asserted.

The 601 requires that the first (or only) TA not be asserted before AACK (note that TA can be held off directly by the slave device delaying AACK assertion or indirectly by an external arbiter delaying DBG assertion). This requirement guarantees the relationship between TA and ARTRY/SHD such that, in the case of an address retry, the 601 can purge the data/instructions from its data path queues and waive off the data/instructions before they are forwarded to the cache/CPU.

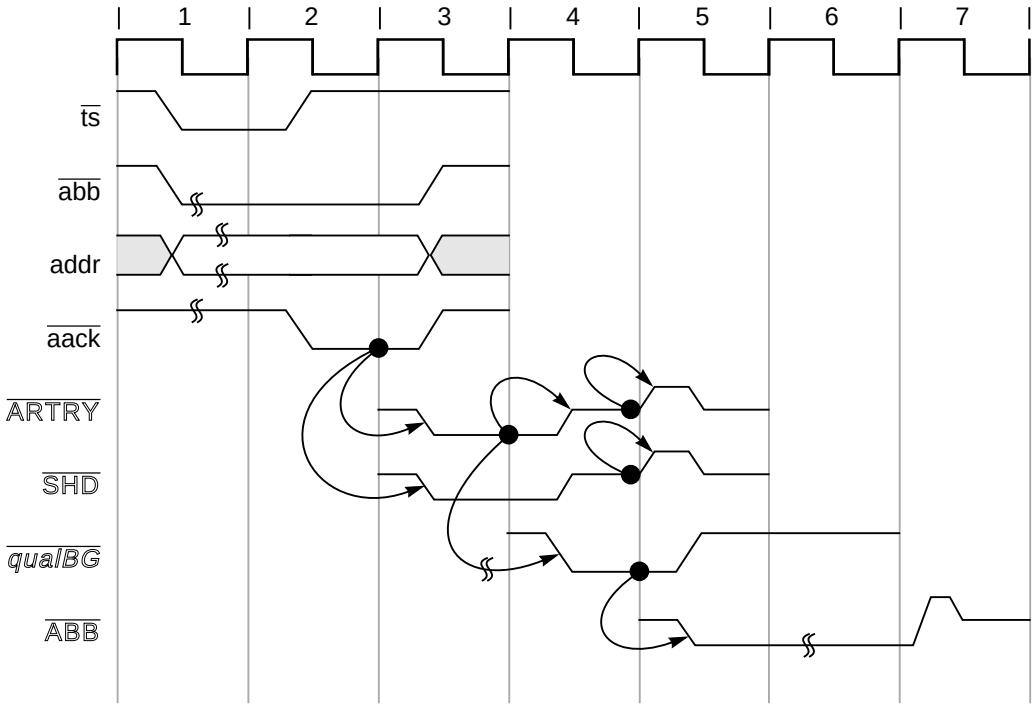


Figure 9-8. Snooped Address Cycle with ARTRY

When the data tenure begins before the address tenure is complete, if the 601 has asserted DBB, assertion of ARTRY causes the 601 to terminate the data bus transaction and retry both the address and data tenures later. If the transfer is a single-beat transfer and TA occurs as early as the AACK window, there is no indication of an early data bus termination. However, if a burst transaction is in progress, the 601 negates DBB early in response to ARTRY. The system logic does not need to assert TA for four bus clock cycles in this case.

If $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ is not asserted until the $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ window and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is asserted, the 601 does not become data bus master. Note that some system designs, such as single-master systems, do not require the use of $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$.

For information about $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ scenarios, see Section 9.3.3.1, “Address Retry Sources.” For information about MESI protocol and its effect on address tenure termination, refer to Section 9.4.4, “Memory Coherency—MESI Protocol.”

9.3.3.1 Address Retry Sources

The assertion of the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ input signals provide sufficient information for the appropriate handling of cache sector coherency. They encode information about a transaction, as shown in Table 9-5.

Table 9-5. Address Retry Causes

$\overline{\text{SHD}}$	$\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$	Definition
High impedance	High impedance	Exclusive. No snoop hit. Pipeline not busy.
High impedance	Asserted	Pipeline busy. Queuing retry.
Asserted	High impedance	Snoop hit (shared).
Asserted	Asserted	Snoop hit (modified).

If the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ inputs are not asserted for a cache-sector fill operation, the sector is marked as exclusive (see Section 9.4.4, “Memory Coherency—MESI Protocol”). If the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ input is asserted without $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$, the sector is marked as shared.

Note: If the invalidate (TT2) output signal is asserted for the transaction, the sector is marked exclusive regardless of the state of the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ signal. If $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is asserted without $\overline{\text{SHD}}$, a device cannot service the address transaction currently (because of queuing constraints) and the transaction is retried later. The 601 reacts to the assertion of $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ the same way, regardless of the state of $\overline{\text{SHD}}$. The timing of the $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ input is the same as the timing for $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$.

One or more devices can indicate a queuing retry condition by asserting $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ while one or more devices separately indicate the snoop-hit shared condition by asserting $\overline{\text{SHD}}$. This condition appears as a snoop hit modified condition on the bus, since both $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ are asserted. This is not a problem for the 601 since $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is not qualified by $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ (that is, $\overline{\text{SHD}}$ is a don't care if $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ is asserted to the 601).

9.4 Data Bus Tenure

This section describes the data bus arbitration, transfer, and termination phases defined by the 601 memory access protocol. The phases of the data tenure are identical to those of the address tenure, underscoring the symmetry in the control of the two buses.

9.4.1 Data Bus Arbitration

Data bus arbitration uses the data arbitration signal group, that is, $\overline{\text{DBG}}$, $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$, and $\overline{\text{DBB}}$. Additionally, the combination of $\overline{\text{TS}}$ or $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ and TT3 (address-only signal) function as a data bus request.

The $\overline{\text{TS}}$ signal is an implied data bus request from the 601; the arbiter must qualify $\overline{\text{TS}}$ with the transfer type (TT) encodings to determine if the current address transfer is an address-only operation, which does not require a data bus transfer (see Figure 9-7). If the data bus is needed, the arbiter grants data bus mastership by asserting the $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ input to the 601. As with the address-bus arbitration phase, the 601 must qualify the $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ input with a number of input signals before assuming bus mastership, as shown in Figure 9-9.

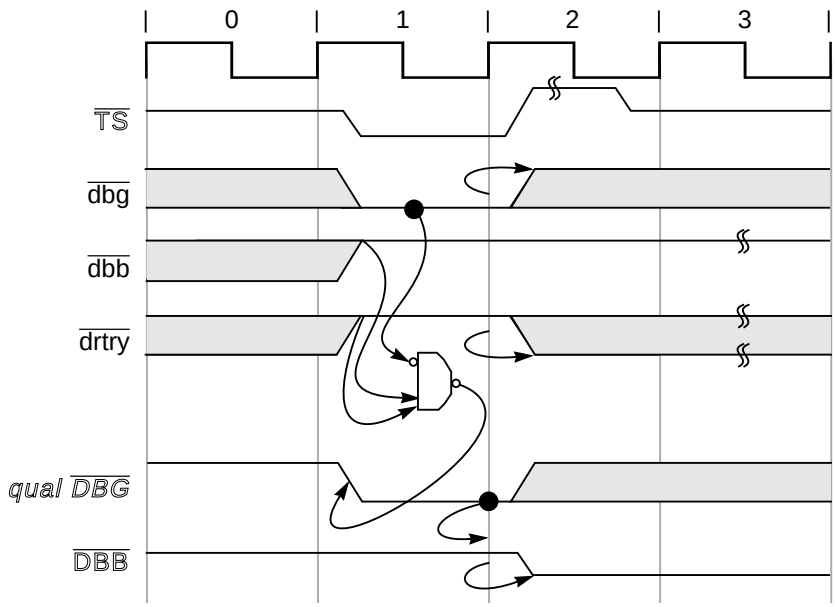


Figure 9-9. Data Bus Arbitration

A qualified data bus grant can be expressed as the following:

> QDBG = $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ asserted while $\overline{\text{DBB}}$, $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$, and $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ (associated with the data bus operation) are negated.

When a data tenure overlaps with its associated address tenure, a qualified $\overline{\text{ARTRY}}$ assertion coincident with a data bus grant does not result in data bus mastership ($\overline{\text{DBB}}$ is not asserted). Otherwise, the 601 always asserts $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ on the bus clock cycle after recognition of a qualified data bus grant. Since the 601 can pipeline transactions, there may be an outstanding data bus transaction when a new address transaction is retried. In this case, the 601 becomes the data bus master to complete the previous transaction.

9.4.1.1 Using the $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ Signal

The $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ signal should be connected between masters only if data tenure hand-off is left to the masters. The memory system can control data hand-off directly with $\overline{\text{DBG}}$.

The 601 asserts $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ throughout the data transaction; however, the 601 does not park the data bus and assert $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ across multiple transactions. $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ is negated on the bus clock cycle after a final $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is received from the bus.

9.4.2 Data Transfer

The data transfer signals include DH0–DH31, DL0–DL31, DP0–DP7 and $\overline{\text{DPE}}$. For memory accesses, the DH and DL signals form a 64-bit data path for read and write operations.

The 601 transfers data in either single- or four-beat burst transfers. Single-beat operations can transfer from one to eight bytes at a time and can be misaligned (see Section 9.3.2.3, “Effect of Alignment in Data Transfers”). Burst operations always transfer eight words and are aligned to four- or eight-word address boundaries. Burst transfers can achieve significantly higher bus throughput than single-beat operations.

The type of transaction initiated by the 601 depends on whether the code or data is cacheable and, for store operations, whether the cache is operated in write-back or write-through mode which software controls at either the page or block basis. Burst transfers support cacheable operations only; that is, memory structures must be marked as cacheable (and write-back for data store operations) in the respective TLB entry to take advantage of burst transfers.

The 601 output $\overline{\text{TBST}}$ indicates to the system whether the current transaction is a single- or four-beat transfer. A burst transfer has an assumed address order. For load or store operations that miss in the cache (and are marked as cacheable and, for stores, write-back in the MMU), the 601 presents the quad-word–aligned address associated with the critical code or data that initiated the transaction. This minimizes latency by allowing the critical code or data to be forwarded to the processor before the rest of the sector is filled. For all other burst operations, however, the sector is transferred beginning with the oct-word aligned data. Note that this difference can complicate cache-to-cache implementations.

The 601 does not directly support interfacing to subsystems with less than a 64-bit data path (except for I/O controller interface operations, which are discussed in Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations”). However, the 601 duplicates, or mirrors, the transfer data on the unused word lane, for store operations to pages marked as noncacheable. This means, for example, that for a noncacheable byte store operation, the valid byte is present on two byte lanes—one in the upper word and one in the lower word. For a word store operation, the word is mirrored across both word lanes. Unused byte lanes are undefined.

The data is not mirrored, however, for other store operations (including write-through). A cache hit causes the double word of data containing the data being transferred to be output on the data bus lanes.

CAUTION

While this information may be useful to some applications that do not cache data structures, data mirroring may not be supported on future versions of the 601 or other PowerPC processors.

9.4.3 Data Transfer Termination

Four signals are used to terminate data bus transactions: $\overline{TA}$, $\overline{DRTRY}$ (data retry), $\overline{TEA}$ (transfer error acknowledge), and in some cases $\overline{ARTRY}$. The $\overline{TA}$ signal indicates normal termination of data transactions. $\overline{DRTRY}$ indicates invalid read data in the previous bus clock cycle. $\overline{TEA}$ indicates a nonrecoverable bus error event.

$\overline{ARTRY}$ can also terminate a data bus transaction. For burst transactions, this $\overline{ARTRY}$ must occur no later than the cycle of the second $\overline{TA}$. For single-beat transactions, it must occur no later than the cycle following $\overline{TA}$. In either case, the $\overline{ARTRY}$ must be for the address bus tenure associated with the data bus tenure.

9.4.3.1 Normal Single-Beat Termination

Normal termination of a single-beat data read operation occurs when $\overline{TA}$ is asserted by a responding slave. The $\overline{TEA}$ and $\overline{DRTRY}$ signals must remain negated during the transfer (see Figure 9-10).

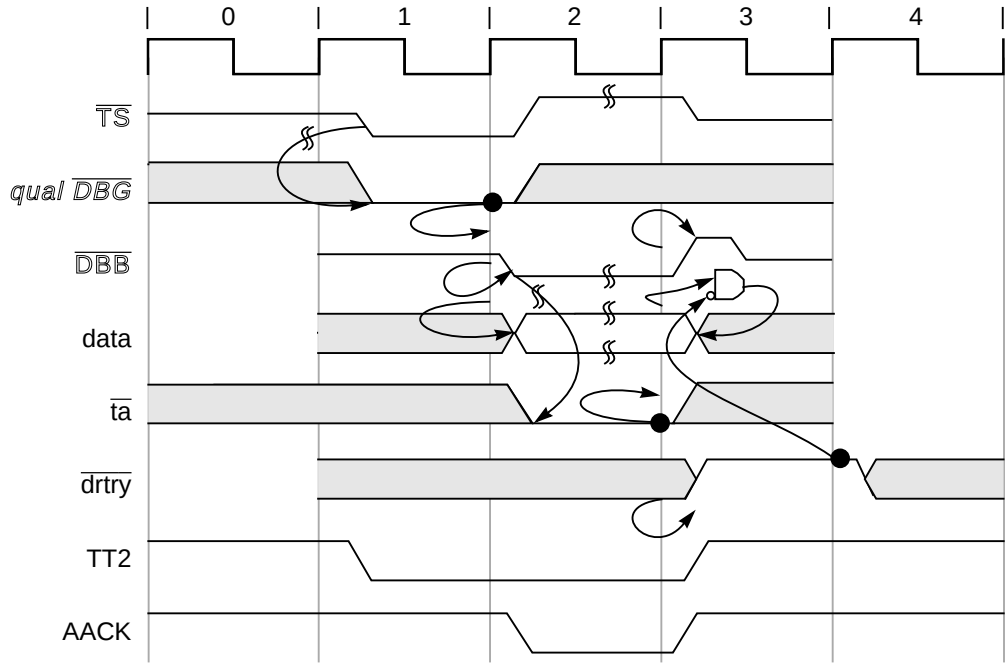


Figure 9-10. Normal Single-Beat Read Termination

Normal termination of a single-beat data write transaction occurs when $\overline{TA}$ is asserted by a responding slave. $\overline{TEA}$ must remain negated during the transfer. The $\overline{DRTRY}$ signal is not

sampled during data writes, as shown in Figure 9-11. As shown in both Figure 9-10 and Figure 9-11, the TT1 signal driven low by the 601 indicates a write is in progress.

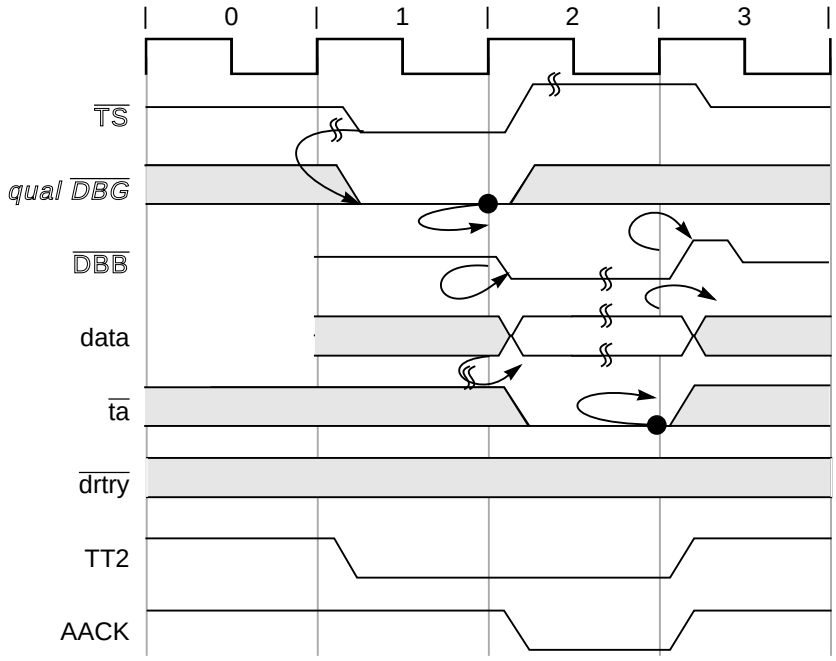


Figure 9-11. Normal Single-Beat Write Termination

Normal termination of a burst transfer occurs when TA is asserted during four bus clock cycles, as shown in Figure 9-12. The bus clock cycles need not be consecutive, thus allowing pacing of the data transfer beats. For read bursts to terminate successfully, TEA and DRTRY must remain negated during the transfer. For write bursts, TEA must remain negated during the transfer. DRTRY is ignored during data writes.

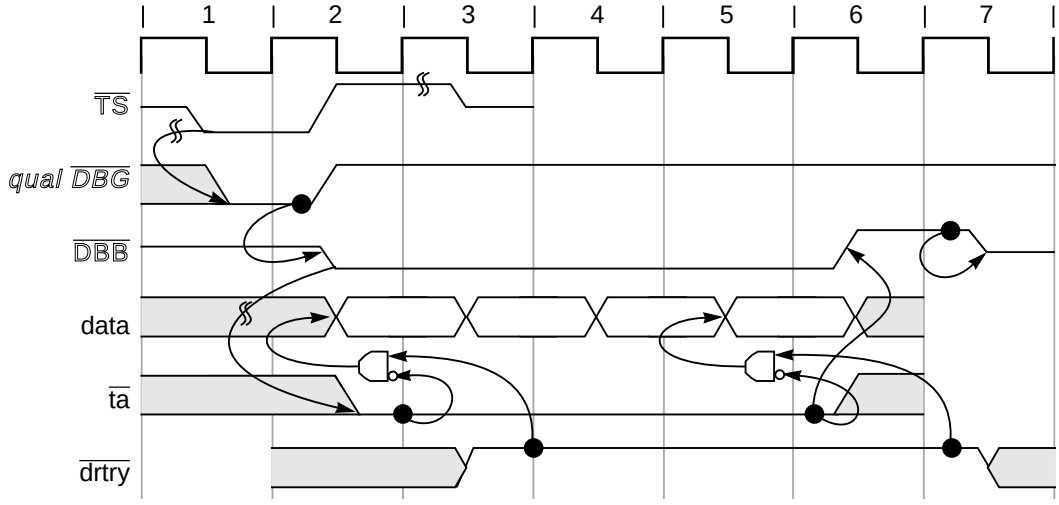


Figure 9-12. Normal Burst Transaction

For read bursts, $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ may be asserted one bus clock cycle after $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is asserted to signal that the data presented with $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is invalid and that the processor must wait for the negation of $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ before forwarding data to the processor (see Figure 9-13). Thus, a data beat can be speculatively terminated with $\overline{\text{TA}}$ and then one bus clock cycle later confirmed with the negation of $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$. The $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ signal is valid only for read transactions. $\overline{\text{TA}}$ must be asserted on the bus clock cycle before the first bus clock cycle of the assertion of $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$; otherwise the results are undefined.

The $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ signal extends data bus mastership such that other processors cannot use the data bus until $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is negated. Therefore, in the example in Figure 9-13, $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ cannot be asserted until bus clock cycle 5. This is true for both read and write operations even though $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ does not hold the master on write operations.

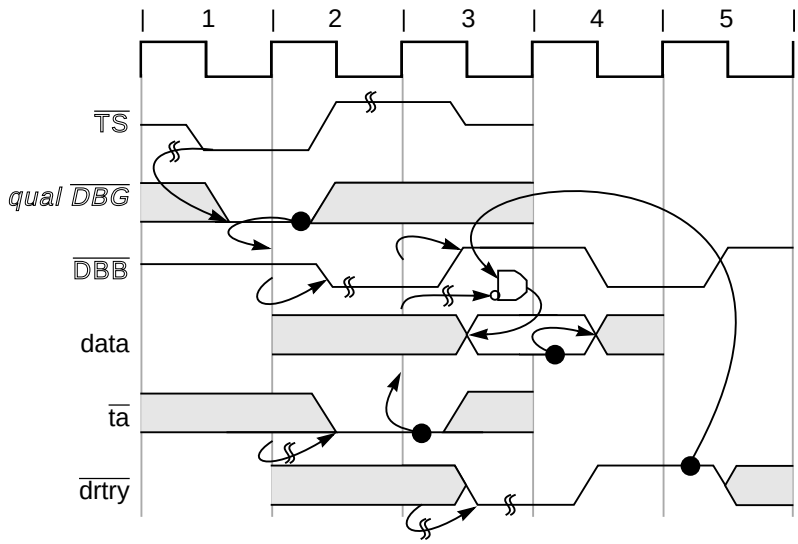


Figure 9-13. Termination with $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$

Figure 9-14 shows the effect of using $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ during a burst read. It also shows the effect of using $\overline{\text{TA}}$ to pace the data transfer rate. Notice that in bus clock cycle 3 of Figure 9-14, $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is negated for the second data beat. The 601 data pipeline does not proceed until bus clock cycle 4 when the $\overline{\text{TA}}$ is reasserted.

Note that $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ is useful for systems that implement speculative forwarding of data such as those with direct-mapped, second-level caches where hit/miss is determined on the following bus clock cycle, or for parity- or ECC-checked memory systems.

Note that $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ may not be implemented on other PowerPC processors.

9.4.3.2 Data Transfer Termination Due to a Bus Error

The $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal indicates that a bus error occurred. It may be asserted while $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ (and/or $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ for read operations) is asserted. Asserting $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ to the 601 terminates the transaction; that is, further assertions of $\overline{\text{TA}}$ and $\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$ are ignored and $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ is negated.

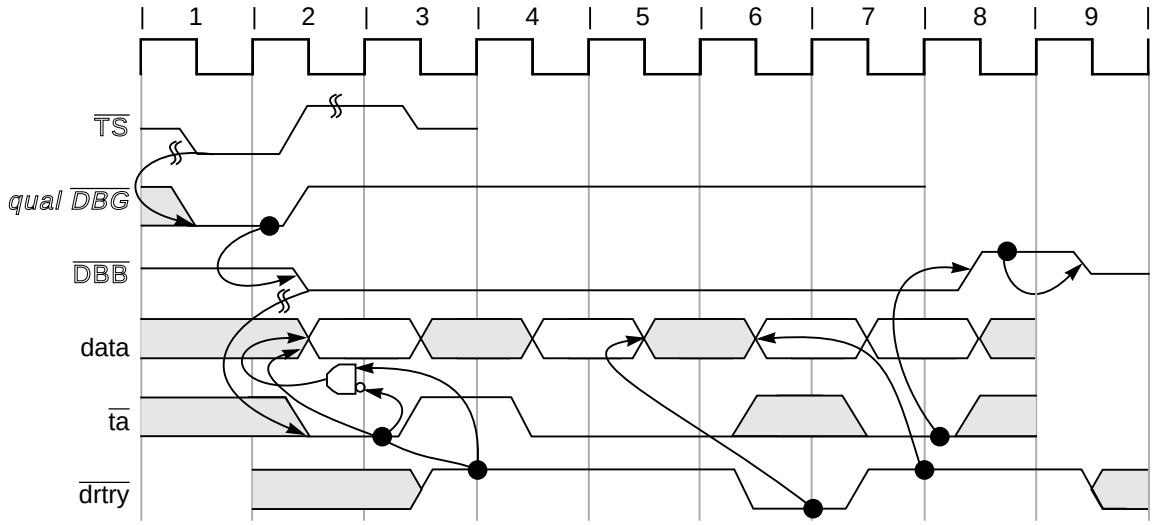


Figure 9-14. Read Burst with TA Wait States and DRTRY

Assertion of the TEA signal causes a machine-check exception (and possibly a check-stop condition within the 601). For more information, see Section 5.4.2, “Machine Check Exception (x'00200').” However assertion of TEA does not invalidate data entering the GPR or the cache; therefore, the 601 may act on invalid code/data (although the exception will eventually be recognized, if enabled). Additionally, the corresponding address of the access that caused TEA to be asserted is not latched by the 601. To recover, the 601 must be reset; therefore, this function should only be used to flag fatal system conditions to the processor (such as parity or uncorrectable ECC errors).

After the 601 has committed to run a transaction, that transaction must eventually complete. Address retry causes the transaction to be restarted; TA wait states and DRTRY assertion for reads delay termination of individual data beats. Eventually, however, the system must either terminate the transaction or assert the TEA signal to put the 601 into checkstop mode. For this reason, care must be taken to check for the end of physical memory and the location of certain system facilities.

Note that TEA generates a machine-check exception depending on the ME bit in the MSR. Setting the checkstop enable control bits properly leads to a true checkstop condition.

Note also that the 601 does not implement a synchronous error capability for memory accesses (see Section 9.6, “Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations”). This means that the exception instruction pointer does not point to the memory operation that caused the assertion of TEA, but to the instruction about to be executed (perhaps several instructions later).

9.4.4 Memory Coherency—MESI Protocol

The 601 provides dedicated hardware to provide memory coherency by snooping bus transactions. The address retry capability enforces the four-state, MESI cache-coherency protocol (see Figure 9-15). In addition to the hardware required to monitor bus traffic for coherency, the 601 has a cache port dedicated to snooping so that comparing cache entries to address traffic on the bus does not tie up the 601's on-chip cache.

The global ($\overline{\text{GBL}}$) signal output, indicates whether the current transaction must be snooped by other snooping devices on the bus. Address bus masters assert $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ to indicate that the current transaction is a global access (that is, an access to memory shared by more than one processor/cache). If $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ is not asserted for the transaction, that transaction is not snooped. When other devices detect the $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ input asserted, they must respond by snooping the broadcast address.

Normally, $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ reflects the M-bit value specified for the memory reference in the corresponding translation descriptor(s). Note that care must be taken to minimize the number of pages marked as global, because the retry protocol discussed in the previous section is used to enforce coherency and can require significant bus bandwidth.

When the 601 is not the address bus master, $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ is an input. The 601 snoops a transaction if $\overline{\text{TS}}$ and $\overline{\text{GBL}}$ are asserted together in the same bus clock cycle (this is a *qualified* snooping condition). No snoop update to the 601 cache occurs if the snooped transaction is not marked global. This includes invalidation cycles.

When the 601 detects a qualified snoop condition, the address associated with the $\overline{\text{TS}}$ is compared against the unified cache tags through a dedicated cache-tag port. Snooping completes if no hit is detected. If, however, the address hits in the cache, the 601 reacts according to the MESI protocol shown in Figure 9-15, assuming the WIM bits are set to write-back mode, caching allowed, and coherency enforced (WIM = 001).

Note that write hits to clean lines of nonglobal pages do not generate invalidate broadcasts. There are several types of bus transactions that involve the movement of data that can no longer access the TLB M-bit (for example, replacement sector copy-back, snoop push, and table-search operations). In these cases, the hardware cannot determine whether the sector was originally marked global; therefore, the 601 marks these transactions as nonglobal to avoid retry deadlocks.

The 601's on-chip cache is implemented as an eight-way set-associative cache. To facilitate external monitoring of the internal cache tags, the cache set element (CSE0–CSE2) signals indicate which sector of the cache set is being replaced on read operations (including RWITM). Note that these signals are valid only for 601 burst operations; for all other bus operations, the CSE signals should be ignored.

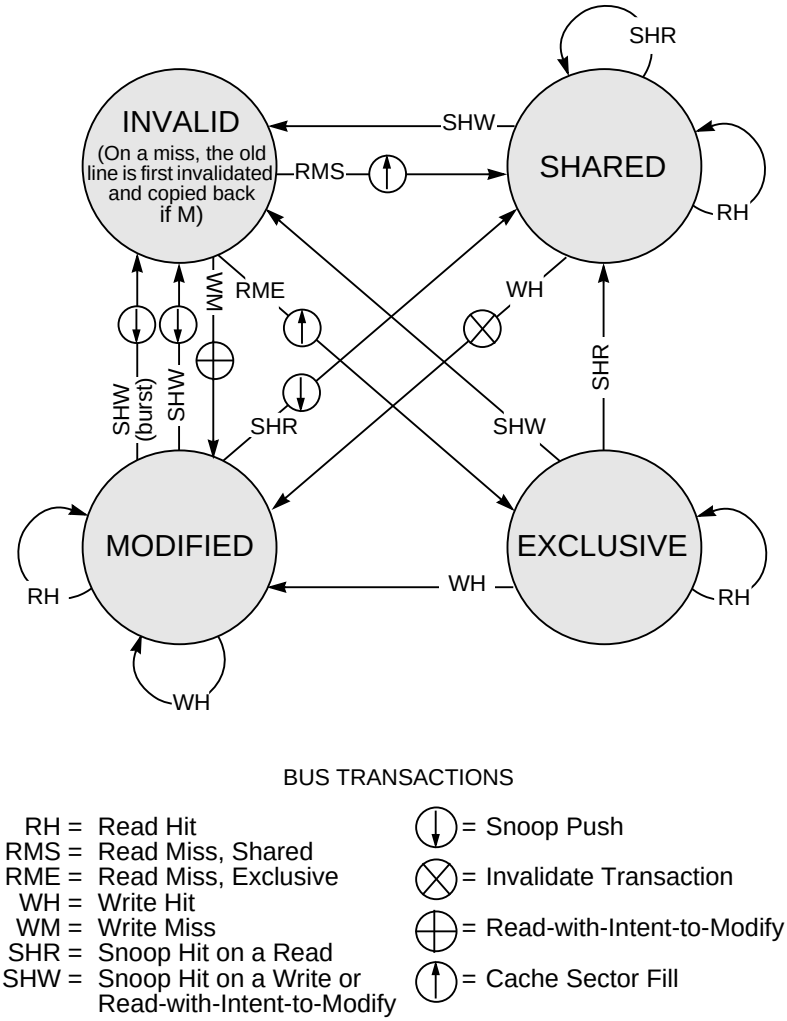


Figure 9-15. MESI Cache Coherency Protocol—State Diagram (WIM = 001)

Table 9-6 shows the CSE encodings.

Table 9-6. CSE(0–2) Signals

CSE0–CSE2	Cache Set Element
000	Set 0
001	Set 1
010	Set 2
011	Set 3
100	Set 4
101	Set 5
110	Set 6
111	Set 7

9.5 Timing Examples

This section shows timing diagrams for various scenarios. Figure 9-16 illustrates the fastest single-beat reads. This figure shows both minimal latency and maximum single-beat throughput. By delaying the data bus tenure, the latency increases, but, because of split-transaction pipelining, the overall throughput is not affected unless the data bus latency causes the third address tenure to be delayed.

Note that all bidirectional signals go to high-impedance between bus tenures.

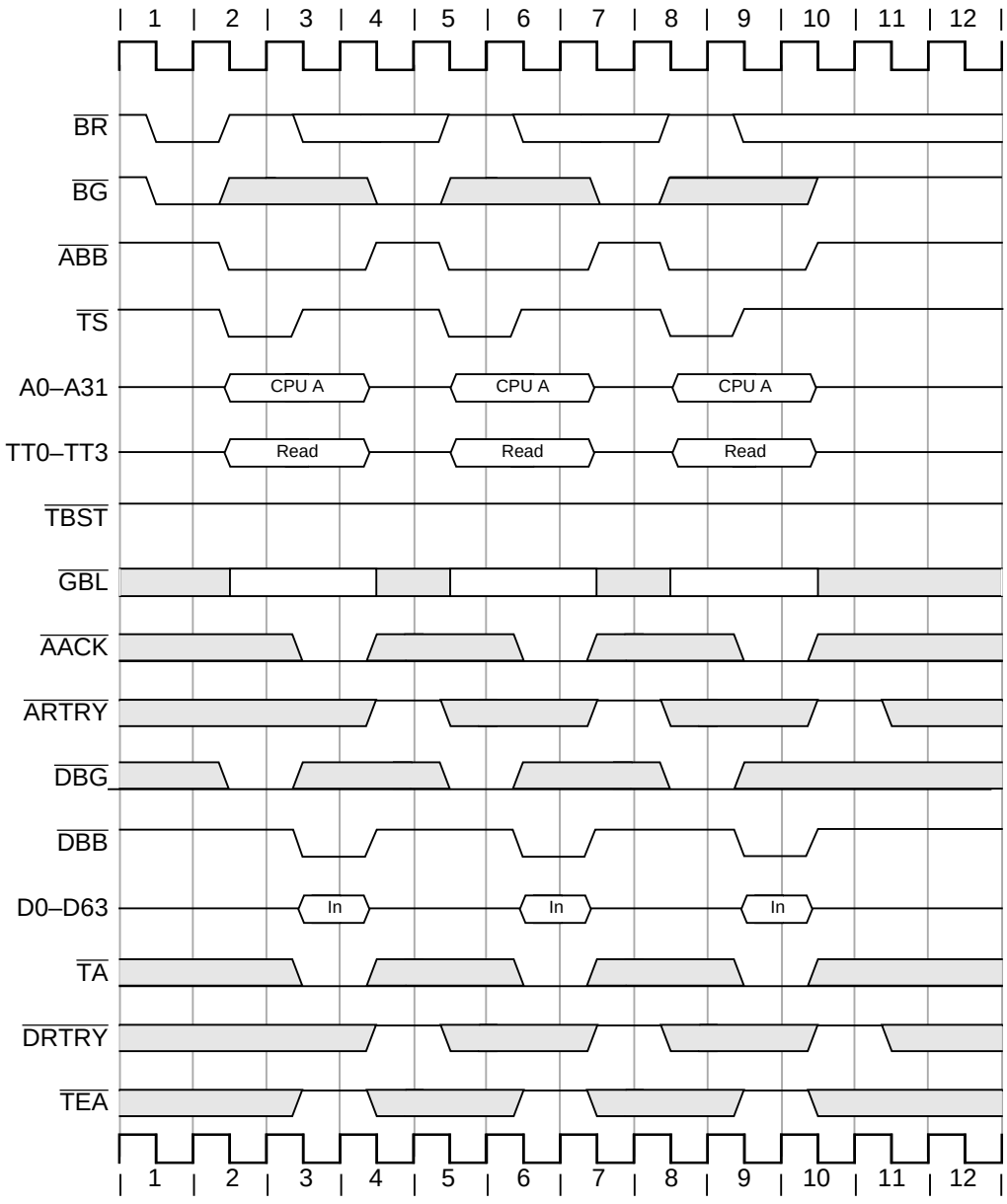


Figure 9-16. Fastest Single-Beat Reads

Figure 9-17 illustrates the fastest single-beat writes. Note that all bidirectional signals go to high-impedance between bus tenures. TT1–TT3 are binary encoded b'x001'. TT0 can be either 0 or 1, TT1 and TT2 are 0, and TT3 is 1.

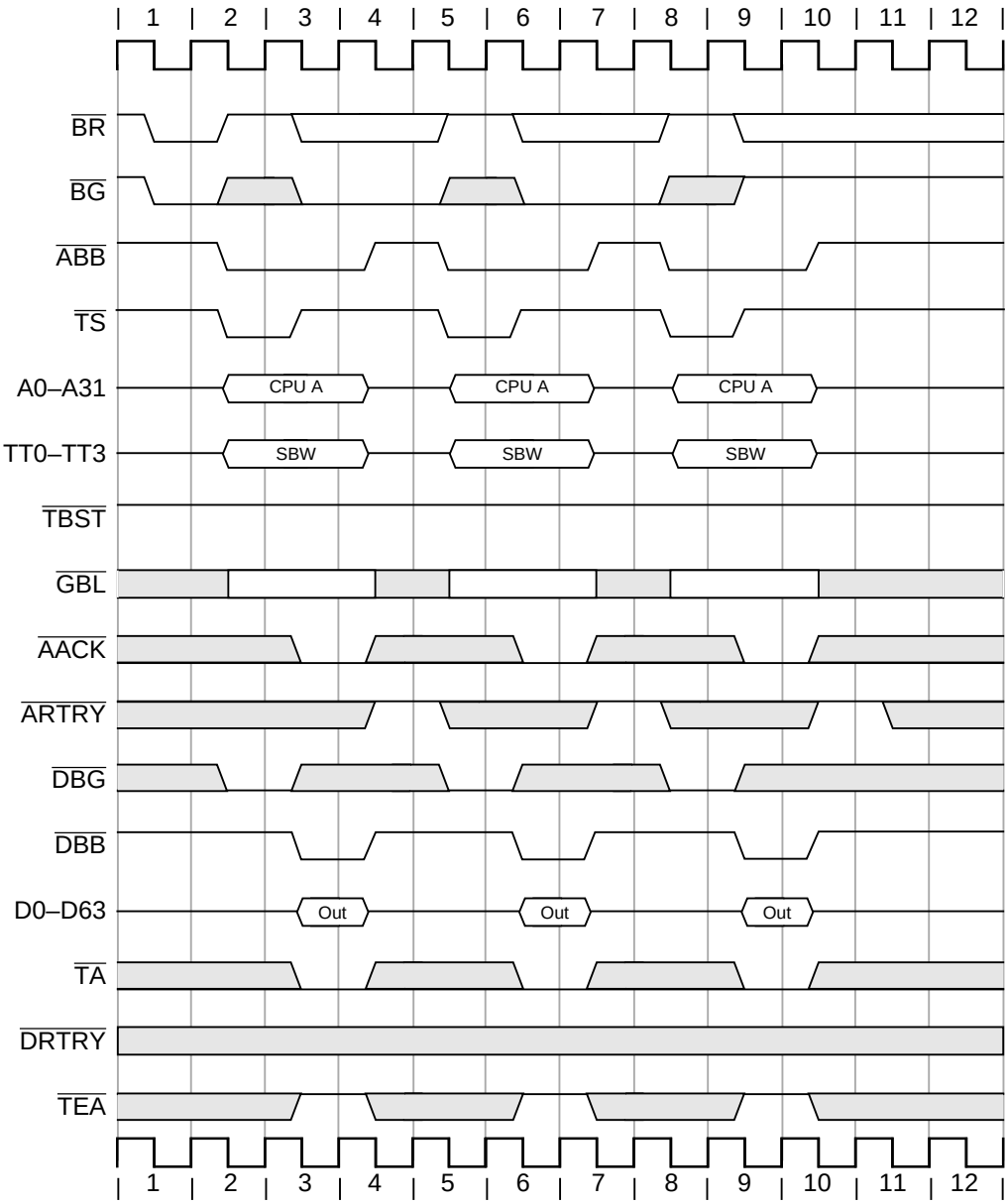


Figure 9-17. Fastest Single-Beat Writes

Figure 9-18 shows three ways to delay single-beat reads showing data-delay controls:

- The $\overline{TA}$ hold-off can be used to insert wait states in clock cycles 3 and 4.
- For the second access, $\overline{DBG}$ could have been asserted in clock cycle 6.
- In the third access, $\overline{DRTRY}$ is asserted in clock cycle 11 to flush the previous data.

Note that all bidirectional signals go to high-impedance between bus tenures. The pipelining shown in Figure 9-18 can occur if the second access is not another load, (for example, an instruction fetch).

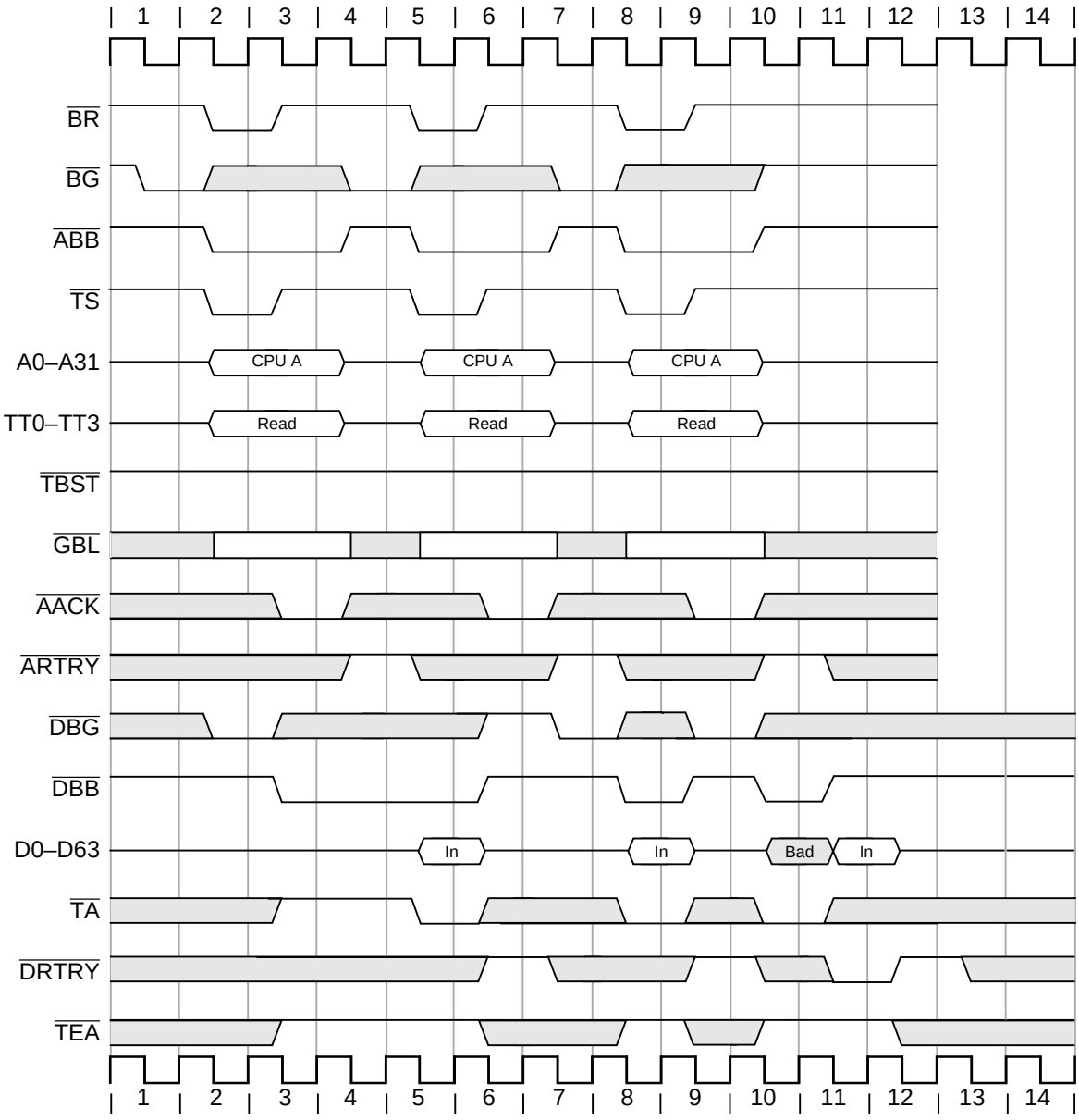


Figure 9-18. Single-Beat Reads Showing Data-Delay Controls

Figure 9-19 shows data-delay controls in a single-beat write. Note that all bidirectional signals are set to high impedance between bus tenures. Data transfers are delayed in the following ways:

- The $\overline{TA}$ holdoff is used to insert wait states in clocks 3 and 4.
- In clock 6, $\overline{DBG}$ is held negated, delaying the start of the data tenure.

The last access is not delayed ($\overline{DRTRY}$ is valid only for read operations).

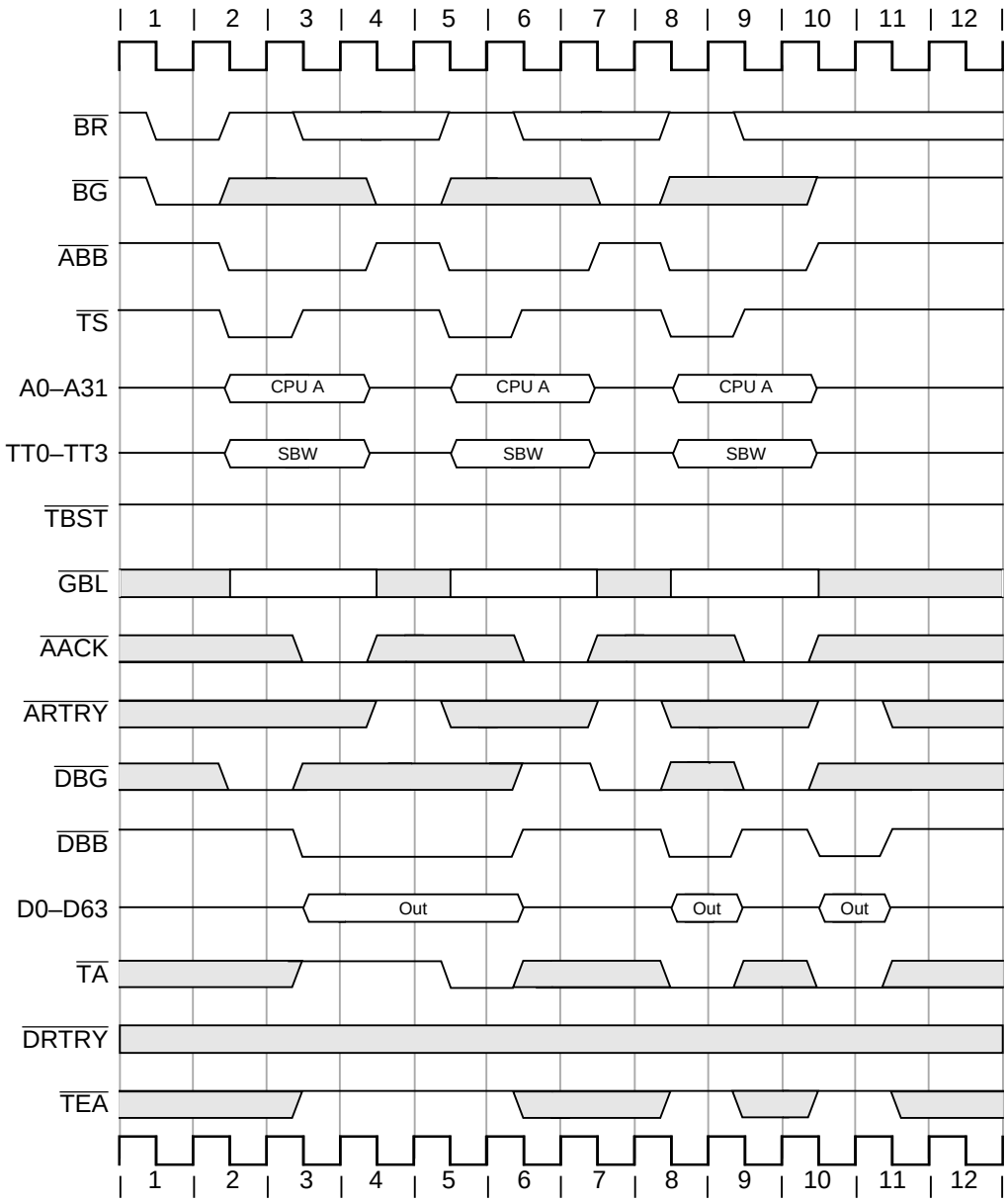


Figure 9-19. Single-Beat Writes Showing Data Delay Controls

Figure 9-20 shows three single-beat transfers back-to-back. Note that all bidirectional signals are set at high-impedance state between tenures.

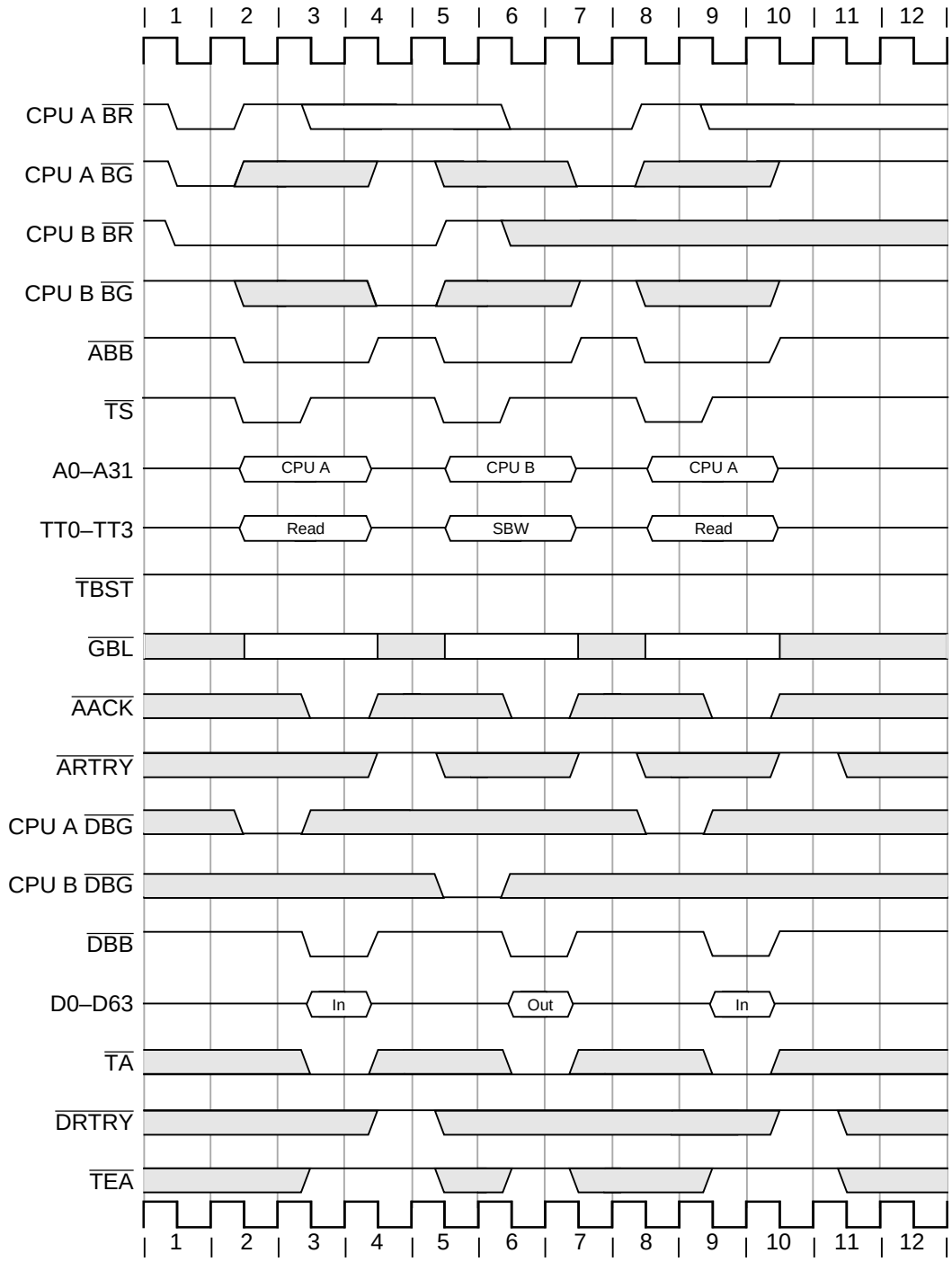


Figure 9-20. Back-to-Back Single-Beat Transfers

Figure 9-21 shows the use of data-delay controls with burst transfers. Note that all bidirectional signals are set to high impedance between bus tenures. Note the following:

- The first data beat of bursted read data (clock 0) is the critical quad word.
- The write burst shows the use of $\overline{TA}$ holdoff on the third data beat.
- The final read burst shows the use of $\overline{DRTRY}$ on the third data beat.
- The address for the third transfer is held off until the first transfer completes.

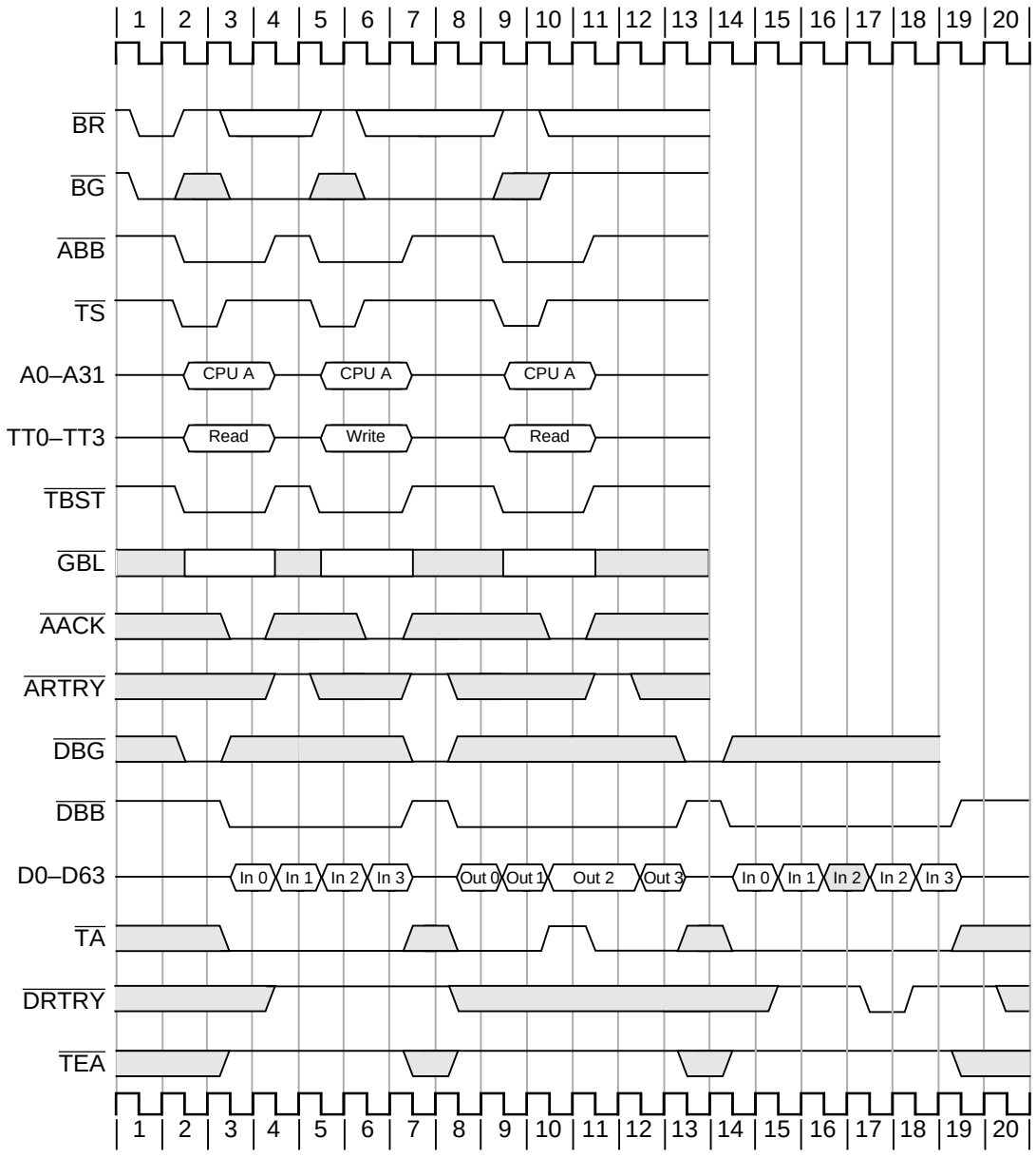


Figure 9-21. Burst Transfers with Data Delay Controls

Figure 9-22 shows the use of the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal. Note that all bidirectional signals are set to high impedance between bus tenures. Note the following:

- The first data beat of the read burst (in clock 0) is the critical quad-word.
- The $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal truncates the burst write transfer on the third data beat.
- The 601 eventually interrupts on the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ event.

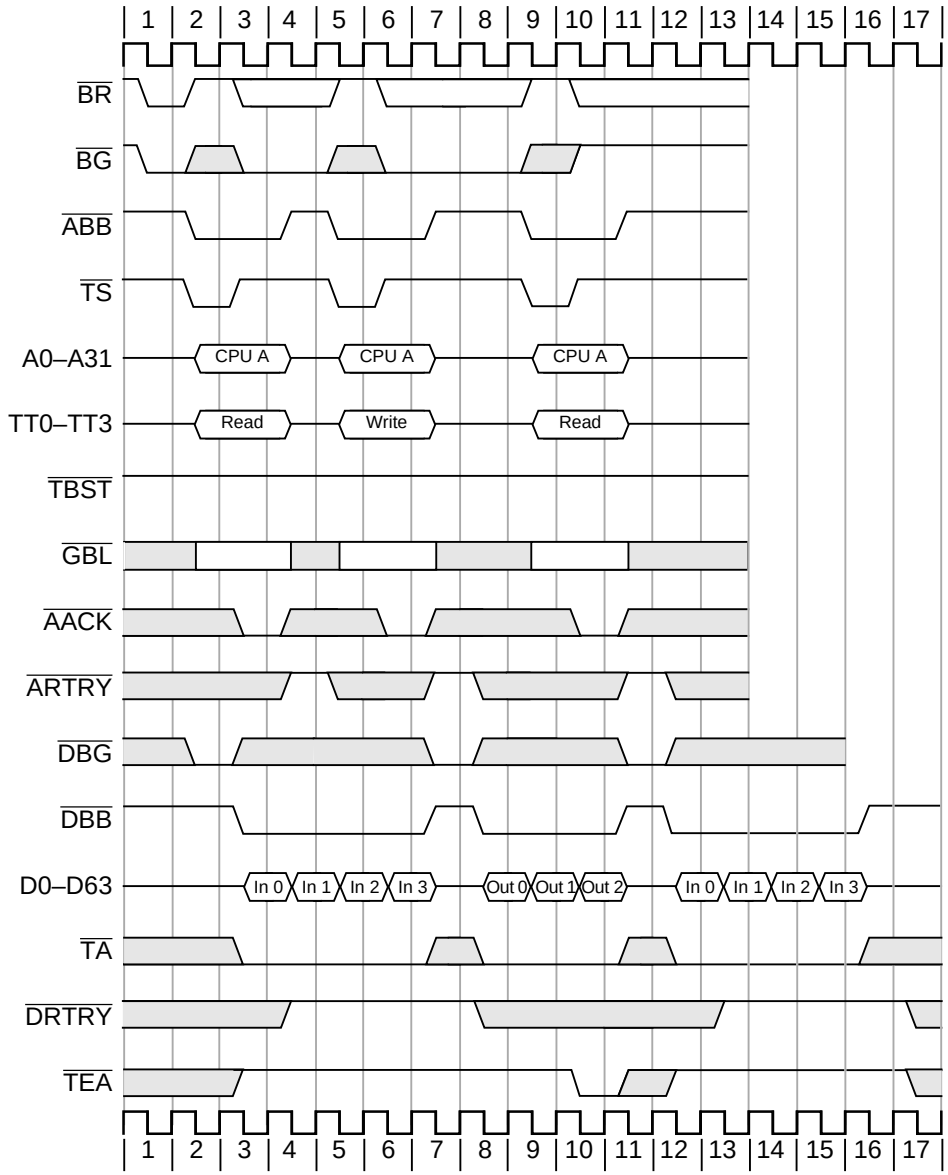


Figure 9-22. Use of Transfer Error Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{TEA}}$)

9.6 Memory- vs. I/O-Mapped I/O Operations

The 601 defines separate memory and I/O address spaces, or segments, distinguished by the segment register T-bit in the address translation logic of the 601. If the T-bit is cleared, the memory reference is a normal memory access and can use the virtual memory management hardware of the 601. For highest performance, it is recommended that I/O devices be mapped through the memory interface.

However, if the T-bit is set, the external reference is to an I/O controller interface area. This mapping is provided to implement the I/O controller interface protocol for compatibility with certain devices that respond to it.

The following points should be considered for I/O controller interface accesses:

- I/O controller interface accesses must be strongly ordered; for example, these accesses must run on the bus strictly in order with respect to the instruction stream.
- I/O controller interface accesses must provide synchronous error reporting. Chapter 4, “Cache and Memory Unit Operation,” describes architectural aspects of I/O controller interface segments, as well as an overview of the PowerPC architecture’s segmented address space management.

The 601 defines two types of I/O controller interface segments (segment register T-bit set) based on the value of the bus unit ID (BUID), as follows:

- I/O controller interface (BUID ≠ x'07F')—I/O controller interface accesses include all transactions between the 601 and subsystems (referred to as bus unit controllers (BUCs) mapped through I/O controller interface address space).
- Memory-forced I/O controller interface (BUID = x'07F')—Memory-forced I/O controller interface operations access memory space. They do not use the extensions to the memory protocol described for I/O controller interface accesses, and they bypass the page- and block-translation and protection mechanisms. The physical address is found by concatenating bits 28–31 of the respective segment register with bits 4–31 of the effective address. This address is marked as noncacheable, write-through, and global.

  Because memory-forced I/O controller interface accesses address memory space, they are subject to the same coherency control as other memory reference operations. More generally, accesses to memory-forced I/O controller interface segments are considered to be cache-inhibited, write-through and memory-coherent operations with respect to the 601 cache and bus interface.

See Section 9.6.2, “I/O Controller Interface Transaction Protocol Details,” for more information about the BUID.

The 601 has a single bus interface to support accesses to both memory accesses and I/O controller interface segment accesses.

The system recognizes the assertion of the $\overline{TS}$ signal as the start of a memory access. The assertion of $\overline{XATS}$ indicates an I/O controller interface access. This allows memory devices to ignore I/O controller interface transactions. If $\overline{XATS}$ is asserted, the access is to I/O space and the following extensions to the memory access protocol apply:

- A new set of bus operations are defined. The transfer type, transfer burst, and transfer size signals are redefined for I/O controller interface operations; they convey the opcode for the I/O transaction (see Table 9-7).
- There are two beats of address for each I/O controller interface transfer. The first beat (packet 0) provides basic address information such as the segment register and the sender tag and several control bits; the second beat (packet 1) provides additional addressing bits from the segment register and the logical address.
- Explicit sender/receiver tags are provided.
- The sender that initiated the transaction must wait for a reply from the receiver bus-unit controller (BUC) before starting a new operation.
- The 601 does not burst I/O controller interface transactions, but streaming is permitted. Streaming (in this context) allows multiple single-beat transactions to occur before a reply from the I/O receiver is required.

I/O controller interface transactions use separate arbitration for the split address and data buses and define address-only and single-beat transactions. The address-retry vehicle is identical, although there is no hardware coherency support for I/O controller interface transactions. $\overline{ARTRY}$ is useful, however, for pacing 601 transactions, effectively indicating to the 601 that the BUC is in a queue-full condition and cannot accept new data.

In addition to the extensions noted above, there are fundamental differences between memory and I/O controller interface operations. For example, use of $\overline{DRTRY}$ is undefined for 601 I/O controller interface operations. Additionally, only half of the 64-bit data path is available for 601 I/O controller interface transactions. This lowers the pin-count for I/O interfaces but generally results in substantially less bandwidth than memory accesses. Additionally, load/store instructions that address I/O controller interface segments cannot complete successfully without an error-free reply from the addressed BUC. Because normal I/O controller interface accesses involve multiple I/O transactions (streaming), they are likely to be very long latency instructions; therefore, I/O controller interface operations usually stall 601 instruction issue.

Figure 9-23 shows an I/O controller interface tenure. Note that the I/O response is an address-only bus transaction.

The decision on whether to map I/O peripherals into memory or I/O controller interface space depends on many factors; however, it should be noted that in the best case, the use of the 601 I/O controller interface protocol degrades performance and requires the addressed controllers to implement 601 bus master capability to generate the reply transactions.

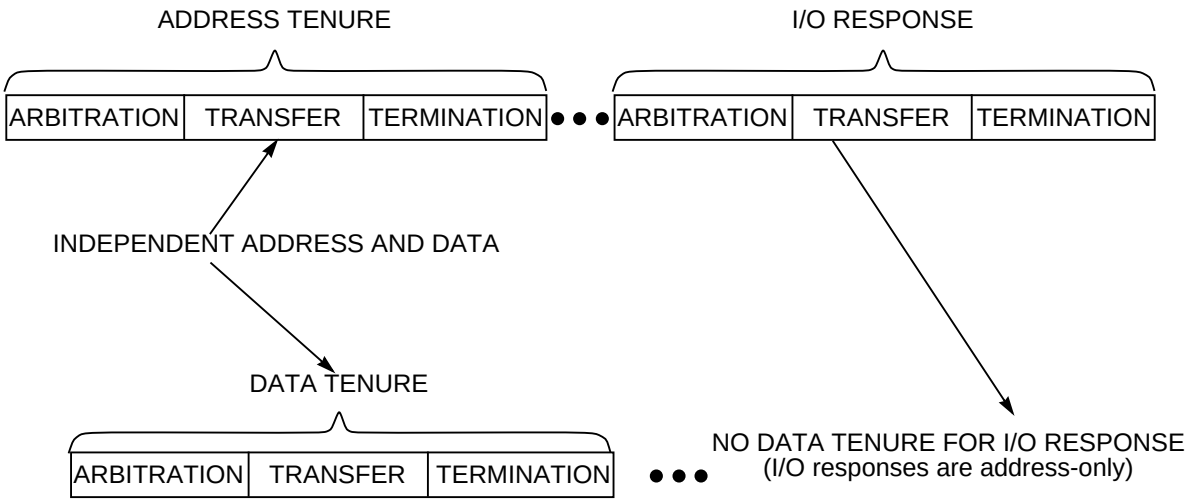


Figure 9-23. I/O Controller Interface Tenures

9.6.1 I/O Controller Interface Transactions

Seven I/O controller interface transaction operations are defined by the 601, as shown in Table 9-7. These operations permit communication between the 601 and BUCs. A single 601 store or load instruction (that translates to an I/O controller interface access) generates one or more I/O controller interface operations (two or more I/O controller interface operations for loads) from the 601 and one reply operation from the addressed BUC.

Table 9-7. I/O Controller Interface Bus Operations

Operation	Address Only	Direction	XATC Encoding
Load start (request)	Yes	601 ⇒ IO	0100 0000
Load immediate	No	601 ⇒ IO	0101 0000
Load last	No	601 ⇒ IO	0111 0000
Store immediate	No	601 ⇒ IO	0001 0000
Store last	No	601 ⇒ IO	0011 0000
Load reply	Yes	IO ⇒ 601	1100 0000
Store reply	Yes	IO ⇒ 601	1000 0000

For the first beat of the address bus, the extended address transfer code (XATC), contains the I/O opcode as shown in Table 9-7; the opcode is formed by concatenating the transfer type, transfer burst, and transfer size signals defined as follows:

$$XATC = TT(0–3)||\overline{TBST}||TSIZ(0–2)$$

9.6.1.1 Store Operations

There are three operations defined for I/O controller interface store operations from the 601 to the BUC, defined as follows:

- Store immediate operations transfer up to 32 bits of data each from the 601 to the BUC.
- Store last operations transfer up to 32 bits of data each from the 601 to the BUC
- Store reply from the BUC reveals the success/failure of that I/O controller interface access to the 601.

An I/O controller interface store access consists of one or more data transfer operations followed by the I/O store reply operation from the BUC. If the data can be transferred in one 32-bit data transaction, it is marked as a store last operation followed by the store reply operation; no store immediate operation is involved in the transfer, as shown in the following sequence:

STORE LAST (from the 601)

•

•

STORE REPLY (from BUC)

However, if more data is involved in the I/O controller interface access, there will be one or more store immediate operations. The BUC can detect when the last data is being transferred by looking for the store last opcode, as shown in the following sequence:

STORE IMMEDIATE(s)

•

•

STORE LAST

•

•

STORE REPLY

9.6.1.2 Load Operations

I/O controller interface load accesses are similar to store operations, except that the 601 latches data from the addressed BUC rather than supplying the data to the BUC. As with memory accesses, the 601 is the master on both load and store operations; the external system must provide the data bus grant to the 601 when the BUC is ready to supply the data to the 601.

The load request I/O controller interface operation has no analogous store operation; it informs the addressed BUC of the total number of bytes of data that the BUC must provide to the 601 on the subsequent load immediate/load last operations. For I/O controller interface load accesses, the simplest, 32-bit (or fewer) data transfer sequence is as follows:

LOAD REQUEST

•

•

LOAD LAST

•

•

LOAD REPLY(from BUC)

However, if more data is involved in the I/O controller interface access, there will be one or more load immediate operations. The BUC can detect when the last data is being transferred by looking for the load last opcode, as seen in the following sequence:

LOAD REQUEST

•

•

LOAD IMM(s)

•

•

LOAD LAST

•

•

LOAD REPLY

Note that three of the seven defined operations are address-only transactions and do not use the data bus. However, unlike the memory transfer protocol, these transactions are not broadcast from one master to all snooping devices; The I/O controller interface address-only transaction protocol strictly controls communication between the 601 and the BUC.

9.6.2 I/O Controller Interface Transaction Protocol Details

As mentioned previously, there are two address-bus beats corresponding to two packets of information about the address. The two packets contain the sender and receiver tags, the address and extended address bits, and extra control and status bits. The two beats of the address bus (plus attributes) are shown at the top of Figure 9-24 as two packets. The first packet, packet 0, is then expanded to depict the XATC and address bus information in detail.

9.6.2.1 Packet 0

Figure 9-24 shows the organization of the first packet in an I/O controller interface transaction.

The XATC contains the I/O opcode, as discussed earlier and as shown in Table 9-7. The address bus contains the following:

Key bit || segment register || sender tag

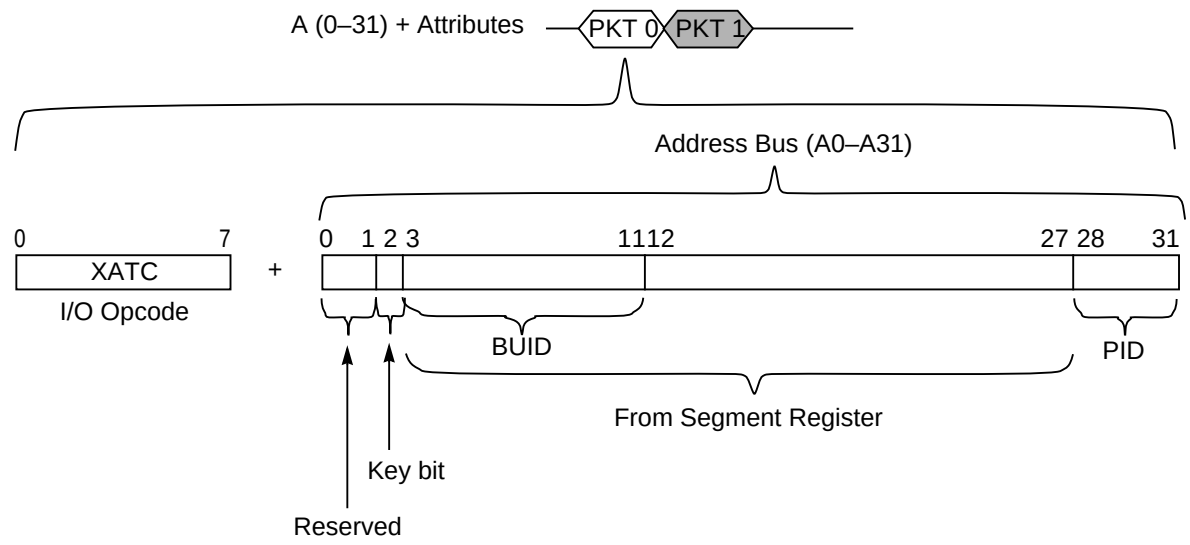


Figure 9-24. I/O Controller Interface Operation—Packet 0

This information is organized as follows:

- Bits 0 and 1 of the address bus are reserved—The 601 always drives these bits to zero.
- Key bit—Bit 2 is the key bit from the segment register (either SR[Ku] or SR[Ks]). Ku indicates user-level access and Ks indicate supervisor-level access. The 601 multiplexes the correct key bit into this position according to the current operating context (user or supervisor).
- Segment register—Address bits 3–27 correspond to bits 3–27 of the segment register. Note that address bits 3–11 form the nine-bit receiver tag. Software must initialize these bits in the segment register to the ID of the BUC to be addressed; they are referred to as the BUID (bus unit ID) bits.
- PID (sender tag)—Address bits 28–31 form the four-bit sender tag. These bits come from bits 28–31 of the 601 PID (processor ID) register. A four-bit tag allows a maximum of 16 processor IDs to be defined for a given system. If more bits are needed for a very large multiprocessor system, for example, it is envisioned that the second-level cache (or equivalent logic) can append a larger processor tag as needed. The BUC addressed by the receiver tag should latch the sender address required by the subsequent I/O reply operation.

9.6.2.2 Packet 1

The second address beat, packet 1, transfers byte counts and the physical address for the transaction, as shown in Figure 9-25.

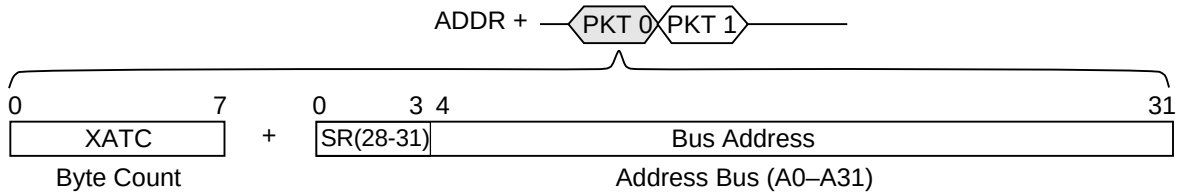


Figure 9-25. I/O Controller Interface Operation—Packet 1

For packet 1, the XATC is defined as follows:

- Load request operations—XATC contains the total number of bytes to be transferred (128 bytes maximum for the 601)
- Immediate/last (load or store) operations—XATC contains the current transfer byte count (one to four bytes.)

Address bits 0–31 contain the physical address of the transaction. The physical address is generated by concatenating segment register bits 28–31 with bits 4-31 of the effective address, as follows:

Segment register (bits 28–31) || effective address (bits 4–31)

While the 601 provides the address of the transaction to the BUC, the BUC must maintain a valid address pointer for the reply.

9.6.3 I/O Reply Operations

BUCs must respond to 601 I/O controller interface transactions with an I/O reply operation, as shown in Figure 9-26. The purpose of this reply operation is to inform the 601 of the success or failure of the attempted I/O controller interface access. This requires the system I/O controller interface to have 601 bus mastership capability—a substantially more complex design task than bus slave implementations that use memory-mapped I/O access.

Reply operations from the BUC to the 601 are address-only transactions. As with packet 0 of the address bus on 601 I/O controller interface operations, the XATC contains the opcode for the operation (see Table 9-7). Additionally, the I/O reply operation transfers the sender/receiver tags in the first beat.

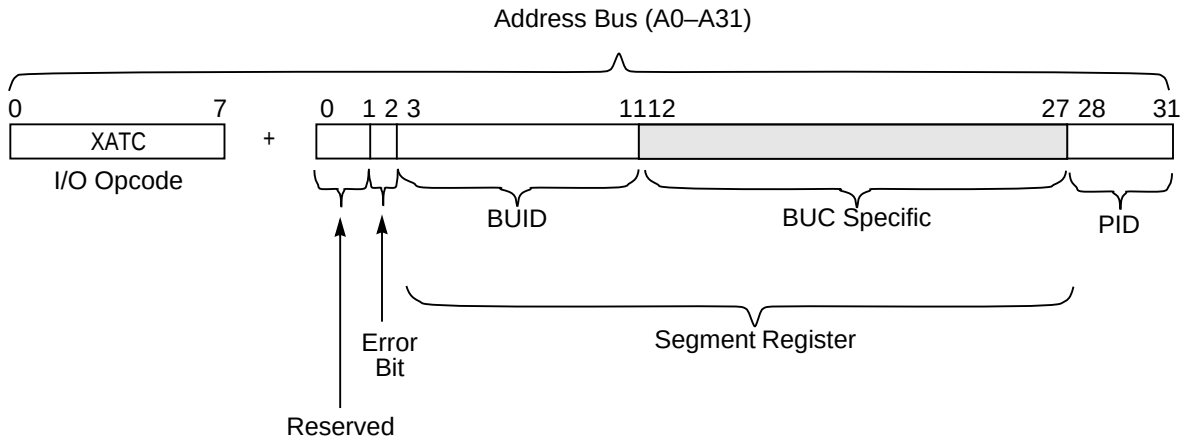


Figure 9-26. I/O Reply Operation

The address bits are described in Table 9-8.

Table 9-8. Address Bits for I/O Reply Operations

Address Bits	Description
0–1	Reserved. These bits should be set to zero for compatibility with future PowerPC microprocessors.
2	Error bit. It is set if the BUC records an error in the access.
3–11	BUID. Sender tag of a reply operation. Corresponds with bits 3–11 of one of the 601 segment registers.
12–27	Address bits 12–27 are BUC-specific and are ignored by the 601.
28–31	PID (receiver tag). The 601 effectively snoops operations on the bus and, on reply operations, compares this field to bits 28–31 of the PID register to determine if it should recognize this I/O reply.

The second beat of the address bus is reserved; the XATC and address buses should be driven to zero to preserve compatibility with future protocol enhancements.

The following sequence occurs when the 601 detects an error bit set on an I/O reply operation:

1. The 601 completes the instruction that initiated the access.
2. If the instruction is a load, the data is forwarded onto the register file(s)/sequencer.
3. An I/O controller interface error exception is generated, which transfers 601 control to the I/O controller interface error exception handler to recover from the error. Refer to Section 5.4.10, “I/O Controller Interface Error Exception (x'00A00'),” for more information.

If the error bit is not set, the 601 instruction that initiated the access completes and instruction execution resumes.

System designers should note the following:

- "Misplaced" reply operations (that match the processor tag and arrive unexpectedly) cause a checkstop condition. Refer to Chapter 5, "Exceptions," for more information.
- External logic must assert $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ for the 601, even though it is the receiver of the reply operation. $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ is an input-only to the 601.
- The 601 monitors address parity when enabled by software and $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ and reply operations (load or store).

9.6.4 I/O Controller Interface Operation Timing

The following timing diagrams show the sequence of events in a typical 601 I/O controller interface load access (Figure 9-27) and a typical 601 I/O controller interface store access (Figure 9-28). All arbitration signals except for $\overline{\text{ABB}}$ and $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ have been omitted for clarity. Note that for either case, the number of immediate operations depends on the amount and the alignment of data to be transferred. If no more than four bytes are being transferred, and the data is double-word aligned (that is, does not straddle an eight-byte address boundary), there will be no immediate operation as shown in the figures.

The 601 can transfer as many as 128 bytes of data in one load or store instruction (requiring more than 33 immediate operations in the case of misaligned operands).

In Figure 9-27, $\overline{\text{XATS}}$ is asserted with the same timing relationship as $\overline{\text{TS}}$ in a memory access. Notice, however, that the address bus (and XATC) transition on the next bus clock cycle. The first of the two beats on the address bus is valid for one bus clock cycle window only, and that window is defined by the assertion of $\overline{\text{XATS}}$. The second address bus beat, however, can be extended by delaying the assertion of $\overline{\text{AACK}}$ until the system has latched the address.

The load request and load reply operations shown in Figure 9-27 are address-only transactions as denoted by the negated TT3 signal during their respective address tenures. Note that other types of bus operations can occur between the individual I/O controller interface operations on the bus. The 601 involved in this transaction, however, does not initiate any other I/O controller load or store operations once the first I/O controller interface operation has begun address tenure; however, if the I/O operation is retried, other higher-priority operations can occur.

Notice that, in this example (zero wait states), 13 bus clock cycles are required to transfer no more than eight bytes of data.

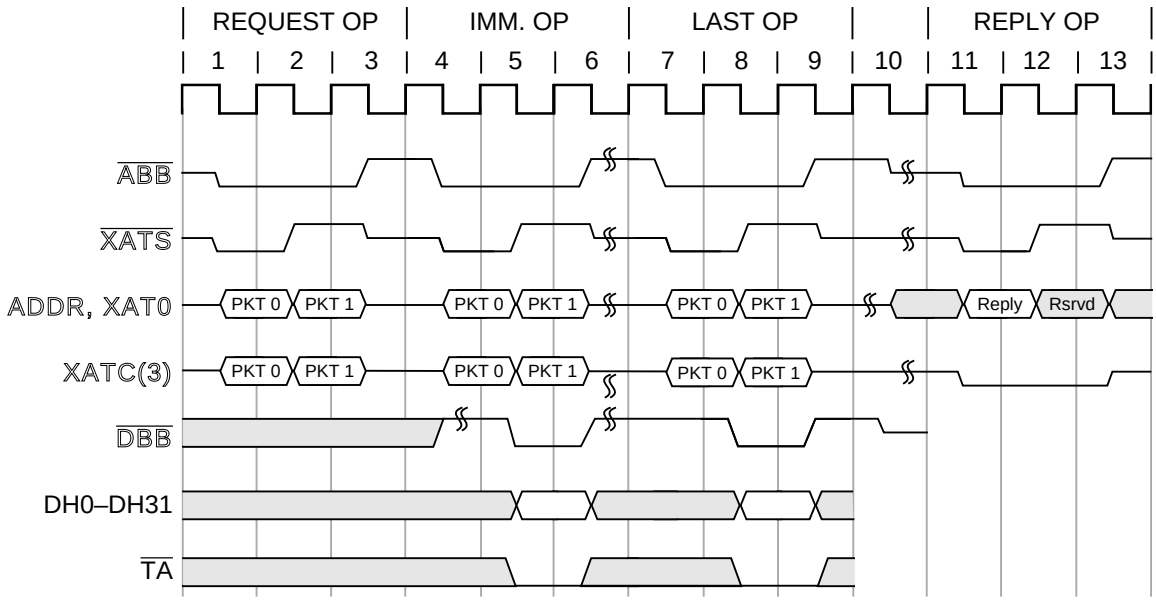


Figure 9-27. I/O Controller Interface Load Access Example

Figure 9-28 shows an I/O store access, comprised of three I/O controller interface operations in this example. As with the example in Figure 9-27, notice that data is transferred only on the 32 bits of the DH bus. As opposed to Figure 9-27, there is no request operation since the 601 has the data ready for the BUC.

The $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal may be asserted on any I/O controller interface operation. If it is asserted, the processor enters a checkstop condition if MSR[ME] is cleared, or it will queue a machine check exception if ME is set. After $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ is asserted, it must be reasserted for all tenures associated with the current I/O controller interface operation until the load last or store last operation occurs. When the operation occurs, the execution unit is released to take the machine check exception. If the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal is asserted for an I/O controller interface operation, the reply operations (store reply or load reply) must not occur. If it does, it causes a checkstop condition. If the $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal is not asserted with each tenure of a given I/O controller interface operation, the result of the assertion of $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ is unpredictable. The 601 may take a machine check exception or cause a checkstop condition.

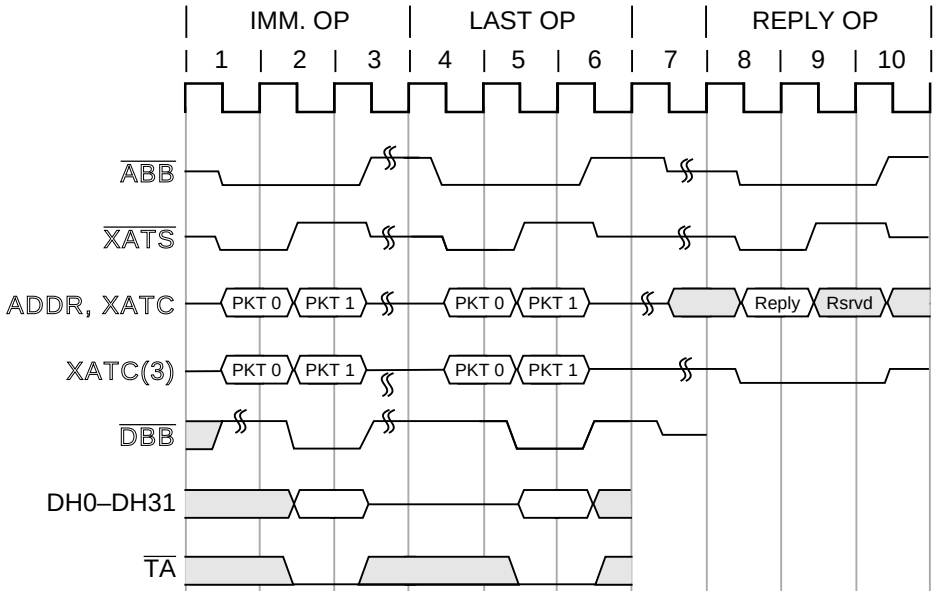


Figure 9-28. I/O Controller Interface Store Access Example

9.7 Interrupt, Checkstop, and Reset Signals

This section describes external interrupts, checkstop operations, and hard and soft reset inputs.

9.7.1 External Interrupt

The maskable interrupt input ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) to the 601 eventually forces the processor to take the external interrupt vector if the MSR(EE) bit is set. See Chapter 5, “Exceptions,” for more information about interrupts and exceptions.

9.7.2 Checkstops

The 601 has two checkstop signals, an input ($\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$) and an output ($\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$). If $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$ is asserted, the 601 halts operations by gating off all internal clocks. The 601 does not assert $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$ if $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$ if asserted.

If $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$ is asserted, the 601 has checkstopped internally. The $\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$ signal can be asserted for various reasons including receiving a $\overline{\text{TEA}}$ signal, as the result of the lack of an instruction dispatch, or internal and external parity errors. For more information on checkstop state, refer to Section 5.4.2.2, “Checkstop State (MSR[ME] = 0).”

Note that checkstop conditions can be disabled by setting bits in the HID0 register. For information, see Section 2.3.3.13.1, “Checkstop Sources and Enables Register—HID0.”

9.7.3 Reset Inputs

The 601 has two reset inputs, described as follows:

- $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$ (hard reset)—The $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$ signal is used for power-on reset sequences, or for situations in which the 601 must go through the entire cold-start sequence of self-tests. Once asserted, this input must be held asserted for a minimum of 300 processor clock cycles to ensure that the processor has had enough time to recognize the input and initialize registers. For more information about hard reset, see Section 2.7.1, “Hard Reset.”
- $\overline{\text{SRESET}}$ (soft reset)—The soft reset input provides warm reset capability. This input can be used to avoid forcing the 601 to complete the cold start sequence. This can be useful to recover from such conditions as check stop or some machine-check states that cannot be restarted.

When either reset input is negated and if the self-test sequence completes without error, the processor attempts to fetch code from the system reset exception vector. The vector is located at offset x'00100' from the exception prefix (all zeros or ones, depending on the setting of the exception prefix bit in the machine state register (MSR[EP]). The EP bit is set for $\overline{\text{HRESET}}$.

9.7.4 Soft Stop Control Signals

The soft stop control signals allow the processor to stop the clocks and bring the activity to a quiescent state in an orderly fashion (as opposed to a hard stop, which simply halts the clocks without regard to system activity).

The soft stop state is entered by asserting the QUIESC_REQ signal. This signal allows the system to complete any bus activities that might be affected by stopping the clocks. When the system is ready to enter the soft stop state, it asserts the $\overline{\text{SYS\_QUIESC}}$ signal. At this time the 601 takes a soft stop.

During a soft stop all internal clocking is disabled after the system activity quiesces in an orderly manner, that is, there are no partially finished instructions. Soft stop is typically used for debugging; during the soft stop, the state bits in the chip can be scanned, examined and scanned back in. The processor returns to normal operation when the RESUME signal is asserted.

9.8 Processor State Signals

This section describes the 601's support for atomic update and memory through the use of the **lwarx**/**stwcx**. opcode pair and the configuration options for the 601 output buffer.

9.8.1 Support for the lwarx/stwcx. Instruction Pair

The Load Word and Reserve Indexed (**lwarx**) and the Store Word Conditional Indexed (**stwcx**.) instructions provide a means for atomic memory updating. Memory can be updated atomically by setting a reservation on the load and checking that the reservation is

still valid before the store is performed. In the 601, the reservations are made on behalf of aligned, 32-byte sections of the memory address space.

The reservation ($\overline{\text{RSRV}}$) output signal is always driven by bus clock cycle and reflects the status of the reservation coherency bit in the reservation address register (see Chapter 4, “Cache and Memory Unit Operation,” for more information). See Section 8.2.9.8, “Reservation (RSRV)—Output,” for information about timing.

9.9 IEEE 1149.1-Compatible Interface

The 601 boundary-scan interface is IEEE 1149.1 compatible only and is not a fully compliant implementation of the IEEE 1149.1 standard. Although the standard allows built-in self-test (BIST), the 601 interface supports only boundary scan. This section describes the 601 interface and its differences with the IEEE 1149.1 interface.

9.9.1 Deviations from the IEEE 1149.1 Boundary-Scan Specifications

The 601 deviates from the IEEE 1149.1 specifications in the following ways:

- In the IEEE 1149.1 specifications, no mode pin is required to use the IEEE 1149.1 boundary-scan interface. However, in the 601, the scan enable mode input ($\overline{\text{BSCAN\_EN}}$) signal must be asserted to run boundary-scan testing. The signal must be pulled up when boundary-scan testing is not being performed.
- Whereas the IEEE 1149.1 specifications indicate that only the TCK signal should be used to clock data-register latches, in the 601 the processor system clock must be active (oscillating) during testing.
- The 601 implements only the PRELOAD portion of the SAMPLE/PRELOAD function.
- IEEE 1149.1 specifies that data on the primary output should be held valid while the processor is in the SHIFT DR state and that data should change only in the UPDATE DR or UPDATE IR states (assuming the instruction is valid). In the 601, no stable values are held on primary outputs for the SHIFT DR state. The SHIFT DR state forces primary outputs to high impedance. Outputs are enabled if the instruction register (IR) contains a valid instruction and the test access port (TAP) is in the UPDATE DR or UPDATE IR state.
- IEEE 1149.1 specifies that asserting the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ signal should reset only the TAP. In the 601, the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ signal resets the TAP, system logic, and the COP.

  IEEE 1149.1 also specifies the use of the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ signal to disable TAP. On the 601, this can be done by negating the $\overline{\text{BSCAN\_EN}}$ signal, which prohibits resetting the TAP and system logic independently. The $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ signal should not be used to disable the TAP in the system functional environment; the $\overline{\text{BSCAN\_EN}}$ signal should be used. The user can use the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ signal as described above or hold TMS high for five TCK cycles. Note that not all SRLs in the 601 are boundary-scan SRLs. The boundary-scan chain includes functional system SRLs.

9.9.2 Additional Information about the IEEE 1149.1 Interface

Note the following points concerning the IEEE 1149.1 interface:

- Because the driver inhibit to all COMMON I/O signals is controlled by a common signal, all COMMON INPUT/OUTPUT devices are either configured as input pins or output pins, as determined by the JTAGEN bit (bit position 418) in the boundary-scan chain.
- Not all latches in the boundary-scan chain are boundary-scan latches.

9.9.3 IEEE 1149.1 Interface Description

There are five device pins used for the IEEE 1149.1 interface on the 601. These pins also perform other functions in the 601 and consequently have signal names describing their other (non-IEEE 1149.1) functions. Table 9-9 shows the signal name, IEEE 1149.1 function and package pin number of the five TAP pins.

Note: The SCAN_SIN must be pulled-up while performing IEEE 1149.1 testing and must be pulled down when IEEE 1149.1 testing is not being performed.

Table 9-9. IEEE Interface Pin Descriptions

Signal Name	IEEE 1149.1 Function	Package Pin
SCAN_CTL	TMS	184
SCAN_CLK	TCK	187
SCAN_SIN	TDI	186
SCAN_OUT	TDO	78
$\overline{\text{HRESET}}$	$\overline{\text{TRST}}$	279

The $\overline{\text{BSCAN\_EN}}$ input pin must be driven low to enable the boundary-scan test mode. Additionally, the $\overline{\text{BSCAN\_EN}}$ input must be pulled-up when boundary-scan testing is not being performed. The addition of this pin is a deviation from the IEEE 1149.1 specification which only defines five pins for the test interface.

9.9.4 IEEE Interface Clock Requirements

In addition to the five standard IEEE 1149.1 signals, the 601 requires that its 2X_PCLK and $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ clock inputs remain active during IEEE 1149.1 operation. The 2X_PCLK and $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ signals can be supplied by automatic test equipment or the clock generation circuits on the unit under test. Timing of the IEEE 1149.1 signals is pseudo asynchronous to the 601 clock inputs and mimics typical IEEE 1149.1 timing. The timing of the IEEE 1149.1 signals can be treated as asynchronous to the 601 clocks as long as they remain asserted for several $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ cycles.

The recommended method of IEEE 1149.1 operation is to limit TCK frequency to 20% or less of the $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ frequency; this allows five $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ cycles for each TCK cycle. This insures that at least one positive transition of $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ will occur on each half cycle of TCK within the required set-up and hold times even if the duty cycle of TCK varies by 20%. Figure 9-29 shows TCK = 0.2 ($\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$) and the duty cycle of TCK ± 20%. Note that there is no edge timing relationship between TCK and 2X_PCLK, even though Figure 9-29 may tend to indicate otherwise.

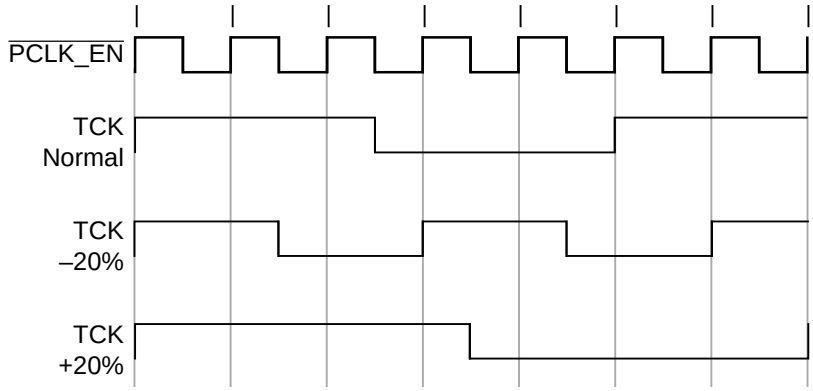


Figure 9-29. IEEE 1149.1 Interface TCK Requirements

Typical $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ frequency will be 50–66 MHz if supplied by the clock circuits on the unit under test. This allows TCK frequencies of 10–13 MHz. In most IEEE 1149.1 testing scenarios, the TCK frequency is likely to be much less than 20% of the $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ frequency. When $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ and 2X_PCLK are provided by the automatic test equipment, it is acceptable to run these clocks at a much lower frequency than they would normally run. For example, if $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ = 5 MHz and 2X_PCLK = 10 MHz, then TCK must be ≤ 1 MHz.

The timing relationships between the IEEE 1149.1 signals is shown in Figure 9-30 and the signal timing requirements are given in Table 9-10. All the timing parameters are specified as a portion of the $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ cycle time.

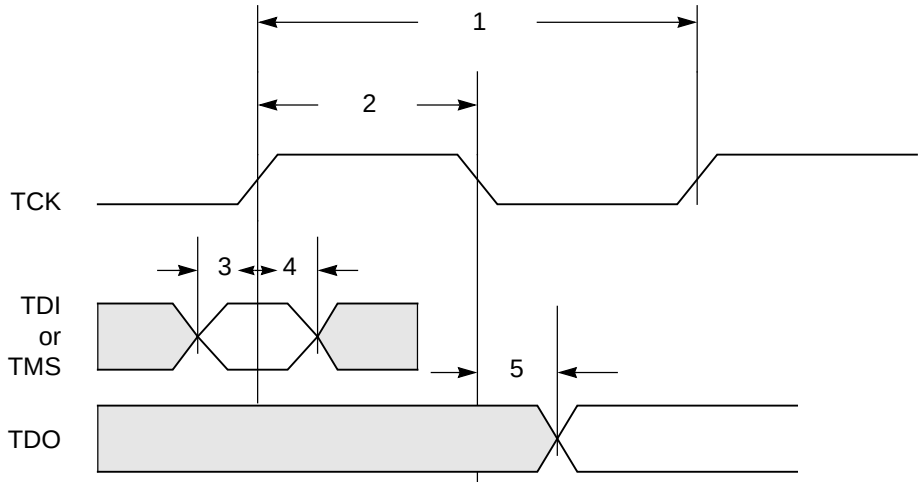


Figure 9-30. IEEE 1149.1 Signal Clocking Requirements

Table 9-10 provides signal timing requirements for the IEEE 1149.1 interface for the signals shown in Figure 9-30.

Table 9-10. IEEE 1149.1 Signal Timing Requirements

Label	Characteristic	Minimum	Maximum
1	TCK frequency		0.2 ($\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$) frequency
2	TCK duty cycle	30%	80%
3	Input setup time for TDI and TMS	One $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ period	
4	Input hold time for TDI and TMS	One $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ period	
5	Output delay time for TDO		1 $\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$ period +10 ns

9.9.5 IEEE 1149.1 Interface Reset Requirements

The $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ ($\overline{\text{HRESET}}$) input is used to reset the TAP, and must be held low for a minimum of 60 TCK cycles to accomplish a reset. The $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ ($\overline{\text{HRESET}}$) signal will reset the whole chip including the TAP controller. This deviates from the IEEE 1149.1 specification in that $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ should only reset the TAP, and not the system logic. The TAP controller can be reset to the “Test-Logic-Reset” state at any time by holding TMS (SCAN_CTL) high for 5 TCK cycles. This 5-cycle reset will only reset the TAP controller to the “Test-Logic-Reset” state and fill the instruction register with all 1’s (BYPASS command), it does not reset the boundary-scan chain or any other chip logic.

The IEEE specification also provides for the ability to disable the TAP via the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ input. This can be performed on the 601 via the $\overline{\text{BSCAN\_EN}}$ input. Using the $\overline{\text{TRST}}$ input to disable the TAP will cause the entire chip to reset. When IEEE 1149.1 testing is not being performed the TAP should be disabled by pulling the $\overline{\text{BSCAN\_EN}}$ input high.

9.9.6 IEEE Interface Instruction Set

The 601 processor implements three IEEE 1149.1 instructions, BYPASS, EXTEST and SAMPLE/PRELOAD. The 601 provides no SAMPLE function in the SAMPLE/PRELOAD instruction, which is a deviation from the IEEE 1149.1 specification. The instruction register is three bits long. Table 9-11 provides the binary encoding for the IEEE 1149.1 instructions.

Table 9-11. IEEE Interface Instruction Set

Instruction	Code
BYPASS	111
EXTEST	000
SAMPLE/PRELOAD	101

When using the EXTEST instruction, note that no stable logic levels will be held on the outputs while in the SHIFT DR state. The 601 outputs are forced to the high impedance state while the TAP controller is in the SHIFT DR state. The 601 outputs will be enabled if a valid instruction is in the instruction register and the TAP controller is in the UPDATE DR or UPDATE IR state. This is a deviation from the IEEE 1149.1 standard which requires outputs to be held valid while in the SHIFT DR state.

9.9.7 IEEE 1149.1 Interface Boundary-Scan Chain

The 601 boundary-scan chain is 424 bits long (0–423.) Not every bit in the boundary- scan chain is directly controllable or observable during inbound and outbound testing in the EXTEST mode. Table 9-12 shows the pin number, signal name, and scan chain bit position for each boundary-scan pin. Note that the pins that do not have boundary-scan latches are shown with N/A in the bit position column. The last column of the table shows which of the 601 pins have an inverter between the package pin and the boundary-scan latch. All bidirectional I/O pins have two boundary latches associated with them, one for the input and one for the output. In the table, the bidirectional I/O pins are shown as type I/O and the boundary-scan chain bit positions for these pins are shown in Input/Output order. Table 9-12 describes the boundary-scan string.

Table 9-12. IEEE 1149.1 Boundary-Scan Chain Description

Pin Number	Signal Name	Type	Bit Position	Inverted
1	TST21	Input	N/A	
3	TST20	Input	N/A	
4	TST16	Input	N/A	
5	TST11	Input	N/A	
7	TST13	Input	N/A	
8	TST15	Input	N/A	
9	TST17	Input	N/A	
10	TST14	Input	N/A	
13	TST9	Input	N/A	
14	TST6	Input	N/A	
15	TST7	Input	N/A	
17	TST8	Input	N/A	
18	A0	I/O	141/108	
19	A1	I/O	142/109	
21	A2	I/O	143/110	
22	A3	I/O	144/111	
23	A4	I/O	145/112	
26	A5	I/O	146/113	
27	A6	I/O	147/114	
28	A7	I/O	148/115	
30	A8	I/O	149/116	
31	A9	I/O	150/117	
32	A10	I/O	151/118	
34	A11	I/O	152/119	
35	A12	I/O	153/120	
36	A13	I/O	154/121	
41	A14	I/O	155/122	
42	A15	I/O	156/123	
43	A16	I/O	157/124	
45	A17	I/O	158/125	
46	A18	I/O	159/126	

Table 9-12. IEEE 1149.1 Boundary-Scan Chain Description (Continued)

Pin Number	Signal Name	Type	Bit Position	Inverted
47	A19	I/O	160/127	
49	A20	I/O	161/128	
50	A21	I/O	162/129	
51	A22	I/O	163/130	
54	A23	I/O	164/131	
55	A24	I/O	165/132	
56	A25	I/O	166/133	
58	A26	I/O	167/134	
59	A27	I/O	168/135	
60	A28	I/O	169/136	
62	A29	I/O	170/137	
63	A30	I/O	171/138	
64	A31	I/O	172/139	
67	AP0	I/O	198/269	
68	AP1	I/O	199/270	
69	AP2	I/O	200/271	
70	TST19	Output	N/A	
71	AP3	I/O	201/272	
72	$\overline{\text{CKSTP\_OUT}}$	Output	423	
74	RUN_NSTOP	Output	N/A	
75	DH31	I/O	376/32	
78	SCAN_OUT	Output	N/A	
80	DH30	I/O	375/31	
81	DH29	I/O	374/30	
82	DH28	I/O	373/29	
83	DH27	I/O	372/28	
84	DH26	I/O	371/27	
85	DH25	I/O	370/26	
86	DH24	I/O	369/25	
90	DH23	I/O	368/24	
91	DH22	I/O	367/23	
93	DH21	I/O	366/22	

Table 9-12. IEEE 1149.1 Boundary-Scan Chain Description (Continued)

Pin Number	Signal Name	Type	Bit Position	Inverted
94	DH20	I/O	365/21	
95	DH19	I/O	364/20	
97	DH18	I/O	363/19	
98	DH17	I/O	362/18	
99	DH16	I/O	361/17	
103	DH15	I/O	360/16	
104	DH14	I/O	359/15	
106	DH13	I/O	358/14	
107	DH12	I/O	357/13	
108	DH11	I/O	356/12	
110	DH10	I/O	355/11	
111	DH9	I/O	354/10	
112	DH8	I/O	353/9	
118	DH7	I/O	352/8	
119	DH6	I/O	351/7	
121	DH5	I/O	350/6	
122	DH4	I/O	349/5	
123	DH3	I/O	348/4	
125	DH2	I/O	347/3	
126	DH1	I/O	346/2	
127	DH0	I/O	345/1	
130	DL31	I/O	413/69	
131	DL30	I/O	412/68	
132	DL29	I/O	411/67	
134	DL28	I/O	410/66	
135	DL27	I/O	409/65	
136	DL26	I/O	408/64	
138	DL25	I/O	407/63	
139	DL24	I/O	406/62	
140	DL23	I/O	405/61	
143	DL22	I/O	404/60	
144	DL21	I/O	403/59	

Table 9-12. IEEE 1149.1 Boundary-Scan Chain Description (Continued)

Pin Number	Signal Name	Type	Bit Position	Inverted
145	DL20	I/O	402/58	
147	DL19	I/O	401/57	
148	DL18	I/O	400/56	
149	DL17	I/O	399/55	
151	DL16	I/O	398/54	
155	DL15	I/O	397/53	
157	DL14	I/O	396/52	
159	DL13	I/O	395/51	
161	DL12	I/O	394/50	
165	DL11	I/O	393/49	
167	DL10	I/O	392/48	
168	DL9	I/O	391/47	
169	DL8	I/O	390/46	
172	DL7	I/O	389/45	
173	DL6	I/O	388/44	
178	DL5	I/O	387/43	
180	DL4	I/O	386/42	
181	DL3	I/O	385/41	
182	DL2	I/O	384/40	
184	SCAN_CTL	Input	N/A	
185	DL1	I/O	383/39	
186	SCAN_SIN	Input	N/A	
187	SCAN_CLK	Input	N/A	
188	DL0	I/O	382/38	
194	DP7	I/O	417/73	
195	DP6	I/O	416/72	
197	DP5	I/O	415/71	
198	DP4	I/O	414/70	
199	DP3	I/O	380/36	
201	DP2	I/O	379/35	
202	DP1	I/O	378/34	
203	DP0	I/O	377/33	

Table 9-12. IEEE 1149.1 Boundary-Scan Chain Description (Continued)

Pin Number	Signal Name	Type	Bit Position	Inverted
210	SC_DRIVE	Input	231	
211	CSE1	Output	87	
212	CSE2	Output	88	
214	$\overline{WT}$	Output	84	Inverted
215	CSE0	Output	86	
216	$\overline{CI}$	Output	83	Inverted
219	$\overline{BR}$	Output	209	Inverted
220	$\overline{DBB}$	I/O	177/217	
221	$\overline{ARTRY}$	I/O	175/326	
222	$\overline{DPE}$	Output	97	
224	$\overline{ABB}$	I/O	205/216	
226	$\overline{TS}$	I/O	186/214	Inverted input only
227	TT1	I/O	191/274	
228	TT0	I/O	190/273	
229	$\overline{XATS}$	I/O	194/211	Inverted input only
231	$\overline{APE}$	Output	98	
232	TSIZ1	I/O	188/279	
233	$\overline{GBL}$	I/O	181/85	Inverted output only
235	$\overline{SHD}$	I/O	182/325	
236	$\overline{TBST}$	I/O	184/277	
237	TSIZ2	I/O	189/280	
238	TT4	Output	286	
241	TSIZ0	I/O	187/278	
243	TC0	Output	89	
244	TT3	I/O	193/276	
246	TST2	Output	N/A	
247	TST3	Output	N/A	
248	TT2	I/O	192/275	
250	$\overline{HP\_SNP\_REQ}$	IN	196	
251	TC1	Output	90	
254	$\overline{RSRV}$	Output	210	
255	TST22	Input	232	

Table 9-12. IEEE 1149.1 Boundary-Scan Chain Description (Continued)

Pin Number	Signal Name	Type	Bit Position	Inverted
256	QUIESC_REQ	Input	N/A	
258	$\overline{\text{CKSTP\_IN}}$	Input	423	
260	$\overline{\text{SYS\_QUIESC}}$	Input	N/A	
262	$\overline{\text{INT}}$	Input	233	
264	$\overline{\text{SRESET}}$	Input	234	
271	$\overline{\text{BCLK\_EN}}$	Input	204	
273	RTC	Input	N/A	
275	$\overline{\text{ESP\_EN}}$	Input	N/A	
277	RESUME	Input	N/A	
279	$\overline{\text{HRESET}}$	Input	N/A	
282	2X_PCLK	Input	N/A	
285	$\overline{\text{PCLK\_EN}}$	Input	N/A	
288	TST5	Input	N/A	
290	$\overline{\text{TA}}$	Input	183	
291	$\overline{\text{TEA}}$	Input	185	Inverted
292	$\overline{\text{DRTRY}}$	Input	180	
295	$\overline{\text{AACK}}$	Input	174	
297	$\overline{\text{DBWO}}$	Input	179	
298	$\overline{\text{BG}}$	Input	176	
299	$\overline{\text{BSCAN\_EN}}$	Input	N/A	
300	$\overline{\text{DBG}}$	Input	178	
302	TST12	Input	N/A	
303	TST18	Input	N/A	
304	TST10	Input	N/A	
N/A	JTAGEN	Internal	420	

Note that the internal signal JTAGEN shown at the end of Table 9-12 is used to control the direction of all the bidirectional pins of the 601. JTAGEN is bit position 420 in the boundary-scan chain and needs to be set by the user when EXTEST operation is desired. Setting the JTAGEN bit to 1 places all the 601 bidirectional I/O pins in the output enabled (drive) mode. When JTAGEN is cleared to 0 all the 601 bidirectional I/O pins are set to the input (receive) mode.

9.10 Using $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ (Data Bus Write Only)

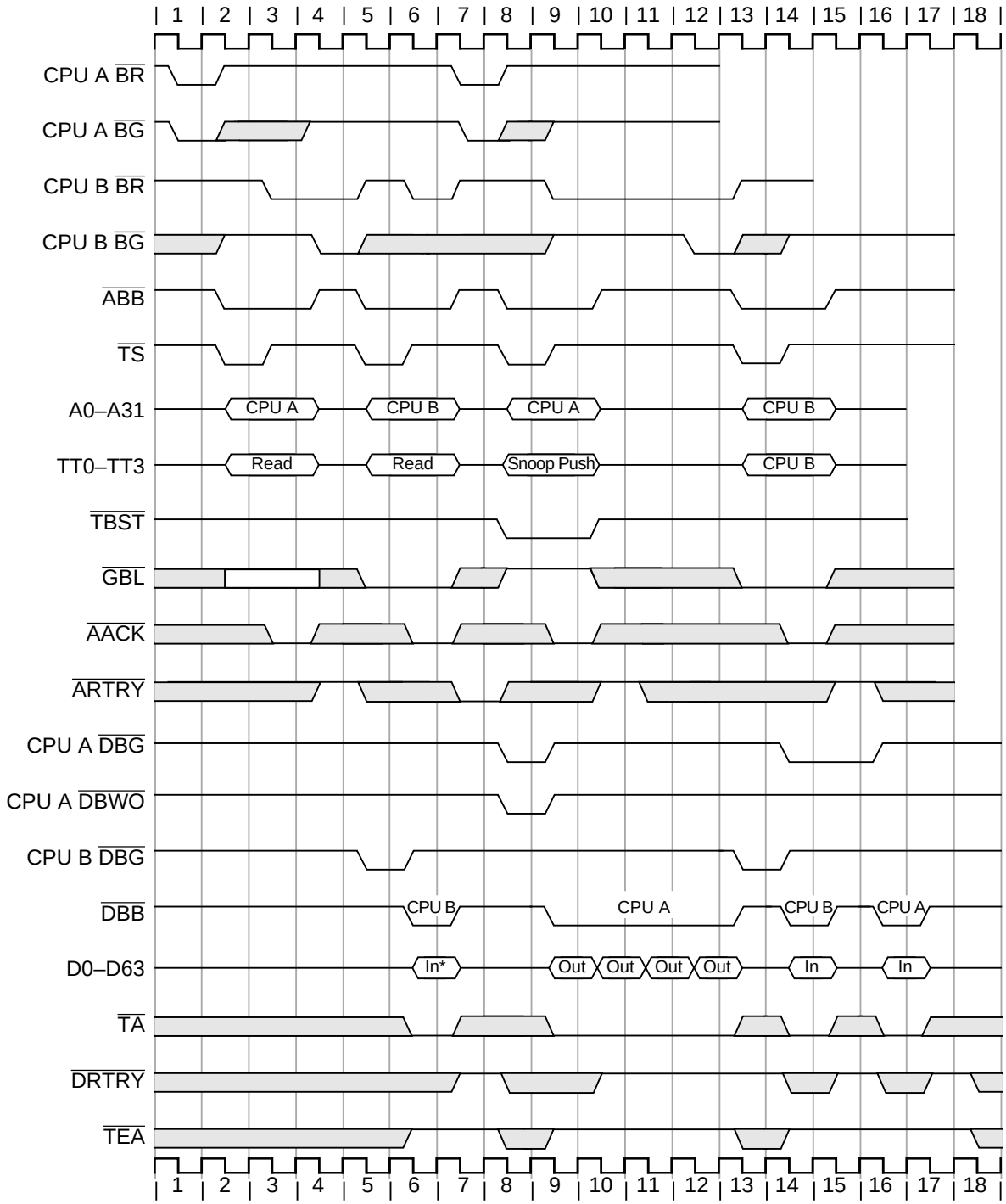
The 601 supports split transaction pipelined transactions. Additionally, the $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ signal allows the 601 to be configured dynamically to source write data out of order with respect to read data.

In general, an address tenure on the bus is followed strictly in order by its associated data tenure. Transactions pipelined by a single 601 complete strictly in order. However, the 601 can run bus transactions out of order only when the external system allows the 601 to perform a cache-sector snoop push-out operation (or other write transaction, if pending in the 601 write queues) between the address and data tenures of a read operation through the use of $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$. This effectively envelopes the write operation within the read operation. This can be useful in some external queued controller scenarios or for more complex memory implementations that can support so-called dump-and-run operations. These include the cache sector cast out of a modified sector caused by a load miss. A replacement copyback operation can be written to memory buffers while the memory location is being accessed for the line fill. The sector is written (dumped) into memory buffers while the memory is accessed for the load operation. Optimally, the replacement copy-back operation can be absorbed by the memory system without affecting load memory latency. Figure 9-31 gives an example of the use of the $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ input.

Figure 9-31 illustrates the following sequence of operations:

1. Processor A begins a read operation. (Bus clock cycle 2)
2. Processor B attempts a global read but is interrupted by a retry from processor A (bus clock cycle 7)
3. Processor A performs a cache-sector snoop push-out operation out of order because of the assertion of $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ (bus clock cycle 8)
4. Processor B successfully performs the global read (bus clock cycle 13)
5. Processor A successfully concludes its original read operation (bus clock cycle 16)

Note that steps 4 and 5 can occur in either order.



* Indicates the 601 flushed this data due to address retry

Figure 9-31. Data Bus Write-Only Transaction

Note that although the 601 can pipeline any write transaction behind the read transaction, special care should be used when using the enveloped write feature. It is envisioned that most system implementations will not need this capability; for these applications $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ should remain negated. In systems where this capability is needed, $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ should be asserted under the following scenario:

1. The 601 initiates a read transaction (either single-beat or burst) by completing the read address tenure with no address retry.
2. Then, the 601 initiates a write transaction by completing the write address tenure, with no address retry.
3. At this point, if $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ is asserted with a qualified data bus grant to the 601, the 601 asserts $\overline{\text{DBB}}$ and drives the write data onto the data bus, out of order with respect to the address pipeline. The write transaction concludes with the 601 negating $\overline{\text{DBB}}$.
4. The next qualified data bus grant signals the 601 to complete the outstanding read transaction by latching the data on the bus. This assertion of $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ should not be accompanied by an asserted $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$.

Any number of bus transactions by other bus masters can be attempted between any of these steps.

Note the following regarding $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$:

- $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ cannot be asserted if no data bus write tenures are pending.
- $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ can be asserted if no data bus read is pending, but it has no effect on write ordering.
- The ordering and presence of data bus writes is determined by the writes in the write queues at the time $\overline{\text{BG}}$ is asserted for the write address (not $\overline{\text{DBG}}$). If a particular write is desired (for example, a cache-sector snoop push-out operation), then $\overline{\text{BG}}$ must be asserted after that particular write is in the queue and it must be the highest priority write in the queue at that time. A cache-sector snoop push-out operations may be the highest priority write, but more than one may be queued.
- Because more than one write may be in the write queue when $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ is asserted for the write address, more than one data bus write may be enveloped by a pending data bus read.

The arbiter must monitor bus operations and coordinate the various masters and slaves with respect to the use of the data bus when $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ is used. Individual $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ signals associated with each bus device should allow the arbiter to synchronize both pipelined and split-transaction bus organizations. Individual $\overline{\text{DBG}}$ signals provide a primitive form of source-level tagging for the granting of the data bus.

Note that use of the $\overline{\text{DBWO}}$ signal allows some operation-level tagging with respect to the 601 and the use of the data bus.

Chapter 10
Instruction Set

This chapter describes individual instructions, including a description of instruction formats and notation and an alphabetical listing of the PowerPC 601 microprocessor's instructions by mnemonic.

10.1 Instruction Formats

Instructions are four bytes long and word-aligned, so when instruction addresses are presented to the processor (as in branch instructions) the two low-order bits are ignored. Similarly, whenever the processor develops an instruction address, its two low-order bits are zero.

Bits 0–5 always specify the primary opcode. Many instructions also have a secondary opcode. The remaining bits of the instruction contain one or more fields for the different instruction formats.

Some instruction fields are reserved or must contain a predefined value as shown in the individual instruction layouts. If a reserved field does not have all bits set to 0, or if a field that must contain a particular value does not contain that value, the instruction form is invalid and the results are as described in Appendix D, "Classes of Instructions".

10.1.1 Split-Field Notation

Some instruction fields occupy more than one contiguous sequence of bits or occupy a contiguous sequence of bits used in permuted order. Such a field is called a split field. In the format diagrams and in the individual instruction layouts, the name of a split field is shown in small letters, once for each of the contiguous sequences. In the pseudocode description of an instruction having a split field and in some places where individual bits of a split field are identified, the name of the field in small letters represents the concatenation of the sequences from left to right. Otherwise, the name of the field is capitalized and represents the concatenation of the sequences in some order, which need not be left to right, as described for each affected instruction.

10.1.2 Instruction Fields

Table 10-1 describes the instruction fields used in the various instruction formats.

Table 10-1. Instruction Formats

Field	Description
AA (30)	Absolute address bit 0 The immediate field represents an address relative to the current instruction address. The effective (logical) address of the branch is either the sum of the LI field sign-extended to 32 bits and the address of the branch instruction or the sum of the BD field sign-extended to 32 bits and the address of the branch instruction. 1 The immediate field represents an absolute address. The effective address of the branch is the LI field sign-extended to 32 bits or the BD field sign-extended to 32 bits.
BD (16–29)	Immediate field specifying a 14-bit signed two's complement branch displacement that is concatenated on the right with b'00' and sign-extended to 32 bits.
BI (11–15)	Field used to specify a bit in the CR to be used as the condition of a branch conditional instruction
BO (6–10)	Field used to specify options for the branch conditional instructions. The encoding is described in Section 3.6.2, “Conditional Branch Control.”
crbA (11–15)	Field used to specify a bit in the CR to be used as a source
crbB (16–20)	Field used to specify a bit in the CR to be used as a source
crbD (6–10)	Field used to specify a bit in the CR or in the FPSCR as the destination of the result of an instruction
crfD (6–8)	Field used to specify one of the CR fields or one of the FPSCR fields as a destination
crfS (11–13)	Field used to specify one of the CR fields or one of the FPSCR fields as a source
CRM (12–19)	Field mask used to identify the CR fields that are to be updated by the **mtcrf** instruction
d(16–31)	Immediate field specifying a 16-bit signed two's complement integer that is sign-extended to 32 bits
FM (7–14)	Field mask used to identify the FPSCR fields that are to be updated by the **mtfsf** instruction
frA (11–15)	Field used to specify an FPR as a source of an operation
frB (16–20)	Field used to specify an FPR as a source of an operation
frC (21–25)	Field used to specify an FPR as a source of an operation
frD (6–10)	Field used to specify an FPR as the destination of an operation
frS (6–10)	Field used to specify an FPR as a source of an operation
IMM (16–19)	Immediate field used as the data to be placed into a field in the FPSCR
LI (6–29)	Immediate field specifying a 24-bit, signed two's complement integer that is concatenated on the right with b'00' and sign-extended to 32 bits
LK (31)	Link bit. 0 Does not update the link register. 1 Updates the link register. If the instruction is a branch instruction, the address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed into the link register.

Table 10-1. Instruction Formats (Continued)

Field	Description
MB (21–25) and ME (26–30)	Fields used in rotate instructions to specify a 32-bit mask consisting of “1” bits from bit MB+32 through bit ME+32 inclusive, and “0” bits elsewhere, as described in Section 3.3.4, “Integer Rotate and Shift Instructions”.
NB (16–20)	Field used to specify the number of bytes to move in an immediate string load or store
opcode (0–5)	Primary opcode field
OE (21)	Used for extended arithmetic to enable setting OV and SO in the XER
rA (11–15)	Field used to specify a GPR to be used as a source or as a destination
rB (16–20)	Field used to specify a GPR to be used as a source
Rc (31)	Record bit 0 Does not update the condition register 1 Updates the condition register (CR) to reflect the result of the operation. For integer instructions, CR bits 0–3 are set to reflect the result as a signed quantity. The result as an unsigned quantity or a bit string can be deduced from the EQ bit. For floating-point instructions, CR bits 4–7 are set to reflect floating-point exception, floating-point enabled exception, floating-point invalid operation exception, and floating-point overflow exception.
rD(6–10)	Field used to specify a GPR to be used as a destination
rS (6–10)	Field used to specify a GPR to be used as a source
SH (16–20)	Field used to specify a shift amount
SIMM (16–31)	Immediate field used to specify a 16-bit signed integer
SPR (11–20)	Field used to specify a special purpose register for the **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions. The encoding is described in Section 3.7.2, “Move to/from Special-Purpose Register Instructions.”
TO (6–10)	Field used to specify the conditions on which to trap. The encoding is described in Section 3.6.9, “Trap Instructions and Mnemonics
UIMM (16–31)	Immediate field used to specify a 16-bit unsigned integer
XO (21–30, 22–30, 26–30, or 30)	Secondary opcode field

10.1.3 Notation and Conventions

The operation of some instructions is described by a semiformal language (pseudocode). See Table 10-2 for a list of pseudocode notation and conventions used throughout this chapter.

Table 10-2. Pseudocode Notation and Conventions

Notation/Convention	Meaning
←	Assignment
$\leftarrow_{iea}$	Assignment of an instruction effective address.
¬	NOT logical operator
*	Multiplication
÷	Division (yielding quotient)
+	Two's-complement addition
-	Two's-complement subtraction, unary minus
=, ≠	Equals and Not Equals relations
<,≤,>,≥	Signed comparison relations
<U,>U	Unsigned comparison relations
?	Unordered comparison relation
&, |	AND, OR logical operators
||	Used to describe the concatenation of two values (i.e., 010 || 111 is the same as 010111)
⊕, ≡	Exclusive-OR, Equivalence logical operators ((a ≡ b) = (a ⊕ ¬ b))
b'*nnnn*'	A number expressed in binary format
x'*nnnn*'	A number expressed in hexadecimal format
(**r**A|0)	The contents of **r**A if the **r**A field has the value 1–31, or the value 0 if the **r**A field is 0
. (period)	As the last character of an instruction mnemonic, a period (.) means that the instruction updates the condition register field.
CEIL(x)	Least integer ≥ x
DOUBLE(x)	Result of converting x form floating-point single format to floating-point double format.
EXTS(x)	Result of extending x on the left with sign bits
GPR(x)	General purpose register x
MASK(x, y)	Mask having 1s in positions x through y (wrapping if x > y) and 0s elsewhere
MEM(x, y)	Contents of y bytes of memory starting at address x
ROTL[32](x, y)	Result of rotating the 64-bit value x||x left y positions, where x is 32 bits long
SINGLE(x)	Result of converting x from floating-point double format to floating-point single format
SPR(x)	Special purpose register x

Table 10-2. Pseudocode Notation and Conventions (Continued)

Notation/Convention	Meaning
x^n	x is raised to the *n*th power
(*n*)x	The replication of x, *n* times (i.e., x concatenated to itself *n*-1 times). (*n*)0 and (*n*)1 are special cases
x[*n*]	*n* is a bit or field within x, where x is a register
TRAP	Invoke the system trap handler
Undefined	An undefined value. The value may vary from one implementation to another, and from one execution to another on the same implementation.
Characterization	Reference to the setting of status bits, in a standard way that is explained in the text
CIA	Current instruction address, which is the 32-bit address of the instruction being described by a sequence of pseudocode. Used by relative branches to set the next instruction address (NIA). Does not correspond to any architected register.
NIA	Next instruction address, which is the 32-bit address of the next instruction to be executed (the branch destination) after a successful branch. In pseudocode, a successful branch is indicated by assigning a value to NIA. For instructions which do not branch, the next instruction address is CIA + 4.
if...then...else...	Conditional execution, indenting shows range, else is optional
Do	Do loop, indenting shows range. “To” and/or “by” clauses specify incrementing an iteration variable, and “while” and/or “until” clauses give termination conditions, in the usual manner.
Leave	Leave innermost do loop, or do loop described in leave statement

Precedence rules for pseudocode operators are summarized in Table 10-3.

Table 10-3. Precedence Rules

Operators	Associativity
x[*n*], function evaluation	Left to right
(*n*)x or replication, x(*n*) or exponentiation	Right to left
unary -, ¬	Right to left
*, ÷	Left to right
+,-	Left to right
||	Left to right
=,≠,<,≤,>,≥,<U,>U,?	Left to right
&,⊕,≡	Left to right
|	Left to right
– (range)	None
←	None

Note that operators higher in Table 10-3 are applied before those lower in the table. Operators at the same level in the table associate from left to right, from right to left, or not at all, as shown.

10.2 Instruction Set

The remainder of this chapter lists and describes the instruction set for the 601. The instructions are listed in alphabetical order by mnemonic and include those instructions that are specific to the 601 that are not specified as part of the PowerPC architecture. Figure 10-1 shows the format for each instruction description page.

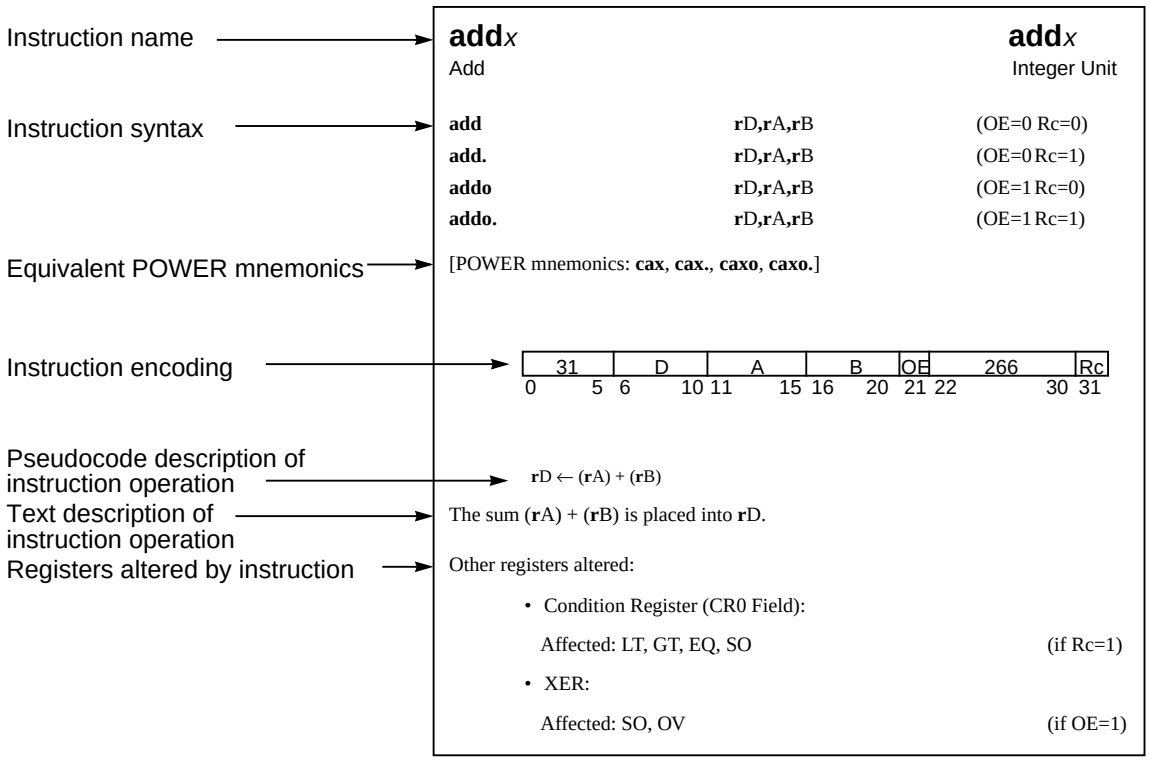
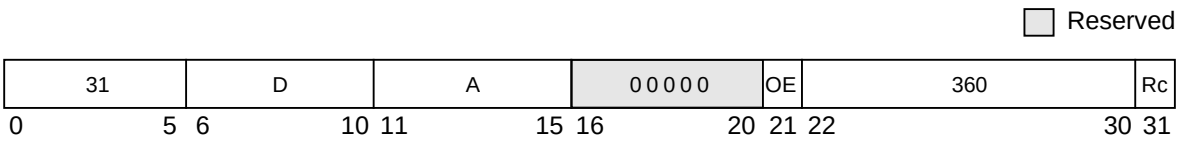


Figure 10-1. Instruction Description

Note in Figure 10-1 that the execution unit that executes the instruction may not be the same for other PowerPC processors.

abs	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=0)
abs.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=1)
abso	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=0)
abso.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

The absolute value |(**r**A)| is placed into **r**D. If **r**A contains the most negative number (i.e., x'8000 0000'), the result of the instruction is the most negative number and sets XER[OV] if overflow signaling is enabled.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

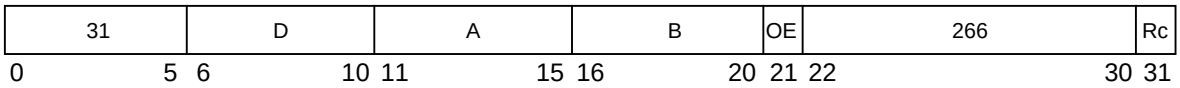
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

add	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
add.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
addo	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
addo.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **cax**, **cax.**, **caxo**, **caxo.**]



rD ← (**r**A) + (**r**B)

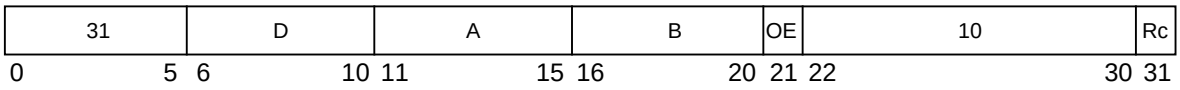
The sum (**r**A) + (**r**B) is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

addc	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
addc.	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
addco	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
addco.	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **a**, **a.**, **ao**, **ao.**]



rD ← (**r**A) + (**r**B)

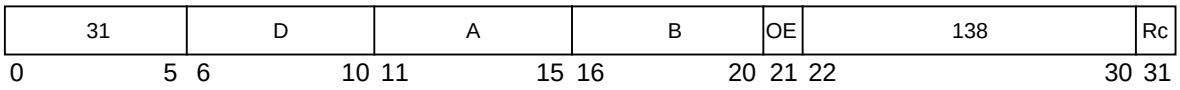
The sum (**r**A) + (**r**B) is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: CA
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

adde	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
adde.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
addeo	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
addeo.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **ae**, **ae.**, **aeo**, **aeo.**]



rD ← (**r**A) + (**r**B) + XER[CA]

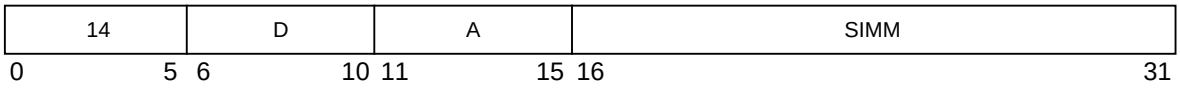
The sum (**r**A) + (**r**B) + XER[CA] is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: CA
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

addi **r**D**,r**A**,**SIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **cal**]



if **r**A=0 then **r**D←EXTS(SIMM)
else **r**D←(**r**A)+EXTS(SIMM)

The sum (**r**A| 0) + SIMM is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

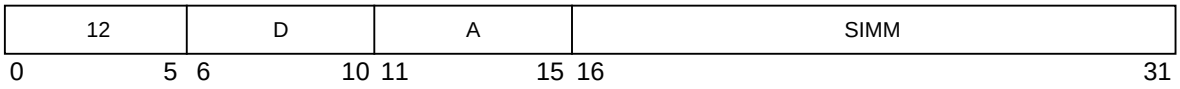
- None

Simplified mnemonics:

subi **r**A**,r**B**,**value equivalent to **addi** **r**D**,r**A**,**-value

addic **r**D**,r**A**,**SIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **ai**]



rD ← (**r**A) + EXTS(SIMM)

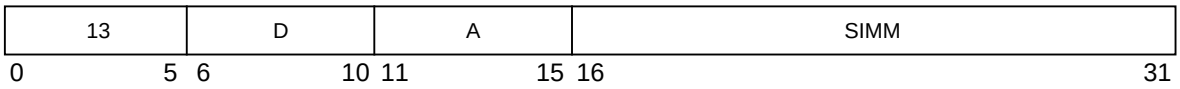
The sum (**r**A) + SIMM is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- XER:
  Affected: CA

addic. **r**D**,r**A**,**SIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **ai.**]



rD ← (**r**A) + EXTS(SIMM)

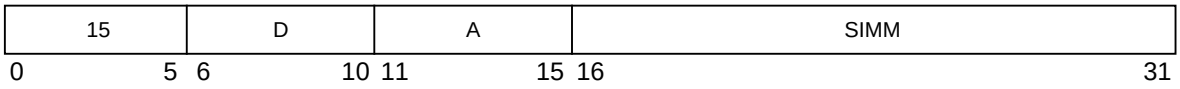
The sum (**r**A) + SIMM is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO
- XER:
  Affected: CA

addis **r**D,**r**A,SIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **cau**]




```
if rA=0 then rD←(SIMM || (16)0)
else         rD←(rA)+(SIMM || (16)0)
```

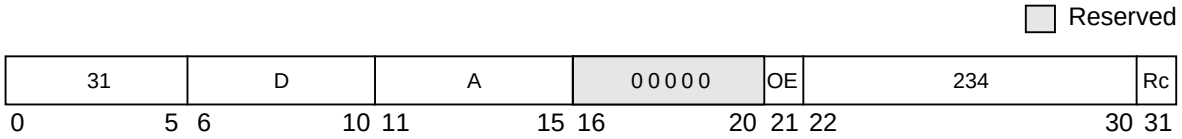
The sum (**r**A| 0) + (SIMM || x'0000') is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- None

addme	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=0)
addme.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=1)
addmeo	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=0)
addmeo.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **ame**, **ame.**, **ameo**, **ameo.**]



rD ← (**r**A) + XER[CA] - 1

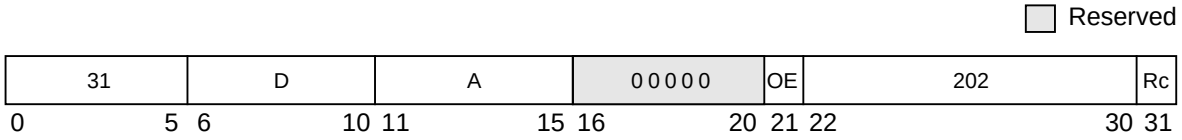
The sum (**r**A)+XER[CA]+x'FFFFFFFF' is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: CA
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

addze	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=0)
addze.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=1)
addzeo	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=0)
addzeo.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **aze**, **aze.**, **azeo**, **azeo.**]



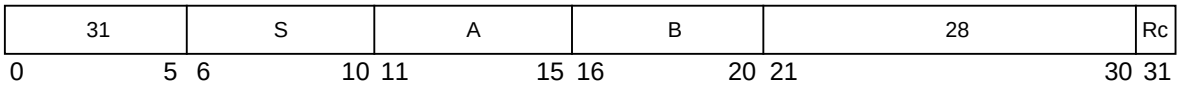
rD ← (**r**A) + XER[CA]

The sum (**r**A)+XER[CA] is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: CA
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

and **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
and. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



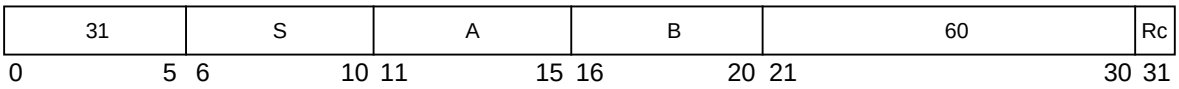
rA ← (**r**S) & (**r**B)

The contents of **r**S is ANDed with the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

andc **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
andc. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



rA←(**r**S)+ ¬ (**r**B)

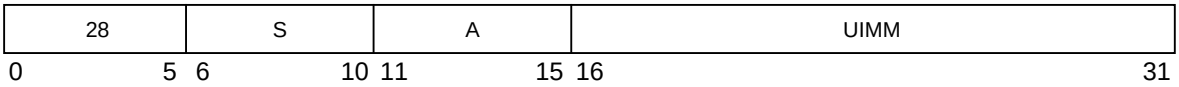
The contents of **r**S is ANDed with the one's complement of the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

andi. **r**A,**r**S,UIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **andil.**]



rA ← (**r**S) & ((48)0 || UIMM)

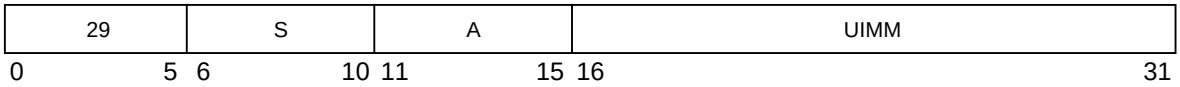
The contents of **r**S is ANDed with x'0000' || UIMM and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO

andis. **r**A,**r**S,UIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **andiu.**]



rA ← (**r**S) + ((32)0 || UIMM || (16)0)

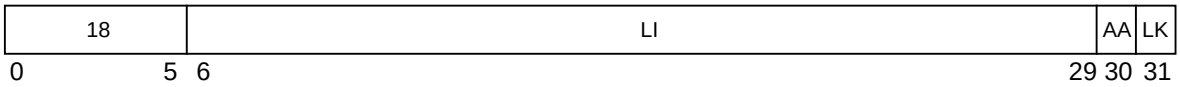
The contents of **r**S is ANDed with x'0000_0000' || UIMM || x'0000' and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO

b	target_addr	(AA=0 LK=0)
ba	target_addr	(AA=1 LK=0)
bl	target_addr	(AA=0LK=1)
bla	target_addr	(AA=1 LK=1)




```
if AA, then NIA ←iea EXTS(LI || b'00')
else      NIA ←iea CIA+EXTS(LI || b'00')
if LK, then
   LR ←iea CIA+4
```

target_addr specifies the branch target address.

If AA=0, then the branch target address is the sum of LI || b'00' sign-extended and the address of this instruction.

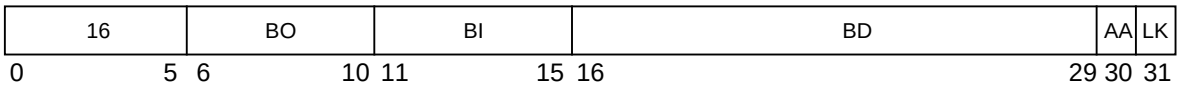
If AA=1, then the branch target address is the value LI || b'00' sign-extended.

If LK=1, then the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed into the link register.

Other registers altered:

Affected: Link Register (LR) (if LK=1)

bc	BO**,**BI**,**target_addr	(AA=0 LK=0)
bca	BO**,**BI**,**target_addr	(AA=1 LK=0)
bcl	BO**,**BI**,**target_addr	(AA=0 LK=1)
bcla	BO**,**BI**,**target_addr	(AA=1 LK=1)




```
if ¬ BO[2], then CTR ← CTR-1
ctr_ok ← BO[2] | ((CTR≠0) ⊕ BO[3])
cond_ok ← BO[0] | (CR[BI] ≡ BO[1])
if ctr_ok & cond_ok, then
   if AA, then NIA ←iea EXTS(BD || b'00')
   else        NIA ←iea CIA+EXTS(BD || b'00')
 if LK, then
   LR ←iea CIA+4
```

The BI field specifies the bit in the Condition Register (CR) to be used as the condition of the branch. The BO field is used as described above.

target_addr specifies the branch target address.

If AA=0, the branch target address is the sum of BD || b'00' sign-extended and the address of this instruction.

If AA=1, the branch target address is the value BD || b'00' sign-extended.

If LK=1, the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed into the link register.

Other registers altered:

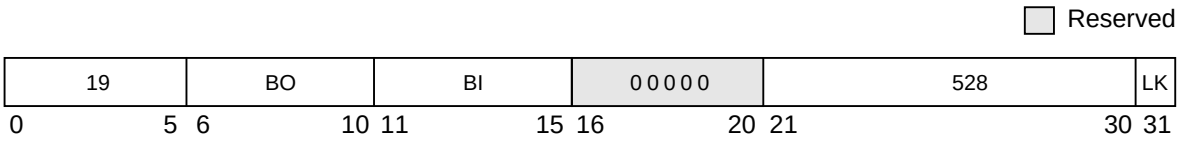
Affected: Count Register (CTR)	(if BO[2]=0)
Affected: Link Register (LR)	(if LK=1)

Simplified mnemonics:

blt	target	equivalent to	**bc**	**12,0,**target
bne	**cr2**,target	equivalent to	**bc**	**4,10,**target
bdnz	target	equivalent to	**bc**	**16,0,**target

bcctr BO**,**BI (LK=0)
bcctrl BO**,**BI (LK=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **bcc**, **bccl**]




```
cond_ok ← BO[0] | (CR[BI] ≡ BO[1])
if cond_ok then
  NIA ←iea CTR || b'00'
 if LK then
  LR ←iea CIA+4
```

The BI field specifies the bit in the condition register to be used as the condition of the branch. The BO field is used as described above, and the branch target address is CTR[0–29] || b'00'.

If LK=1, the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed into the link register.

If the “decrement and test CTR” option is specified (BO[2]=0), the instruction form is invalid.

In the case of BO[2]=0 on the 601, the decremented count register is tested for zero and branches based on this test, but instruction fetching is directed to the address specified by the nondecremented version of the count register. The use of this invalid form of the **bcctr***x* instruction is not recommended. This description is provided for informational purposes only.

Other registers altered:

Affected: Link Register (LR) (if LK=1)

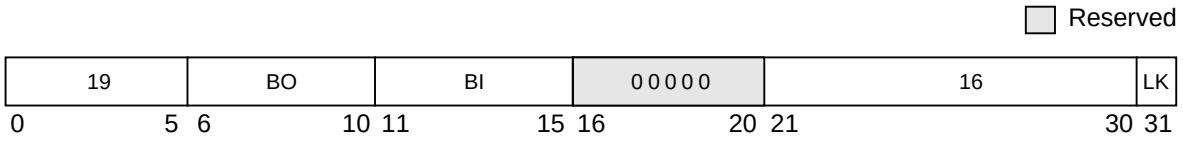
Simplified mnemonics:

bltctr equivalent to **bcctr 12,0**

bnectr cr2 equivalent to **bcctr 4,10**

bclr BO**,**BI (LK=0)
bclrl BO**,**BI (LK=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **bcr**, **bcrl**]




```
if ¬ BO[2] then CTR ← CTR-1
ctr_ok ← BO[2] | ((CTR≠0) ⊕ BO[3])
cond_ok ← BO[0] | (CR[BI] ≡ BO[1])
if ctr_ok & cond_ok then
   NIA ←iea LR || b'00'
 if LK then
   LR ←iea CIA+4
```

The BI field specifies the bit in the condition register to be used as the condition of the branch. The BO field is used as described above, and the branch target address is LR[0–29] || b'00'.

If LK=1 then the effective address of the instruction following the branch instruction is placed into the link register.

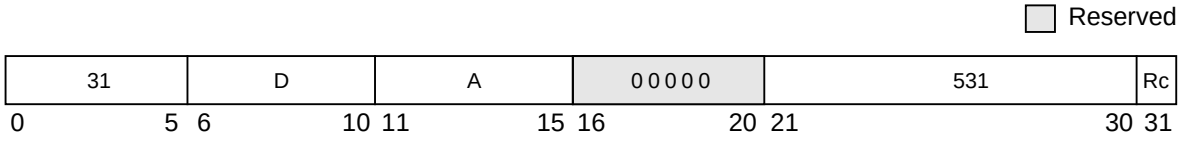
Other registers altered:

Affected: Count Register (CTR) (if BO[2]=0)
Affected: Link Register (LR) (if LK=1)

Simplified mnemonics:

bltlr	equivalent to	**bclr**	**12,0**
bnelr cr2	equivalent to	**bclr**	**4,10**
bdnzlr	equivalent to	**bclr**	**16,0**

clcs **r**D,**r**A



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

This instruction places the cache line size specified by **r**A into **r**D, according to the following:

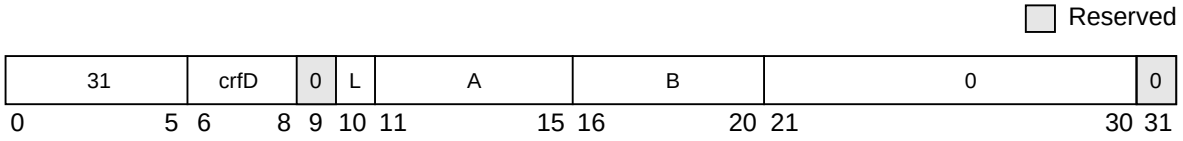
(rA)	Line Size Returned in rD
00xxx	Undefined
010xx	Undefined
01100	Instruction Cache Line Size (64)
01101	Data Cache Line Size (64)
01110	Minimum Line Size (64)
01111	Maximum Line Size (64)
1xxxx	Undefined

The value placed in **r**D shall be 64 for valid values of **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: Undefined (if Rc=1)

cmp **crf**D,L,**r**A,**r**B



a ← (**r**A)
b ← (**r**B)
if a < b then c ← b'100'
else if a > b then c ← b'010'
else c ← b'001'
CR[4***crf**D–4***crf**D+3] ← c || XER[SO]

The contents of **r**A is compared with the contents of **r**B, treating the operands as signed integers. The result of the comparison is placed into CR Field **crf**D.

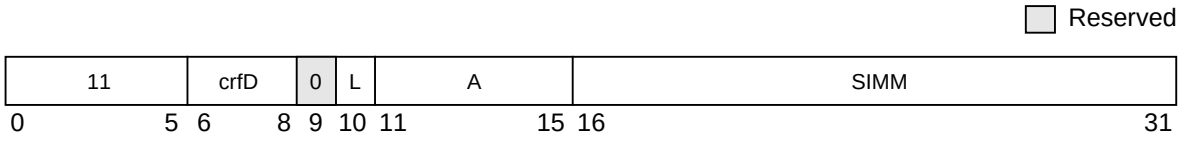
The L operand controls whether the instruction operands are treated as 64- or 32-bit operands, with L=0 indicating 32-bit operands and L=1 indicating 64-bit operands. The state of the L operand does not affect the operation of the 601.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR Field specified by operand **crf**D):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO

cmpi **crf**D,L,**r**A,SIMM



a ← (**r**A)
if a < EXTS(SIMM) then c ← b'100'
else if a > EXTS(SIMM) then c ← b'010'
else c ← b'001'
CR[4***crf**D–4***crf**D+3] ← c || XER[SO]

The contents of **r**A is compared with the sign-extended value of the SIMM field, treating the operands as signed integers. The result of the comparison is placed into CR Field **crf**D.

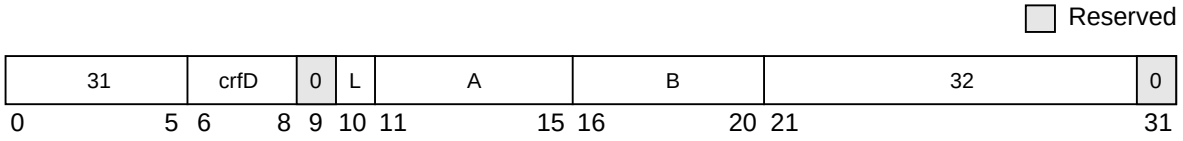
The L operand controls whether the instruction operands are treated as 64- or 32-bit operands, with L=0 indicating 32-bit operands and L=1 indicating 64-bit operands. The state of the L operand does not affect the operation of the 601.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR Field specified by operand **crf**D):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO

cmpl **crf**D,L,**r**A,**r**B



a ← (**r**A)
b ← (**r**B)
if a <U b then c ← b'100'
else if a >U b then c ← b'010'
else c ← b'001'
CR[4***crf**D–4***crf**D+3] ← c || XER[SO]

The contents of **r**A is compared with the contents of **r**B, treating the operands as unsigned integers. The result of the comparison is placed into CR Field **crf**D.

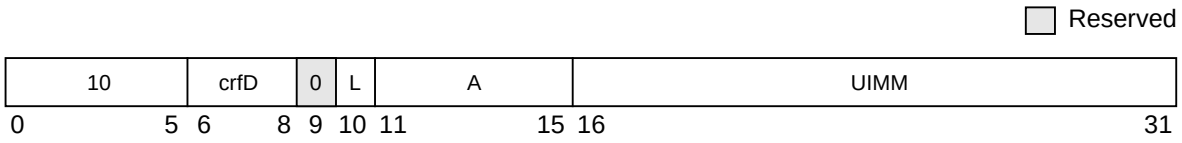
The L operand controls whether the instruction operands are treated as 64- or 32-bit operands, with L=0 indicating 32-bit operands and L=1 indicating 64-bit operands. The state of the L operand does not affect the operation of the 601.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR Field specified by operand **crf**D):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO

cmpli **crf**D,L,**r**A,UIMM



a ← (**r**A)
if a <U ((48)0 || UIMM) then c ← b'100'
else if a >U ((48)0 || UIMM) then c ← b'010'
else c ← b'001'
CR[4***crf**D–4***crf**D+3] ← c || XER[SO]

The contents of **r**A is compared with x'0000' || UIMM, treating the operands as unsigned integers. The result of the comparison is placed into CR Field **crf**D.

The L operand controls whether the instruction operands are treated as 64- or 32-bit operands, with L=0 indicating 32-bit operands and L=1 indicating 64-bit operands. The state of the L operand does not affect the operation of the 601.

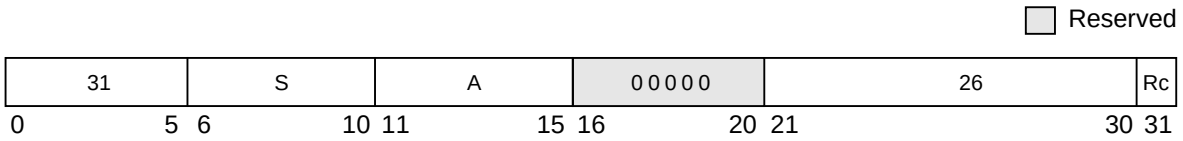
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR Field specified by operand **crf**D):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO

cntlzw **r**A,**r**S (Rc=0)
cntlzw. **r**A,**r**S (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **cntlz**, **cntlz.**]




```
n ← 0
do while n < 32
   if rS[n]=1 then leave
   n ← n+1
rA ← n
```

A count of the number of consecutive zero bits starting at bit 0 of **r**S is placed into **r**A. This number ranges from 0 to 32, inclusive.

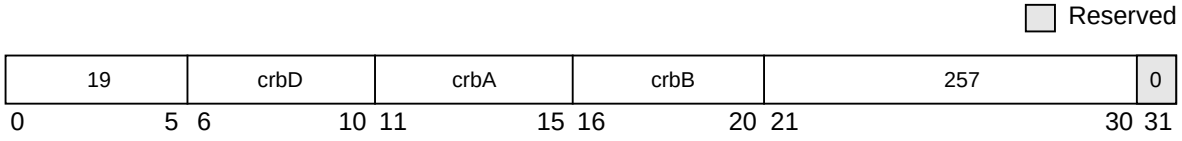
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

For count leading zeros instructions, if Rc=1 then LT is cleared to zero in the CR0 field.

crand **crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B



CR[**crb**D] ← CR[**crb**A] & CR[**crb**B]

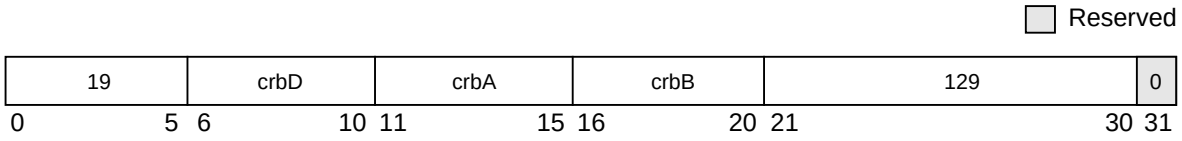
The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ANDed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B. The result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register:

  Affected: Bit specified by operand **crb**D

crandc **crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B



CR[**crb**D] ← CR[**crb**A] & ¬ CR[**crb**B]

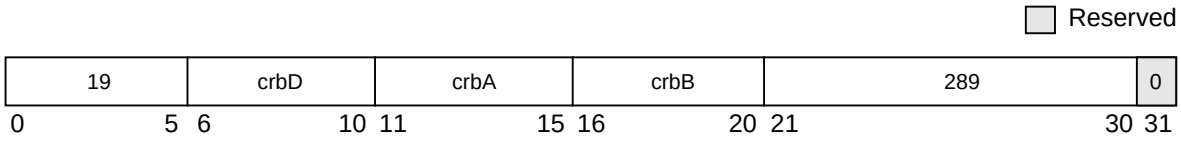
The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ANDed with the complement of the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B and the result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register:

  Affected: Bit specified by operand **crb**D

creqv **crb**D**,crb**A**,crb**B



CR[**crb**D] ← CR[**crb**A] ≡ CR[**crb**B]

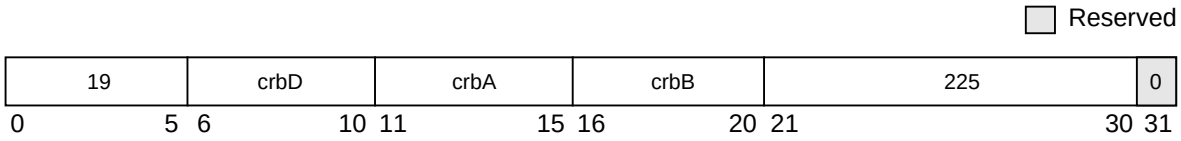
The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is XORed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B and the complemented result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register:

  Affected: Bit specified by operand **crb**D

crnand **crb**D**,crb**A**,crb**B



CR[**crb**D] ← ¬ (CR[**crb**A] & CR[**crb**B])

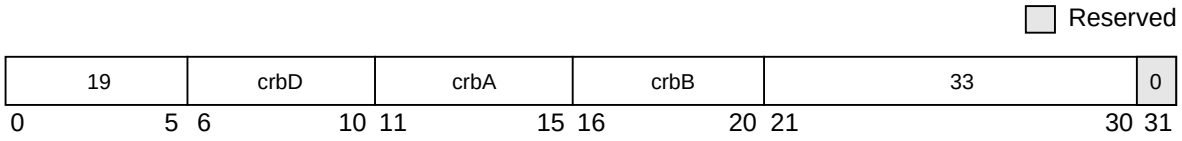
The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ANDed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B and the complemented result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register:

  Affected: Bit specified by operand **crb**D

crnor **crb**D**,crb**A**,crb**B



CR[**crb**D] ← ¬ (CR[**crb**A] | CR[**crb**B])

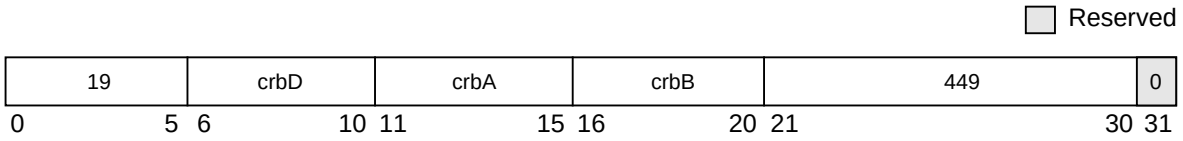
The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ORed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B and the complemented result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register:

  Affected: Bit specified by operand **crb**D

cror **crb**D**,crb**A**,crb**B



CR[**crb**D] ← CR[**crb**A] | CR[**crb**B]

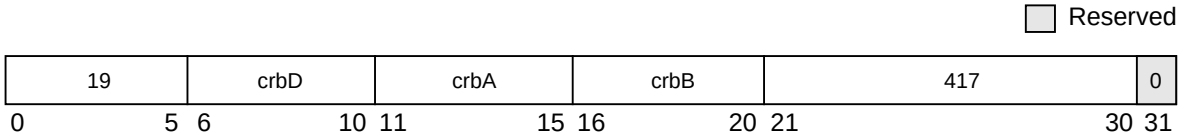
The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ORed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B. The result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register:

  Affected: Bit specified by operand **crb**D

crorc **crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B



CR[**crb**D] ← CR[**crb**A] | ¬ CR[**crb**B]

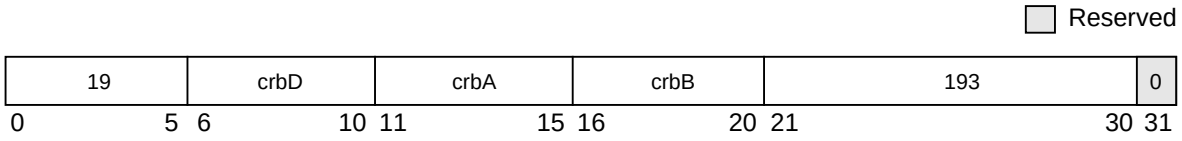
The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is ORed with the complement of the condition register bit specified by **crb**B and the result is placed into the condition register bit specified by **crb**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register:

  Affected: Bit specified by operand **crb**D

crxor **crb**D,**crb**A,**crb**B



CR[**crb**D] ← CR[**crb**A] ⊕ CR[**crb**B]

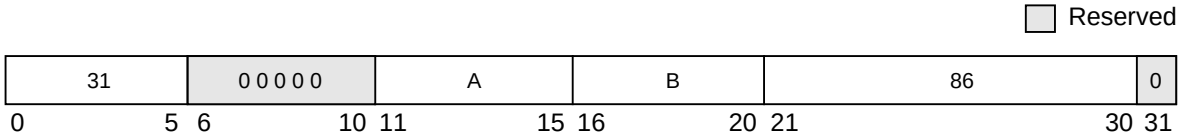
The bit in the condition register specified by **crb**A is XORed with the bit in the condition register specified by **crb**B and the result is placed into the condition register specified by **crb**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register:

  Affected: Bit specified by **crb**D

dcbf **r**A,**r**B



EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

The action taken depends on the memory mode associated with the target address, and on the state of the block. The list below describes the action taken for the various cases. The actions described will be executed regardless of whether the page or block containing the addressed byte is designated as write-through or if it is in caching-inhibited or caching allowed mode.

- Coherency Required (WIM = xx1)
  - — Unmodified Block—Invalidates copies of the block in the caches of all processors.
  - — Modified Block—Copies the block to memory. Invalidates copies of the block in the caches of all processors.
  - — Absent Block—If modified copies of the block are in the caches of other processors, causes them to be copied to memory and invalidated. If unmodified copies are in the caches of other processors, causes those copies to be invalidated.
- Coherency Not Required (WIM = xx0)
  - — Unmodified Block—Invalidates the block in the processor's cache.
  - — Modified Block—Copies the block to memory. Invalidates the block in the processor's cache.
  - — Absent Block—Does nothing.

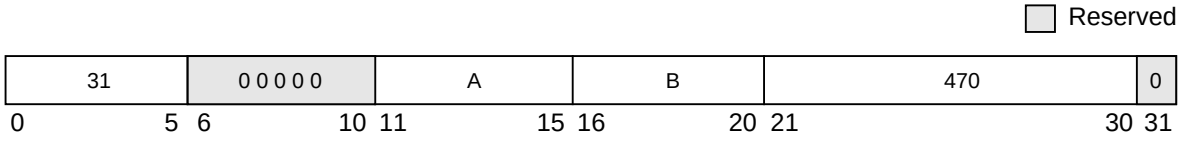
This instruction operates as a load from the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection.

If EA specifies a memory address for which SR[T]=1, the instruction is treated as a no-op.

Other registers altered:

- None

dcbi **r**A,**r**B



EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

The action taken is dependent on the memory mode associated with the target, and the state of the block. The list below describes the action to take if the block containing the byte addressed by EA is or is not in the cache. The actions described must be executed regardless of whether the page containing the addressed byte is in caching-inhibited or caching-allowed mode. This is a supervisor-level instruction.

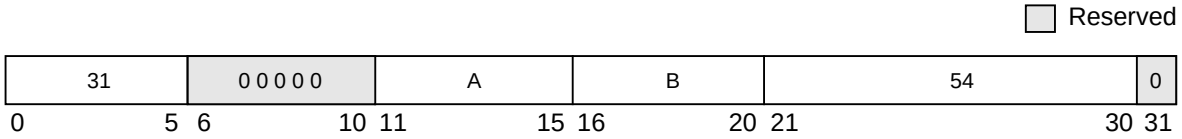
- Coherency Required (WIM = xx1)
  - — Unmodified Block—Invalidates copies of the block in the caches of all processors.
  - — Modified Block—Invalidates copies of the block in the caches of all processors. (Discards the modified contents.)
  - — Absent Block—If copies are in the caches of any other processor, causes the copies to be invalidated. (Discards any modified contents.)
- Coherency Not Required (WIM = xx0)
  - — Unmodified Block—Invalidates the block in the local cache.
  - — Modified Block—Invalidates the block in the local cache. (Discards the modified contents.)
  - — Absent Block—No action is taken.

This instruction operates as a store to the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection. The reference and change bits are modified appropriately. If EA specifies a memory address for which SR[T]=1, the instruction is treated as a no-op.

Other registers altered:

- None

dcbst **r**A,**r**B



EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

If the block containing the byte addressed by EA is in coherency required mode, and a block containing the byte addressed by EA is in the data cache of any processor and has been modified, the writing of it to main memory is initiated.

If the block containing the byte addressed by EA is in coherency not required mode, and a block containing the byte addressed by EA is in the data cache of this processor and has been modified, the writing of it to main memory is initiated.

The function of this instruction is independent of the write-through and caching inhibited/allowed modes of the page or block containing the byte addressed by EA.

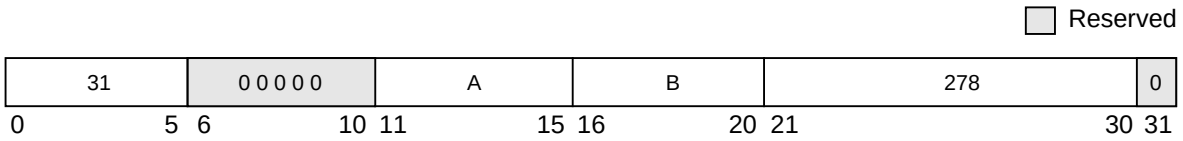
This instruction operates as a load from the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection.

If the EA specifies a memory address for an I/O controller interface segment (segment register T-bit=1), the **dcbst** instruction operates as a no-op.

Other registers altered:

- None

dcbt **r**A,**r**B



EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

This instruction is a hint that performance will probably be improved if the block containing the byte addressed by EA is fetched into the data cache, because the program will probably soon load from the addressed byte. Executing **dcbt** does not cause any exceptions to be invoked.

This instruction operates as a load from the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection except that no exception occurs in the case of a translation fault or protection violation.

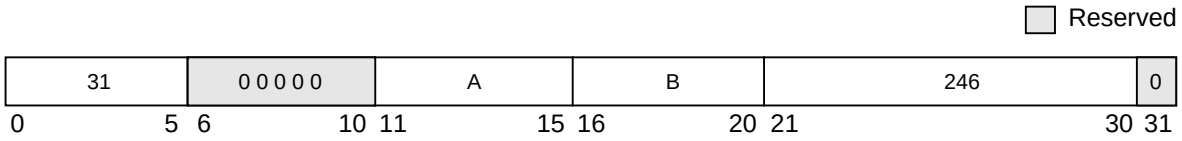
If the EA specifies a memory address for which SR[T]=1, the instruction is treated as a no-op.

The purpose of this instruction is to allow the program to request a cache block fetch before it is actually needed by the program. The program can later perform loads to put data into registers. However, the processor is not obliged to load the addressed block into the data cache. If the sector is loaded, it will be either in shared state or exclusive unmodified state.

Other registers altered:

- None

dcbtst **r**A,**r**B



EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

This instruction is a hint that performance will probably be improved if the block containing the byte addressed by EA is fetched into the data cache, because the program will probably soon store into the addressed byte. Executing **dcbtst** does not cause any exceptions to be invoked.

This instruction operates as load from the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection, except that no exception occurs in the case of a translation fault or protection violation. Since **dcbtst** does not modify memory, it is not recorded as a store (the change (C) bit is not modified in the page tables).

If the EA specifies a memory address for which SR[T]=1, the instruction is treated as a no-op.

The **dcbtst** instruction behaves exactly like the **dcbt** instruction as implemented on the 601.

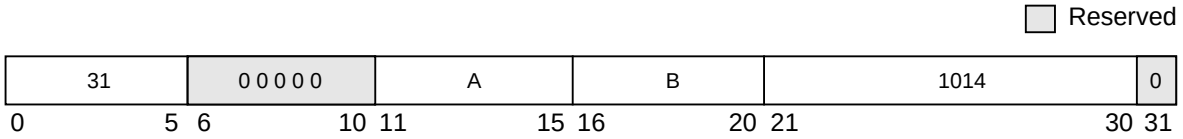
The purpose of this instruction is to allow the program to schedule a cache block fetch before it is actually needed by the program. The program can later perform stores to put data into memory. However the processor is not obliged to load the addressed block into the data cache.

Other registers altered:

- None

dcbz **r**A,**r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **dclz**]



EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

If the block containing the byte addressed by EA is in the data cache, all bytes of the block are cleared to zero.

If the block containing the byte addressed by EA is not in the data cache and the corresponding page is caching allowed, the block is allocated in the data cache without fetching the block from main memory, and all bytes of the block are set to zero.

If the page containing the byte addressed by EA is caching inhibited or write-through, then the alignment exception handler is invoked and the handler should clear to zero all bytes of the area of memory that corresponds to the addressed block. If the block containing the byte addressed by EA is in coherency required mode, and the block exists in the data cache(s) of any other processor(s), it is kept coherent in those caches.

This instruction is treated as a store to the addressed byte with respect to address translation and protection.

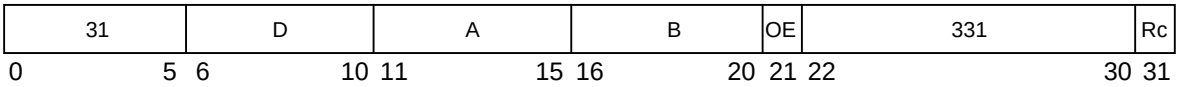
If the EA specifies a memory address for an I/O controller interface segment (segment register T-bit=1), the **dcbz** instruction is treated as a no-op.

See Chapter 5, “Exceptions” for a discussion about a possible delayed machine check exception that can occur by use of **dcbz** if the operating system has set up an incorrect memory mapping.

Other registers altered:

- None

div	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
div.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
divo	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
divo.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

The quotient [(**r**A)||(MQ)]÷(**r**B) is placed into **r**D. The remainder is placed in the MQ register. The remainder has the same sign as the dividend, except that a zero quotient or a zero remainder is always positive. The results obey the equation:

dividend=(divisor x quotient)+remainder

where dividend is the original (**r**A)||(MQ), divisor is the original (**r**B), quotient is the final (**r**D), and remainder is the final (MQ).

If Rc=1, then CR bits LT, GT, and EQ reflect the remainder. If OE=1, then SO and OV are set to one if the quotient cannot be represented in 32 bits. For the case of $-2^{31} \div -1$, the MQ register is cleared to zero and -2^{31} is placed in **r**D. For all other overflows, MQ, **r**D and the CR0 field are undefined (if Rc=1).

Other registers altered:

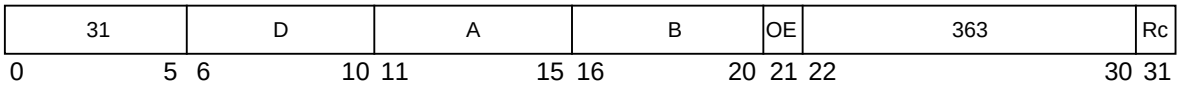
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

divs	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
divs.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
divso	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
divso.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

The quotient (**r**A)÷(**r**B) is placed into **r**D. The remainder is placed in the MQ register. The remainder has the same sign as the dividend, except that a zero quotient or a zero remainder is always positive. The results obey the equation:

dividend=(divisor∗quotient)+remainder

where dividend is the original **r**A, divisor is the original **r**B, quotient is the final **r**D, and remainder is the final MQ.

If Rc=1 then the CR bits LT, GT, and EQ reflect the remainder. If OE=1,then SO and OV are set to one if the quotient cannot be represented in 32 bits (e.g., as is the case when the divisor is zero, or the dividend is -2^{31} and the divisor is –1), the MQ register is cleared to zero and -2^{31} is placed in **r**D. For all other overflows, MQ, **r**D and the CR0 field (if Rc=1) are undefined.

Other registers altered:

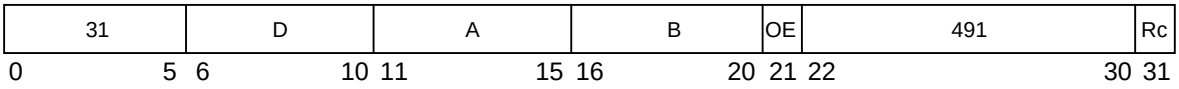
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

  Affected: SO, OV (If OE=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

divw	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
divw.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
divwo	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
divwo.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)



dividend ←(**r**A)
divisor ←(**r**B)
rD ← dividend ÷ divisor

Register **r**A is the 32-bit dividend. Register **r**B is the 32-bit divisor. A 32-bit quotient is formed and placed into **r**D. The remainder is not supplied as a result.

Both operands are interpreted as signed integers. The quotient is the unique signed integer that satisfies the following:

dividend=(quotient times divisor)+r

where

$0 \leq r < |\text{divisor}|$

if the dividend is non-negative, and

$-|\text{divisor}| < r \leq 0$

if the dividend is negative.

If an attempt is made to perform any of the divisions

x'8000 0000' / –1

<anything> / 0

then the contents of **r**D are undefined as are (if Rc=1) the contents of the LT, GT, and EQ bits of the CR0 field. In these cases, if OE=1 then OV is set to 1.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

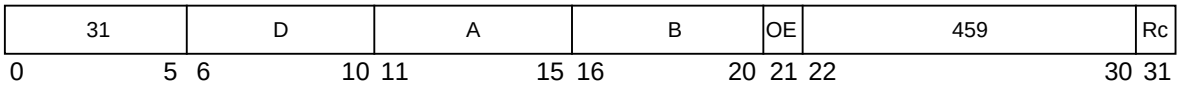
- XER:

  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

The 32-bit signed remainder of dividing **r**A by **r**B can be computed as follows, except in the case that **r**A=–2^{31} and **r**B=–1.

```
divw    rD,rA,rB        # rD=quotient
mull    rD,rD,rB        # rD=quotient*divisor
subf    rD,rD,rA        # rD=remainder
```

divwu	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
divwu.	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
divwuo	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
divwuo.	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)



dividend ← (**r**A)
divisor ← (**r**B)
rD ← dividend ÷ divisor

The dividend is the contents of **r**A. The divisor is the contents of **r**B. A 32-bit quotient is formed and placed into **r**D. The remainder is not supplied as a result.

Both operands are interpreted as unsigned integers. The quotient is the unique unsigned integer that satisfies the following:

dividend=(quotient ∗ divisor)+r

where

0≤ r < divisor.

If an attempt is made to divide by zero, the contents of **r**D are undefined as are (if Rc=1) the contents of the LT, GT, and EQ bits of the CR0 field. In this case, if OE=1 then OV is set to 1.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

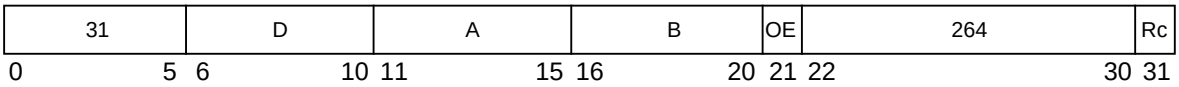
- XER:

  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

The 32-bit signed remainder of dividing **r**A by **r**B can be computed as follows, except in the case that **r**A=–2^{31} and **r**B=–1.

```
divwu    rD,rA,rB     # rD=quotient
mull     rD,rD,rB     # rD=quotient*divisor
subf     rD,rD,rA     # rD=remainder
```

doz	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
doz.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
dozo	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
dozo.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

The sum ¬ (**r**A)+(**r**B) +1 is placed into **r**D. If the value in **r**A is algebraically greater than the value in **r**B, **r**D is set to zero. If Rc=1, the CR0 field is set to reflect the result placed in **r**D (i.e., if **r**D is set to zero, EQ is set to 1). If OE=1, OV can only be set on positive overflows.

Other registers altered:

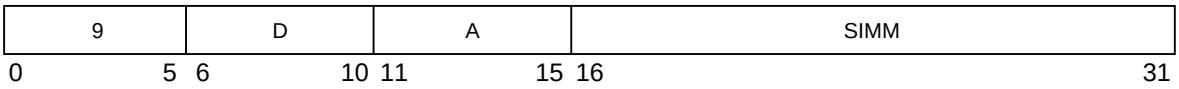
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

dozi **r**D**,r**A**,**SIMM



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

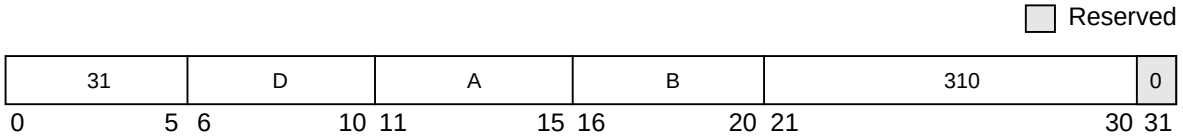
The sum ¬ (**r**A)+SIMM+1 is placed into **r**D. If the value in **r**A is algebraically greater than the value of the SIMM field, **r**D is set to zero.

Other registers altered:

- None

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

eciwx **r**D,**r**A,**r**B




```
if rA=0 then b ← 0
else        b ← (rA)
EA ← b+(rB)
if EAR[E]=1 then
    paddr ← address translation of EA
    send load request for paddr to device identified by EAR[RID]
    rD ← word from device
else
    DSISR[11] ← 1
    generate data access exception
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

If EAR[E]=1, a load request for the physical address corresponding to EA is sent to the device identified by EAR[RID], bypassing the cache. The word returned by the device is placed in **r**D. The EA sent to the device must be word aligned, or the results will be boundedly undefined.

If EAR[E]=0, a data access exception is taken, with bit 11 of DSISR set to 1.

The **eciwx** instruction is supported for effective addresses that reference ordinary (SR[T]=0) segments, and for EAs mapped by the BAT registers. The **eciwx** instruction support EAs generated when MSR[DT]=0 and MSR[DT]=1 when executed by the 601, while the PowerPC architecture only supports EAs generated when MSR[DT]=1. The instruction is treated as a no-op for EAs that correspond to I/O controller interface (SR[T]=1) segments.

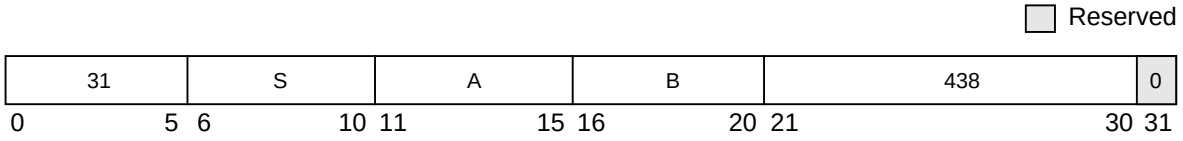
The access caused by this instruction is treated as a load from the location addressed by EA with respect to protection and reference and change recording.

This instruction is defined as an optional instruction by the PowerPC architecture, and may not be available in all PowerPC implementations.

Other registers altered:

- None

ecowx **r**S,**r**A,**r**B




```
if rA=0 then b ← 0
else            b ← (rA)
EA ← b+(rB)
if EAR[E]=1 then
    paddr ← address translation of EA
    send store request for paddr to device identified by EAR[RID]
    send rS to device
else
    DSISR[11] ← 1
    generate data access exception
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

If EAR[E]=1, a store request for the physical address corresponding to EA and the contents of **r**S are sent to the device identified by EAR[RID], bypassing the cache. The EA sent to the device must be word aligned, or the results will be boundedly undefined.

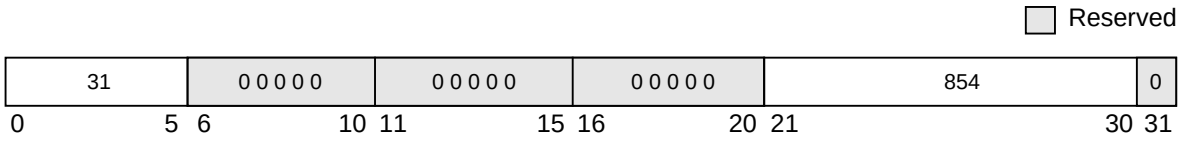
If EAR[E]=0, a data access exception is taken, with bit 11 of DSISR set to 1.

The **ecowx** instruction is supported for effective addresses that reference ordinary (SR[T]=0) segments, and for EAs mapped by the BAT registers. The **ecowx** instruction support EAs generated when MSR[DT]=0 and MSR[DT]=1 when executed by the 601, while the PowerPC architecture only supports EAs generated when MSR[DT]=1. The instruction is treated as a no-op for EAs that correspond to I/O controller interface (SR[T]=1) segments. The access caused by this instruction is treated as a store to the location addressed by EA with respect to protection and reference and change recording.

This instruction is defined as an optional instruction by the PowerPC architecture, and may not be available in all PowerPC implementations.

Other registers altered:

- None



The **eieio** instruction provides an ordering function for the effects of load and store instructions executed by a given processor. Executing an **eieio** instruction ensures that all memory accesses previously initiated by the given processor are complete with respect to main memory before any memory accesses subsequently initiated by the given processor access main memory.

The synchronize (**sync**) and the enforce in-order execution of I/O (**eieio**) instructions are handled in the same manner internally to the 601. These instructions delay execution of subsequent instructions until all previous instructions have completed to the point that they can no longer cause an exception, all previous memory accesses are performed globally, and the **sync** or **eieio** operation is broadcast onto the 601 bus interface.

eieio orders loads/stores to caching inhibited memory and stores to write-through required memory.

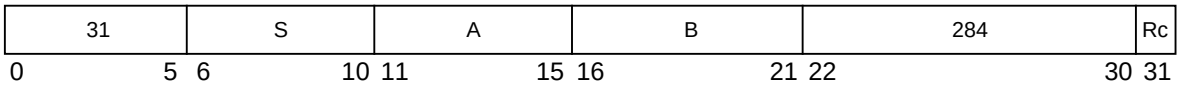
Other registers altered:

- None

The **eieio** instruction is intended for use only in performing memory-mapped I/O operations and to prevent load/store combining operations in main memory. It can be thought of as placing a barrier into the stream of memory accesses issued by a processor, such that any given memory access appears to be on the same side of the barrier to both the processor and the I/O device.

The **eieio** instruction may complete before previously initiated memory accesses have been performed with respect to other processors and mechanisms.

eqv **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
eqv. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



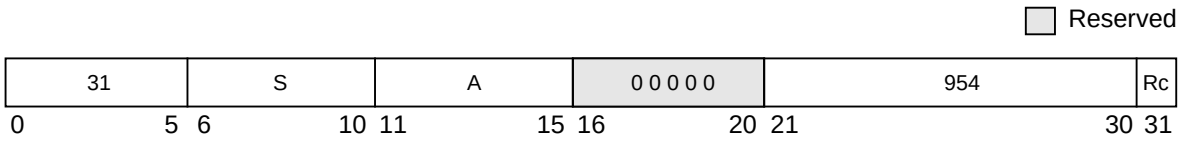
rA ← ((**r**S) ≡ (**r**B))

The contents of **r**S is XORed with the contents of **r**B and the complemented result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

extsb **r**A,**r**S (Rc=0)
extsb. **r**A,**r**S (Rc=1)



S ← **r**S[24]
rA[24–31] ← **r**S[24–31]
rA[0–23] ← (24)S

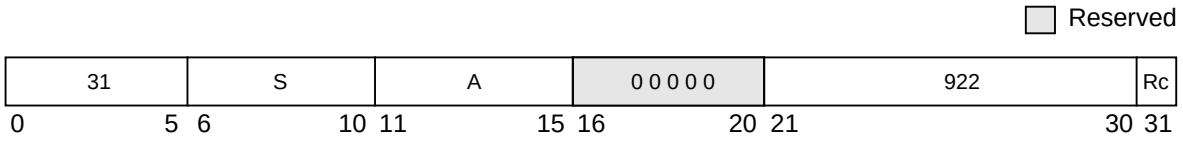
The contents of **r**S[24–31] are placed into **r**A[24–31]. Bit 24 of **r**S is placed into **r**A[0–23].

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

extsh **r**A,**r**S (Rc=0)
extsh. **r**A,**r**S (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **exts**, **exts.**]



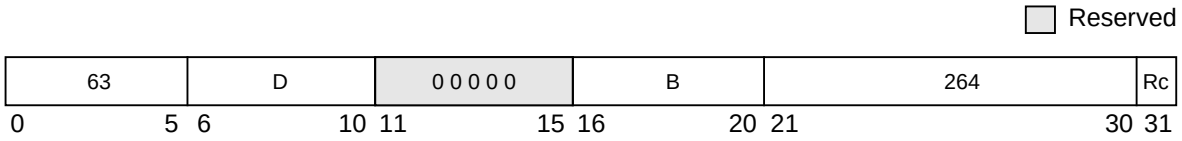
S ← **r**S[16]
rA[16–31]← **r**S[16–31]
rA[0–15] ← (16)S

The contents of **r**S[16–31] are placed into **r**A[16–31]. Bit 16 of **r**S is placed into **r**A[0–15].

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

fabs **fr**D,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fabs. **fr**D,**fr**B (Rc=1)



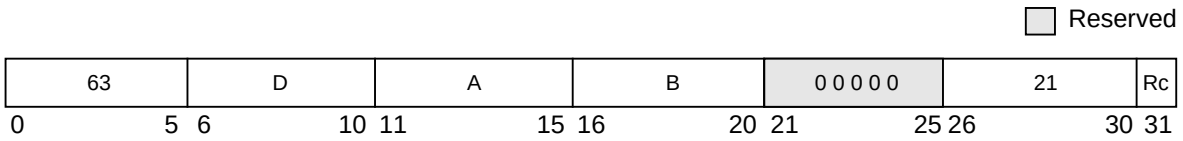
The contents of **fr**B with bit 0 cleared to zero is placed into **fr**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):
  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)

fadd **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fadd. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **fa**, **fa.**]



The floating-point operand in **fr**A is added to the floating-point operand in **fr**B. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

Floating-point addition is based on exponent comparison and addition of the two significands. The exponents of the two operands are compared, and the significand accompanying the smaller exponent is shifted right, with its exponent increased by one for each bit shifted, until the two exponents are equal. The two significands are then added algebraically to form an intermediate sum. All 53 bits in the significand as well as all three guard bits (G, R, and X) enter into the computation.

If a carry occurs, the sum's significand is shifted right one bit position and the exponent is increased by one. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

Other registers altered:

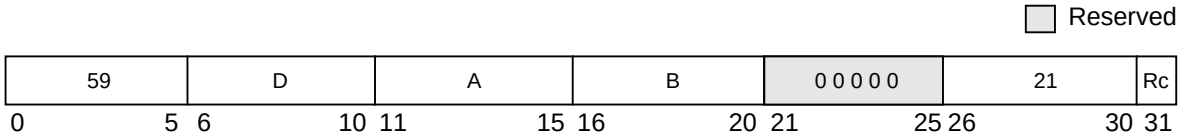
- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX,VXSNAN, VXISI

Floating-Point Add Single-PrecisionFloating-Point Unit

fadds **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fadds. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=1)



The floating-point operand in **fr**A is added to the floating-point operand in **fr**B. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

Floating-point addition is based on exponent comparison and addition of the two significands. The exponents of the two operands are compared, and the significand accompanying the smaller exponent is shifted right, with its exponent increased by one for each bit shifted, until the two exponents are equal. The two significands are then added algebraically to form an intermediate sum. All 53 bits in the significand as well as all three guard bits (G, R, and X) enter into the computation.

If a carry occurs, the sum's significand is shifted right one bit position and the exponent is increased by one. FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

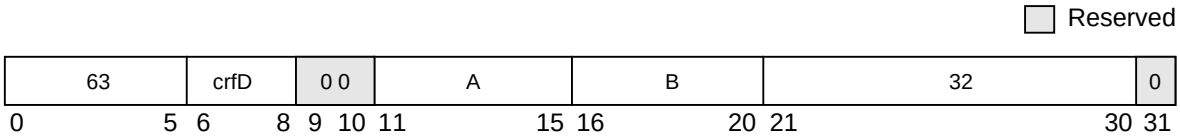
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX,VXSNAN, VXISI

fcmpo **crf**D**,fr**A**,fr**B



The floating-point operand in **fr**A is compared to the floating-point operand in **fr**B. The result of the compare is placed into CR Field **crf**D and the FPCC.

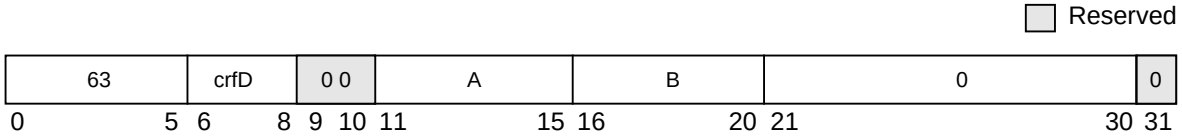
If one of the operands is a NaN, either quiet or signaling, then CR Field **crf**D and the FPCC are set to reflect unordered. If one of the operands is a signaling NaN, then VXSNAN is set, and if invalid operation is disabled (VE=0) then VXVC is set. Otherwise, if one of the operands is a QNaN then VXVC is set.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR Field specified by operand **crf**D):

  Affected: FPCC, FX, VXSNAN, VXVC

fcmpu **crf**D**,fr**A**,fr**B



The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is compared to the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. The result of the compare is placed into CR Field **crf**D and the FPCC.

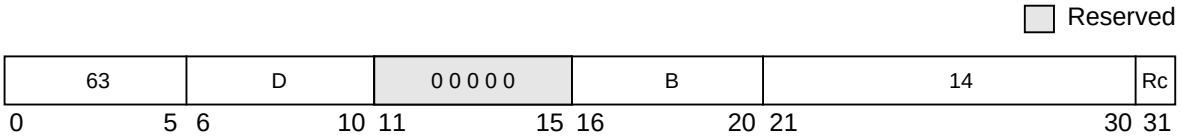
If one of the operands is a NaN, either quiet or signaling, then CR Field **crf**D and the FPCC are set to reflect unordered. If one of the operands is a signaling NaN, then VXSNAN is set.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR Field specified by operand **crf**D):

  Affected: FPCC, FX, VXSNAN

fctiw **fr**D,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fctiw. **fr**D,**fr**B (Rc=1)



The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is converted to a 32-bit signed integer, using the rounding mode specified by FPSCR[RN], and placed in bits 32–63 of **fr**D. Bits 0–31 of **fr**D are undefined.

If the contents of **fr**B is greater than $2^{31} - 1$, bits 32–63 of **fr**D are set to x '7FFF_FFFF '.

If the contents of **fr**B is less than -2^{31}, bits 32–63 of **fr**D are set to x '8000_0000 '.

The conversion is described fully in Section F.2, “Conversion from Floating-Point Number to Unsigned Fixed-Point Integer Word.”

Except for trap-enabled invalid operation exceptions, FPSCR[FPRF] is undefined. FPSCR[FR] is set if the result is incremented when rounded. FPSCR[FI] is set if the result is inexact.

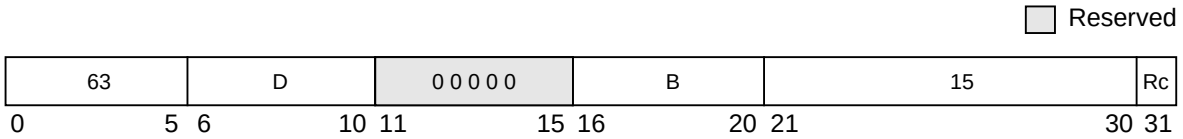
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF (undefined), FR, FI, FX, XX, VXSNAN, VXCVI

fctiwz **fr**D,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fctiwz. **fr**D,**fr**B (Rc=1)



The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is converted to a 32-bit signed integer, using the rounding mode round toward zero, and placed in bits 32–63 of **fr**D. Bits 0–31 of **fr**D are undefined.

If the operand in **fr**B is greater than $2^{31} - 1$, bits 32–63 of **fr**D are set to x '7FFF_FFFF '.

If the operand in **fr**B is less than -2^{31}, bits 32–63 of **fr**D are set to x '8000_0000 '.

The conversion is described fully in Section F.2, “Conversion from Floating-Point Number to Unsigned Fixed-Point Integer Word.”

Except for trap-enabled invalid operation exceptions, FPSCR[FPRF] is undefined. FPSCR[FR] is set if the result is incremented when rounded. FPSCR[FI] is set if the result is inexact.

Other registers altered:

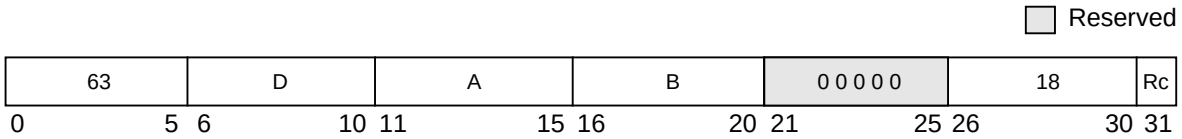
- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF (undefined), FR, FI, FX, XX, VXSNAN, VXCVI

fdiv **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fdiv. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **fd**, **fd.**]



The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is divided by the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. No remainder is preserved.

If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

Floating-point division is based on exponent subtraction and division of the significands.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1 and zero divide exceptions when FPSCR[ZE]=1.

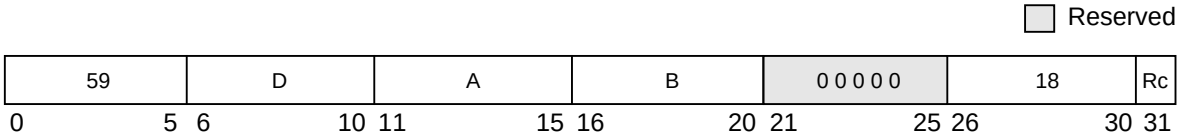
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, ZX, XX, VXSNAN, VXIDI, VXZDZ

fdivs **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fdivs. **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**B (Rc=1)



The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is divided by the floating-point operand in register **fr**B. No remainder is preserved.

If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

Floating-point division is based on exponent subtraction and division of the significands.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1 and zero divide exceptions when FPSCR[ZE]=1.

Other registers altered:

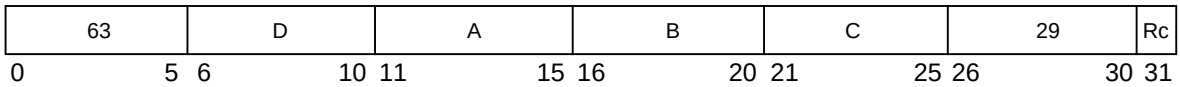
- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, ZX, XX, VXSNAN, VXIDI, VXZDZ

fmadd **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fmadd. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C**,fr**B (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **fma**, **fma.**]



The following operation is performed:

frD ← [(**fr**A)*(**fr**C)]+(**fr**B)

The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is added to this intermediate result.

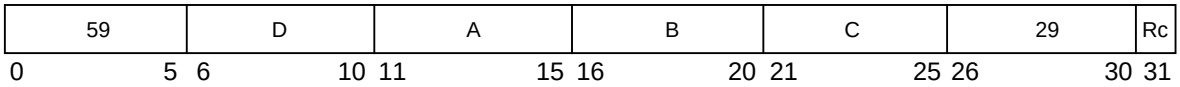
If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):
  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:
  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI, VXIMZ

fmadds **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fmadds. **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=1)



The following operation is performed:

frD ← [(**fr**A)*(**fr**C)]+(**fr**B)

The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is added to this intermediate result.

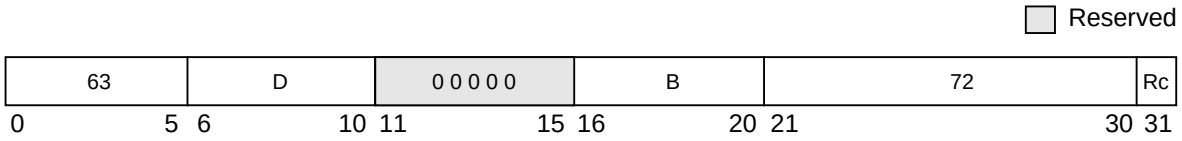
If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):
  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:
  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI, VXIMZ

fmr **fr**D**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fmr. **fr**D**,fr**B (Rc=1)



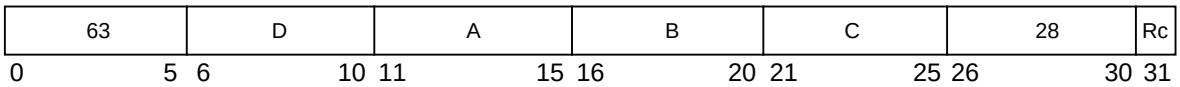
The contents of register **fr**B is placed into **fr**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):
  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)

fmsub **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fmsub. **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **fms**, **fms.**]



The following operation is performed:

frD ← [(**fr**A)*(**fr**C)] - (**fr**B)

The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from this intermediate result.

If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

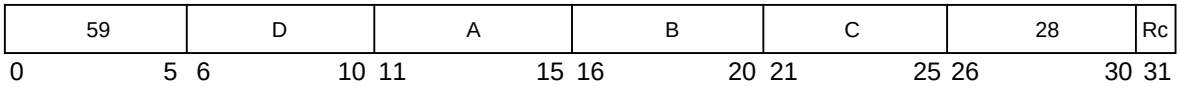
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI, VXIMZ

fmsubs **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fmsubs. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C**,fr**B (Rc=1)



The following operation is performed:

frD ← [(**fr**A)*(**fr**C)] - (**fr**B)

The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from this intermediate result.

If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

Other registers altered:

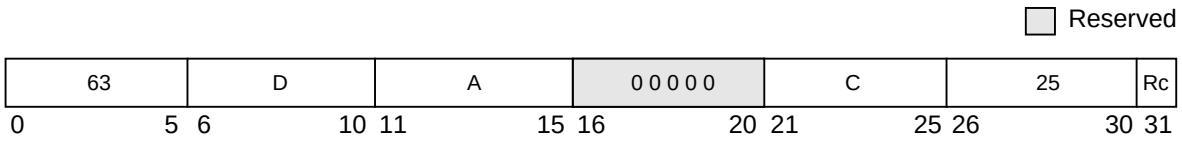
- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI, VXIMZ

fmul **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C (Rc=0)
fmul. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **fm**, **fm.**]



The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C.

If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

Floating-point multiplication is based on exponent addition and multiplication of the significands.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

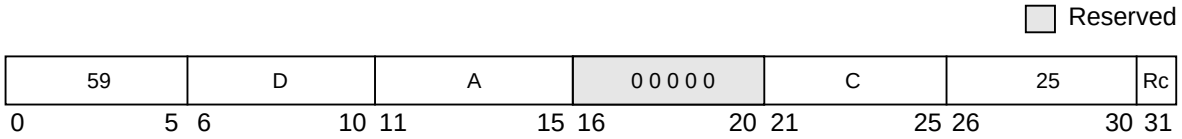
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXIMZ

fmuls **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C (Rc=0)
fmuls. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C (Rc=1)



The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C.

If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

Floating-point multiplication is based on exponent addition and multiplication of the significands.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

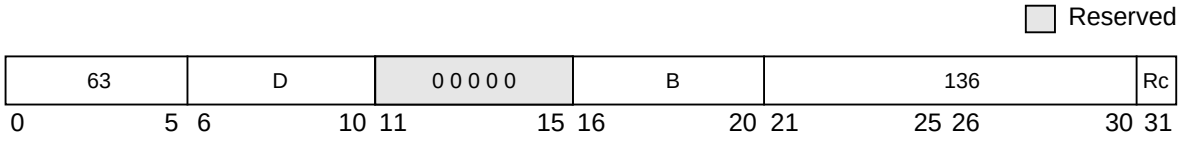
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXIMZ

fnabs **fr**D**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fnabs. **fr**D**,fr**B (Rc=1)

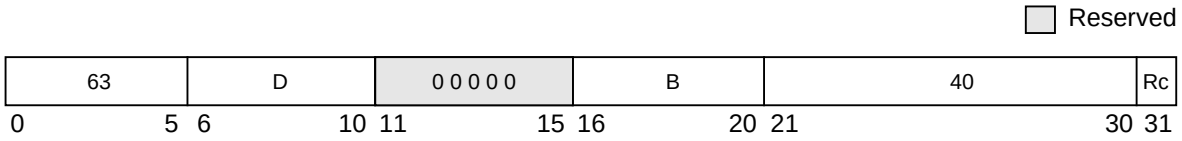


The contents of register **fr**B with bit 0 set to one is placed into **fr**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):
  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)

fneg **fr**D**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fneg. **fr**D**,fr**B (Rc=1)



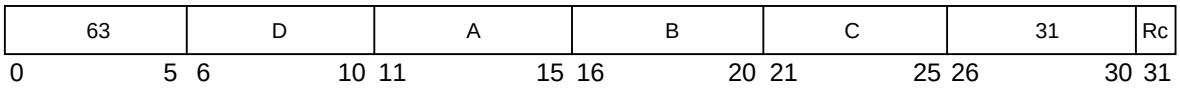
The contents of register **fr**B with bit 0 inverted is placed into **fr**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):
  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)

fnmadd **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fnmadd. **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **fnma**, **fnma.**]



The following operation is performed:

frD ← - ([(**fr**A)*(**fr**C)]+(**fr**B))

The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is added to this intermediate result. If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR, then negated and placed into **fr**D.

This instruction produces the same result as would be obtained by using the floating-point multiply-add instruction and then negating the result, with the following exceptions:

- QNaNs propagate with no effect on their sign bit.
- QNaNs that are generated as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception have a sign bit of zero.
- SNaNs that are converted to QNaNs as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception retain the sign bit of the SNaN.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

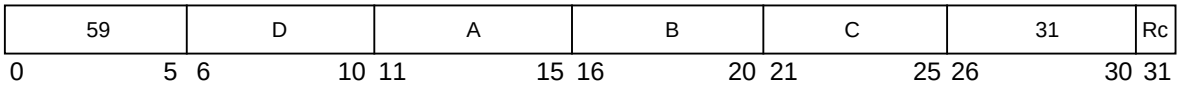
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI, VXIMZ

fnmadds **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fnmadds. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**C**,fr**B (Rc=1)



The following operation is performed:

frD ← -([(**fr**A)*(**fr**C)]+(**fr**B))

The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is added to this intermediate result. If an operand is a denormalized number then it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR, then negated and placed into **fr**D.

This instruction produces the same result as would be obtained by using the floating-point multiply-add instruction and then negating the result, with the following exceptions:

- QNaNs propagate with no effect on their sign bit.
- QNaNs that are generated as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception have a sign bit of zero.
- SNaNs that are converted to QNaNs as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception retain the sign bit of the SNaN.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

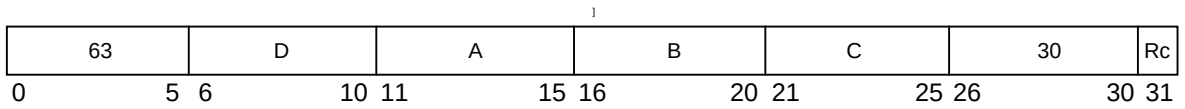
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI, VXIMZ

fnmsub **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fnmsub. **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=1)
[POWER mnemonics: **fnms**, **fnms.**



The following operation is performed:

frD ← - ([(**fr**A)*(**fr**C)] - (**fr**B))

The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from this intermediate result.

If an operand is a denormalized number, it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not one, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR, then negated and placed into **fr**D.

This instruction produces the same result obtained by negating the result of a floating multiply-subtract instruction with the following exceptions:

- QNaNs propagate with no effect on their sign bit.
- QNaNs that are generated as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception have a sign bit of zero.
- SNaNs that are converted to QNaNs as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception retain the sign bit of the SNaN.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

Other registers altered:

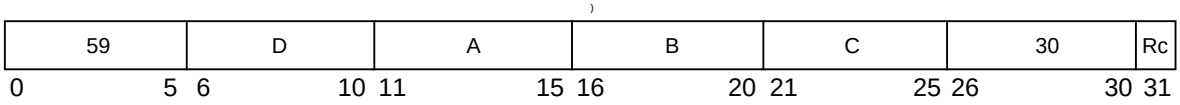
- Condition Register (CR1 Field)

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI, VXIMZ

Floating-Point Negative Multiply-Subtract Single-Precision

fnmsubs **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=0)
fnmsubs. **fr**D,**fr**A,**fr**C,**fr**B (Rc=1)



The following operation is performed:

frD ← -([(**fr**A)*(**fr**C)] - (**fr**B))

The floating-point operand in register **fr**A is multiplied by the floating-point operand in register **fr**C. The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from this intermediate result.

If an operand is a denormalized number, it is prenormalized before the operation is started. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not one, the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR, then negated and placed into **fr**D.

This instruction produces the same result obtained by negating the result of a floating multiply-subtract instruction with the following exceptions:

- QNaNs propagate with no effect on their sign bit.
- QNaNs that are generated as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception have a sign bit of zero.
- SNaNs that are converted to QNaNs as the result of a disabled invalid operation exception retain the sign bit of the SNaN.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

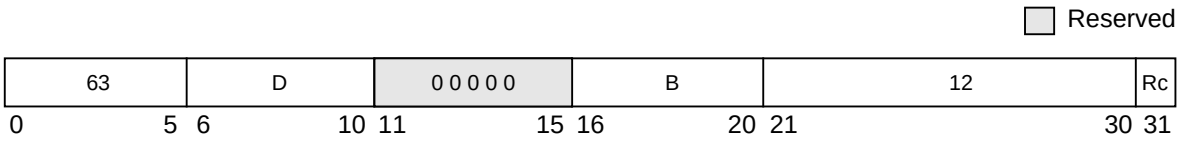
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field)

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI, VXIMZ

frsp **fr**D**,fr**B (Rc=0)
frsp. **fr**D**,fr**B (Rc=1)



If it is already in single-precision range, the floating-point operand in register **fr**B is placed into **fr**D. Otherwise the floating-point operand in register **fr**B is rounded to single-precision using the rounding mode specified by FPSCR[RN] and placed into **fr**D.

The rounding is described fully in Appendix F, Section F.1, “Conversion from Floating-Point Number to Signed Fixed-Point Integer Word.”

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

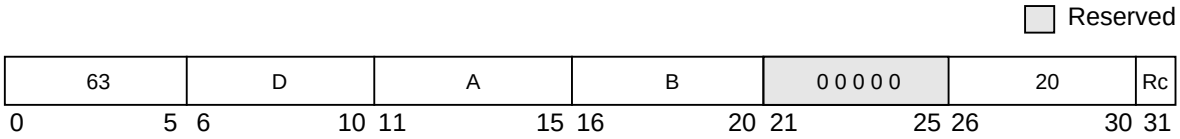
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN

fsub **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fsub. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=1)
[POWER mnemonics: **fs**, **fs.**]



The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from the floating-point operand in register **fr**A. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

The execution of the floating-point subtract instruction is identical to that of floating-point add, except that the contents of **fr**B participates in the operation with its sign bit (bit 0) inverted.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

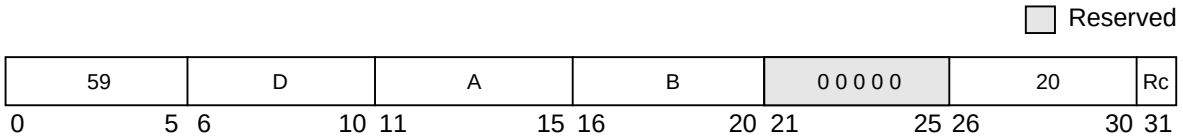
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI

fsubs **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=0)
fsubs. **fr**D**,fr**A**,fr**B (Rc=1)



The floating-point operand in register **fr**B is subtracted from the floating-point operand in register **fr**A. If the most significant bit of the resultant significand is not a one the result is normalized. The result is rounded to the target precision under control of the floating-point rounding control field RN of the FPSCR and placed into **fr**D.

The execution of the floating-point subtract instruction is identical to that of floating-point add, except that the contents of **fr**B participates in the operation with its sign bit (bit 0) inverted.

FPSCR[FPRF] is set to the class and sign of the result, except for invalid operation exceptions when FPSCR[VE]=1.

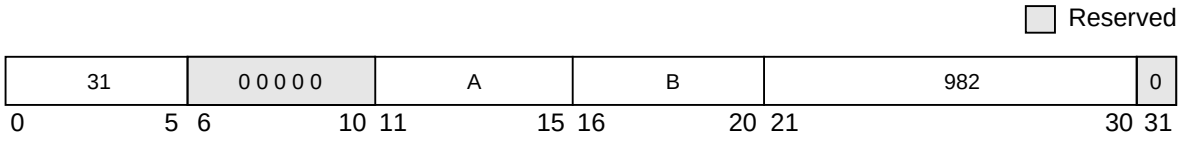
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: FX, FEX, VX, OX (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  Affected: FPRF, FR, FI, FX, OX, UX, XX, VXSNAN, VXISI

icbi **r**A,**r**B



EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B)

In other PowerPC processors, if the block containing the byte addressed by EA is in coherency required mode, and a block containing the byte addressed by EA is in the instruction cache of any processor, the block is made invalid in all such processors, so that subsequent references cause the block to be refetched.

Also, if the block containing the byte addressed by EA is in coherency not required mode, and a block containing the byte addressed by EA is in the instruction cache of this processor, the block is made invalid in this processor, so that subsequent references cause the block to be fetched from main memory (or perhaps from a data cache).

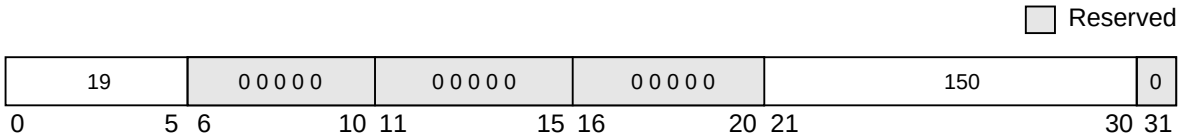
Since the 601 has a unified cache, it treats the **icbi** instruction as a no-op, even to the extent of not validating the EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

isync

[POWER mnemonic: **ics**]



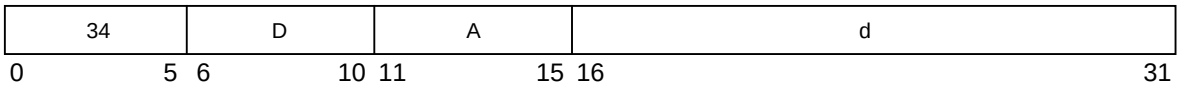
This instruction waits for all previous instructions to complete and then discards any fetched instructions, causing subsequent instructions to be fetched (or refetched) from memory and to execute in the context established by the previous instructions. This instruction has no effect on other processors or on their caches.

This instruction is context synchronizing.

Other registers altered:

- None

lbz **r**D**,**d**(r**A**)**



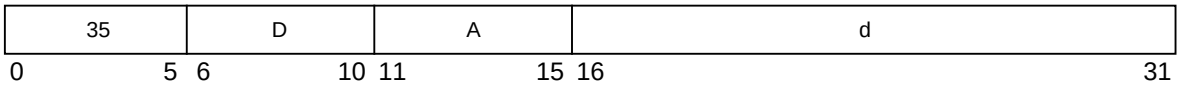

```
if rA=0 then b ← 0
else            b ← (rA)
EA ← b+EXTS(d)
rD ← (24)0 || MEM(EA, 1)
```

The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The byte in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[24–31]. Bits **r**D[0–23] are cleared to 0.

Other registers altered:

- None

lbzu **r**D**,**d**(r**A**)**



EA ← **r**A+EXTS(d)
rD←(24)0 || MEM(EA, 1)
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The byte in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[24–31]. Bits **r**D[0-23] are cleared to 0.

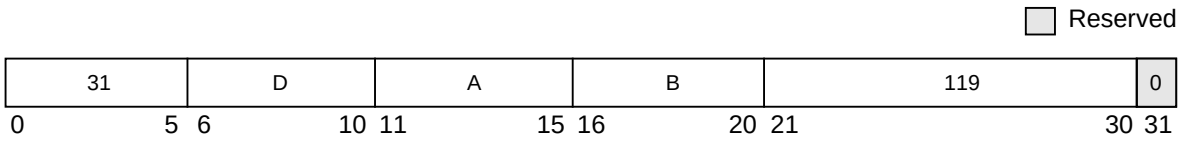
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A=**r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A=0 or **r**A=**r**D as invalid forms

Other registers altered:

- None

lbzux **r**D**,r**A**,r**B



EA ← (**r**A)+(**r**B)
rD ← (24)0 || MEM(EA, 1)
rA ← EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The byte addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[24–31]. Bits **r**D[0–23] are set to 0.

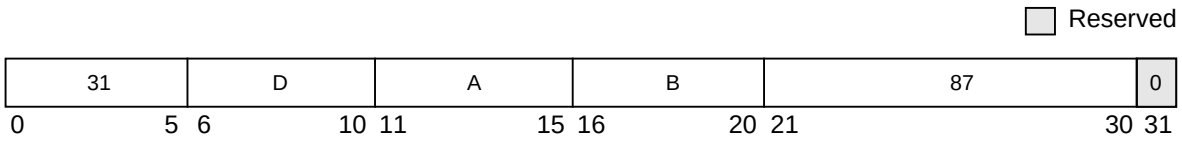
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A=**r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A=0 or **r**A=**r**D as invalid forms

Other registers altered:

- None

lbzx **r**D**,r**A**,r**B



if **r**A=0 then b ← 0
else b ← (**r**A)
EA ← b+(**r**B)
rD ← (24)0 || MEM(EA, 1)

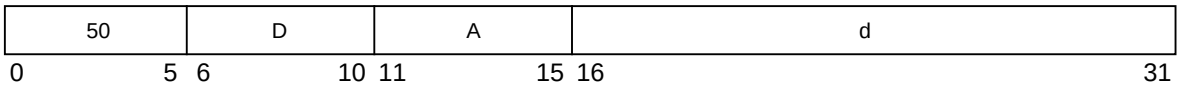
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The byte in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[24–31].

Bits **r**D[0–23] are set to 0.

Other registers altered:

- None

lfd **fr**D,d(**r**A)



if **r**A=0 then b ← 0
else b ← (**r**A)
EA ← b+EXTS(d)
frD ← MEM(EA, 8)

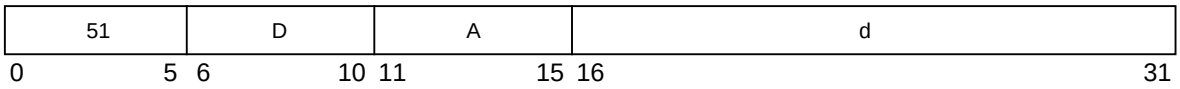
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

The double word in memory addressed by EA is placed into **fr**D.

Other registers altered:

- None

lfdu **fr**D,d(**r**A)



EA ← **r**A+EXTS(d)
frD ← MEM(EA, 8)
rA ← EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

The double word in memory addressed by EA is placed into **fr**D.

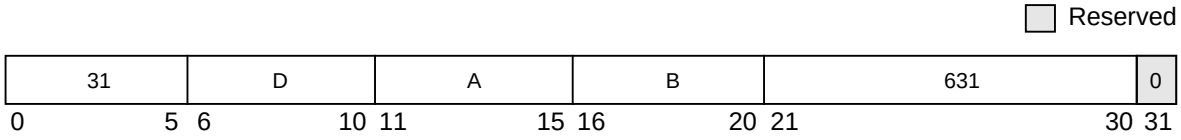
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A=0 as an invalid form.

Other registers altered:

- None

lfdux **fr**D**,r**A**,r**B



EA ← (**r**A)+(**r**B)
frD ← MEM(EA, 8)
rA ← EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B).

The double word in memory addressed by EA is placed into **fr**D.

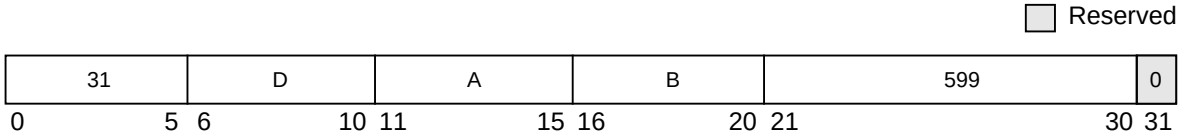
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A=0 as an invalid form.

Other registers altered:

- None

lfdx **fr**D**,r**A**,r**B



if **r**A=0 then b ← 0
else b ← (**r**A)
EA ← b+(**r**B)
frD ← MEM(EA, 8)

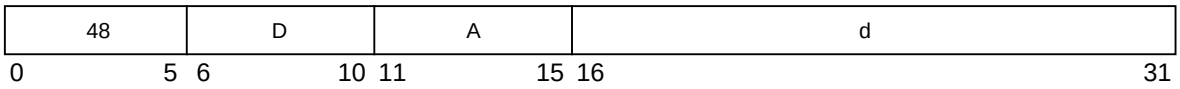
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B).

The double word in memory addressed by EA is placed into **fr**D.

Other registers altered:

- None

lfs **fr**D,d**(r**A**)**



if **r**A=0 then b ← 0
else b ← (**r**A)
EA ← b+EXTS(d)
frD ← DOUBLE(MEM(EA, 4))

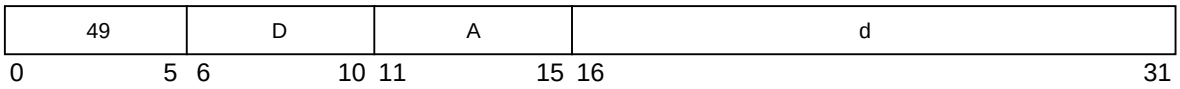
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

The word in memory addressed by EA is interpreted as a floating-point single-precision operand. This word is converted to floating-point double-precision (see Section 3.5.9.1, “Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Load Instructions”) and placed into **fr**D.

Other registers altered:

- None

lfsu **fr**D,d(**r**A)



EA ← (**r**A)+EXTS(d)
frD ← DOUBLE(MEM(EA, 4))
rA ← EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

The word in memory addressed by EA is interpreted as a floating-point single-precision operand. This word is converted to floating-point double-precision (see Section 3.5.9.1, “Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Load Instructions”) and placed into **fr**D.

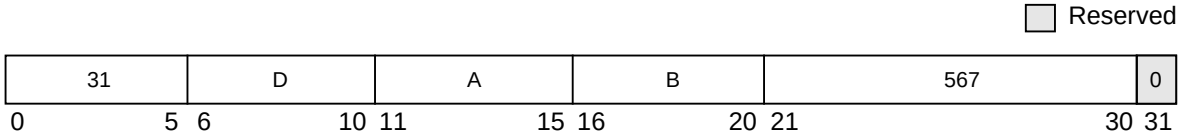
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A=0 as an invalid form.

Other registers altered:

- None

lfsux **fr**D**,r**A**,r**B



EA ← (**r**A)+(**r**B)
frD ← DOUBLE(MEM(EA, 4))
rA ← EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B).

The word in memory addressed by EA is interpreted as a floating-point single-precision operand. This word is converted to floating-point double-precision (see Section 3.5.9.1, “Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Load Instructions”) and placed into **fr**D.

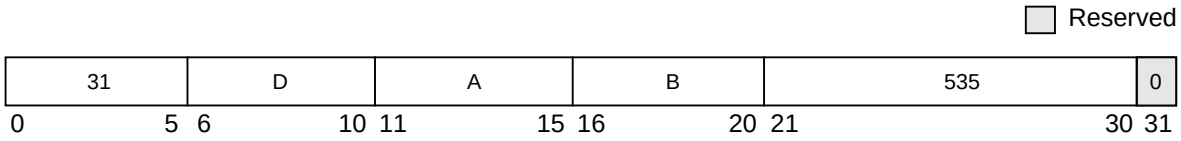
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A=0 as an invalid form.

Other registers altered:

- None

lfsx **fr**D**,r**A**,r**B



if **r**A=0 then b ← 0
else b ← (**r**A)
EA ← b+(**r**B)
frD ← DOUBLE(MEM(EA, 4))

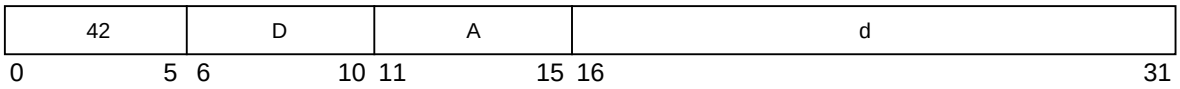
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B).

The word in memory addressed by EA is interpreted as a floating-point single-precision operand. This word is converted to floating-point double-precision (see Section 3.5.9.1, “Double-Precision Conversion for Floating-Point Load Instructions”) and placed into **fr**D.

Other registers altered:

- None

lha **r**D**,**d**(r**A**)**



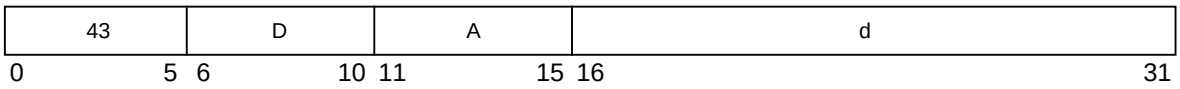

```
if rA=0 then b ← 0
else            b ← (rA)
EA ← b+EXTS(d)
rD ← EXTS(MEM(EA, 2))
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The half word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[16–31]. Bits **r**D[0–15] are filled with a copy of the most significant bit of the loaded half word.

Other registers altered:

- None

lhau **r**D**,**d**(r**A**)**



EA ← (**r**A)+EXTS(d)
rD ← EXTS(MEM(EA, 2))
rA ← EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The half word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[16–31].

Bits **r**D[0–15] are filled with a copy of the most significant bit of the loaded half word.

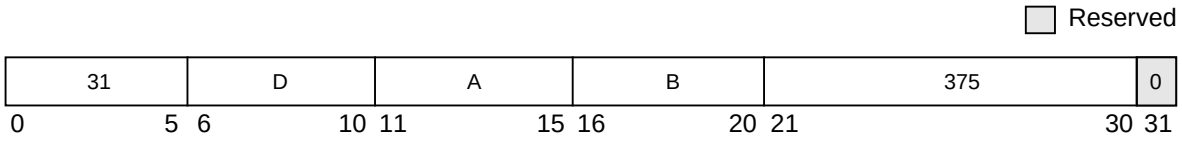
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms

Other registers altered:

- None

lhaux **r**D**,r**A**,r**B



EA ← (**r**A)+(**r**B)
rD ← EXTS(MEM(EA, 2))
rA ← EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The half word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[16-31]. Bits **r**D[0–15] are filled with a copy of the most significant bit of the loaded half word.

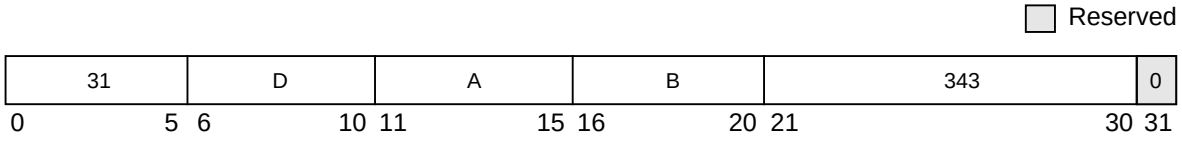
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms

Other registers altered:

- None

lhax **r**D**,r**A**,r**B



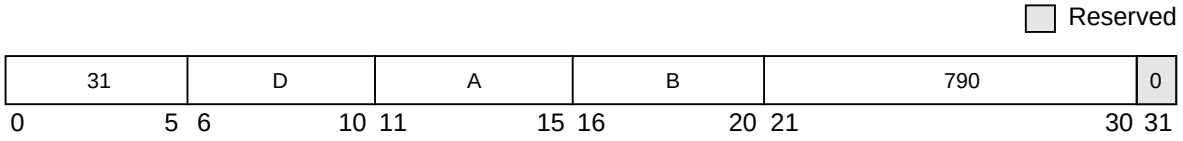

```
if rA=0 then b ← 0
else            b ← (rA)
EA ← b+(rB)
rD ← EXTS(MEM(EA, 2))
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The half word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[16-31]. Bits **r**D[0–15] are filled with a copy of the most significant bit of the loaded half word.

Other registers altered:

- None

lhbrx **r**D**,r**A**,r**B



if **r**A=0 then b ← 0
else b ← (**r**A)
EA ← b+(**r**B)
rD ← (16)0 || MEM(EA+1, 1) || MEM(EA,1)

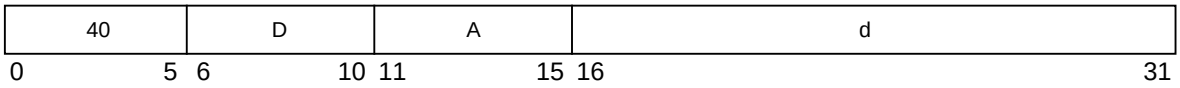
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). Bits 0–7 of the half word in memory addressed by EA are loaded into **r**D[24–31]. Bits 8–15 of the half word in memory addressed by EA are loaded into **r**D[16–23]. Bits **r**D[0–15] are cleared to 0.

The PowerPC architecture cautions programmers that some implementations of the architecture may run the **lhbrx** instructions with greater latency than other types of load instructions. This is not the case in the 601. This instruction operates with the same latency as other load instructions.

Other registers altered:

- None

lhz **r**D**,**d**(r**A**)**



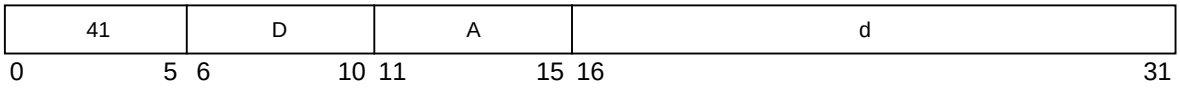
if **r**A=0 then b←0
else b ← **r**A
EA ← b+EXTS(d)
rD ← (16)0 || MEM(EA, 2)

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The half word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[16–31]. Bits **r**D[0–15] are cleared to 0.

Other registers altered:

- None

lhzu **r**D**,**d**(r**A**)**



EA ← **r**A+EXTS(d)
rD ← (16)0 || MEM(EA, 2)
rA ← EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The half word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[16–31]. Bits **r**D[0–15] are cleared to 0.

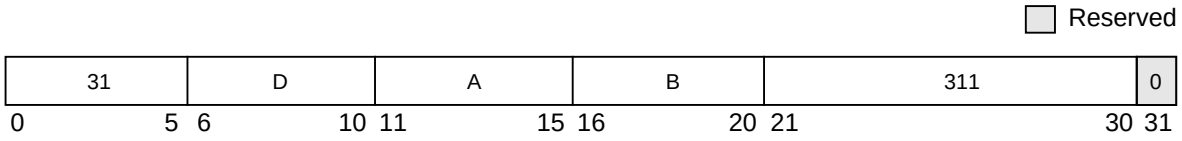
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms.

Other registers altered:

- None

lhzux **r**D**,r**A**,r**B



EA ← (**r**A)+(**r**B)
rD←(16)0 || MEM(EA, 2)
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The half word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[16–31]. Bits **r**D[0–15] are cleared to 0.

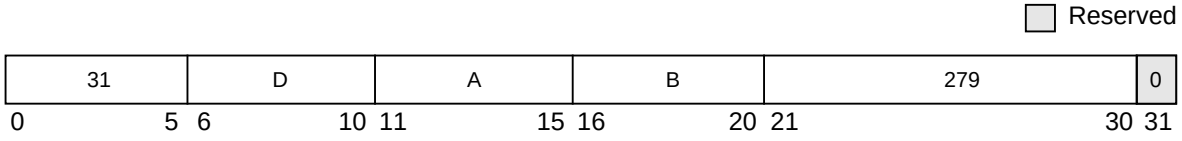
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms.

Other registers altered:

- None

lhzx **r**D**,r**A**,r**B



if **r**A=0 then b←0
else b←**r**A
EA←b+**r**B
rD←(16)0 || MEM(EA, 2)

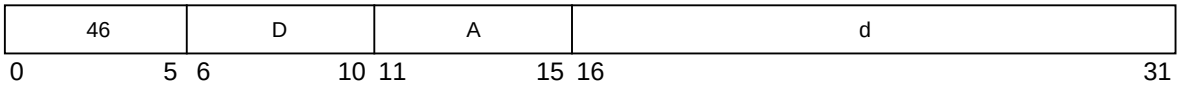
The effective address is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The half word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D[16–31]. Bits **r**D[0–15] are cleared to 0.

Other registers altered:

- None

lmw **r**D,d**(r**A**)**

[POWER mnemonic: **lm**]




```
if rA=0 then b←0
else        b←rA
EA←b+EXTS(d)
r←rD
do while r ≤ 31
   GPR(r)← MEM(EA, 4)
   r←r+1
   EA←EA+4
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

n=(32-**r**D).

n consecutive words starting at EA are loaded into GPRs **r**D through **r31**. EA must be a multiple of 4; otherwise, the system alignment exception handler is invoked if the load crosses a page boundary. For additional information about data alignment exceptions, see chapter 5, section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').

If **r**A is in the range of registers specified to be loaded, it will be skipped in the load process. If operand **r**A=0, the register is not considered as used for addressing, and will be loaded.

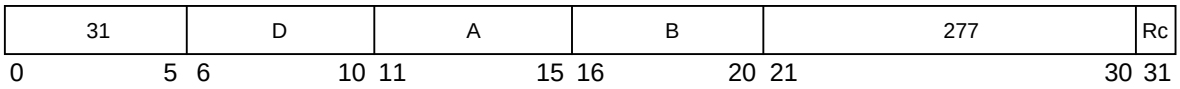
Other registers altered:

- None

In future implementations, this instruction is likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual load instructions that produce the same results.

Note that on other PowerPC implementations, load and store multiple instructions that are not on a word boundary either take an alignment exception or generate results that are boundedly undefined.

lscbx **r**D,**r**A,**r**B (Rc=0)
lscbx. **r**D,**r**A,**r**B (Rc=0)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). XER[25–31] contains the byte count. Register **r**D is the starting register.

n=XER[25–31], which is the number of bytes to be loaded. *nr*=CEIL(*n*/4), which is the number of registers to receive data.

Starting with the leftmost byte in **r**D, consecutive bytes in memory addressed by the EA are loaded into **r**D through **r**D + *nr* – 1, wrapping around back through GPR 0 if required, until either a byte match is found with XER[16–23] or *n* bytes have been loaded. If a byte match is found, that byte is also loaded.

Bytes are always loaded left to right in the register. In the case when a match was found before *n* bytes were loaded, the contents of the rightmost byte(s) not loaded of that register and the contents of all succeeding registers up to and including **r**D + *nr* – 1 are undefined. Any reference made to memory after the matched byte is found will not cause a memory exception. In the case when a match was not found, the contents of the rightmost byte(s) not loaded of **r**D + *nr* – 1 is undefined.

When XER[25–31]=0, the content of **r**D is undefined.

The count of the number of bytes loaded up to and including the matched byte, if a match was found, is placed in XER[25–31]. If there is no match, the contents of XER[25–31] are unchanged.

If **r**A and **r**B are in the range of registers specified to be loaded, it will be skipped in the load process. If operand **r**A=0, the register is not considered as used for addressing, and will be loaded.

Under certain conditions (for example, segment boundary crossings) the data alignment error handler may be invoked. For additional information about data alignment exceptions, see chapter 5, section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').

Other registers affected:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

- XER:

  Affected: XER[25–31]=# of bytes loaded

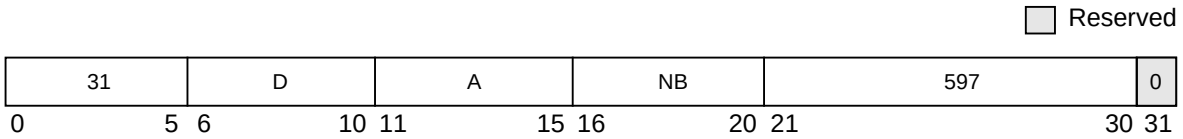
Note: If Rc=1 and XER[25–31]=0 then the CR0 field is undefined. If Rc=1 and XER[25–31]≠0 then the CR0 field is set as follows:

LT, GT, EQ, SO =b'00' || match || XER(SO)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

lswi **r**D,**r**A,NB

[POWER mnemonic: **lsi**]




```
if rA=0 then EA←0
else            EA←rA
if NB=0 then n←32
else            n←NB
r←rD - 1
i←32
do while n ≥ 0
      if i=32 then
      r←r+1 (mod 32)
      GPR(r)←0
      GPR(r)[i–i+7]←MEM(EA, 1)
i←i+8
```

The EA is (**r**A | 0).

Let *n* = NB if NB ≠ 0, *n* = 32 if NB = 0; *n* is the number of bytes to load. Let *nr* = CEIL(*n*/4); *nr* is the number of registers to be loaded with data.

n consecutive bytes starting at the EA are loaded into GPRs **r**D through **r**D+*nr*–1. Bytes are loaded left to right in each register. The sequence of registers wraps around to **r0** if required. If the four bytes of register **r**D+*nr*–1 are only partially filled, the unfilled low-order byte(s) of that register are cleared to 0.

If **r**A is in the range of registers specified to be loaded, it will be skipped in the load process. If operand **r**A=0, the register is not considered as used for addressing, and will be loaded.

Under certain conditions (for example, segment boundary crossing) the data alignment error handler may be invoked. For additional information about data alignment exceptions, see chapter 5, section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').

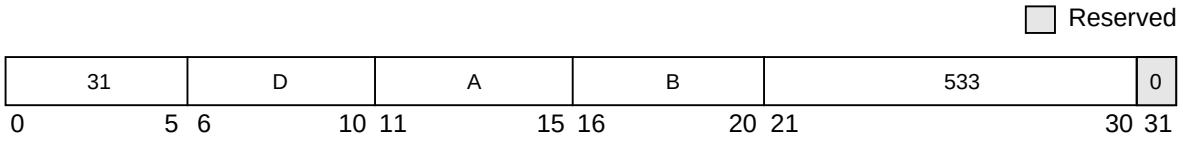
Other registers altered:

- None

In future implementations, this instruction is likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual load instructions that produce the same results.

lswx **r**D**,r**A**,r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **lsx**]




```
if rA=0 then b←0
else        b←rA
EA←b+rB
n←XER[25–31]
r←rD - 1
i←32
do while n > 0
     if i=32 then
     r←r+1 (mod 32)
     GPR(r)←0
     GPR(r)[i–i+7]←MEM(EA, 1)
i←i+8
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). Let *n* = XER[25–31]; *n* is the number of bytes to load. Let *nr* = CEIL(*n*/4): *nr* is the number of registers to receive data. If *n*>0, *n* consecutive bytes starting at EA are loaded into GPRs **r**D through **r**D + *nr* – 1.

Bytes are loaded left to right in each register. The sequence of registers wraps around through **r0** if required. If the bytes of **r**D + *nr* – 1 are only partially filled, the unfilled low-order byte(s) of that register are cleared to 0. If *n*=0, the content of **r**D is undefined.

If **r**A and **r**B are in the range of registers specified to be loaded, it will be skipped in the load process. If operand **r**A = 0, the register is not considered as used for addressing, and will be loaded.

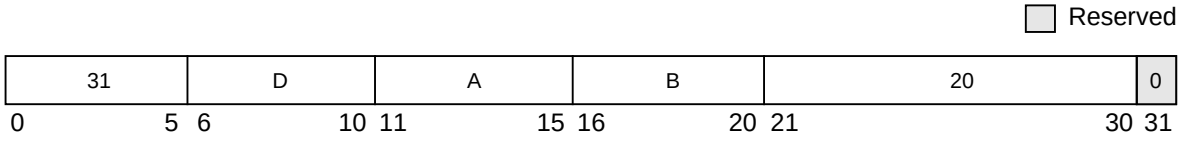
Under certain conditions (for example, segment boundary crossings) the alignment error handler may be invoked. For additional information about alignment exceptions, see Section 5.4.6, “Alignment Exception (x'00600').”

Other registers altered:

- None

In future implementations, this instruction is likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual load instructions that produce the same results.

lwarx **r**D**,r**A**,r**B



if **r**A=0 then b←0
else b←**r**A
EA←b+**r**B
RESERVE←1
RESERVE_ADDR←func(EA)
rD←MEM(EA,4)

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D.

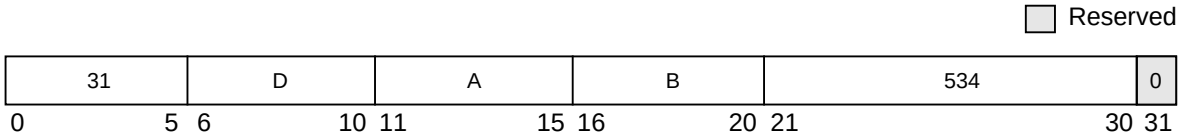
This instruction creates a reservation for use by a store word conditional instruction. The physical address computed from the EA is associated with the reservation, and replaces any address previously associated with the reservation.

The EA must be a multiple of 4. If it is not, the alignment exception handler will be invoked if the load crosses a page boundary, or the results will be boundedly undefined.

Other registers altered:

- None

lwbrx **r**D**,r**A**,r**B
[POWER mnemonic: **lbrx**]




```
if rA=0 then b←0
else         b←rA
EA←b+rB
rD←MEM(EA+3, 1) || MEM(EA+2, 1) || MEM(EA+1, 1) || MEM(EA, 1)
```

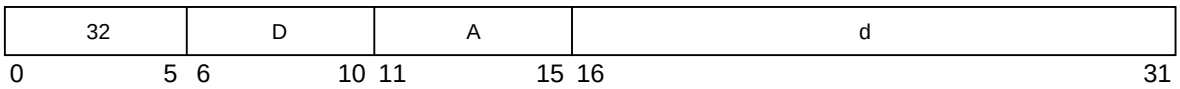
EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). Bits 0–7 of the word in memory addressed by EA are loaded into **r**D[24–31]. Bits 8–15 of the word in memory addressed by EA are loaded into **r**D[16–23]. Bits 16–23 of the word in memory addressed by EA are loaded into **r**D[8–15]. Bits 24–31 of the word in memory addressed by EA are loaded into **r**D[0–7].

The PowerPC architecture cautions programmers that some implementations of the architecture may run the **lwbrx** instructions with greater latency than other types of load instructions. This is not the case in the 601. This instruction operates with the same latency as other load instructions.

Other registers altered:

- None

lwz **r**D,d**(r**A**)**
[POWER mnemonic: **l**]



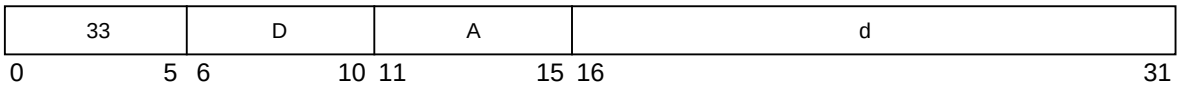
if **r**A=0 then b←0
else b←**r**A
EA←b+EXTS(d)
rD←MEM(EA, 4)

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- None

lwzu **r**D,d**(r**A**)**
[POWER mnemonic: **lu**]



EA ← **r**A+EXTS(d)
rD←MEM(EA, 4)
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D.

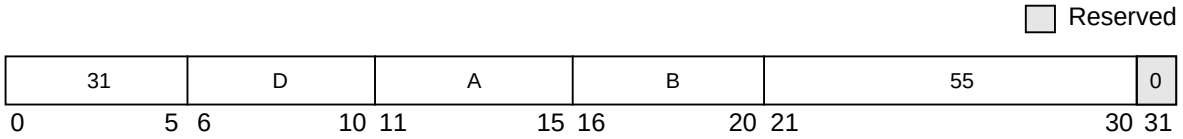
EA is placed into **r**A.

If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into **r**D and the register update is suppressed. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms.

Other registers altered:

- None

lwzux **r**D**,r**A**,r**B
[POWER mnemonic: **lux**]



EA ← (**r**A)+(**r**B)
rD←MEM(EA, 4)
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D.

EA is placed into **r**A.

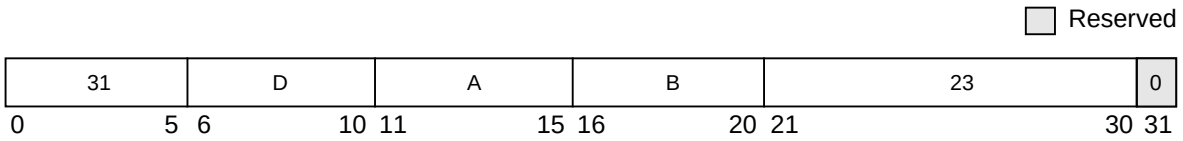
If operand **r**A=0 the 601 does not update register **r0**, or if **r**A = **r**D the load data is loaded into register **r**D and the register update is suppressed. The PowerPC architecture defines load with update instructions with operand **r**A = 0 or **r**A = **r**D as invalid forms

Other registers altered:

- None

lwzx **r**D**,r**A**,r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **lx**]



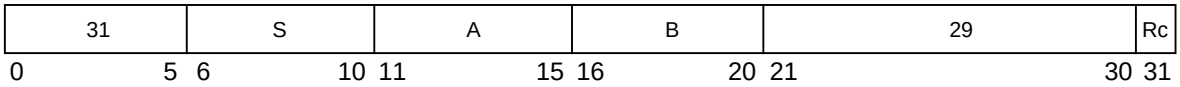
if **r**A=0 then b←0
else b←**r**A
EA←b+**r**B
rD←MEM(EA, 4)

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The word in memory addressed by EA is loaded into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- None

maskg **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
maskg. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Let mstart=**r**S[27–31], specifying the starting point of a mask of ones. Let mstop=**r**B[27–31], specifying the end point of the mask of ones.

If mstart < mstop + 1 then

MASK(mstart..mstop) = ones

MASK(all other bits) = zeros

If mstart = mstop = 1 then

MASK(0–31) = ones

If mstart > mstop + 1 then

MASK(mstop + 1..mstart – 1) = zeros

MASK(all other bits) = ones

MASK is then placed in **r**A.

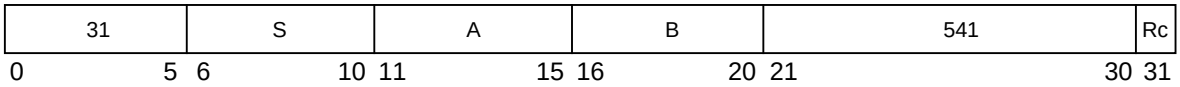
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

maskir **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
maskir. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



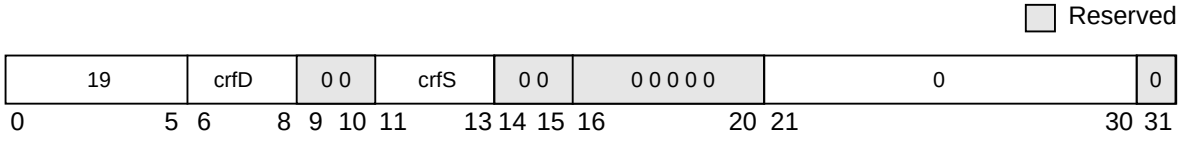
This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.
Register **r**S is inserted into **r**A under control of the mask in **r**B.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

mcrf **crf**D**,crf**S



CR[4*__crf__D–4*__crf__D+3] ← CR[4*__crf__S–4*__crf__S+3]

The contents of condition register field **crf**S are copied into condition register field **crf**D. All other condition register fields remain unchanged.

Note that if the link bit (bit 31) is set for this instruction, the PowerPC architecture considers the instruction to be of an invalid form. Relative to the 601, this instruction executes and the link register is left in an undefined state.

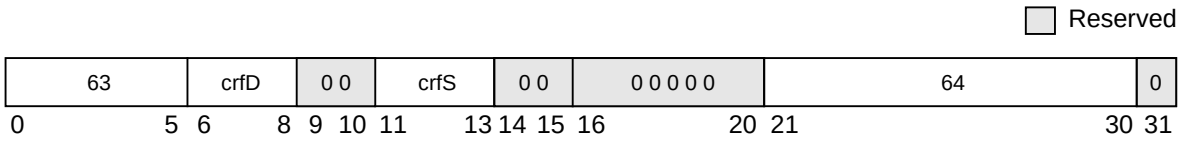
Note: Use of invalid instruction forms is not recommended. This description is provided for informational purposes only.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR field specified by operand **crf**D):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO

mcrfs **crf**D**,crf**S



The contents of FPSCR field **crf**S are copied to CR Field **crf**D. All exception bits copied are reset to zero in the FPSCR.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR Field specified by operand **crf**S):

  Affected: FX, OX (if **crf**S=0)

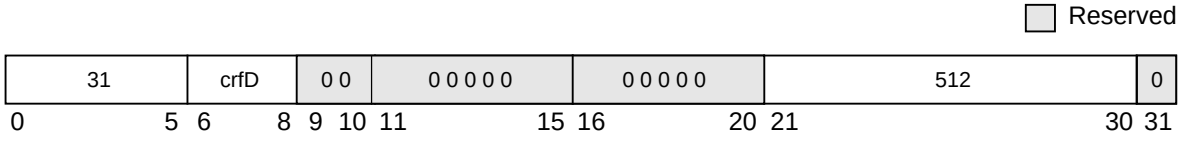
  Affected: UX, ZX, XX, VXSNAN (if **crf**S=1)

  Affected: VXISI, VXIDI, VXZDZ, VXIMZ (if **crf**S=2)

  Affected: VXVC (if **crf**S=3)

  Affected: VXSOFT, VXSQRT, VXCVI (if **crf**S=5)

mcrxr **crf**D



CR[4***crf**D+3]←XER[0–3]
XER[0–3]← b'0000'

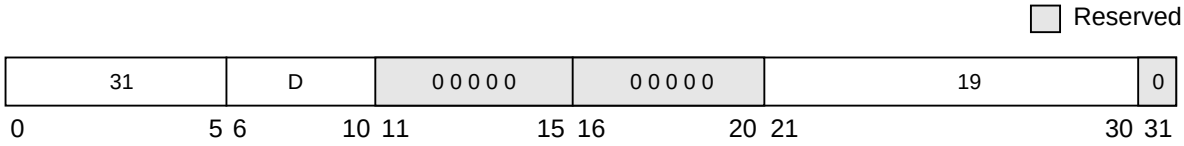
The contents of XER[0–3] are copied into the condition register field designated by **crf**D. All other fields of the condition register remain unchanged. XER[0–3] is cleared to zero.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR Field specified by **crf**D operand):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO
- XER[0–3]

mfcr **r**D



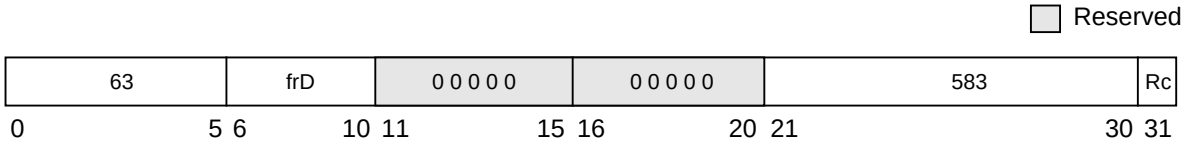
rD← CR

The contents of the condition register are placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- None

mffs **fr**D (Rc=0)
mffs. **fr**D (Rc=1)



The contents of the FPSCR are placed into bits 32–63 of register **fr**D. Bits 0–31 of register **fr**D are undefined.

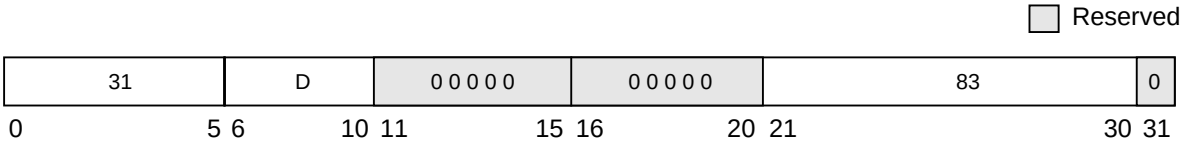
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

POWER Compatibility Note: The PowerPC architecture defines bits 0–31 of floating-point register **fr**D as undefined. In the 601, these bits take on the value x'FFF8_ 0000'.

mfmsr **r**D



rD← MSR

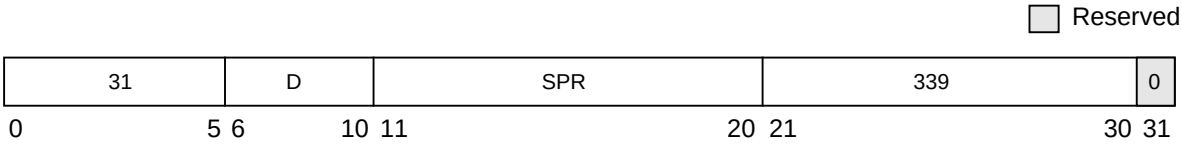
The contents of the MSR are placed into **r**D.

This is a supervisor-level instruction.

Other registers altered:

- None

mfspr **r**D**,**SPR



n←SPR[5–9] || SPR[0–4]
rD← SPR(*n*)

The SPR field denotes a special purpose register, encoded as shown in Table 10-4. The contents of the designated special purpose register are placed into **r**D.

The value of SPR[0] is 1 if and only if reading the register is at the supervisor-level. Execution of this instruction specifying a supervisor-level register when MSR[PR]=1 will result in a supervisor-level instruction type program exception.

If the SPR field contains a value that is not valid for the 601, the instruction is treated as a no-op. For an invalid instruction form in which SPR[0]=1, if MSR[PR]=1 a supervisor-level instruction type program exception will occur instead of a no-op.

Other registers altered:

- None

Table 10-4. SPR Encodings for mfspr

SPR[1]			Register Name	Access
Decimal	SPR[5–9]	SPR[0–4]		
0	00000	00000	MQ	User
1	00000	00001	XER	User
4	00000	00100	RTCU[2]	User
5	00000	00101	RTCL[2]	User
6	00000	00110	DEC[3]	User
8	00000	01000	LR	User
9	00000	01001	CTR	User
18	00000	10010	DSISR	Supervisor
19	00000	10011	DAR	Supervisor
22	00000	10110	DEC[3]	Supervisor
25	00000	11001	SDR1	Supervisor

Table 10-4. SPR Encodings for mfspr(Continued)

SPR[1]			Register Name	Access
Decimal	SPR[5–9]	SPR[0–4]		
26	00000	11010	SRR0	Supervisor
27	00000	11011	SRR1	Supervisor
272	01000	10000	SPRG0	Supervisor
273	01000	10001	SPRG1	Supervisor
274	01000	10010	SPRG2	Supervisor
275	01000	10011	SPRG3	Supervisor
282	01000	11010	EAR	Supervisor
287	01000	11111	PVR	Supervisor
528	10000	10000	BAT0U	Supervisor
529	10000	10001	BAT0L	Supervisor
530	10000	10010	BAT1U	Supervisor
531	10000	10011	BAT1L	Supervisor
532	10000	10100	BAT2U	Supervisor
533	10000	10101	BAT2L	Supervisor
534	10000	10110	BAT3U	Supervisor
535	10000	10111	BAT3L	Supervisor
1008	11111	10000	Checkstop Register (HID0)	Supervisor
1009	11111	10001	Debug Mode Register (HID1)	Supervisor
1010	11111	10010	IABR (HID2)	Supervisor
1013	11111	10101	DABR (HID5)	Supervisor
1023	11111	11111	PIR (HID15)	Supervisor

[1]Note that the order of the two 5-bit halves of the SPR number is reversed compared with actual instruction coding. If the SPR field contains any value other than one of these implementation-specific values or one of the values shown in Table 3-40, the instruction form is invalid. SPR[0]=1 if and only if the register is being accessed at the supervisor level. Execution of this instruction specifying a defined and supervisor-level register when MSR[PR]=1 results in a privilege violation type program exception.

For **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions, SPR number coded in assembly language does not appear directly as a 10-bit binary number in the instruction. The number coded is split into two 5-bit halves that are reversed in the instruction, with high-order 5 bits appearing in bits 16–20 of the instruction and low-order 5 bits in bits 11 to 15.

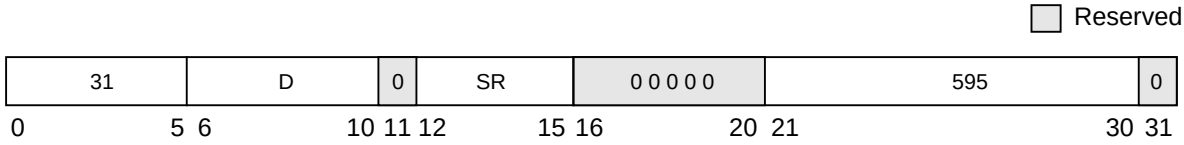
SPR encodings for DEC, MQ, RTCL, and RTCU are not part of the PowerPC architecture.

[2]On the 601, the **mfspr** instruction for the RTCU and RTCL registers must use these encodings (SPR4 and SPR5, respectively) regardless whether the processor is in supervisor or user mode. The **mtspr** instruction, which is supervisor-only for the RTCU and RTCL registers, must use the SPR20 and SPR21 encodings, respectively.

For forward compatability with other members of the PowerPC microprocessor family the **mftb** instruction should be used to obtain the contents of the RTCL and RTCU registers. The **mftb** instruction is a PowerPC instruction unimplemented by the 601, and will be trapped by the illegal instruction exception handler, which can then issue the appropriate **mfspr** instructions for reading the RTCL and RTCU registers

[3]Read access to the DEC register is supervisor-only in the PowerPC architecture, using SPR22. However, the POWER architecture allows user-level read access using SPR6. Note that the SPR6 encoding for the DEC will not be supported by other PowerPC processors.

mfsr **r**D**,**SR



rD←SEGREG(SR)

The contents of segment register SR is placed into **r**D.

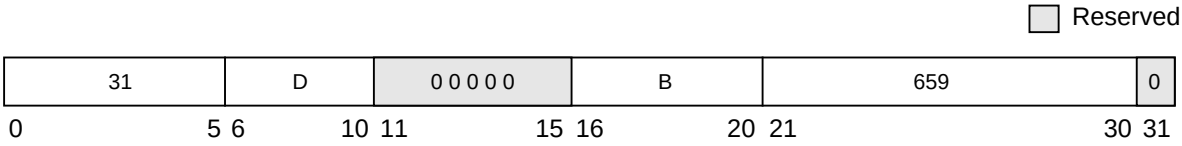
This is a supervisor-level instruction.

This instruction is defined only for 32-bit implementations; using it on a 64-bit implementation causes an illegal instruction type program exception.

Other registers altered:

- None

mfsrin **r**D,**r**B



rD←SEGREG(**r**B[0–3])

The contents of the segment register selected by bits 0–3 of **r**B are copied into **r**D.

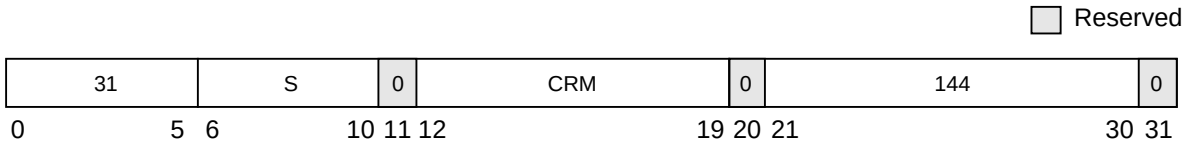
This is a supervisor-level instruction.

This instruction is defined only for 32-bit implementations. Using it on a 64-bit implementation causes an illegal instruction exception.

Other registers altered:

- None

mtcrf CRM**,r**S



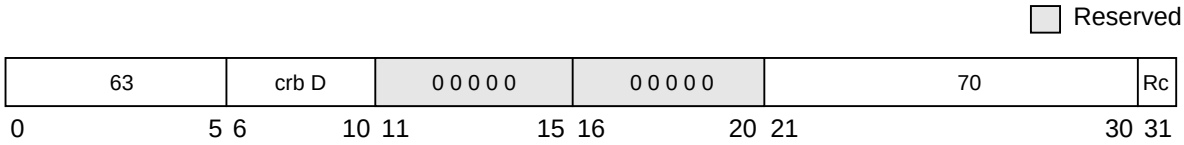
mask←(4)(CRM[0]) || (4)(CRM[1]) ||... (4)(CRM[7])
CR←(**r**S[32–63] & mask) | (CR & ¬ mask)

The contents of **r**S are placed into the condition register under control of the field mask specified by CRM. The field mask identifies the 4-bit fields affected. Let i be an integer in the range 0–7. If CRM(i) = 1, CR Field i (CR bits 4∗i through 4∗i+3) is set to the contents of the corresponding field of the of **r**S.

Other registers altered:

- CR fields selected by mask

mtfsb0 **crb**D (Rc=0)
mtfsb0. **crb**D (Rc=1)

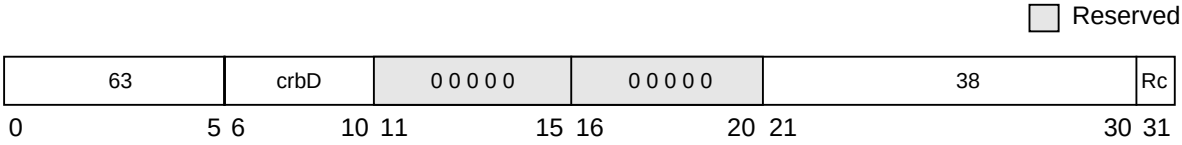


Bit **crb**D of the FPSCR is cleared to zero.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:
  Affected: FPSCR bit **crb**D
  Note: Bits 1 and 2 (FEX and VX) cannot be explicitly reset.

mtfsb1 **crb**D (Rc=0)
mtfsb1. **crb**D (Rc=1)

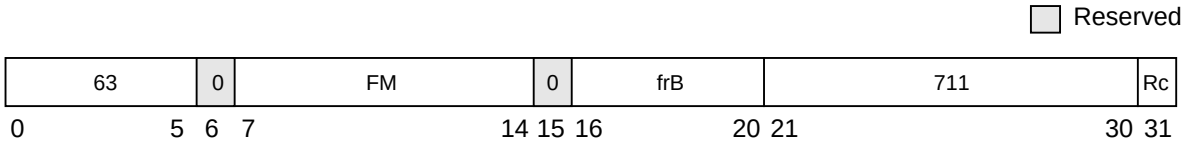


Bit **crb**D of the FPSCR is set to one.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:
  FPSCR bit **crb**D
  Note: Bits 1 and 2 (FEX and VX) cannot be explicitly reset.

mtfsf FM**,fr**B (Rc=0)
mtfsf. FM**,fr**B (Rc=1)



Bits 32–63 of register **fr**B are placed into the FPSCR under control of the field mask specified by FM. The field mask identifies the 4-bit fields affected. Let i be an integer in the range 0–7. If FM(i) = 1, FPSCR Field i (FPSCR bits 4∗i through 4∗i+3) is set to the contents of the corresponding field of the low-order 32 bits of register **fr**B.

The other PowerPC implementations, the move to FPSCR fields (**mtfsf**) instruction may perform more slowly when only a portion of the fields are updated.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

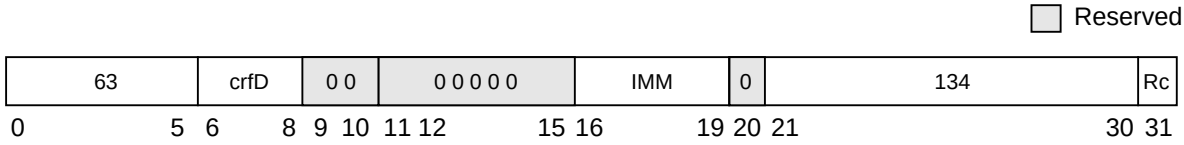
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  FPSCR fields selected by mask

Updating fewer than all eight fields of the FPSCR may have substantially poorer performance on some implementations than updating all the fields.

When FPSCR[0–3] is specified, bits 0 (FX) and 3 (OX) are set to the values of **fr**B[32] and **fr**B[35] (that is, even if this instruction causes OX to change from 0 to 1, FX is set from **fr**B[32] and not by the usual rule that FX is set to 1 when an exception bit changes from 0 to 1). Bits 1 and 2 (FEX and VX) are set according to the usual rule and not from **fr**B[33–34].

mtfsfi **crf**D**,**IMM (Rc=0)
mtfsfi. **crf**D**,**IMM (Rc=1)



The value of the IMM field is placed into FPSCR field **crf**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR1 Field):

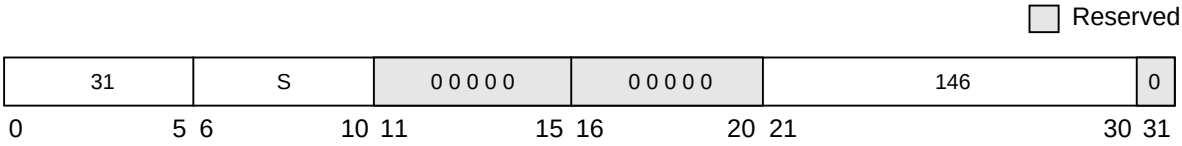
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

- Floating-point Status and Control Register:

  FPSCR field **crf**D

When FPSCR[0–3] is specified, bits 0 (FX) and 3 (OX) are set to the values of IMM[0] and IMM[3] (that is, even if this instruction causes OX to change from 0 to 1, FX is set from IMM[0] and not by the usual rule that FX is set to 1 when an exception bit changes from 0 to 1). Bits 1 and 2 (FEX and VX) are set according to the usual rule, given in Section 2.2.3, “Floating-Point Status and Control Register (FPSCR)” and not from IMM[1–2].

mtmsr **r**S



MSR←**r**S[0–31]

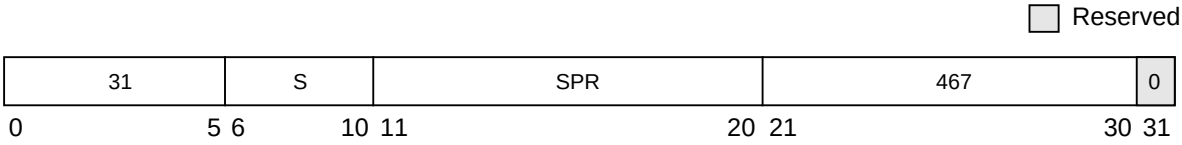
The contents of **r**S are placed into the MSR.

This is a supervisor-level instruction and execution synchronizing.

Other registers altered:

- MSR

mtspr SPR**,r**S



n = SPR[5–9] || SPR[0–4]
SPREG(*n*)←**r**S[0–31]

The SPR field denotes a special purpose register, encoded as shown in Table 10-4. The contents of **r**S are placed into the designated special purpose register.

The value of SPR[0] is 1 if and only if writing the register is a supervisor-level operation. Execution of this instruction specifying a defined and supervisor-level register when MSR[PR]=1 results in a supervisor-level instruction exception.

If the SPR field contains an invalid value, the instruction is treated as a no-op. For an invalid instruction form in which SPR[0]=1, if MSR[PR]=1 a supervisor-level instruction exception will occur instead of a no-op.

Other registers altered:

- None

Table 10-4 lists the SPR encodings for the 601.

Table 10-5. SPR Encodings for mtspr

SPR[1]			Register Name	Access
Decimal	SPR[5–9]	SPR[0–4]		
0	00000	00000	MQ	User
1	00000	00001	XER	User
8	00000	01000	LR	User
9	00000	01001	CTR	User
18	00000	10010	DSISR	Supervisor
19	00000	10011	DAR	Supervisor
20	00000	10100	RTCU[2]	Supervisor
21	00000	10101	RTCL[2]	Supervisor
22	00000	10110	DEC[3]	Supervisor

Table 10-5. SPR Encodings for mtspr(Continued)

SPR[1]			Register Name	Access
Decimal	SPR[5–9]	SPR[0–4]		
25	00000	11001	SDR1	Supervisor
26	00000	11010	SRR0	Supervisor
27	00000	11011	SRR1	Supervisor
272	01000	10000	SPRG0	Supervisor
273	01000	10001	SPRG1	Supervisor
274	01000	10010	SPRG2	Supervisor
275	01000	10011	SPRG3	Supervisor
282	01000	11010	EAR	Supervisor
528	10000	10000	IBAT0U	Supervisor
529	10000	10001	IBAT0L	Supervisor
530	10000	10010	IBAT1U	Supervisor
531	10000	10011	IBAT1L	Supervisor
532	10000	10100	IBAT2U	Supervisor
533	10000	10101	IBAT2L	Supervisor
534	10000	10110	IBAT3U	Supervisor
535	10000	10111	IBAT3L	Supervisor
1008	11111	10000	Checkstop Register (HID0)	Supervisor
1009	11111	10001	Debug Mode Register (HID1)	Supervisor
1010	11111	10010	IABR (HID2)	Supervisor
1013	11111	10101	DABR (HID5)	Supervisor
1023	11111	11111	PIR (HID15)	Supervisor

[1]Note that the order of the two 5-bit halves of the SPR number is reversed compared with actual instruction coding. If the SPR field contains any value other than one of these implementation-specific values or one of the values shown in Table 3-40, the instruction form is invalid. SPR[0]=1 if and only if the register is being accessed at the supervisor level. Execution of this instruction specifying a defined and supervisor-level register when MSR[PR]=1 results in a privilege violation type program exception.

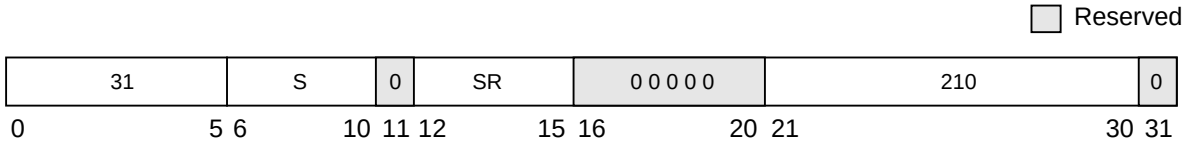
For **mtspr** and **mfspr** instructions, SPR number coded in assembly language does not appear directly as a 10-bit binary number in the instruction. The number coded is split into two 5-bit halves that are reversed in the instruction, with high-order 5 bits appearing in bits 16–20 of the instruction and low-order 5 bits in bits 11–15.

SPR encodings for DEC, MQ, RTCL, and RTCU are not part of the PowerPC architecture.

[2]On the 601, the **mfspr** instruction for the RTCU and RTCL registers must use these encodings (SPR4 and SPR5, respectively) regardless whether the processor is in supervisor or user mode. The **mtspr** instruction, which is supervisor-only for the RTCU and RTCL registers, must use the SPR20 and SPR21 encodings, respectively.

[3]Read access to the DEC register is supervisor-only in the PowerPC architecture, using SPR22. However, the POWER architecture allows user-level read access using SPR6. Note that the SPR6 encoding for the DEC will not be supported by other PowerPC processors.

mtsr SR**,r**S



SEGREG(SR)←(**r**S)

The contents of **r**S is placed into SR.

This is a supervisor-level instruction.

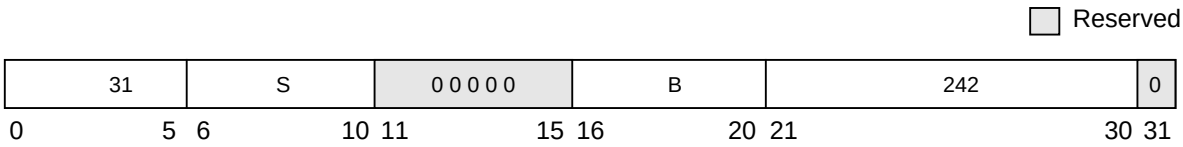
This instruction is defined only for 32-bit implementations. Using it on a 64-bit implementation causes an illegal instruction type program exception.

Other registers altered:

- None

mtsrin **r**S,**r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **mtsri**]



SEGREG(**r**B[0–3])←(**r**S)

The contents of **r**S are copied to the segment register selected by bits 0–3 of **r**B.

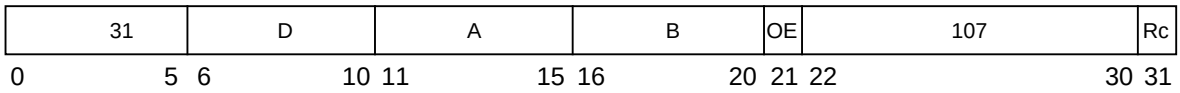
This is a supervisor-level instruction.

This instruction is defined only for 32-bit implementations. Using it on a 64-bit implementation causes an illegal instruction exception.

Other registers altered:

- None

mul	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
mul.	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
mulo	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
mulo.	**r**D**,r**A**,r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Bits 0–31 of the product (**r**A)∗(**r**B) are placed into **r**D. Bits 32–63 of the product (**r**A)∗(**r**B) are placed into the MQ register.

If Rc=1, then LT,GT and EQ reflect the result in the MQ register (the low order 32 bits). If OE=1 then SO and OV are set to one if the product cannot be represented in 32 bits.

If the smaller absolute value of the two multipliers is placed in **r**B, the instruction may complete execution more quickly. See Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing,” for additional information about instruction performance.

Other registers altered:

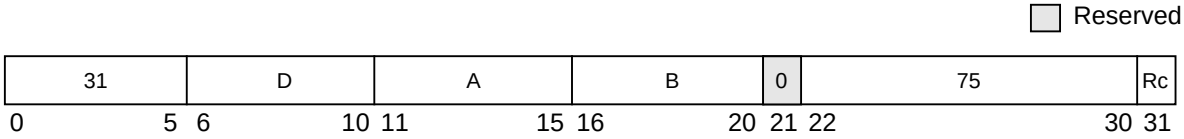
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

mulhw **r**D**,r**A**,r**B (Rc=0)
mulhw. **r**D**,r**A**,r**B (Rc=1)



prod[0–63]←**r**A[32–63]*rB[32–63]
rD[32–63]←prod[0–31]
rD[0–31]←undefined

The contents of **r**A and of **r**B are interpreted as 32-bit signed integers. They are multiplied to form a 64-bit signed integer product. The high-order 32 bits of the 64-bit product are placed into **r**D.

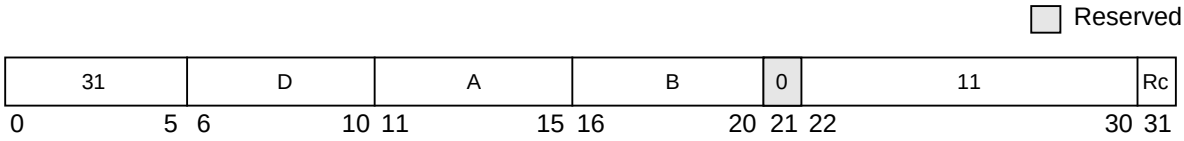
If the smaller absolute value of the two multipliers is placed in **r**B, the instruction may complete execution more quickly. See Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing,” for additional information about instruction performance.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

mulhwu **r**D**,r**A**,r**B (Rc=0)
mulhwu. **r**D**,r**A**,r**B (Rc=1)



prod[0–63]←**r**A[32–63]*__r__B[32–63]
rD[32–63]←prod[0–31]
rD[0–31]←undefined

The contents of **r**A and of **r**B are extracted and interpreted as 32-bit unsigned integers. They are multiplied to form a 64-bit unsigned integer product. The high-order 32 bits of the 64-bit product are placed into **r**D.

If the smaller absolute value of the two multipliers is placed in **r**B, the instruction may complete execution more quickly. See Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing,” for additional information about instruction performance.

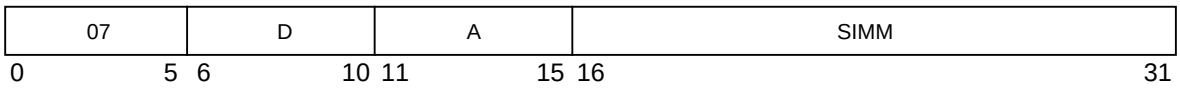
This instruction causes the contents of the MQ to become undefined.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

mulli **r**D**,r**A**,**SIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **muli**]



prod[0–48]←**r**A*SIMM
rD←prod[16–48]

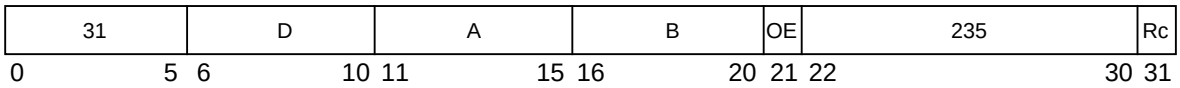
The low-order 32 bits of the 48-bit product (**r**A)*SIMM are placed into **r**D. The low-order bits of the 32-bit product are independent of whether the operands are treated as signed or unsigned integers.

Other registers altered:

- None

mullw	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
mullw.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
mullwo	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
mullwo.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **muls**, **muls.**, **mulso**, **mulso.**]



rD←**r**A[32–63]*__*__**r**B[32–63]

The low-order 32 bits of the 64-bit product (**r**A)*(**r**B) are placed into **r**D. The low-order bits of the 32-bit product are independent of whether the operands are treated as signed or unsigned integers. However, OV is set based on the result interpreted as a signed integer.

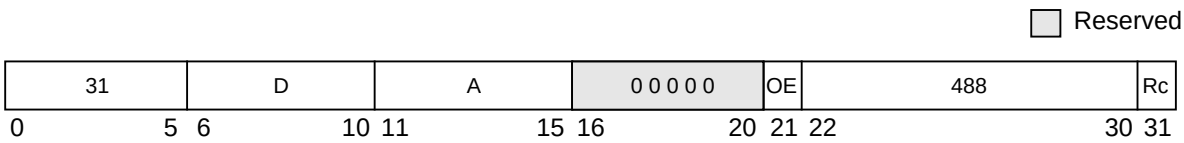
If the smaller absolute value of the two multipliers is placed in **r**B, the instruction may complete execution more quickly. See Chapter 7, “Instruction Timing,” for additional information about instruction performance.

If OE=1, then OV is set to one if the product cannot be represented in 32 bits.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

nabs	**r**D**,r**A	(OE=0 Rc=0)
nabs.	**r**D**,r**A	(OE=0 Rc=1)
nabso	**r**D**,r**A	(OE=1 Rc=0)
nabso.	**r**D**,r**A	(OE=1 Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

The negative absolute value –|(**r**A)| is placed into **r**D.

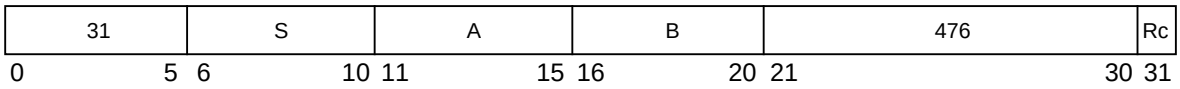
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

Note that **nabs** never overflows. If OE=1 then XER(OV) is cleared to zero and XER(SO) is not changed.

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

nand **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
nand. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



rA← ¬ ((**r**S) & (**r**B))

The contents of **r**S are ANDed with the contents of **r**B and the one’s complement of the result is placed into **r**A.

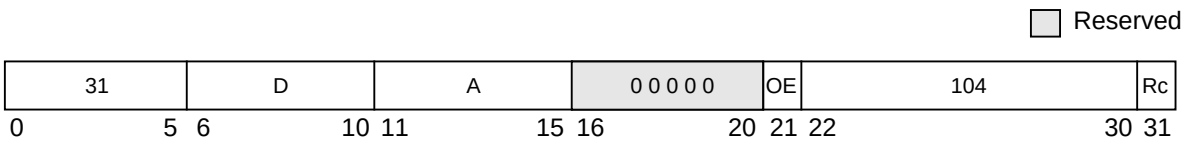
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

NAND with **r**A=**r**B can be used to obtain the one's complement.

neg	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=0)
neg.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=1)
nego	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=0)
nego.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=1)



rD← ¬ (**r**A) + 1

The sum ¬ (**r**A) + 1 is placed into **r**D.

If **r**A contains the most negative 32-bit number (x'8000_0000'), the low-order 32 bits of the result contain the most negative 32-bit number and, if OE=1, OV is set.

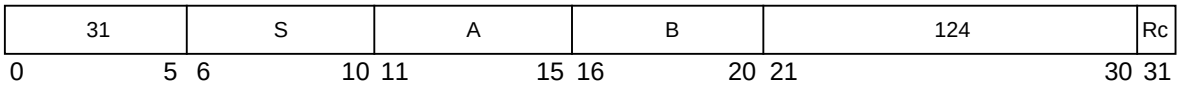
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

  Affected: SO OV (if OE=1)

nor **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
nor. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



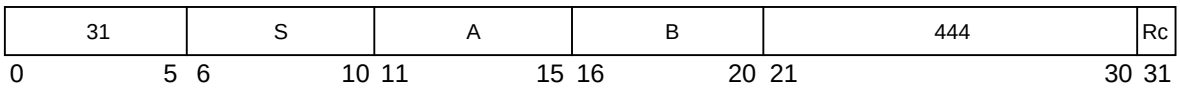
rA← ¬ ((**r**S) | (**r**B))

The contents of **r**S are ORed with the contents of **r**B and the one's complement of the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

or **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
or. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



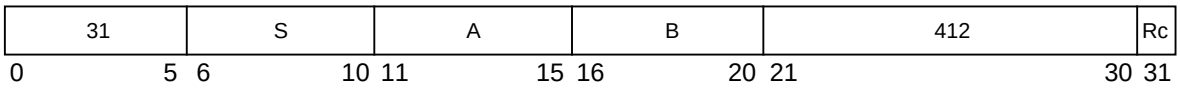
rA←(**r**S) | (**r**B)

The contents of **r**S is ORed with the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

orc **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
orc. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



rA ← (**r**S) | ¬ (**r**B)

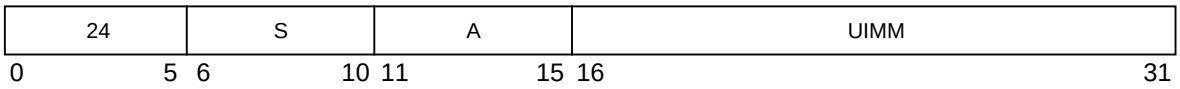
The contents of **r**S is ORed with the complement of the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

ori **r**A,**r**S,UIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **oril**]



rA←(**r**S) | ((16)0 || UIMM)

The contents of **r**S is ORed with x'0000' || UIMM and the result is placed into **r**A.

The preferred "no-op" (an instruction that does nothing) is:

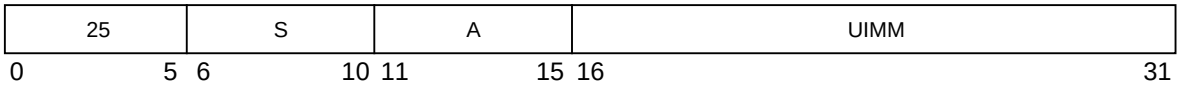
ori 0,0,0

Other registers altered:

- None

oris **r**A,**r**S,UIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **oriu**]

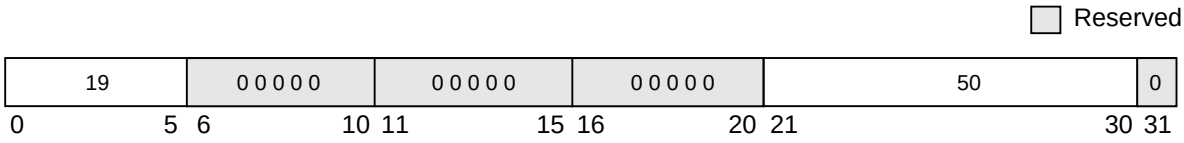


rA←(**r**S) | (UIMM || (16)0)

The contents of **r**S is ORed with UIMM || x'0000' and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- None




```
MSR[16–31]←SRR1[16–31]
NIA←iea SRR0[0–29] || 0b00
```

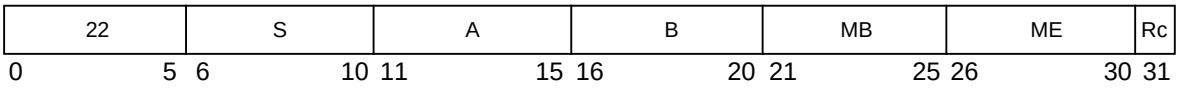
Bits 16–31 of SRR1 are placed into bits 16–31 of the MSR, then the next instruction is fetched, under control of the new MSR value, from the address SRR0[0–29] || b'00'.

This is a supervisor-level instruction and is context synchronizing.

Other registers altered:

- MSR

rlmi **r**A,**r**S,**r**B,MB,ME (Rc=0)
rlmi. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B,MB,ME (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.
The contents of **r**S is rotated left the number of positions specified by bits 27–31 of **r**B. The rotated data is inserted into **r**A under control of the generated mask.

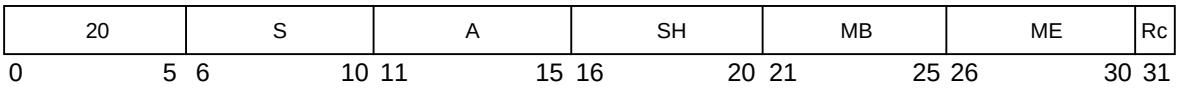
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

rlwimi **r**A,**r**S,SH,MB,ME (Rc=0)
rlwimi. **r**A,**r**S,SH,MB,ME (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **rlimi, rlimi**.]



n←SH
r←ROTL(**r**S, *n*)
m←MASK(MB, ME)
rA←(r&m) | (**r**A & ¬ m)

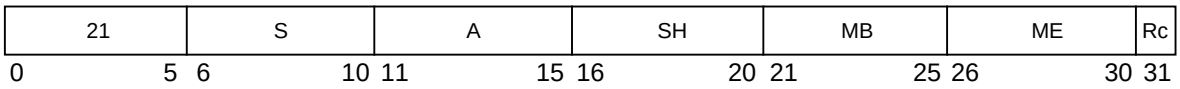
The contents of **r**S are rotated left SH bits. A mask is generated having 1-bits from bit MB through bit ME and 0-bits elsewhere. The rotated data is inserted into **r**A under control of the generated mask.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

rlwinm **r**A,**r**S,SH,MB,ME (Rc=0)
rlwinm. **r**A,**r**S,SH,MB,ME (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **rlinm, rlinm.**]



n←SH
r←ROTL(**r**S, *n*)
m←MASK(MB, ME)
rA←r & m

The contents of **r**S are rotated left SH bits. A mask is generated having 1-bits from bit MB through bit ME and 0-bits elsewhere. The rotated data is ANDed with the generated mask and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

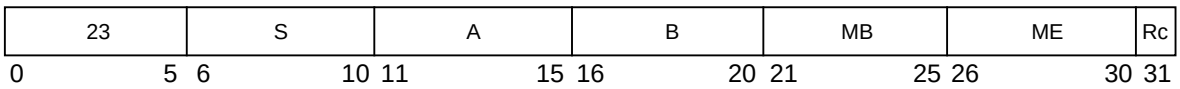
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

The opcode **rlwinm** can be used to extract an *n*-bit field, that starts at bit position *b* in **r**S[0–31], right-justified into **r**A (clearing the remaining 32 – *n* bits of **r**A), by setting SH = *b* + *n*, MB = 32-*n*, and ME = 31. It can be used to extract an *n*-bit field, that starts at bit position *b* in **r**S[0–31], left-justified into **r**A (clearing the remaining 32 – *n* bits of **r**A), by setting SH = *b*, MB = 0, and ME = *n* – 1. It can be used to rotate the contents of a register left (or right) by *n* bits, by setting SH = *n*(32– *n*), MB = 0, and ME = 31. It can be used to shift the contents of a register right by *n* bits, by setting SH = 32 – N, MB = *n*, and ME = 31. It can be used to clear the high-order *b* bits of a register and then shift the result left by *n* bits by setting SH = *n*, MB = *b* – *n* and ME = 31 – *n*. It can be used to clear the low-order *n* bits of a register, by setting SH = 0, MB = 0, and ME = 31 – *n*.

rlwnm **r**A,**r**S,**r**B,MB,ME (Rc=0)
rlwnm. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B,MB,ME (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **rlnm, rlnm**.]



n←**r**B[27-31]
r←ROTL(**r**S, *n*)
m←MASK(MB, ME)
rA←r & m

The contents of **r**S are rotated left the number of bits specified by **r**B[27–31]. A mask is generated having 1-bit from bit MB through bit ME and 0-bits elsewhere. The rotated data is ANDed with the generated mask and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

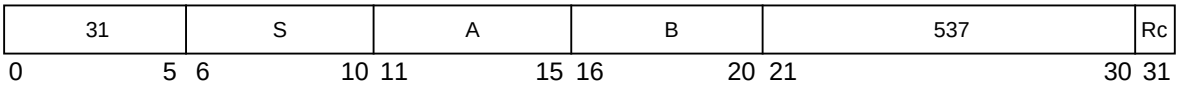
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

The opcode **rlwnm** can be used to extract an *n*-bit field, that starts at variable bit position *b* in **r**S[0–31], right-justified into **r**A (clearing the remaining 32 – *n* bits of **r**A), by setting **r**B[27–31] = *b* + *n*, MB = 32 – *n*, and ME = 31. It can be used to extract an *n*-bit field, that starts at variable bit position *b* in **r**S[0–31], left-justified into **r**A (clearing the remaining 32 – *n* bits of **r**A), by setting **r**B[27–31] = *b*, MB = 0, and ME = *n* – 1. It can be used to rotate the contents of a register left (or right) by variable *n* bits, by setting **r**B[27–31] = *n*(32 – N), MB = 0, and ME = 31.

Equivalent mnemonics are provided for some of these uses.

rrib **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
rrib. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Bit 0 of **r**S is rotated right the amount specified by bits 27–31 of **r**B. The bit is then inserted into **r**A.

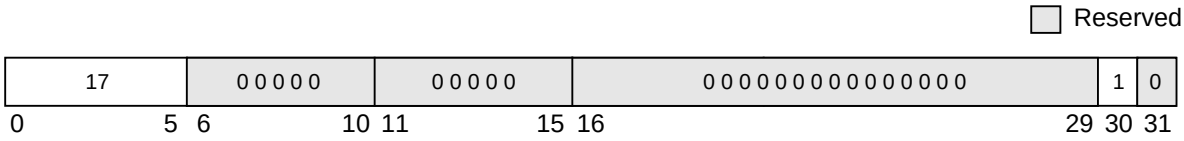
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

[POWER mnemonic: **svca**]



This instruction calls the operating system to perform a service. When control is returned to the program that executed the system call, the content of the registers depends on the register conventions used by the program providing the system service.

This instruction is context synchronizing, as described in Section 3.1.2, “Context Synchronization”. Although the PowerPC architecture considers **sc** to be a branch processor instruction, it is executed by the integer processor in the 601.

Other registers altered:

- Dependent on the system service

POWER Compatibility Note: The PowerPC **sc** instruction is substantially different from the POWER **svc** instruction. The following aspects of these instructions were considered with respect to POWER compatibility:

The PowerPC architecture defines the **sc** instruction with the “LK” bit set to be an invalid form. POWER architecture defines the **svc** instruction (same opcode as PowerPC **sc** instruction) with the “LK” bit set as a valid form which places the address of the instruction following the **svc** into the link register. In the case of the 601, an **sc** instruction with the “LK” bit set will execute correctly (as defined in the PowerPC architecture) and will update the link register with the address of the instruction following the **sc** instruction.

The PowerPC architecture defines the **sc** instruction in such a manner that requires bit 30 of the instruction to be b'1' (when bit 30 is b'0', the instruction is considered reserved). The POWER architecture **svc** instruction does not have such a restriction, and uses this bit to define an alternate form of the **svc** instruction. Although the 601 does not support this alternate form of the **svc** instruction, it does ignore the state of bit 30 of the instruction during decode and execution.

As a result of executing an **sc** instruction, the PowerPC architecture defines bits 0–15 of register SRR1 to be undefined. In the case of the 601, execution of the **sc** instruction will cause bits 16–31 of the instruction to be placed into bits 0–15 of register SRR1.

The effective (logical) address of the instruction following the system call instruction is placed into SRR0. Bits 16–31 of the MSR are placed into bits 16–31 of SRR1.

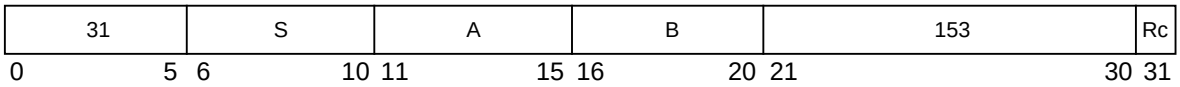
Then a system call exception is generated. The exception causes the MSR to be altered as described in Section 5.4, “Exception Definitions.”

The exception causes the next instruction to be fetched from offset x'C00' from the physical base address indicated by the new setting of MSR[EP]. This instruction is context-synchronizing.

Other registers altered:

- SRR0 SRR1 MSR

sle **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
sle. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. A mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed in **r**A.

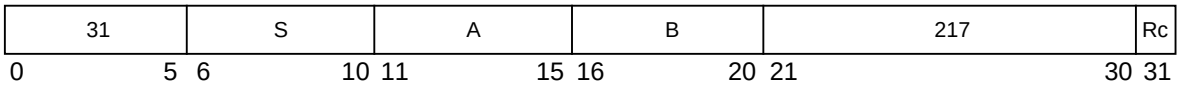
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

sleq **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
sleq. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. A mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in **r**A. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register.

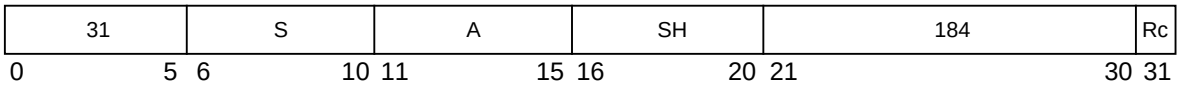
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

sliq **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=0)
sliq. **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by SH. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. A mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word is placed into **r**A.

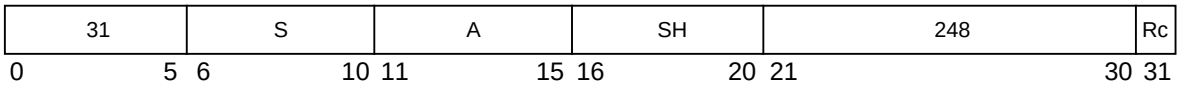
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

slliq **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=0)
slliq. **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by SH. A mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed into **r**A. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register.

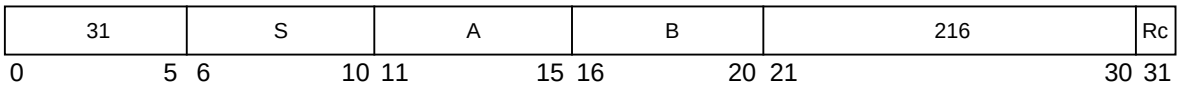
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

sllq **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
sllq. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B.

When bit 26 of **r**B is a zero, a mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated. A word of zeros is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask.

When bit 26 of **r**B is a one, a mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* ones is generated. A word of zeros is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask.

The merged word is placed into **r**A. The MQ register is not altered.

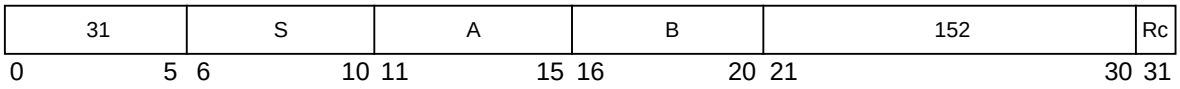
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

slq **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
slq. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register.

When bit 26 of **r**B is a zero, a mask of 32 – *n* ones followed by *n* zeros is generated.

When bit 26 of **r**B is a one, a mask of all zeros is generated.

The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed into **r**A.

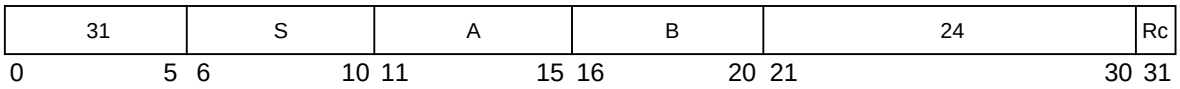
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

slw **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
slw. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **sl, sl.**]



n←**r**B[27-31]
rA←ROTL(**r**S, *n*)

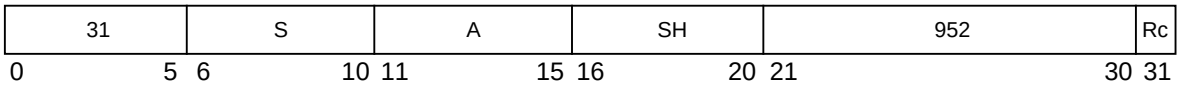
If bit 16 of **r**B=0, the contents of **r**S are shifted left the number of bits specified by **r**B[27–31]. Bits shifted out of position 0 are lost. Zeros are supplied to the vacated positions on the right. The 32-bit result is placed into **r**A. If bit 16 of **r**B=1, 32 zeros are placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

sraiq **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=0)
sraiq. **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by SH. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. The rotated word is then merged with a word of 32 sign bits from **r**S, under control of the generated mask.

The merged word is placed in **r**A.

The rotated word is ANDed with the complement of the generated mask. This 32-bit result is ORed together and then ANDed with bit 0 of **r**S to produce XER[CA].

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

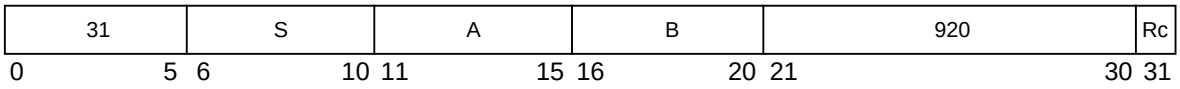
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

  Affected: CA

All shift right algebraic instructions can be used for a fast divide by 2(*n*) if followed with **addze**.

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

sraq **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
sraq. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. When bit 26 of **r**B is a zero, a mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. When bit 26 of **r**B is a one, a mask of all zeros is generated. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. The rotated word is then merged with a word of 32 sign bits from **r**S, under control of the generated mask.

The merged word is placed in **r**A.

The rotated word is ANDed with the complement of the generated mask. This 32-bit result is ORed together and then ANDed with bit 0 of **r**S to produce XER[CA].

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

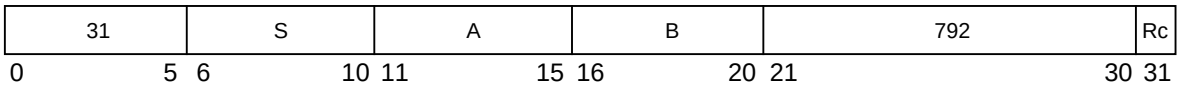
  Affected: CA

All shift right algebraic instructions can be used for a fast divide by 2(*n*) if followed with **addze**.

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

sraw **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
sraw. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **sra, sra.**]



n←**r**B[27-31]
rA←ROTL(**r**S, *n*)

If **r**B[26]=0,then the contents of **r**S are shifted right the number of bits specified by **r**B[27–31]. Bits shifted out of position 31 are lost. The result is padded on the left with sign bits before being placed into **r**A. If **r**B[26]=1, then **r**A is filled with 32 sign bits (bit 0) from **r**S. CR0 is set based on the value written into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

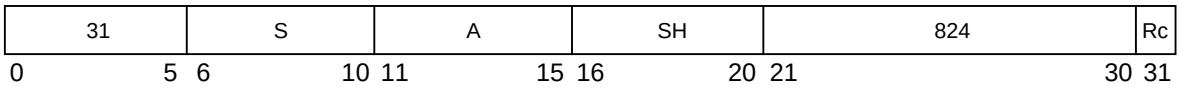
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

- XER:

  Affected: CA

srawi **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=0)
srawi. **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **srai, srai.**]



n←SH
rA←ROTL(**r**S, 32-*n*)

The contents of **r**S are shifted right SH bits. Bits shifted out of position 31 are lost. The shifted value is sign extended before being placed in **r**A. The 32-bit result is placed into **r**A. XER[CA] is set to 1 if **r**S contains a negative number and any 1-bits are shifted out of position 31; otherwise XER[CA] is cleared to 0. A shift amount of zero causes XER[CA] to be cleared to 0.

Other registers altered:

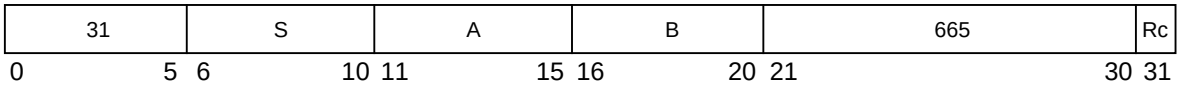
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

- XER:

  Affected: CA

sre **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
sre. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed in **r**A.

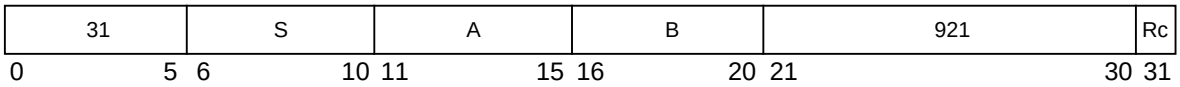
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

srea **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
srea. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is placed in the MQ register. The rotated word is then merged with a word of 32 sign bits from **r**S, under control of the generated mask.

The merged word is placed in **r**A.

The rotated word is ANDed with the complement of the generated mask. This 32-bit result is ORed together and then ANDed with bit 0 of **r**S to produce XER[CA].

Other registers altered:

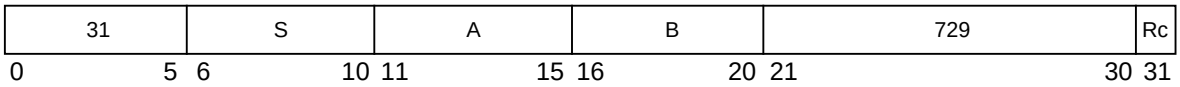
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:

  Affected: CA

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

sreq **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
sreq. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in **r**A. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register.

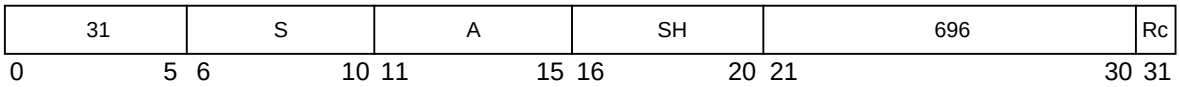
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

sriq **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=0)
sriq. **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by SH. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed in **r**A.

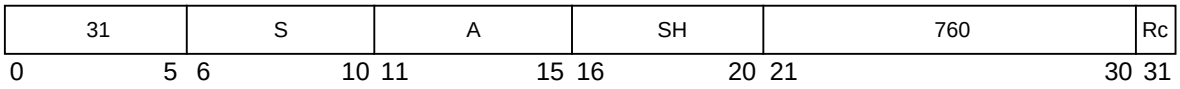
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

srliq **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=0)
srliq. **r**A,**r**S,SH (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified by SH. A mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the MQ register, under control of the generated mask. The merged word is placed in **r**A. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register.

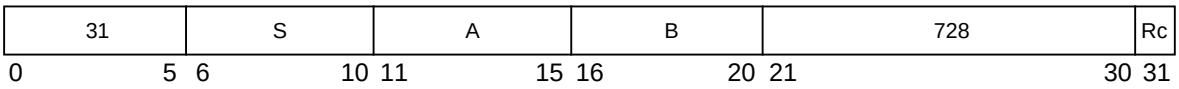
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

srlq **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
srlq. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. When bit 26 of **r**B is a zero, a mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated. The rotated word is then merged with the MQ register, under control of the generated mask.

When bit 26 of **r**B is a one, a mask of *n* ones followed by 32 – *n* zeros is generated. A word of zeros is then merged with the contents of the MQ register, under control of the generated mask.

The merged word is placed in **r**A. The MQ register is not altered.

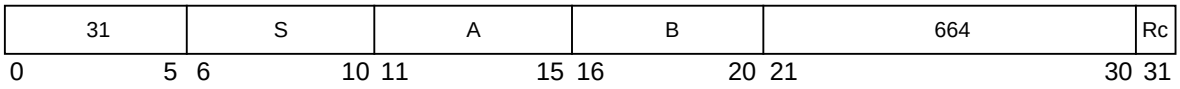
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

srq **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
srq. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



This instruction is not part of the PowerPC architecture.

Register **r**S is rotated left 32 – *n* bits where *n* is the shift amount specified in bits 27–31 of **r**B. The rotated word is placed into the MQ register.

When bit 26 of **r**B is a zero, a mask of *n* zeros followed by 32 – *n* ones is generated.

When bit 26 of **r**B is a one, a mask of all zeros is generated.

The logical AND of the rotated word and the generated mask is placed in **r**A.

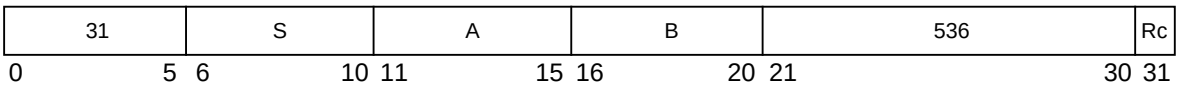
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

Note: This instruction is specific to the 601.

srw **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
srw. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **sr, sr.**]



n←**r**B[27-31]
rA←ROTL(**r**S, 32-*n*)

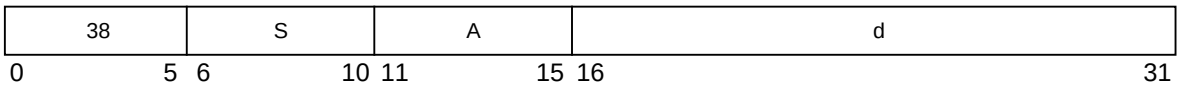
If **r**B[26]=0, the contents of **r**A are shifted right the number of bits specified by **r**A[27–31]. Bits shifted out of position 31 are lost. Zeros are supplied to the vacated positions on the left. The 32-bit result is placed into **r**A.

If **r**B[26]=1, then **r**A is filled with zeros.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

stb **r**S,d**(r**A**)**



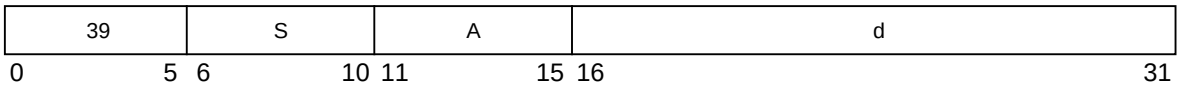

```
if rA = 0 then b←0
else          b←(rA)
EA←b + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 1)←rS[24-31]
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. Register **r**S[24–31] is stored into the byte in memory addressed by EA. Register **r**S is unchanged.

Other registers altered:

- None

stbu **r**S,d**(r**A**)**



EA←(**r**A) + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 1)←**r**S[24-31]
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. Register **r**S[24–31] is stored into the byte in memory addressed by EA.

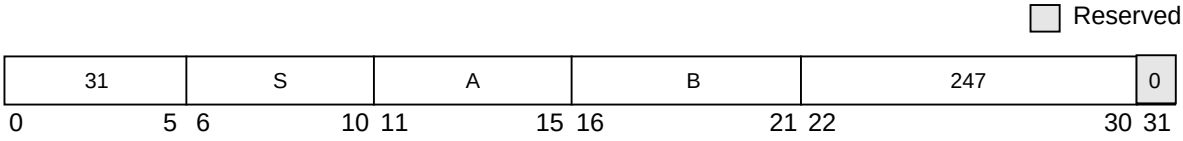
EA is placed into **r**A.

While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

stbux **r**S,**r**A,**r**B



EA←(**r**A) + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 1)←**r**S[24-31]
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). Register **r**S[24–31] is stored into the byte in memory addressed by EA.

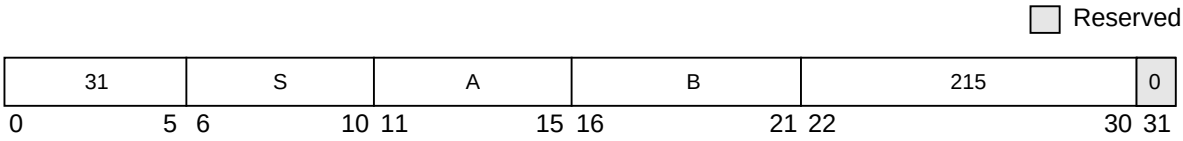
EA is placed into **r**A.

While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

stbx **r**S,**r**A,**r**B



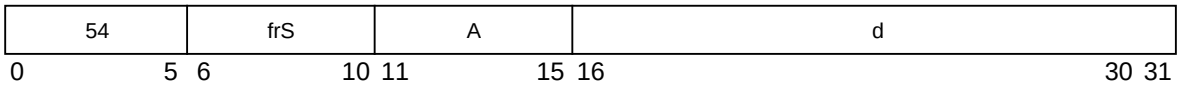
if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 1) ← **r**S[24-31]

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). Register **r**S[24–31] is stored into the byte in memory addressed by EA. Register **r**S is unchanged.

Other registers altered:

- None

stfd **fr**S,d**(r**A**)**



if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 8)←(**fr**S)

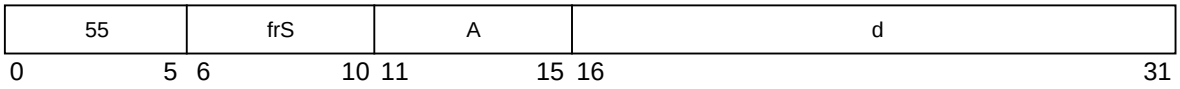
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

The contents of register **fr**S is stored into the double word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

stfdu **fr**S,d**(r**A**)**



if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + d
MEM(EA, 4)← SINGLE(**fr**S)
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

The contents of register **fr**S is stored into the double word in memory addressed by EA.

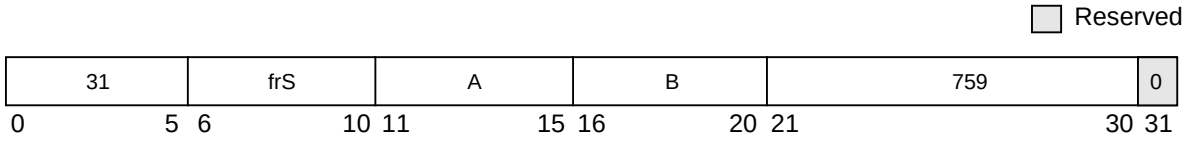
EA is placed into **r**A.

While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

stfdux **fr**S,**r**A,**r**B



EA←(**r**A) + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 8)←(**fr**S)
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B).

The contents of register **fr**S is stored into the double word in memory addressed by EA.

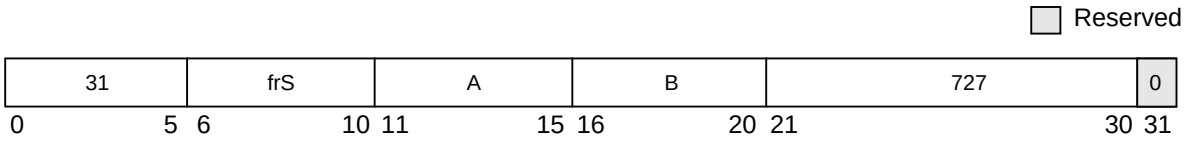
EA is placed into **r**A.

While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

stfdx **fr**S,**r**A,**r**B



if **r**A = 0 then b ←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 8)←(**fr**S)

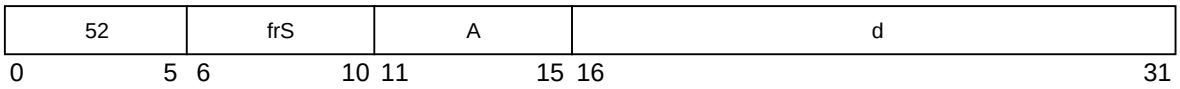
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B).

The contents of register **fr**S is stored into the double word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

stfs **fr**S,d(**r**A)



if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 4)←SINGLE(**fr**S)

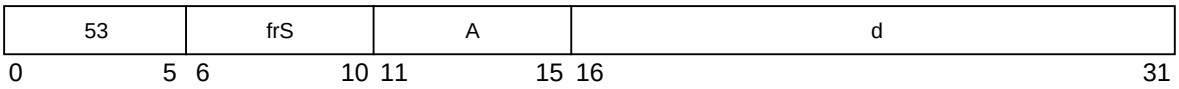
EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+d.

The contents of register **fr**S is converted to single-precision and stored into the word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

stfsu **fr**S,d**(r**A**)**



EA←**r**A + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 4)←SINGLE(**fr**S)
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

The contents of **fr**S is converted to single-precision and stored into the word in memory addressed by EA.

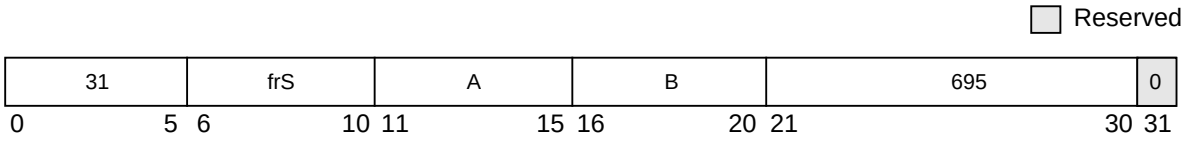
EA is placed into **r**A.

While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

stfsux **fr**S,**r**A,**r**B



EA←(**r**A) + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 4)←SINGLE(**fr**S)
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B).

The contents of **fr**S is converted to single-precision and stored into the word in memory addressed by EA.

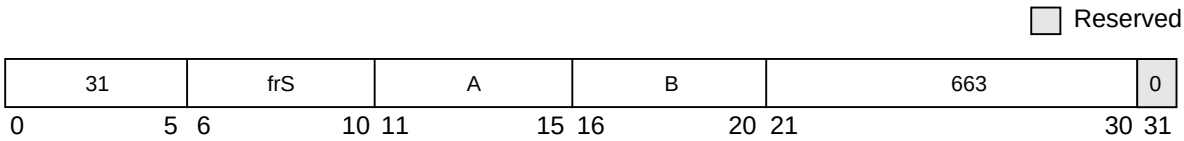
EA is placed into **r**A.

While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

stfsx **fr**S,**r**A,**r**B



if **r**A=0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 4)←SINGLE(**fr**S)

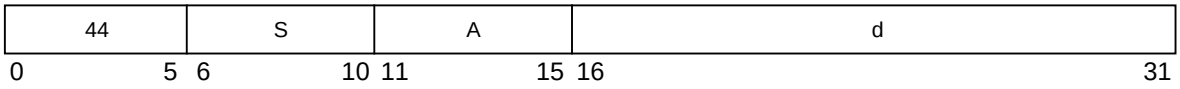
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B).

The contents of register **fr**S is converted to single-precision and stored into the word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

sth **r**S,d**(r**A**)**



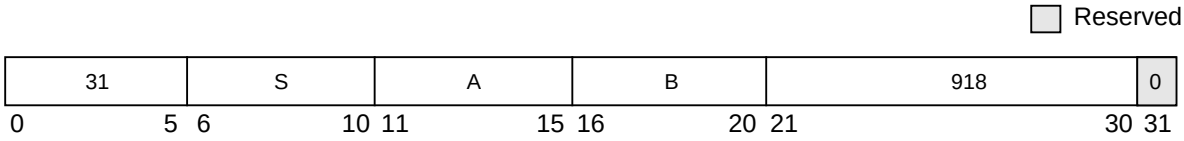
if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 2)←**r**S[16-31]

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. Register **r**S[16–31] is stored into the half word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

sthbrx **r**S,**r**A,**r**B



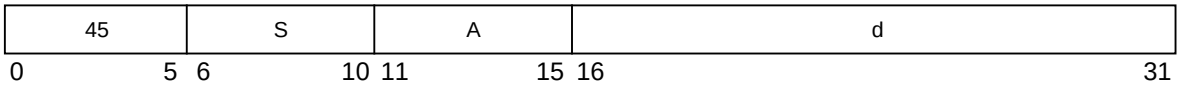
if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 2)←**r**S[24-31] || **r**S[16-23]

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The contents of **r**S[24–31] are stored into bits 0–7 of the half word in memory addressed by EA. Bits **r**S[16–23] are stored into bits 8–15 of the half word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

sthu **r**S,d**(r**A**)**



EA←**r**A + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 2)←**r**S[16-31]
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The contents of **r**S[16–31] are stored into the half word in memory addressed by EA.

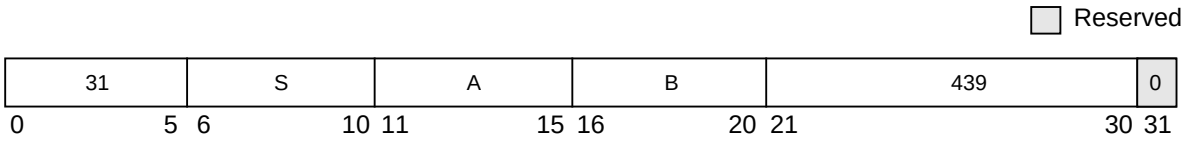
EA is placed into **r**A.

While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

sthux **r**S,**r**A,**r**B



EA←(**r**A) + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 2)←**r**S[16-31]
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). Register **r**S[16–31] is stored into the half word in memory addressed by EA.

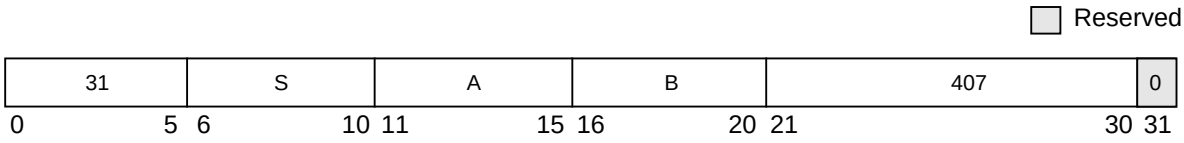
EA is placed into **r**A.

While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

sthx **r**S,**r**A,**r**B



if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 2)←**r**S[16-31]

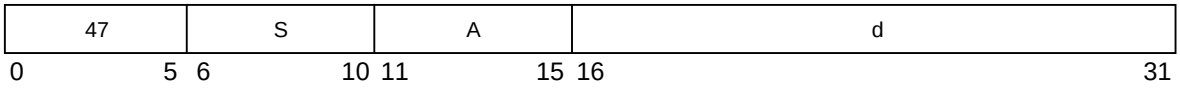
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). Register **r**S[16–31] is stored into the half word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

stmw **r**S,d**(r**A**)**

[POWER mnemonic: **stm**]




```
if rA = 0 then b←0
else          b←(rA)
EA←b + EXTS(d)
r←rS
do while r ≤ 31
   MEM(EA, 4) ← GPR(r)
   r←r + 1
   EA← EA + 4
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d.

n = (32 – **r**S).

n consecutive words starting at EA are stored from the GPRs **r**S through 31. For example, if **r**S=30, 2 words are stored.

EA must be a multiple of 4; otherwise, the system alignment error handler may be invoked. For additional information about alignment and data access exceptions, see Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').”

Other registers altered:

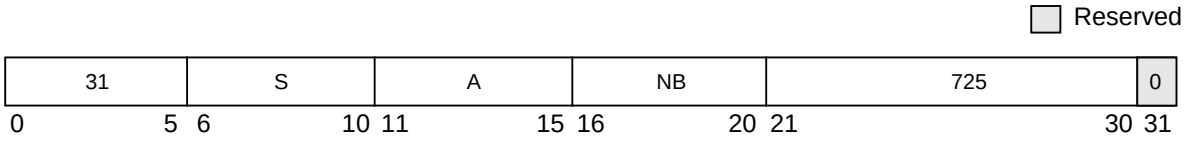
- None

In future implementations, this instruction is likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual store instructions that produce the same results.

Note that on other PowerPC implementations, load and store multiple instructions that are not on a word boundary either take an alignment exception or generate results that are boundedly undefined.

stswi **r**S,**r**A,NB

[POWER mnemonic: **stsi**]




```
if rA = 0 then EA←0
else          EA←(rA)
if NB = 0 then n←32
else          n←NB
r←rS-1
i←0
do while n>0
   if i = 0 then r←r+1 (mod 32)
   MEM(EA, 1)←GPR(r)[i–i+7]
   i←i+8
   if i = 32 then i←0
   EA←EA+1
   n←n-1
```

EA is (**r**A|0). Let *n* = NB if NB≠0, *n* = 32 if NB = 0; *n* is the number of bytes to store. Let *nr* = CEIL(*n*/4): *nr* is the number of registers to supply data.

n consecutive bytes starting at EA are stored from GPRs **r**S through **r**S + *nr* – 1.

Under certain conditions (for example, segment boundary crossings) the data alignment error handler may be invoked. For additional information about data alignment exceptions, see Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').”

Bytes are stored left to right from each register. The sequence of registers wraps around through GPR0 if required.

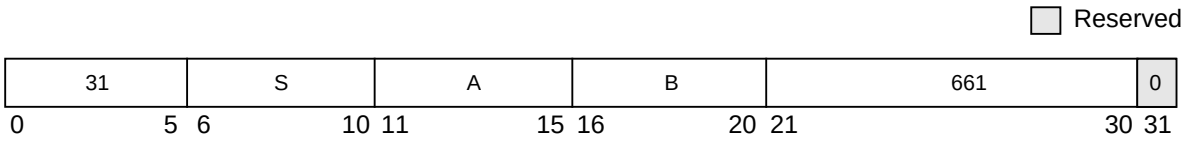
Other registers altered:

- None

In future implementations, this instruction is likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual store instructions that produce the same results.

stswx **r**S,**r**A,**r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **stsx**]




```
if rA = 0 then b←0
else          b←(rA)
EA←b+(rB)
n←XER[25-31]
r←rS-1
i←0
do while n>0
   if i = 0 then r←r+1 (mod 32)
   MEM(EA, 1)←GPR(r)[i–i+7]
   i←i+8
   if i = 32 then i←0
   EA←EA+1
   n←n-1
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). Let *n* = XER[25–31]; *n* is the number of bytes to store.

Let *nr* = CEIL(*n*/4): *nr* is the number of registers to supply data.

n consecutive bytes starting at EA are stored from GPRs **r**S through **r**S + *nr* – 1.

Under certain conditions (for example, segment boundary crossings) the data alignment error handler may be invoked. For additional information about data alignment exceptions, see Section 5.4.3, “Data Access Exception (x'00300').”

Bytes are stored left to right from each register. The sequence of registers wraps around through GPR0 if required.

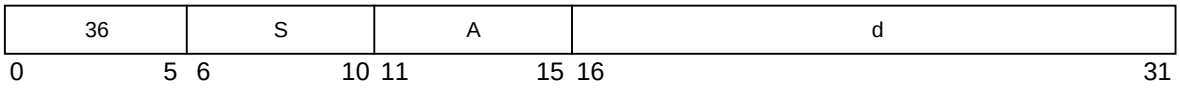
Other registers altered:

- None

In future implementations, this instruction is likely to have greater latency and take longer to execute, perhaps much longer, than a sequence of individual store instructions that produce the same results.

stw **r**S,d**(r**A**)**

[POWER mnemonic: **st**]



if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 4)←**r**S

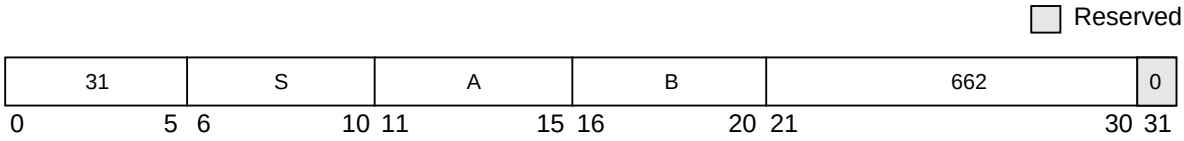
EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + d. The contents of **r**S are stored into the word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

stwbrx **r**S,**r**A,**r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **stbrx**]



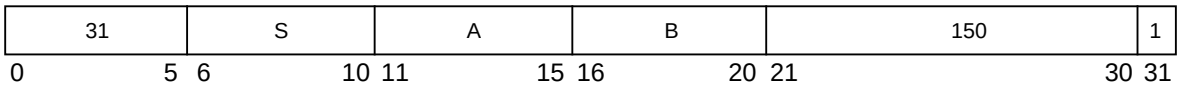

```
if rA = 0 then b←0
else          b←(rA)
EA←b + (rB)
MEM(EA, 4)←rS[24-31] || rS[16-23] || rS[8-15] || rS[0-7]
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0) + (**r**B). The contents of **r**S[24–31] are stored into bits 0–7 of the word in memory addressed by EA. Bits **r**S[16–23] are stored into bits 8–15 of the word in memory addressed by EA. Bits **r**S[8–15] are stored into bits 16–23 of the word in memory addressed by EA. Bits **r**S[0–7] are stored into bits 24–31 of the word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

stwcx. **r**S,**r**A,**r**B




```
if rA = 0 then b←0
else          b←(rA)
EA←b + (rB)
if RESERVE then
   MEM(EA, 4)←rS
   RESERVE←0
   CR0←0b00 || 0b1|| XER[SO]
else
   CR0←0B00 || 0B0 || XER[SO]
```

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B).

If a reservation exists, the contents of **r**S are stored into the word in memory addressed by EA and the reservation is cleared. If no reservation exists, the instruction completes without altering memory or cache.

CR0 Field is set to reflect whether the store operation was performed (i.e., whether a reservation existed when the **stwcx.** instruction commenced execution) as follows.

CR0[LT GT EQ S0] ←b'00' || store_performed || XER[SO]

The EQ bit in the condition register field CR0 is modified to reflect whether the store operation was performed (i.e., whether a reservation existed when the **stwcx.** instruction began execution). If the store was completed successfully, the EQ bit is set to one.

EA must be a multiple of 4; otherwise, the system alignment error handler may be invoked or the results may be boundedly undefined.

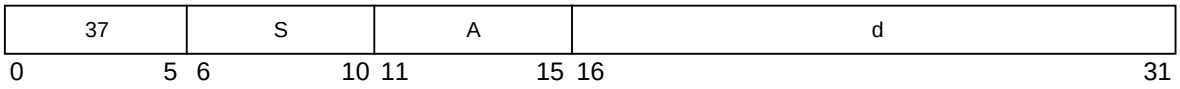
Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):

  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO

stwu **r**S,d**(r**A**)**

[POWER mnemonic: **stu**]



EA←**r**A + EXTS(d)
MEM(EA, 4)←**r**S
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+d. The contents of **r**S are stored into the word in memory addressed by EA.

EA is placed into **r**A.

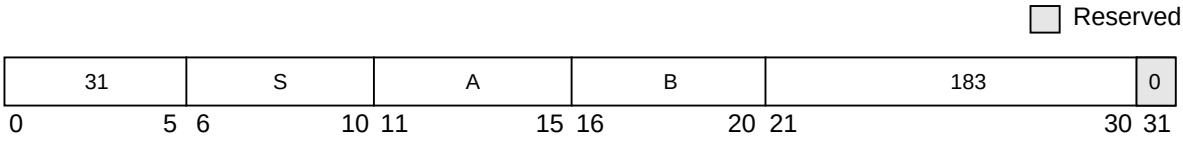
While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

stwux **r**S,**r**A,**r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **stux**]



EA←(**r**A) + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 4)←**r**S
rA←EA

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The contents of **r**S are stored into the word in memory addressed by EA.

EA is placed into **r**A.

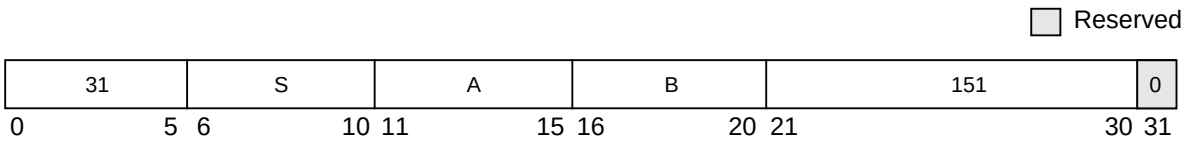
While the PowerPC architecture defines the instruction form as invalid if **r**A=0, the 601 supports execution with **r**A=0 as shown above.

Other registers altered:

- None

stwx **r**S,**r**A,**r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **stx**]



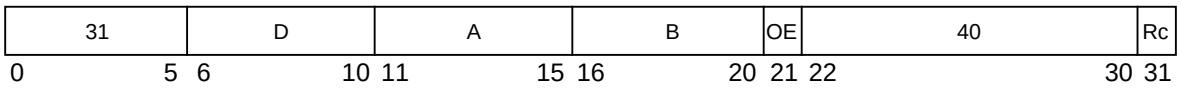
if **r**A = 0 then b←0
else b←(**r**A)
EA←b + (**r**B)
MEM(EA, 4)←**r**S

EA is the sum (**r**A|0)+(**r**B). The contents of **r**S are is stored into the word in memory addressed by EA.

Other registers altered:

- None

subf	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
subf.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
subfo	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
subfo.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)



rD ← ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) + 1

The sum ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) +1 is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

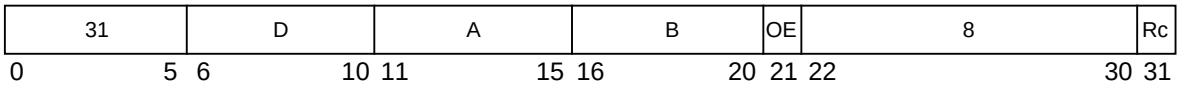
- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

subfc*x*

Subtract from Carrying

subfc	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
subfc.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
subfco	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
subfco.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **sf, sf., sfo, sfo.**]



rD← ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) + 1

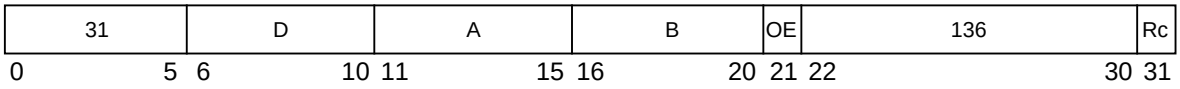
The sum ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) + 1 is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: CA
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

subfe	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=0)
subfe.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=0 Rc=1)
subfeo	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=0)
subfeo.	**r**D,**r**A,**r**B	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **sfe, sfe., sfeo, sfeo.**]



rD← ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) + XER[CA]

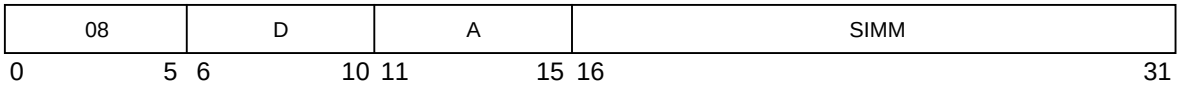
The sum ¬ (**r**A) + (**r**B) + XER[CA] is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: CA
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

subfic **r**D**,r**A**,**SIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **sfi**]



rD← ¬ (**r**A) + EXTS(SIMM) + 1

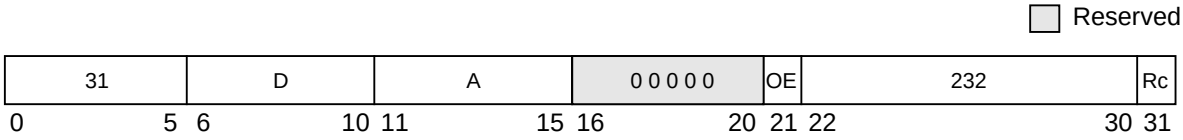
The sum ¬ (**r**A) + EXTS(SIMM) + 1 is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- XER:
  Affected: CA

subfme	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=0)
subfme.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=1)
subfmeo	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=0)
subfmeo.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **sfme, sfme., sfmeo, sfmeo.**]



rD← ¬ (**r**A) + XER[CA] – 1

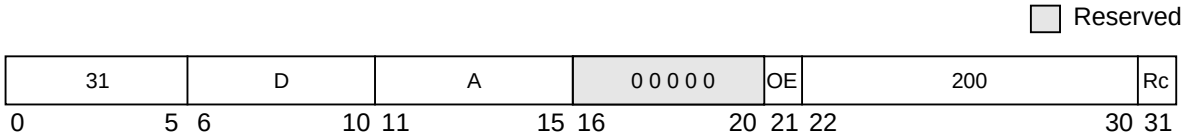
The sum ¬ (**r**A) + XER[CA] + x'FFFFFFFF' is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: CA
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

subfze	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=0)
subfze.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=0 Rc=1)
subfzeo	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=0)
subfzeo.	**r**D,**r**A	(OE=1 Rc=1)

[POWER mnemonics: **sfze, sfze., sfzeo, sfzeo.**]



rD← ¬ (**r**A) + XER[CA]

The sum ¬ (**r**A) + XER[CA] is placed into **r**D.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)
- XER:
  Affected: CA
  Affected: SO, OV (if OE=1)

sync
Synchronize

sync
Integer Unit

[POWER mnemonic: **dcs**]

The **sync** instruction provides an ordering function for the effects of all instructions executed by a given processor. Executing a **sync** instruction ensures that all instructions previously initiated by the given processor appear to have completed before any subsequent instructions are initiated by the given processor. When the **sync** instruction completes, all external accesses initiated by the given processor prior to the **sync** will have been performed with respect to all other mechanisms that access memory.

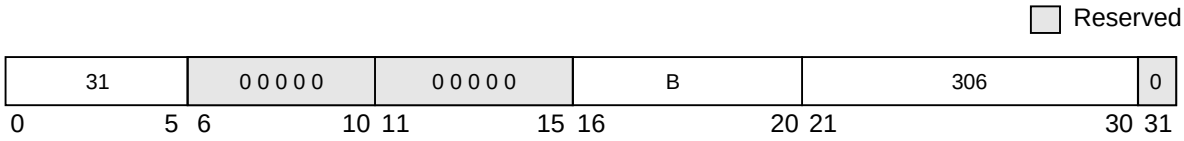
The **sync** instruction can be used to ensure that the results of all stores into a data structure, performed in a “critical section” of a program, are seen by other processors before the data structure is seen as unlocked. The **eieio** instruction may be more appropriate than **sync** for cases in which the only requirement is to control the order in which external references are seen by I/O devices.

Other registers altered:

- None

tlbie **r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **tlbi**]



VPI←**r**B[4–19]
Identify TLB entries corresponding to VPI
each such TLB entry←invalid

EA is the contents of **r**B. The translation lookaside buffer (referred to as the TLB) containing entries corresponding to the EA are made invalid (i.e., removed from the TLB). Additionally, a TLB invalidate operation is broadcast on the system interface. The TLB search is done regardless of the settings of MSR[IT] and MSR[DT]. Block address translation for EA, if any, is ignored.

Because the 601 supports broadcast of TLB entry invalidate operations, the following must be observed:

- The **tlbie** instruction(s) must be contained in a critical section, controlled by software locking, so that **tlbie** is issued on only one processor at a time.
- A **sync** instruction must be issued after every **tlbie** and at the end of the critical section. This causes the hardware to wait for the effects of the preceding **tlbie** instructions(s) to propagate to all processors.

A processor detecting a TLB invalidate broadcast performs the following:

1. Prevents execution of any new load, store, cache control or **tlbie** instructions and prevents any new reference or change bit updates
2. Waits for completion of any outstanding memory operations (including updates to the reference and change bits associated with the entry to be invalidated)
3. Invalidates the two entries (both associativity classes) in the UTLB indexed by the matching address
4. Resumes normal execution

This is a supervisor-level instruction. It is optional in the PowerPC architecture.

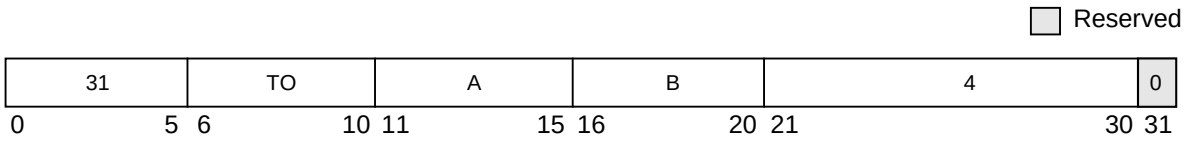
Nothing is guaranteed about instruction fetching in other processors if the **tlbie** instruction deletes the page in which some other processor is currently executing.

Other registers altered:

- None

tw TO,**r**A,**r**B

[POWER mnemonic: **t**]



a← EXTS(**r**A)
b← EXTS(**r**B)
if (a < b) & TO[0] then TRAP
if (a > b) & TO[1] then TRAP
if (a = b) & TO[2] then TRAP
if (a <U b) & TO[3] then TRAP
if (a >U b) & TO[4] then TRAP

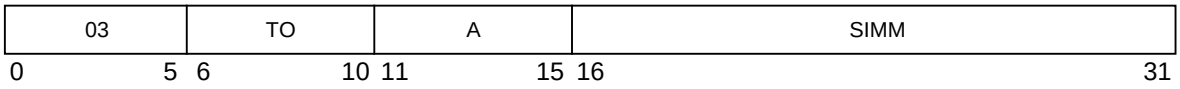
The contents of **r**A are compared with the contents of **r**B. If any bit in the TO field is set to 1 and its corresponding condition is met by the result of the comparison, then the system trap handler is invoked.

Other registers altered:

- None

twi TO**,r**A**,**SIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **ti**]



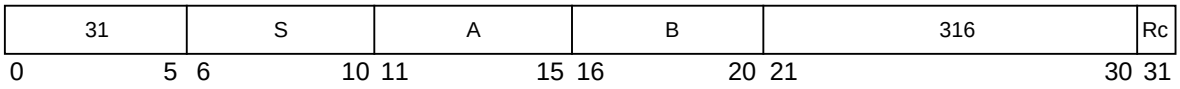

```
a← EXTS(rA)
if (a < EXTS(SIMM)) & TO[0] then TRAP
if (a > EXTS(SIMM)) & TO[1] then TRAP
if (a = EXTS(SIMM)) & TO[2] then TRAP
if (a <U EXTS(SIMM)) & TO[3] then TRAP
if (a >U EXTS(SIMM)) & TO[4] then TRAP
```

The contents of **r**A are compared with the sign-extended SIMM field. If any bit in the TO field is set to 1 and its corresponding condition is met by the result of the comparison, then the system trap handler is invoked.

Other registers altered:

- None

xor **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=0)
xor. **r**A,**r**S,**r**B (Rc=1)



rA←(**r**S) ⊕ (**r**B)

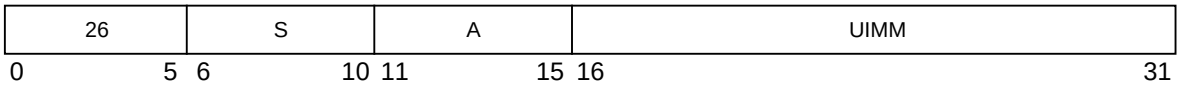
The contents of **r**A is XORed with the contents of **r**B and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- Condition Register (CR0 Field):
  Affected: LT, GT, EQ, SO (if Rc=1)

xori **r**A,**r**S,UIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **xoril**]



rA←(**r**S) ⊕ ((16)0 || UIMM)

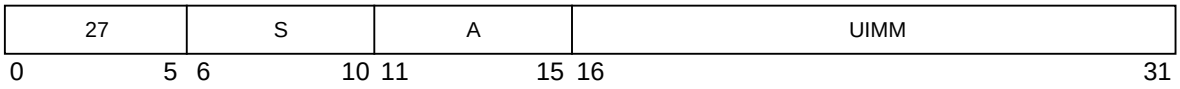
The contents of **r**S is XORed with x'0000' || UIMM and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- None

xoris **r**A,**r**S,UIMM

[POWER mnemonic: **xoriu**]



rA←(**r**S) ⊕ (UIMM || (16)0)

The contents of **r**S is XORed with UIMM || x'0000' and the result is placed into **r**A.

Other registers altered:

- None

10.3 Instructions Not Implemented by the 601

Table 10-6 provides a list of 32-bit instructions that are not implemented by the 601, and that generate an illegal instruction exception. Refer to Appendix C, “PowerPC Instructions Not Implemented”, for a more detailed description of the instructions.

Table 10-6. 32-Bit Instructions Not Implemented by the PowerPC 601 Microprocessor

Mnemonic	Instruction
fres	Floating-Point Reciprocal Estimate Single-Precision
frsqrte	Floating-Point Reciprocal Square Root Estimate
fsel	Floating-Point Select
fsqrt	Floating-Point Square Root
fsqrts	Floating-Point Square Root Single-Precision
mftb	Move from Time Base
stfiwx	Store Floating-Point as Integer Word Indexed
tlbia	Translation Lookaside Buffer Invalidate All
tlbsync	Translation Lookaside Buffer Synchronize

Table 10-7 provides a list of 32-bit SPR encodings that are not implemented by the 601.

Table 10-7. 32-Bit SPR Encodings Not Implemented by the PowerPC 601 Microprocessor

SPR			Register Name	Access
Decimal	SPR[5–9]	SPR[0–4]		
284	01000	11100	TB	Supervisor
285	01000	11101	TBU	Supervisor
536	10000	11000	DBAT0U	Supervisor
537	10000	11001	DBAT0L	Supervisor
538	10000	11010	DBAT1U	Supervisor
539	10000	11011	DBAT1L	Supervisor
540	10000	11100	DBAT2U	Supervisor
541	10000	11101	DBAT2L	Supervisor
542	10000	11110	DBAT3U	Supervisor
543	10000	11111	DBAT3L	Supervisor

Table 10-8 provides a list of 64-bit instructions that are not implemented by the 601, and that generate an illegal instruction exception. Refer to Appendix C, “PowerPC Instructions Not Implemented.”

Table 10-8. 64-Bit Instructions Not Implemented by the PowerPC 601 Microprocessor

Mnemonic	Instruction
cntlzd	Count Leading Zeros Double Word
divd	Divide Double Word
divdu	Divide Double Word Unsigned
extsw	Extend Sign Word
fcfid	Floating Convert From Integer Double Word
fctid	Floating Convert to Integer Double Word
fctidz	Floating Convert to Integer Double Word with Round to Zero
ld	Load Double Word
ldarx	Load Double Word and Reserve Indexed
ldu	Load Double Word with Update
ldux	Load Double Word with Update Indexed
ldx	Load Double Word Indexed
lwa	Load Word Algebraic
lwaux	Load Word Algebraic with Update Indexed
lwax	Load Word Algebraic Indexed
mulld	Multiply Low Double Word
mulhd	Multiply High Double Word
mulhdu	Multiply High Double Word Unsigned
rldcl	Rotate Left Double Word then Clear Left
rldcr	Rotate Left Double Word then Clear Right
rldic	Rotate Left Double Word Immediate then Clear
rldicl	Rotate Left Double Word Immediate then Clear Left
rldicr	Rotate Left Double Word Immediate then Clear Right
rldimi	Rotate Left Double Word Immediate then Mask Insert
slbia	SLB Invalidate All
slbie	SLB Invalidate Entry
sld	Shift Left Double Word
srad	Shift Right Algebraic Double Word
sradi	Shift Right Algebraic Double Word Immediate

Table 10-8. 64-Bit Instructions Not Implemented by the PowerPC 601 Microprocessor (Continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction
srd	Shift Right Double Word
std	Store Double Word
stdcx.	Store Double Word Conditional Indexed
stdu	Store Double Word with Update
stdux	Store Double Word Indexed with Update
stdx	Store Double Word Indexed
td	Trap Double Word
tdi	Trap Double Word Immediate

Table 10-9 provides the 64-bit SPR encoding that is not implemented by the 601.

Table 10-9. 64-Bit SPR Encoding Not Implemented by the PowerPC 601 Microprocessor

SPR			Register Name	Access
Decimal	SPR[5–9]	SPR[0–4]		
280	01000	11000	ASR	Supervisor

This document contains information on a new product under development by Motorola and IBM. Motorola and IBM reserve the right to change or discontinue this product without notice. Information in this document is provided solely to enable system and software implementers to use PowerPC microprocessors. There are no express or implied copyright or patent licenses granted hereunder by Motorola or IBM to design, modify the design of, or fabricate circuits based on the information in this document.

The PowerPC 601 microprocessor embodies the intellectual property of Motorola and of IBM. However, neither Motorola nor IBM assumes any responsibility or liability as to any aspects of the performance, operation, or other attributes of the microprocessor as marketed by the other party or by any third party. Neither Motorola nor IBM is to be considered an agent or representative of the other, and neither has assumed, created, or granted hereby any right or authority to the other, or to any third party, to assume or create any express or implied obligations on its behalf. Information such as data sheets, as well as sales terms and conditions such as prices, schedules, and support, for the product may vary as between parties selling the product. Accordingly, customers wishing to learn more information about the products as marketed by a given party should contact that party.

Both Motorola and IBM reserve the right to modify this manual and/or any of the products as described herein without further notice. **NOTHING IN THIS MANUAL, NOR IN ANY OF THE ERRATA SHEETS, DATA SHEETS, AND OTHER SUPPORTING DOCUMENTATION, SHALL BE INTERPRETED AS THE CONVEYANCE BY MOTOROLA OR IBM OF AN EXPRESS WARRANTY OF ANY KIND OR IMPLIED WARRANTY, REPRESENTATION, OR GUARANTEE REGARDING THE MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS OF THE PRODUCTS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE**. Neither Motorola nor IBM assumes any liability or obligation for damages of any kind arising out of the application or use of these materials. Any warranty or other obligations as to the products described herein shall be undertaken solely by the marketing party to the customer, under a separate sale agreement between the marketing party and the customer. In the absence of such an agreement, no liability is assumed by Motorola, IBM, or the marketing party for any damages, actual or otherwise.

"Typical" parameters can and do vary in different applications. All operating parameters, including "Typicals," must be validated for each customer application by customer's technical experts. Neither Motorola nor IBM convey any license under their respective intellectual property rights nor the rights of others. Neither Motorola nor IBM makes any claim, warranty, or representation, express or implied, that the products described in this manual are designed, intended, or authorized for use as components in systems intended for surgical implant into the body, or other applications intended to support or sustain life, or for any other application in which the failure of the product could create a situation where personal injury or death may occur. Should customer purchase or use the products for any such unintended or unauthorized application, customer shall indemnify and hold Motorola and IBM and their respective officers, employees, subsidiaries, affiliates, and distributors harmless against all claims, costs, damages, and expenses, and reasonable attorney fees arising out of, directly or indirectly, any claim of personal injury or death associated with such unintended or unauthorized use, even if such claim alleges that Motorola or IBM was negligent regarding the design or manufacture of the part.

Motorola and  are registered trademarks of Motorola, Inc. Motorola, Inc. is an Equal Opportunity/Affirmative Action Employer.

IBM and IBM logo are registered trademarks, and IBM Microelectronics is a trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
The PowerPC name, PowerPC logotype,PowerPC 601, PowerPC 603, PowerPC 603e, PowerPC Architectur, and POWER Architecture are trademarks of International Business Machines Corp. used by Motorola under license from International Business Machines Corp. International Business Machines Corp. is an Equal Opportunity/Affirmative Action Employer.
